

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

ELEMENTA PRIMA

THE FIRST ELEMENTS OF LATIN

By

LUTHER DENNY WHITTEMORE, A.M., LITT.D.

WASHBURN COLLEGE, TOPEKA, KANSAS

WITH THE EDITORIAL COLLABORATION OF
GEORGE D. HADZSITS, Ph.D.

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

AND

LAURA L. EWING, A.M.

HIGH SCHOOL, TOPEKA, KANSAS

Elementa velint ut discere prima.

—Horatius

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

CHICAGO

PHILADELPHIA

TORONTO

Copyright, 1920, by

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London

All Rights Reserved

PRESS OF
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
PHILADELPHIA, PA., U. S. A.

PREFACE

. The underlying purpose in the preparation of this book is suggested by the lines of Horace from which the quotation on the title-page and the title itself have been taken:—

Ridentem dicere v̄erum
quid vetat? ut pueris ōlim dant crūstula blandi
doctōrēs, elementa velint ut discere prīma.

What is there to prevent the teaching of Latin in an alluring manner so that the young student may be not only willing, but eager, to put forth the effort required in learning the first principles of the language? At best the study of a foreign language is difficult for the beginner and the benefits to be derived from it seem remote; and for these reasons, if for no other, it is the part of wisdom to encourage the learner and to ameliorate the difficulties in his way by employing a method of instruction that is both rational and attractive.

It should be recognized from the very beginning that language is a medium for the expression of thought and not an arbitrary contrivance to illustrate grammar. Hence the immediate object of the study should not be to acquire information about the language, but to become acquainted with the language itself; and it should be self-evident that the portions of the language assigned for study should express comprehensible ideas. Each sentence should convey a meaning intelligible to the student and the successive sentences should have a logical sequence. In this book the material for study is based on the reading matter, all of which has meaning connected from sentence to sentence; and this applies to the numbered sentences in the reading exercises as well as to the matter arranged in paragraphs.

In order to attract the student's attention and to sustain it while he is working out the grammatical details, some suitable incentive must be offered, which should not be too obscure; and the acquisition of grammatical knowledge as such is not sufficient for this purpose. The more difficult the principle to be learned, the more inviting should be the manner of its presentation. In accordance with the plan of this book the needed motive has

(v)

464445

been supplied by the introduction of subject-matter which appeals directly to the student's interest. Illustrations of this are "*Lūdus Quī Spectō Appellātur*," section 85; the reading exercise in the chapter on the formation and comparison of adverbs, section 353; "*Gallīna Impavida*," in the first lesson on the subjunctive mood, section 401; and "*Lupus Scelerātus*," illustrating the different forms of conditional sentences, section 449. Incidentally such material is by far the most effective means of demonstrating the fact that the study of Latin, even in the first lessons, may be much more than its analysis as an example of a "dead" language valuable from the historical point of view only.

Aside from its grammatical relations, the reading in Latin should be profitable. That is, the content should have substance so that the reading itself may not be a waste of time. In this book, after the first few introductory chapters, the reading lessons are based largely on stories from Roman history taken from the first book of Livy and "*Virī Rōmae*," modified to suit the requirements of graded lessons. Thus the objectionable use of matter taken from Caesar in anticipation of the work of the second year is avoided, and the student is brought into contact with Roman ideas as well as with Latin words. In addition to this the graded reading exercises not only express connected ideas, but they frequently contain information of real value apart from their grammatical purpose. For example, section 60 gives a simple outline of the life of the poet Horace; section 148 describes some of the principal features of the city of Rome; and section 316 explains the Roman calendar. A few fables have been used, which have some literary value; and a few lines of Horace and Vergil have been introduced to show the adaptability of Latin to the use of poetry. Towards the end of the book there is an introduction to the life of Julius Caesar, which is intended to aid in the transition from the first year to the second.

In an elementary textbook in any subject, and particularly in a book designed as a guide in the study of a language new to the student, it is essential that the contents should be *teachable*. There are two processes involved in learning: instruction and original effort. Instruction is necessary to prevent the learner from misdirecting his efforts and to set the problems clearly before him; but something must be left for the student to discover for himself. Instruction that is limited to *telling* and study that is confined to *memorizing* are only partially effective.

Opportunities for investigation and occasions for reasoning, both by induction and deduction, must be provided.

These desirable objects have been attained in this book in part by the arrangement of the matter in the successive chapters. The first section in each chapter gives the instruction needed for the study of the subject assigned and includes such explanations as a skilful teacher would give in preparation for the pupil's study. The second section directs the pupil how to proceed in his attack upon the lesson material. Throughout the book this plan is consistently followed, instruction and directions for independent study being given alternately, with emphasis on one or the other according to the nature of the subject-matter. The various forms and constructions are first presented in the reading matter in anticipation of the explanations which follow. Thus the explanations follow rather than precede the matter to be explained, and the mind of the student is prepared in advance for the technical matter, which is not introduced until the occasion for it has been made clear.

All of the reading matter has been carefully graded; and the exercises, while considerably more extensive than those ordinarily provided in books for beginners, are not too difficult for rapid reading. This permits much practice in reading and translation and enables the student to become acquainted with words, idioms, and grammatical constructions in their connection, not as isolated facts, thus enlisting the aid of association throughout the study.

Neither in the reading exercises nor in the longer paragraphs is there any violation of the Latin idiom. There is a logical subject, expressed or understood, for every verb, and an antecedent for every pronoun. Conjunctions and adverbs, also, are employed in such a manner as to make their correct use familiar. Thus the student can not fail to acquire a feeling for the correct use of the language, which is one of the most desirable results of language study.

The rules of syntax are stated concisely and are illustrated by sentences taken from the preceding lessons so that the student's previous acquisitions may be used to the fullest extent in the assimilation of new matter. The translations of the illustrative sentences are designed as models to be observed by the student. Each chapter closes with an exercise in Latin composition in which the principles presented are still further applied.

An important feature of this book is the treatment of the

derivation of English words. This is introduced for formal study in connection with the review lessons so that the attention may not be too much diverted from the new material which requires concentration when unfamiliar words, forms, and principles are under consideration. The subject of derivation is first introduced in a simple way with a minimum of explanation. As the study proceeds, however, the typical processes of Latin word-formation and English derivation are explained and illustrated by numerous examples. All of this study is based on words used in the regular lessons. An alphabetical list of all the Latin words used for this purpose, together with their English equivalents, will be found beginning on page 365 (section 572). This study may be extended indefinitely by the aid of an English dictionary; but the examples given in the text are sufficient to demonstrate the principles involved, and are, perhaps, as many as can profitably be included in the first year's work.

In addition to the methods mentioned above, this book employs repetition to an unusual extent. This applies, first, to the repeated use of words as such; second, to the copious illustrations of the forms of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs in the reading exercises; and third, to the introduction of numerous examples of grammatical principles in all the reading matter. In addition to this, it has been the author's definite purpose to give new matter a familiar setting so that the student's mind may naturally single out the item which, for the moment, requires concentrated attention. The effect of this repetition is to cause the feeling of strangeness and newness to disappear as quickly as possible after a new word, form, or construction has appeared. As a simple example of this principle, which is characteristic of the method throughout the book, the first and third sentences in the first reading exercise (section 3) may be mentioned. In the first sentence, *Rōma est antīqua urbs*, the words are arranged in the normal English order; in the third sentence, *Rōma est urbs pulchra*, the only new word is the adjective *pulchra* the position of which, following its noun, can not possibly escape observation. Every such discovery, made by the student without the teachers' aid, may be set down as gain. It will encourage the student, increase his confidence in his own power, and will help materially to make his progress certain.

The amount and variety of the reading matter make it convenient and desirable to employ a vocabulary which is somewhat

larger than that used in some other books for beginners. However, it is not supposed that the student will be required to commit to memory all of the Latin words in the book any more than a child when learning to talk is expected to memorize all of the words which he hears. There is in both cases a distinct advantage in contact with a rather full vocabulary, including some synonyms, even if some of the words are heard or read only once or rarely. The working vocabulary, however, has been duly restricted and a list of 600 words has been selected for memory drill. These words have been arranged, not in a single alphabet, but in groups corresponding to the portions of the text covered by the review lessons. In each group except the first the words are not arranged alphabetically but in the order of their first occurrence. Thus the drill on the essential vocabulary may be commenced at any time and may keep pace with the advancement of the class.

Acknowledgment for many excellent suggestions is due to Mr. Ralph L. Ward, head of the Latin department in the Kansas City, Kansas, high school, and to other Latin teachers who have examined the manuscript.

The author wishes also to express his great appreciation of the assistance given by Principal J. Edward Banta, Training School for Teachers, Syracuse, N. Y.; Mr. Walter Eugene Foster, Stuyvesant High School, New York City; Dr. Henry W. Rolfe, Chesham, N. H., formerly of Leland Stanford Junior University; Professor Frank L. Clark, Miami University, Oxford, Ohio; and Principal H. L. Miller, University High School, University of Wisconsin, all of whom have taken an interest in the original features of the book and have assisted in its production by reading page proofs and by other valuable contributions.

Permission for the reproduction of a number of original photographs has very courteously been given by Mr. Henry V. Stearns, Washburn College, Topeka, Kansas, and Miss Mary A. Grant, Ph.D., Topeka, Kansas.

Whether the revival of interest in the study of Latin is due to the introduction of more rational methods of teaching or not, it is certain that it can be sustained and promoted only by methods which appeal more directly to the students' and this book is offered as a contribution *elementa velint ut discere prima*.

L. D. W.

Topeka, Kansas.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

In order that the best results may be secured from the use of this book, it is desirable that the directions given in the text should be carefully observed. This, however, should not prevent the teacher from using any original methods which may seem promising, for the book is intended to stimulate originality and initiative on the part of pupils as well as teachers. By all means dull and mechanical methods should be avoided and a certain amount of freedom and vivacity should be cultivated.

The provision made for notebook work is, of course, only suggestive; and this may be varied according to circumstances; but if the notebook work is commenced at the beginning and faithfully continued throughout the study, the pupil's effort will yield ample returns.

The chapter and section numbers are not intended to indicate divisions into daily lessons. The amount which should be assigned for a single lesson varies with different teachers and classes so greatly that definite limits can not be arbitrarily fixed. It is generally better to assign a comparatively small amount for intensive study than to attempt to cover too much ground superficially.

The observing teacher will discover that much of the introductory Latin reading matter in the various chapters is very simple and suitable for sight reading and rapid work in recitation. The teacher's judgment will enable him to decide whether to use speed or deliberation.

In some classes it may not be possible to complete the book in a single year; but the portion omitted will provide for a profitable review of essentials and will be an excellent introduction to Caesar at the beginning of the second year; and no time will be lost eventually if this book is completed before any advanced study is undertaken.

A suitable stopping place for the middle of the year is at the end of chapter XXXI,

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.....	xxiii
I. PRONUNCIATION.—SYLLABLES.—QUANTITY.—ACCENT. —COMPOSITION.....	1
II. THE FIRST DECLENSION: THE NOMINATIVE, ACCU- SATIVE, AND VOCATIVE CASES.—SYNTAX.—THE SUB- JECT OF A FINITE VERB.—THE DIRECT OBJECT OF A TRANSITIVE VERB.—THE PERSON ADDRESSED..	6
III. THE FIRST DECLENSION (CONTINUED): THE GENI- TIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE CASES.—THE GENI- TIVE QUALIFYING ANOTHER NOUN.—THE INDIRECT OBJECT.—THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRU- MENT.....	11
IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION (CONTINUED): GENDER.— THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.—PARADIGMS.— TYPICAL NOUN.—PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE. —THE LOCATIVE CASE.....	16
V. THE SECOND DECLENSION, MASCULINE NOUNS: THE NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE CASES.— THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE CASES.— TYPICAL NOUNS.....	23
VI. NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.— GENDER.—TYPICAL NOUN	31
VII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. —TYPICAL ADJECTIVES.—AGREEMENT OF ADJEC- TIVES.—THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.....	34
VIII. REVIEW.—ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN.— WORD LIST.—APPOSITION.....	39
IX. VERBS: PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.— AGREEMENT WITH SUBJECT.—CONJUGATION OF sum, dō, ETC.....	47

CHAPTER	PAGE
X. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—SELECTIONS FOR READING.— <i>Aenēās in Ītaliā Venit.</i> —THE PRESENT STEM.—CONJUGATION.—THE USE OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.	51
XI. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.— <i>Lūdus Quī "Spectō" Appellātur.</i> — <i>Rōmulus et Remus in Tiberim Mittuntur.</i> —CONJUGATION.—THE AGENT WITH PASSIVE VERBS.	57
XII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, STEMS IN <i>c, d, g, p,</i> AND <i>t.</i> — <i>Pāstor Puerōs Invenit.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS.—PLACE TO WHICH.—PLACE IN WHICH.—PLACE FROM WHICH	62
XIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, STEMS IN <i>l</i> AND <i>r.</i> — <i>Remus ā Praedātōribus Est Captus.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS.—THE ABLATIVE OF TIME.—THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.	68
XIV. THE THIRD DECLENSION, STEMS IN <i>n.</i> — <i>Numitor Remun Nepōtem Agnōscit.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS.—TWO ACCUSATIVES.	72
XV. THE PAST (IMPERFECT) INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—CONJUGATION OF <i>sum, dō,</i> AND <i>timeō.</i> —FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—CONJUGATION.—THE USE OF THE PAST TENSE.	76
XVI. THE PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE.— <i>Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam Vocat.</i> —CONJUGATION.—VOICE.—TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.	82
XVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, STEMS IN <i>s.</i> — <i>Incolae Urbī Novae De-erant.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS.—THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY.	86
XVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, STEMS IN <i>i.</i> — <i>Rōmulus Societātem Populō Novō Petit.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS	90
XIX. REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN NOUNS.—LATIN NOUNS WITH ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.	95

CHAPTER	PAGE
XX. THE FUTURE TENSE.—CONJUGATION OF <i>sum, dō,</i> ETC.—THE USE OF THE FUTURE TENSE.....	102
XXI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FOUR CONJUGATIONS.— <i>Rōmānī Virgīnēs Sabinōrum Rapiunt.</i> —CONJUGATION.—THE DATIVE WITH CERTAIN COMPOUND VERBS.....	105
XXII. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE, FOUR CONJUGATIONS.— <i>Sabinī Tarpēiam Scūtis Obruunt.</i> —CONJUGATION.—CONJUNCTIONS.—COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.—SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS....	109
XXIII. VERBS IN <i>-iō</i> OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—CONJUGATION OF <i>capiō</i>	114
XXIV. THE PRESENT INFINITIVE.—THE PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE OF <i>possum.</i> — <i>Ad Certāmen Utrimque Prōcēdunt.</i> —THE PRESENT INFINITIVE OF TYPICAL VERBS.—CONJUGATION OF <i>possum.</i> —THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.—THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—THE TIME DENOTED BY THE PRESENT INFINITIVE.—THE SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.....	116
XXV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE.— <i>Iuppiter Rōmānīs Terrōrem Dēmit.</i> —TYPICAL ADJECTIVES.—DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE.—THE PRESENT STEM.—THE USE OF THE PARTICIPLE.—THE USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—THE DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION.....	122
XXVI. NUMERALS.—ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN <i>-ius.</i> — <i>Mulierēs inter Tēla Veniunt.</i> —DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.—THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.....	130
XXVII. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—CONJUGATION OF <i>sum, dō,</i> ETC.—THE PERFECT TENSE IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.— <i>Ducēs Foedus Faciunt.</i> —THE PERFECT STEM.—PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.—CONJUGATION.—THE USE OF THE DEFINITE PERFECT.—THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE PERFECT.—THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—THE DATIVE DENOTING POSSESSION.....	136

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXVIII. THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—CONJUGATION.—THE USE OF THE PAST PERFECT TENSE	144
XXIX. THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.— <i>Temp-estās ab Terris Rōmulum Aufert.</i> —CONJUGATION.—THE USE OF THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE....	147
XXX. THE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE.—TYPICAL VERBS.—THE INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF SAYING.—THE TIME DENOTED BY THE PERFECT INFINITIVE.....	152
XXXI. REVIEW OF NOUNS.—GENDER.— <i>Fīlia Salūtem Dicit Mātrī Cornēliae.</i> —GENDER IN THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.—FORMATION OF LATIN NOUNS.—ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN NOUNS.....	155
XXXII. PRONOUNS, PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE.—DECLENSION.—THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.—USE OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS.—THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.—THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.....	162
XXXIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS <i>hic</i> , <i>iste</i> , AND <i>ille</i> .—THE INTENSIVE <i>ipse</i> .— <i>Numae Pompiliō Rēgnum Datur.</i> —DECLENSION.—USE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—DURATION OF TIME.....	168
XXXIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>is</i> AND THE RELATIVE <i>quī</i> .— <i>Tullus Hostīlius Rēx Creātur.</i> —DECLENSION.—THE USE OF <i>is</i> .—AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.....	173
XXXV. THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.— <i>Inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs Bellum.</i> —PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.—TYPICAL VERBS.—USE OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.—THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE....	177
XXXVI. THE FOURTH DECLENSION.— <i>Trigeminī Arma Capiunt.</i> TYPICAL NOUNS.—THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE....	184
XXXVII. THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.— <i>Ūnum Horātium Trēs Curiātīi Circumstant.</i> —CONJUGATION.—VERBS USED IMPERSONALLY.—THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER....	189

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION.— <i>Rōmānī Horātium Victōrem Accipiunt.</i> —TYPICAL NOUNS.—THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.....	194
XXXIX. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, <i>quis</i> AND <i>quī.</i> — <i>Pater cum Fīliō Loquitur.</i> — <i>Movet Horātium Complōrātiō Sorōris.</i> —DECLENSION OF <i>quis.</i> —INTERROGATIVE WORDS.....	198
XL. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.— <i>Horātius apud Iūdicēs Condemnātus Est.</i> —COMPARISON OF TYPICAL ADJECTIVES.—DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE.—THE ABLATIVE WITH A COMPARATIVE.—THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE.—THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.....	202
XLI. SUPERLATIVES IN <i>-limus</i> AND <i>-rimus.</i> — <i>Rōma Crēscit Albae Ruīnis.</i> —SPECIAL FORMS OF COMPARISON.—SPECIAL MEANINGS IN COMPARISON.....	207
XLII. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.—ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART	211
XLIII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—FORMATION OF ADVERBS.—COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—THE USE OF ADVERBS.....	214
XLIV. THE SUPINE STEM.— <i>Ancus Mārcius Rēx Creātur.</i> —TYPICAL VERBS.—THE PERFECT PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.—THE FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE.—THE SUPINE.—THE FUTURE PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—THE USE OF THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.—THE TIME DENOTED BY THE FUTURE INFINITIVE.—THE USE OF THE SUPINE.....	218
XLV. DEPONENT VERBS.— <i>Latīnis Bellum Est Indictum.</i> —PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENT VERBS.—THE ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS.—IDIOMS.....	224
XLVI. IRREGULAR VERBS.— <i>Dē Rūsticō Mūre atque Mūre Urbānō Fabula Horātī Poētae.</i> —CONJUGATION.—NEGATIVE COMMANDS.....	229

CHAPTER	PAGE
XLVII. REVIEW OF VERBS.— <i>Urbs atque Ager Finēsque Crēscunt.</i> —THE FORMATION OF LATIN VERBS.—ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN VERBS.—CLASSIFICATION OF THE TENSES.—THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.—THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND THE PARTICIPLE.....	233
XLVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PRESENT AND PAST TENSES.—FINAL CLAUSES.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE.—THE FORM OF THE PRESENT AND PAST SUBJUNCTIVE.—THE TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.— <i>Gallina Impavida.</i> — <i>Tarquinius Rōmam Commigrat.</i> —CONJUGATION.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.—THE USE OF THE PRESENT AND PAST SUBJUNCTIVE.....	241
XLIX. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.— <i>Vulpēs et Leō.</i> — <i>Tarquinius Rēgnum Petit.</i> —THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT...	249
L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT.— <i>Mūrēs.</i> — <i>Magister cum Discipulō Loquitur.</i> — <i>Tarquinius Novāculā Cōtem Secat.</i> —CONJUGATION.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—THE USE OF THE PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.....	255
LI. CLAUSES WITH <i>cum</i> .— <i>Agricola et Fīlī.</i> — <i>Ancī Fīlī Rēgī Insidiās Parant.</i> —TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH <i>cum</i> , INDICATIVE.—TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH <i>cum</i> , SUBJUNCTIVE.—CASUAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES WITH <i>cum</i>	262
LII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.— <i>Leō.</i> —THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.—THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.—THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE....	266
LIII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.— <i>Lupus Scelerātus.</i> — <i>Servius Tullius Rēgnat.</i> —CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, FIRST CLASS.—SECOND CLASS.—THIRD CLASS.—THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.....	270

CHAPTER	PAGE
LIV. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.—THE GERUNDIVE AND THE GERUND.— <i>Tubicen.</i> — <i>Vicus Scelerātus.</i> —TYPICAL VERBS.—THE USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.—THE USE OF THE GERUND.....	276
LV. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — <i>Tarquinius Superbus Rēgnum Occupat.</i> —CONJUGATION.—THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.—THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.—THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT.—THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.....	283
LVI. <i>Idem</i> AND THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.— <i>Rēge Expulsō Cōsulēs Sunt Creati.</i> —DECLENSION.—THE USE OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—THE ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN.....	287
LVII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE.— <i>Libri Sibyllini.</i> —MAIN VERBS IN THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—DEPENDENT VERBS.—QUESTIONS.—THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE.—THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION.....	291
LVIII. READING AND TRANSLATION.—REVIEW OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.— <i>Senex et Mors.</i> —PARSING.—MODELS FOR PARSING.—FORMATION OF LATIN ADJECTIVES.—ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES.—THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF FEELING.....	297
LIX. READING AND TRANSLATION.—REVIEW OF VERBS.— <i>Lārs Porsena Rōmam Īfestō Exercitū Venit.</i> — <i>Horātius Cocles Pontem Dēfendit.</i> —MODELS FOR PARSING VERBS.—LATIN WORD-FORMATION AND ENGLISH DERIVATION.—PREFIXES.— <i>Nē</i> AND <i>ut</i> WITH VERBS OF FEARING.—THE OMISSION OF <i>ut</i> .—THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.....	302
LX. REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.— <i>Mārcus Rēgulus Redit Carthāginem.</i> — <i>Rēgulus.</i> — FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES...	312
LXI. REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES.— <i>Scipiō Africānus Hannibalem Vincit.</i> —ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN PARTICIPLES.—REVIEW OF SYNTAX.....	317

CHAPTER	PAGE
LXII. GENERAL REVIEW.—Gāius Iūlius Caesar.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.—REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX.—REVIEW OF WORD-FORMATION AND DERIVATION.	322
LXIII. METRICAL READING.—Artēs Rōmānae.....	329
PRONUNCIATION.....	331
TABLES.....	334
REFERENCES TO RULES OF SYNTAX.....	362
LIST OF LATIN WORDS WITH ENGLISH DERIVATIVES	365
VOCABULARY DRILL.....	377
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	388
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	430
INDEX.....	449



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

	PAGE
TEMPLUM FORTŪNAE UT DĪCITUR.....	71
URBS ET FLŪMEN.....	73
CURRUS CYBELAE AB LEŌNIBUS IŪNCTĪS TRACTUS.....	75
PANTHĒUM, TEMPLUM IOVIS.....	79
INTERIOR PARS PANTHEĪ.....	81
MŪRUS RŌMULĪ.....	83
LUCERNA.....	85
LEŌ ATQUE HOMINĒS IN ARĒNĀ.....	87
AMPULLA OLEĀRIA.....	89
STATUA LUPAE.....	90
PUGIL, VIR QUĪ IN LŪDĪS CAESTU PUGNAT.....	92
CERTĀMEN INTER NĀVĪS LONGĀS.....	94
FORUM RŌMĀNUM ET TEMPLUM SĀTURNIUM.....	95
COLOSSĒUM ET ARCUS TITĪ.....	97
PUGNA GLADIĀTŌRUM.....	100
BALNEAE RŌMĀNAE IN BRITANNIĀ.....	101
FRĒNUM.....	104
TEMPLUM ROTUNDUM.....	105
PLATĒA POPULĪ.....	108
ANULĪ.....	110
ARMILLA.....	110
RŪPĒS TARPĒIA.....	111
ARMILLAE EX AERE FACTAE.....	113
HORTUS.....	117
FORUM RŌMĀNUM UT QUONDAM ERAT.....	118
PŌCULUM GRAECIUM.....	121
AUGUSTUS CAESAR, IMPERĀTOR.....	123
IUPPITER OPTIMUS MAXIMUS.....	124
PORTA ANTĪQUA.....	125
DOMUS TIBERĪ IN PALĀTIŌ.....	129
COLUMNAE OCTŌ TEMPLĪ SĀTURNIĪ.....	131
FORUM RŌMĀNUM.....	132
ACUS EBURNEA.....	135
URBS RŌMA UT NUNC VIDĒTUR.....	138
THERMAE CARACALLAE.....	143
CERTĀMEN CURRUUM IN CIRCŌ.....	148
CAPITŌLIUM UT HODIĒ EST.....	149
PORTA RŌMĀNA SEBASTIĀNA VOCĀTA.....	156
ŌRA ĪTALIAE.....	157
FLŪMEN ET PŌNS.....	159
AMPHITHEĀTRUM POMPEIĀNUM ET MŌNS VESUVIUS.....	163

	PAGE
LEBĒS AĒNEUS.....	167
ARCUS IĀNĪ, LOCUS MERCĀTŌRUM	169
ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ.....	170
MONTĒS SABĪNĪ ATQUE VIA AD VILLAM HORĀTĪ.....	172
MĪLES CUM SCŪTŌ ET HASTĀ.....	173
MONTĒS IN ETRŪRIĀ.....	176
TURRIS ET MŪRUS IN HISPĀNIĀ.....	179
ĪTALIA (<i>Map</i>).....	<i>Facing</i> 180
VIA TRIUMPHĀLIS IN MONTIBUS ALBĀNĪS.....	182
PORTUS NEĀPOLIS ET MŌNS VESUVIUS.....	183
PĪRAEUS, PORTUS ATHĒNĀRUM.....	185
ARX ATHĒNĀRUM ET TEMPLUM THĒSĒUM.....	188
GALLUS MORIĒNS.....	193
CICERO.....	198
VERGILIUS.....	199
TITUS LIVIUS.....	199
PALŪDĀMENTUM.....	200
HORĀTIUS, POĒTA.....	203
HOMĒRUS.....	203
LĪCTŌRĒS.....	203
TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS IN SICILIĀ.....	206
COLUMNAE PARTHENŌNIS, TEMPLĪ PULCHERRIMĪ.....	208
ANTĪQUUM CERERIS TEMPLUM.....	211
PAPŪRUS IN RĪPA FLŪMINIS.....	217
CĪVIS RŌMĀNUS.....	219
AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS AB VIĀ APPIĀ VĪSUS.....	221
DOMUS VIRGINUM VESTĀLIUM.....	223
CATAPULTA, MĀCHINA QUĀ RŌMĀNĪ PUGNĀBANT.....	224
NĀVIS LONGA.....	226
CĒNA.....	229
LĒCTUS.....	230
MĒNSA.....	230
REGIŌ RŪSTICA ĪTALIAE.....	232
CŌNSPECTUS AB MONTE IĀNICULŌ.....	235
MARE ĪNFERUM NŌN LONGĒ AB ŌRE TIBERIS.....	240
CLĀVIS AEREA.....	241
CARPENTUM.....	246
CURRUS ETRŪSCUS.....	248
MAGISTRĀTUS RŌMĀNUS.....	252
VĪCUS IN ĪTALIĀ HODIERNĀ.....	254
TINTINNĀBULA.....	256

	PAGE
AUGUR.....	261
TEMPLUM APOLLINIS, POMPĒII.....	261
ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ ET MŌNS PALĀTĪNUS.....	262
SECŪRĒS.....	264
RĒGIA CAESARUM IMPERĀTŌRUM.....	266
IMĀGŌ AĒNA PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ.....	269
DOMUS MĀRCĪ LUCRĒTĪ IN URBE POMPĒIĪS.....	272
IMPLUVIUM—INTERIOR PARS AEDIUM.....	273
TUBAE.....	277
VĪCUS SCELERĀTUS.....	279
MEDIA ROTAE PARS CUM CAPITE MEDŪSAE.....	282
TEMPLUM CONCORDIAE IN SICILIĀ.....	286
IŪNIUS BRŪTUS, CŌNSUL.....	288
PLATĒA MONTIS CAPITŌLĪNĪ ET STATUA MĀRCĪ AURĒLĪ.....	290
SIBYLLA.....	293
FOCULUS.....	293
TEMPLUM SIBYLLAE.....	295
SIBYLLA CŪMAEA CUM LIBRĪS SIBYLLĪNĪS.....	296
HORĀTIUS PONTEM DĒFENDIT.....	304
AGRICOLA ET ARĀTRUM.....	306
SPECULUM ARGENTEUM.....	311
FORCEPS IGNIFER.....	311
AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS.....	313
AQUAEDUCTUS NERŌNIS.....	315
AMPHORA CUM IMĀGINE HĒRCULIS.....	316
HANNIBAL.....	317
SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS.....	317
HANNIBAL EXERCITUM TRĀNS ALPĒS DŪCIT.....	318
MĪLITĒS PUGNANTĒS—IMĀGINĒS IN ARCŪ CŌNSTANTĪNĪ FICTAE..	321
GNAEUS POMPĒIUS.....	322
C. IŪLIUS CAESAR.....	322
VIA APPIA AB RŌMĀ AD BRUNDISIUM.....	323
MĀRCUS BRŪTUS, CŌNSPĪRĀTOR.....	324
ANTŌNIUS ŌRĀTIŌNEM DĒ CAESARE MORTUŌ HABET.....	327
IN HŌC LOCŌ ANTŌNIUS ŌRĀTIŌNEM HABUIT.....	328
MONĪLE EX AURŌ ET AMETHYSTĪS.....	328
FŌNS TRIUM VIĀRUM.....	330

INTRODUCTION

The study of the elements of a foreign language, like the study of any other branch of knowledge which the student approaches for the first time, is both easy and difficult. It is easy because the elementary facts are comparatively simple and readily comprehended; it is difficult because the elements, although simple, are fundamentally important. In acquiring the knowledge of a language every word which the student adds to his vocabulary, every grammatical principle learned, every inflected form remembered, and every idiom mastered becomes a part of the material by means of which further progress is made. Thus advancement depends upon the thoroughness with which the work is done. If the elementary principles are really mastered and if a vigorous mental effort is made not only to remember but to understand the matter presented in the successive lessons, the student will surely be conscious of increasing mental power and will enjoy the satisfaction which always comes as a result of successful endeavor.

Throughout the study, and particularly in the beginning, the directions which accompany each lesson should be faithfully observed; and by continual repetition and review the material presented for study should be well organized and thoroughly assimilated, so that each forward step may be a positive and permanent advance.

The illustrations, also, should be used to help the pupil visualize the Roman scenes and objects referred to in the text; for the purpose of the study should be not only to acquire a knowledge of the Latin language, but, as far as possible, to gain acquaintance with the Roman people and their life.



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

MĀRCUS AURĒLIUS, IMPERĀTOR

PRONUNCIATION

1. Constant practice is the only way by which the correct pronunciation of Latin can be acquired. The sounds of the letters, the quantity of the vowels, the division of the words into syllables, and the proper placing of the accent may be learned by a careful study of the explanatory matter in sections 536 to 542; but imitation of one who reads and speaks correctly will be of the greatest assistance to the beginner. For this reason the teacher should be sure that his own pronunciation is correct and should take occasion to read aloud frequently in the hearing of the class so that a perfect model may be constantly before the pupils. The Latin exercises and selections should be read aloud by the pupil also, with sufficient repetition to make the sound of the Latin words familiar. It is important that the student should become accustomed to the muscular movements of the vocal organs in pronouncing the words and in reading the sentences. At the very beginning of the study correct habits of pronunciation should be insisted on until they are firmly established.

2. The sentences in the reading exercise in section 3 contain all the letters of the Latin alphabet except **K**, **Y**, and **Z**, which are not often used. They also contain examples of all the long and the short vowels and all varieties of accent.

Let the sentences in section 3 be read aloud, first by the teacher and then by the pupil, with careful attention to the sound of the letters, the quantity of the vowels, the proper placing of the accent, and the expressive grouping of the words. Do not pause between connected words but read the sentences so as to express the meaning.

ELEMENTA PRIMA

Find the meanings of the words in the special vocabulary, section 573, page 377, and translate the sentences into English. In translating read the Latin sentence first and then give the English equivalent. Translate also from dictation as the Latin sentences are read by the teacher or by some member of the class. Then from the written English translation, or from the dictation of the English by the teacher, let the pupil, with closed book, repeat and write the sentences in Latin. In written Latin the quantity of the long vowels should be indicated as it is in the text.

The English article, *a, an, the*, has no exact equivalent in Latin. It is either omitted or is represented by a demonstrative pronoun. The article may be supplied in translating whenever it seems to be needed.

READING EXERCISE

3. 1. Rō'ma est an-tī'qua urbs. 2. Urbs Rō'ma est in Ī-ta'li-ā. 3. Rō'ma est urbs pul'chra. 4. Urbs Rō'ma lon'gē ab nos'trā pa'tri-ā ab'est. 5. Flū'men Ti'be-ris est in Ī-ta'li-ā. 6. Flū'men Ti'be-ris per ur'bem Rō'mam flu'it. 7. In flū'mi-ne Ti'be-rī est mag'na in'su-la. 8. Rō'ma est pa'tri-a Rō-mā-nō'rum. 9. Rēx Ī-ta'li-ae est in ur'be. 10. Rē-gī'na quo'que est in ur'be. 11. Rēx et rē-gī'na sunt in ur'be. 12. In an-tī'quīs ur'bi-bus e'rant vi'ae an-gus'tae. 13. Mag'nī la'pi-dēs in vi'is an-tī'quīs vi-den'tur. 14. Lin'gua Rō-mā-nō'rum est lin'gua La-tī'na. 15. Mul'tī ho'mi-nēs lin'guam La-tī'nam a'mant. 16. Lin'gua La-tī'na est lin'gua pul'chra. 17. Pu'e-rī et pu-el'lae lin'guam La-tī'nam in hōc li'brō vi'dent. 18. In hōc li'brō mul'ta dē Rō'mā an-tī'quā sunt scrip'ta.

NOTEBOOK WORK

- What letters does the Latin alphabet contain?
- In a word of two syllables which syllable is accented?
- In words of more than two syllables what syllable is accented if the penult is long? What syllable is accented if the penult is short?

NOTE.—The questions and notes following the reading exercises



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

4 ELEMENTA PRIMA

are exceedingly important and should be used to the fullest extent both in study and in notebook work.

SYLLABLES

4. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The last syllable is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult*.

A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second; as, **Rō'ma**, **La-tī'na**.

In combinations of two or more consonants the last consonant is generally pronounced with the following vowel; as, **an-tī'qua**.

The combinations **br**, **tr**, **gu** and **qu** are pronounced with the following vowel; as, **li'brō**, **pa'tri-a**, **lin'gua**, **quo'que**.

QUANTITY

5. A syllable is long or short in quantity according to the time required in its pronunciation. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; as, **Rō'ma**, **cae'lō**.

A syllable is long also if its vowel, whether long or short, is followed by a consonant *in the same syllable*. Thus the first syllable is long in **lin'gua**, **ur'be stel'la**; but short in **pa'tri-a**. In this book the long vowels are marked. The quantity of syllables is explained in section 541.

ACCENT

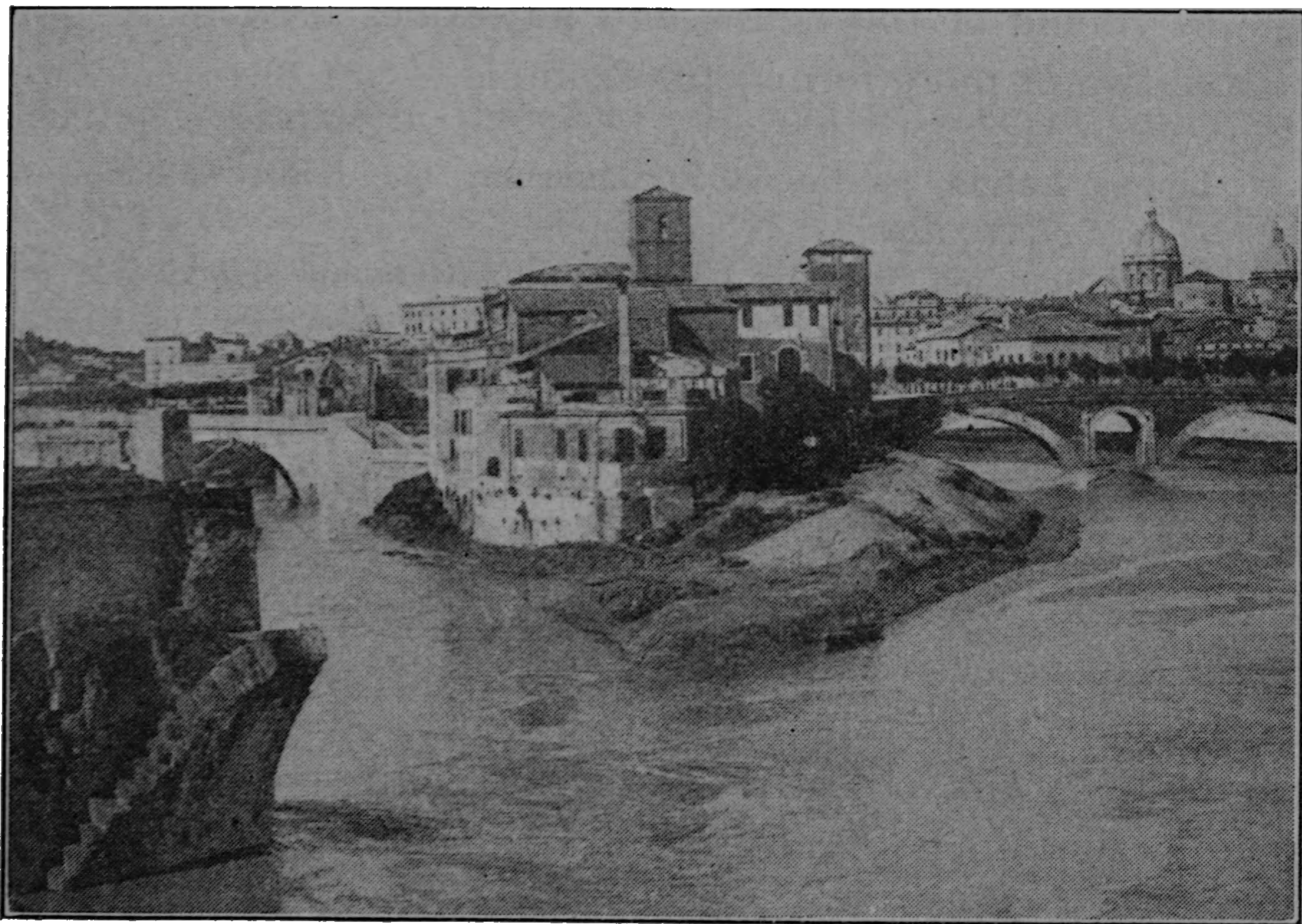
6. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable. In words of more than two syllables the penult is accented if it is long in quantity; if the penult is short, the antepenult is accented.

COMPOSITION

7. Write the following sentences in Latin and repeat them orally, using words found in the preceding Latin exercises.

The Latin words may be found in the English-Latin vocabulary, page 428; but the vocabulary should not be consulted until an effort has been made to recall the proper word.

1. Rome is an ancient city. 2. Rome is in Italy. 3. The river Tiber flows through the city. 4. The river Tiber is far away from our country. 5. The native city of the Romans is Rome. 6. Many people are in the city (of) Rome.



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

FLŪMEN TIBERIS ET INSULA

7. Boys and girls are seen in the streets. 8. The Latin language is the language of the Romans. 9. The king and queen of Italy love the Latin language. 10. The Latin language is in this book.

NOTE.—The exercises for composition offer an effective means of measuring the pupil's progress. The sentences for translation into Latin are based on the exercises which have previously been used for study and for translation into English; and these should be taken as models. The best preparation for writing in Latin is turning back into Latin the sentences which have been translated from Latin into English.

CHAPTER II

THE FIRST DECLENSION

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases

8. Some of the nouns and adjectives used in section 3 have two or more forms; for example,

Lingua Latīna est lingua Rōmānōrum, *the Latin language is the language of the Romans.*

Multī hominēs linguam Latīnam amant, *many people love the Latin language.*

In the first sentence **lingua Latīna** is used as the subject of the verb **est**; in the second sentence **linguam Latīnam** is used as the direct object of the verb **amant**. These forms are different *cases* which appear in the declension of Latin nouns and adjectives, and they correspond to the variation in the form of certain words in English; for example, *he*, nominative; *him*, objective. The case of any noun, pronoun, or adjective, in both Latin and English, depends upon its use in the sentence.

Three cases are introduced for study in section 10: *the Nominative*, used like the English nominative as the subject of a verb or as a predicate noun; *the Accusative*, used like the English objective as the direct object of a verb or with a preposition; and *the Vocative*, used in direct address.

These cases are distinguished from each other partly by the position and use of the words in the sentences and partly by the forms of the words, or the letters in which the words end. In the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases, singular and plural, the endings of nouns and adjectives of the first declension are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative, -a	Nominative, -ae
Accusative, -am	Accusative, -ās
Vocative, -a	Vocative, -ae

The nominative and the vocative cases are alike.

9. Read aloud the sentences in section 10, repeating them until all the words are familiar. Consult sections 536 to 542 for directions on pronunciation. While reading in Latin observe carefully the form and use of each noun and adjective ending in **-a**, **-am**, **-ae**, or **ās**, and determine the case and number. The adjective is always in the same case and number as the noun which it modifies.

With the aid of the vocabulary, section 573, page 377, translate into English, and from the dictation of the English write and recite the sentences in Latin.

Pronounce **ae** like *ai* in *aisle*; **au** like *ou* in *out*.

[READING EXERCISE

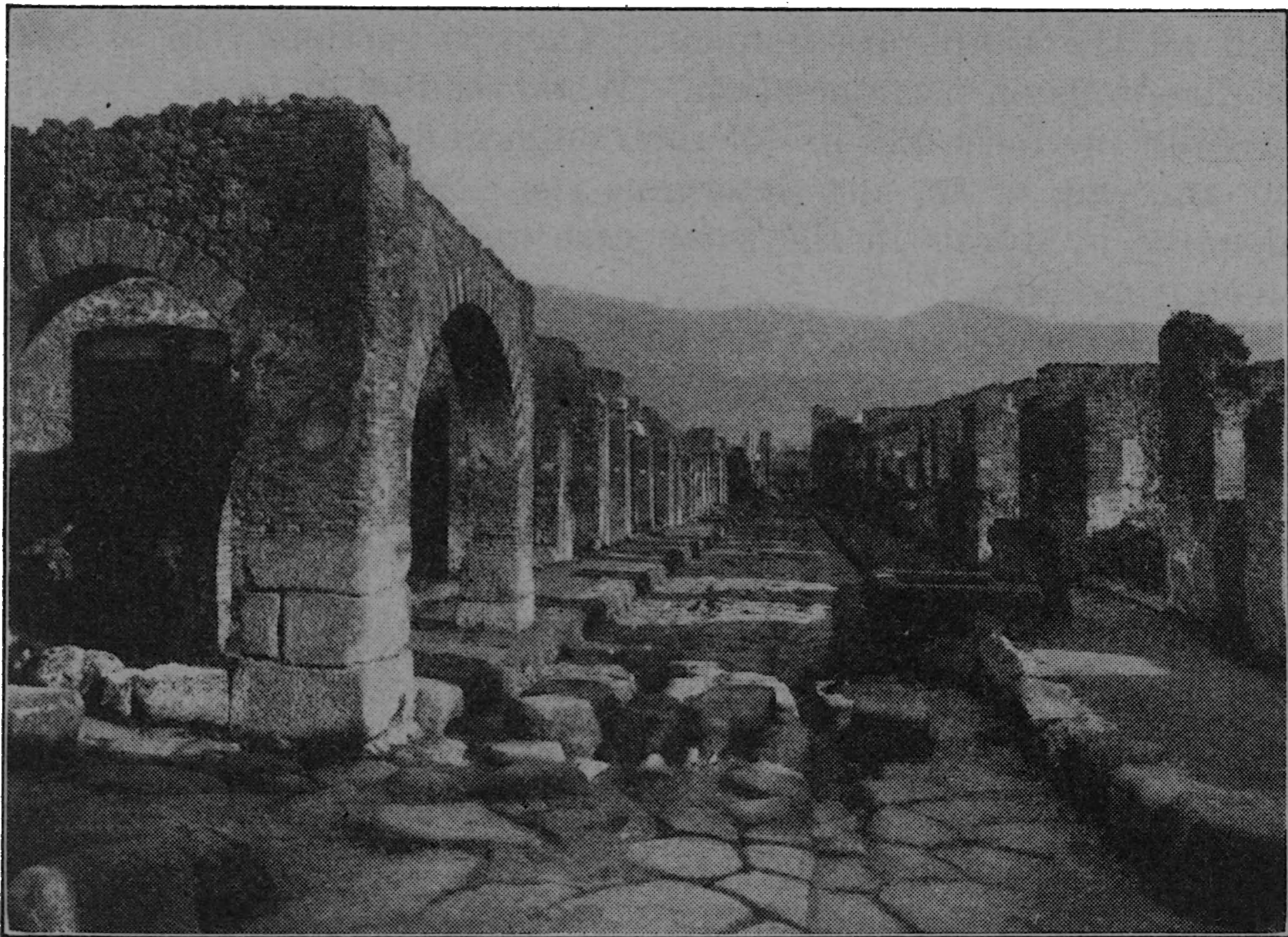
10. 1. Lū'na est pul'chra. 2. Lū'na plē'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat. 3. Pu-el'la par'va lū'nam pul'chram vi'det. 4. Lū'na plē'na est in cae'lō. 5. Stel'lae clā'rae quo'que sunt in cae'lō. 6. A-gri'co-la lū'nam plē'nam vi'det. 7. Nau'tae lū'nam plē'nam et stel'lās clā'rās vi'dent. 8. Stel'lae nau'tīs (to sailors) vi'am mōn'strant. 9. Pu-el'lae par'vae stel'lās mul'tās in cae'lō vi'dent. 10. Stel'lae pul'chrae pu-el'lās par'vās dē-lec'tant. 11. U'bi, pu-el'la par'va, est lū'na? 12. U'bi, pu-el'lae par'vae, sunt stel'lae clā'rae? 13. Nōn'ne lū'na, a-gri'co-la, ter'ram il-lūs'trat? 14. Nōn'ne stel'lae, nau'tae, vi'am mōn'strant? 15. Lū'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat et stel'lae nau'tīs vi'am mōn'strant. 16. Nau'tae mul'tās stel'lās sci'unt. 17. Castor et Pollūx sunt duae stellae. 18. Hac stel'lae nau'tīs vi'am mōn'strant. 19. Lūx stel-lā'rum (of the stars) in ter'ram ve'nit. 20. Lūx lū'nae (of the moon) a-gri'co-lae (to the farmer) vi'am mōn'strat.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the nouns and adjectives in this exercise which are in the nominative singular, the nominative plural, the accusa-

tive singular, the accusative plural, the vocative singular, and the vocative plural.

b. What is the ending of nouns and adjectives in the nominative singular? in the accusative singular? in the vocative singular? in the nominative plural? in the accusative plural? in the vocative plural?



© Publishers' Photo Service, N. Y.

VIA ANGUSTA URBIS POMPĒIŌRUM

SYNTAX

11. One of the most important things to be considered in the study of the Latin language is the use or construction of words in sentences. The discussion of this subject belongs to the division of grammar which is called *syntax*. The rules of syntax have been derived from the study of Roman literature and are convenient statements of the ways in which words were used by Roman writers. In many respects the syntax of the English language is similar to Latin syntax; and this is one of the reasons why the study of Latin helps so much in the understanding of English.

For convenience the rules of syntax are numbered consecutively by numbers in parentheses. They are arranged by titles in the same order in section 571, page 362.

The Subject of a Finite Verb

12. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. (1)

Rōma est urbs antīqua, Rome is an ancient city.

The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb

13. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. (2)

Lūna terram illūstrat, the moon lights up the earth.

The Person Addressed

14. The name of the person (or thing) addressed is in the vocative case. (3)

Nōnne stellae, nauta, viam mōnstrant? Do not the stars show the way, O sailor?

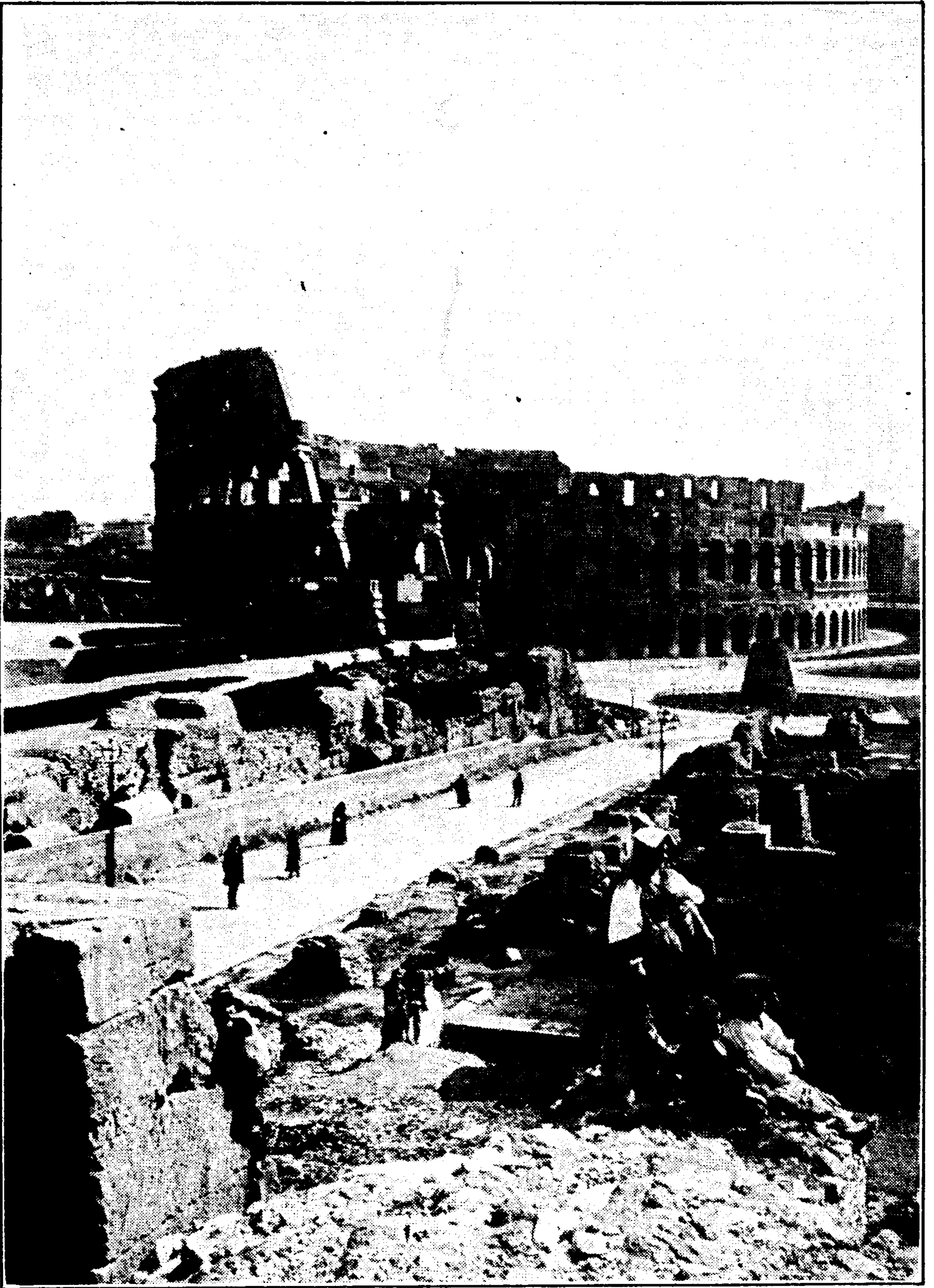
COMPOSITION

15. Write the sentences in Latin and repeat them orally, using words found in the Latin reading exercise in section 10.

Great care should be taken to use the proper case forms, and the adjective should always be in the same case and number as the noun which it modifies.

Mark the quantity of the long vowels.

1. The moon is full and the stars are bright. 2. The full moon and the bright stars are in the sky. 3. The farmer sees the full moon and the bright stars. 4. The moon lights up the earth. 5. The stars show the way. 6. The beautiful stars please the little girls. 7. The full moon pleases the sailors. 8. The little girls see the sailors in the streets (in viis). 9. Little girl, where are the sailors? 10. Do not (nōnne) the bright stars please the sailors, little girls?



AMPHITHEĀTRUM QUOD COLOSSĒUM APPELLĀTUR



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

The preposition **ā** is used before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** is used before vowels or consonants.

The ablative case may also be used without a preposition in Latin; it is then generally translated *with, by, etc.*

Urbs statuīs ōrnātur, the city is adorned with statues; terra lūnā et stellīs illūstrātur, the earth is lighted up by the moon and stars.

In the genitive, dative, and ablative cases, singular and plural, the endings of nouns and adjectives of the first declension are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Genitive, -ae</i>	<i>Genitive, -ārum</i>
<i>Dative, -ae</i>	<i>Dative, -īs</i>
<i>Ablative, -ā (long a)</i>	<i>Ablative, -īs</i>

Dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, have -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.

The genitive and dative singular are alike and have the same form as the nominative plural. The dative and ablative plural also are alike. Whenever two or more cases have the same form, the case of the noun in any given sentence is determined by its use.

17. Read the following sentences aloud, with frequent repetition. Observe the form of each noun and adjective and point out those which are in the genitive, the dative, or the ablative case.

Translate into English, and from the dictation of the English translation or from the written translation write and recite the sentences in Latin.

The article and the possessives, *his, her, their, and your,* may be supplied where the sense requires them.

READING EXERCISE

18. 1. In *Ī-ta'li-ā* sunt *a-gri'co-lae* et *nau'tae*. 2. *A-gri'co-la* *ter-ram* *a'rat*; *nau'tae* *a'rant* *a'quam*. 3. *Ter'ra*

a-gri'co-lae pe-cū'ni-am dat. 4. A'qua nau'tis dī-vi'ti-ās dat. 5. Ter'ra a-gri'co-lae grā'ta est. 6. A'qua nau'tis est grā'ta. 7. Fī'li-a a-gri'co-lae sil'vam a'mat. 8. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum lū'nam et stel'lās a'mant. 9. Sil'va fī'li-ae a-gri'co-lae grā'ta est. 10. Stel'lae fī-li-ā'bus nau-tā'rum sunt grā'tae. 11. Lū'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat. 12. Stel'lae nau'tis vi'am mōn'strant. 13. Fī'li-a a-gri'co-lae mēn'sam ro'sis ōr'nat. 14. Ro'sae sunt a-gri'co-lae et fī'li-ae grā'tae. 15. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum nā'vem co-rō'nīs ōr'nant. 16. Co-rō'nae nau'tis et fī-li-ā'bus grā'tae sunt.

17. Di-ā'na est de'a sil-vā'rum. 18. Lū'na est rē-gī'na stel-lā'rum. 19. In ur'be est sta'tu-a Di-ā'nae. 20. Pu-el'lae sta'tu-am Di-ā'nae co-rō'nīs ōr'nant. 21. Sta'tu-a Di-ā'nae ā pu-el'lis a-mā'tur. 22. Sunt'ne co-rō'nae, pu-el'lae, de'ae grā'tae? 23. Ho'mi-nēs mul'tās sta'tu-ās de-ā'rum in ur'be vi'dent. 24. Sunt'ne sta'tu-ae et co-rō'nae, Di-ā'na, grā'tae de-ā'bus? 25. Ab a-gri'co-lā sil'va a-mā'ur; ā nau'tis stel'lae a-man'tur. 26. A-gri'co-la in sil'vā cum fī-li-ā'bus est. 27. Pu-el'lae in sil'vā cum a-gri'co-lā sunt. 28. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum lū'nam cum stel'lis in cae'lō vi'dent.

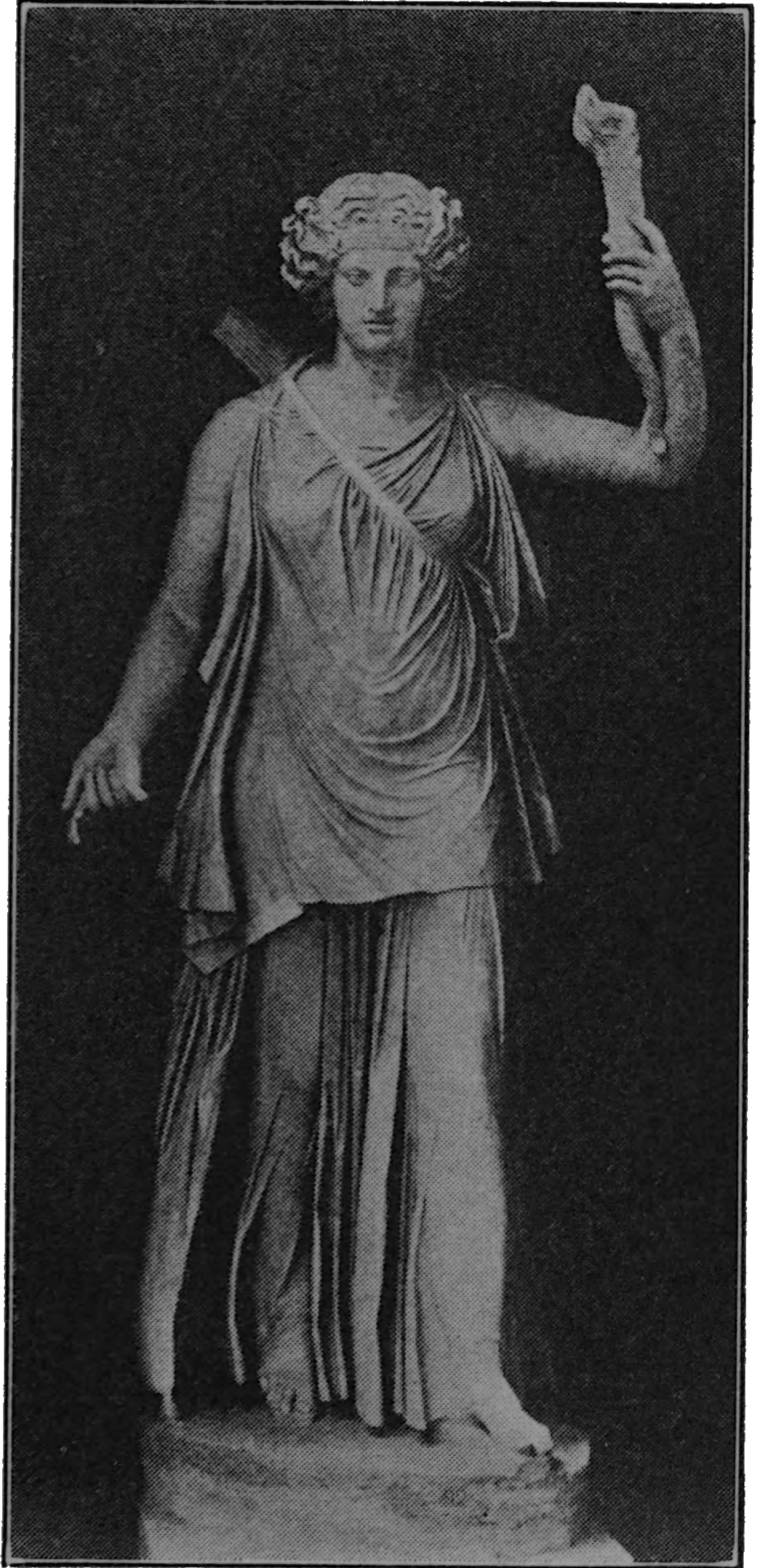


Photo Brown Brothers, N. Y.

STATUA DEAE DIANAЕ

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the nouns and adjectives used above which are in the genitive singular, the genitive plural, the dative singular, the dative plural, the ablative singular, and the ablative plural.

b. What is the ending of these nouns and adjectives in the genitive singular? in the dative singular? in the ablative singular? in the genitive plural? in the dative plural? in the ablative plural?

c. What case denotes possession? What case is used as the indirect object? What case is used with the prepositions *ā*, *ab*, *cum*, *in*? What case is translated by the preposition *with*?

d. Point out the nouns and adjectives in section 18 which are in the nominative, the accusative and the vocative cases, singular and plural.

e. Write out and repeat orally all of the cases of *nauta* and *stella*, singular and plural. Arrange in the following order: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

SYNTAX

The Genitive Qualifying Another Noun

19. A noun used to qualify another noun, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive case. (4)

Diāna est dea silvārum, Diana is the goddess of the woods.

a. This qualifying genitive frequently denotes possession. *Pecūnia agricolae, the farmer's wealth.*

The Indirect Object

20. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. (5)

Stellae nautis viam mōnstrant, the stars show (to) sailors the way.

The Ablative of Means or Instrument

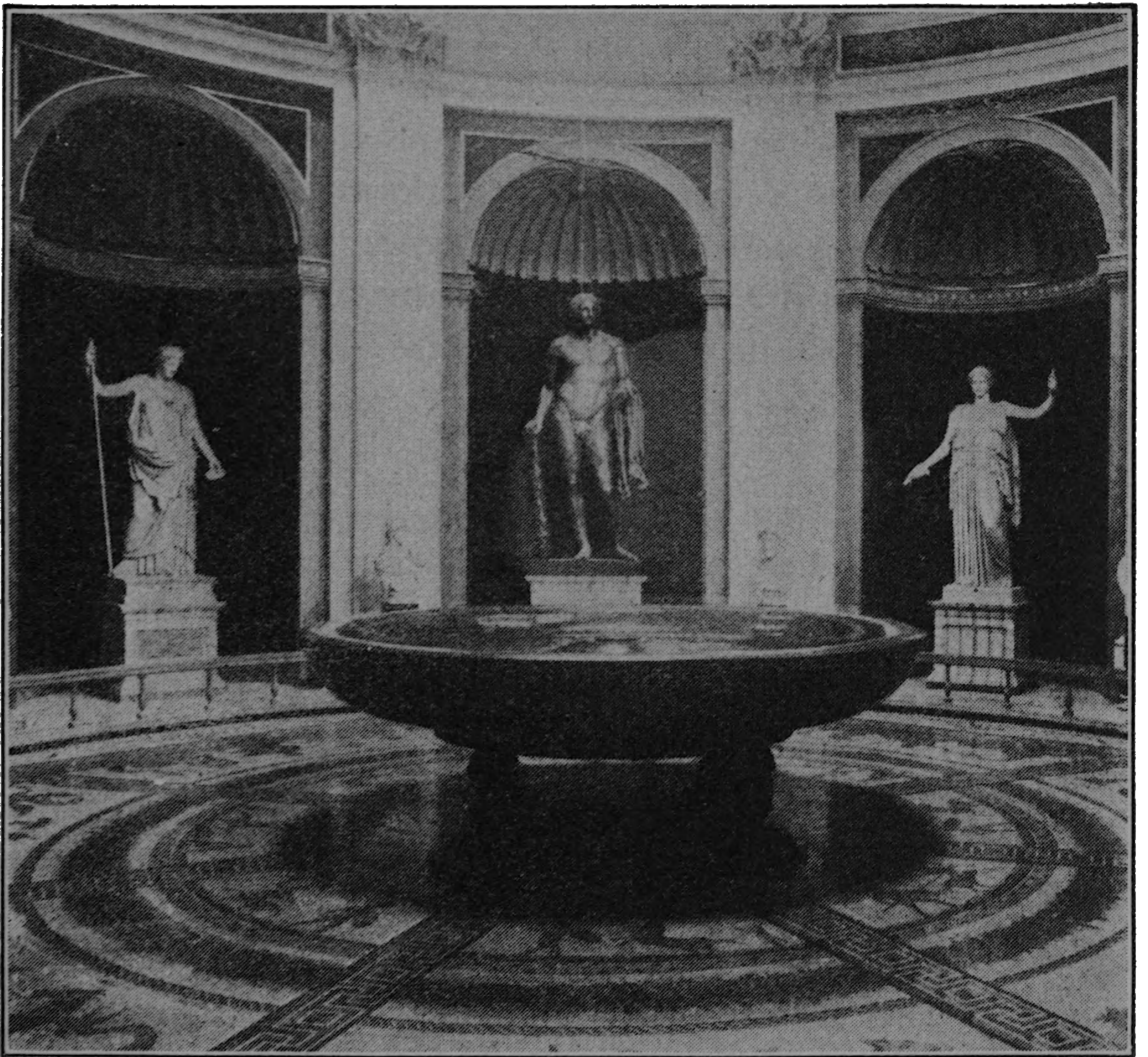
21. The means or the instrument by which or with which anything is done is denoted by the ablative case. (6)

Puellae statuam corōnis ōnant, the girls adorn the statue with garlands.

COMPOSITION

22. Write the following sentences in Latin, observing the directions given in sections 7 and 15.

1. Diana is the goddess of the forest. 2. The forest is pleasing to Diana. 3. The streets of Rome are adorned with statues. 4. Rome is adorned with the statues of goddesses. 5. Are statues pleasing to goddesses? 6. The statue of Diana is adorned with garlands. 7. The statue is adorned by the little girls. 8. Are the garlands of the little girls pleasing, Diana? 9. Diana loves the forests. 10. Do goddesses love (amantne) little girls?



STATUAE IN MUSĒO VATICĀNŌ

CHAPTER IV

THE FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

23. The change in the form of a noun, pronoun, or adjective to denote case and number is called *declension*. Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are regularly declined in the six cases which have been discussed in the two preceding chapters.

Nouns are declined in five different ways, which are known as *the First, the Second, the Third, the Fourth, and the Fifth Declensions*. The nouns whose endings have thus far been considered belong to *the First Declension*.

24. In addition to the cases previously described, a few nouns have a form called the locative case, which is used to denote place or location. In the first declension the locative case has in the singular the same form as the genitive, and in the plural the same form as the ablative.

Rōmae, in Rome; militiae, in war, in military service; Athēnis, in Athens.

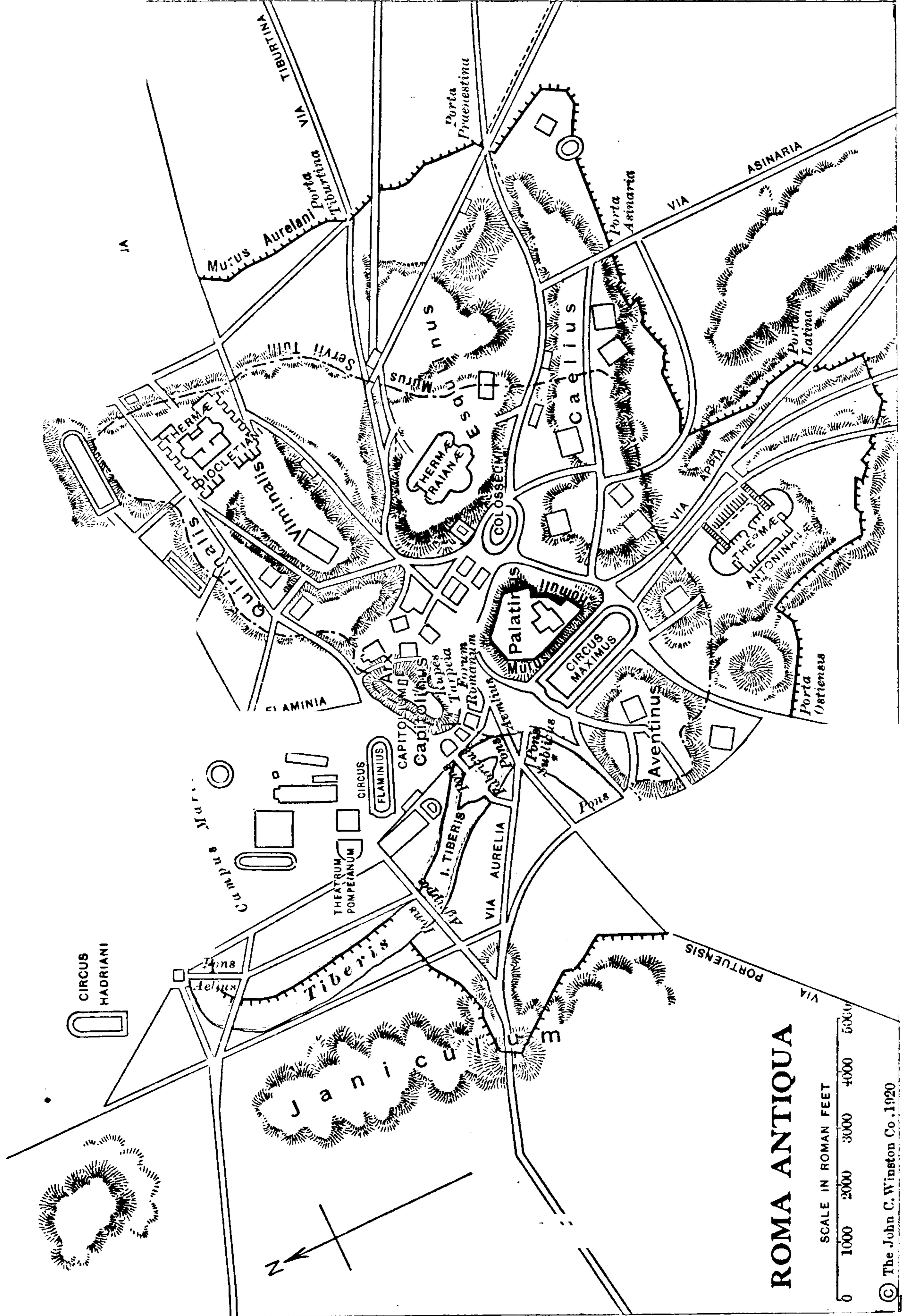
25. In the following exercise observe closely the forms of all the nouns and adjectives which belong to the first declension, and determine the case and number as indicated by the endings and by the use of the nouns in the sentences.

Translate the sentences into English and apply the rules of syntax.

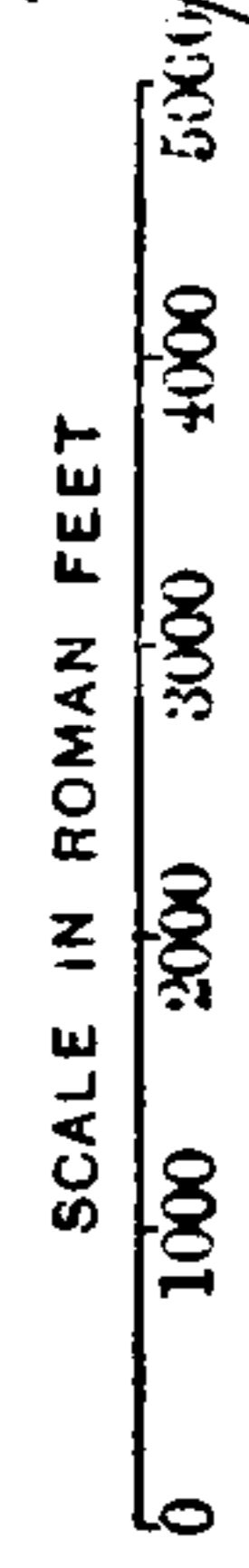
In the general Latin-English vocabulary (section 574, page 388) the nominative case of each noun is followed by the ending of the genitive case. The ending **-ae** (plural, **-ārum**) shows that the noun belongs to the first declension.

READING EXERCISE

26. 1. Rōma antīqua erat in Ītaliā. 2. Trōia quoque erat urbs antīqua. 3. Trōia antīqua erat in Āsiā. 4. Trōia



ROMA ANTIQUA



© The John C. Winston Co., 1920



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

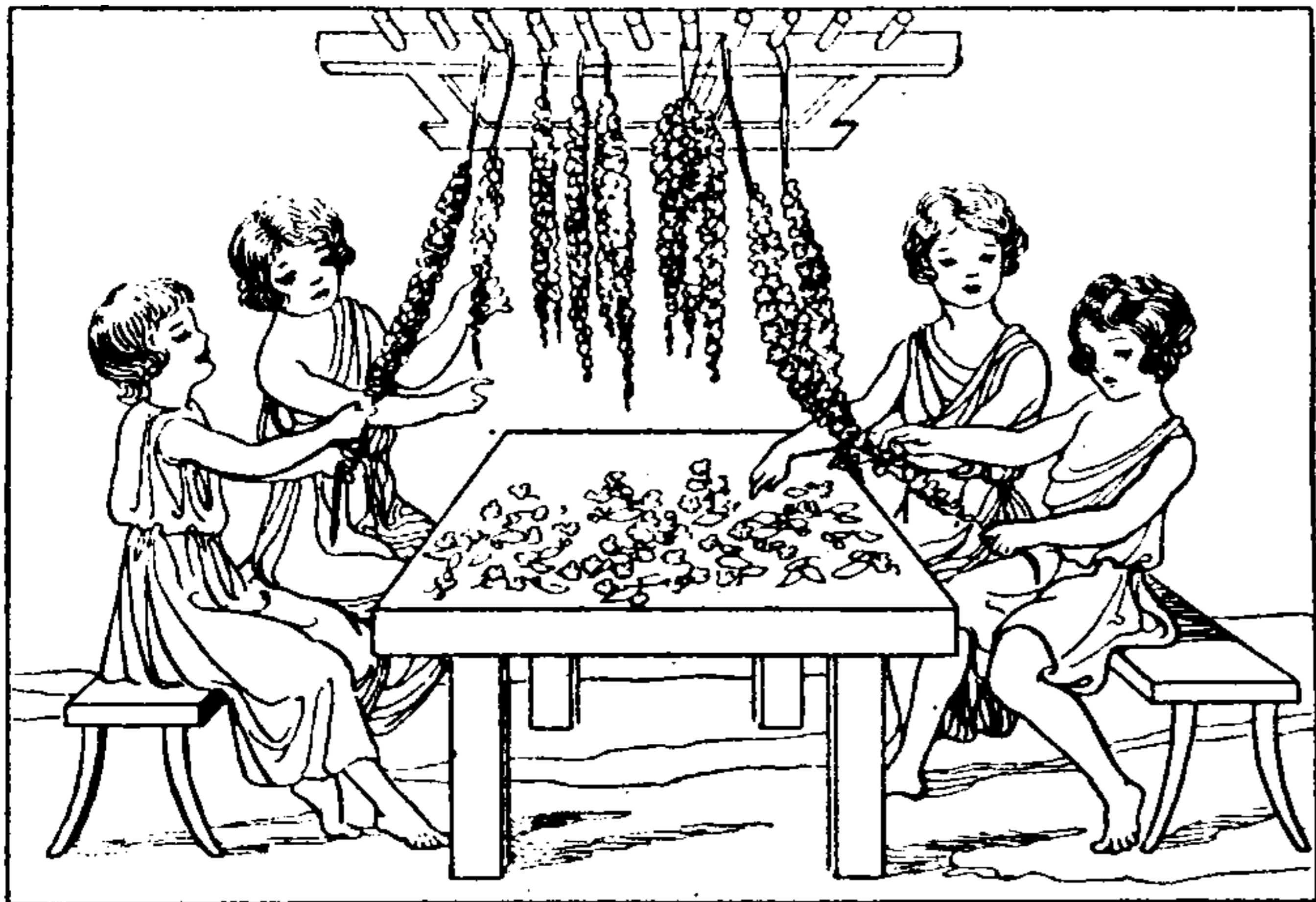
Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



b. Write out in full and repeat orally the declension in the singular of *aqua*, *sapientia*, *Rōma antīqua*; and in the singular and plural of *ōra*, *incola*, and *īnsula magna*. Give the names of the cases as well as the forms of the Latin words, and arrange the cases in the following order: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *Ablative*.



PUELLAE CORŌNĀS FACIENTĒS

c. Write out the declension of *Aenēās* and *dea*. See section 548, page 338.

d. Give the rule of syntax which applies to each of the following: *Rōma* (1), *incolae* (12); *pecūniam* (8), *deās* (12); *agricola* (10), *nautae* (11); *Āsiae* (21), *īnsulārum* (7); *Aenēae* (22), *stellis* (23); *agricultūrā* (9), *corōnis* (25).

GENDER

27. Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter. The gender of Latin nouns is best learned by observation since the grammatical gender does not always correspond with the natural gender. In the general vocabulary the gender of each noun is indicated by the letter *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* Most nouns of the first declension are feminine; as, *stella*, *aqua*, *sapientia*: but nouns which denote males are masculine; as, *nauta*, *agricola*, *incola*.

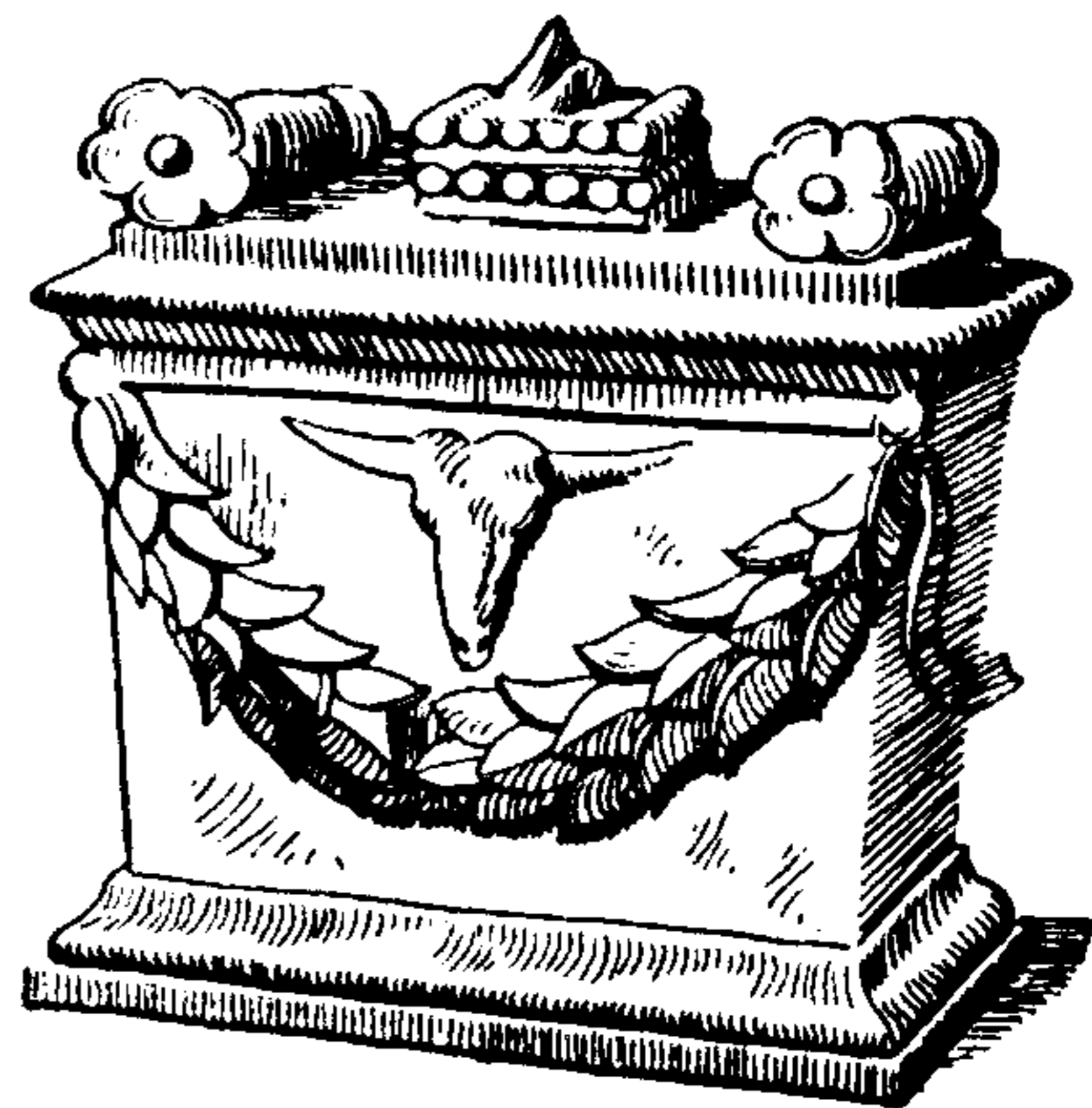
THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS

28. In a Latin sentence the arrangement of the words differs somewhat from the English order. The subject is usually placed at the beginning and the verb at the end of the sentence. The indirect object generally precedes the direct object and the adjective follows the noun which it modifies. Considerable variety in the arrangement of words is possible in Latin because the use of words is denoted by their form as well as by their position in the sentence.

Notice the variation in the following:

Stellae clārae nautis viam mōnstrant.
 Nautis stellae clārae viam mōnstrant.
 Viam stellae clārae mōnstrant nautis.
 Mōnstrant nautis viam clārae stellae.

Each word has the same construction or use in all of these sentences; *e. g.*, **stellae** is the subject, **viam** is the direct object, and **nautis** is the indirect object. In the first sentence the words are arranged in the normal or usual order. The effect of placing any word except the subject first is to give that word more emphasis than it would have in its usual position. Thus the third sentence means, *The bright stars show the way to sailors.* The adjective is generally emphatic when it precedes its noun. Thus the fourth sentence above may be translated, *The stars when bright show sailors the way.*



ĀRA RŌMĀNA

The Roman writers display great skill in arranging the words so as to produce artistic effects, and the beauty of Latin style is due in part to the pleasing variety in the arrangement of the words.

The best way to overcome the apparent difficulty due to the unfamiliar arrangement of words is continued practice in reading the Latin aloud or silently with a definite effort to get the meaning of the Latin words as they are read in the Latin order, without first making the transposition which is necessary in translating into English. Practice of this kind, continued until the Latin order seems familiar, will develop an appreciation of the Latin arrangement which will be an invaluable aid in all subsequent study of the Latin language and literature.

PARADIGMS

29. The tables of declension and conjugation are called paradigms. These should be learned as they are introduced and this work should be done with absolute thoroughness and accuracy. The student should commit the paradigms to memory. He should recite them orally and write them out repeatedly until the form of each inflected word and its meaning can be recognized without the slightest hesitation. Whatever time and effort may be necessary should be given in order that the forms may be completely mastered. The faithful observance of these directions will result in much economy of time and will cause increasing satisfaction as the work proceeds.

TYPICAL NOUN

30. Nominative, *stella*; genitive, *stellae*; feminine gender; *star*.

Case	Declension	Case-ending	Meaning
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>stella</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>a (the) star</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>stellae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>of a (the) star</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>stellae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>to, for a (the) star</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>stellam</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>a (the) star</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>stella</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>O star</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>stellā</i>	<i>-ā</i>	<i>with, from, by a (the) star</i>
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>stellae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>(the) stars</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>stellārum</i>	<i>-ārum</i>	<i>of (the) stars</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>stellis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>to, for (the) stars</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>stellās</i>	<i>-ās</i>	<i>(the) stars</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>stellae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>O stars</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>stellis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>with, from, by (the) stars</i>

a. Base and stem. The base of a noun is that part which is the same in all the cases; or, it is that part of the noun to which the case-endings are joined. Thus the base of *stella* is *stell-*. In the first declension the case-endings include, sometimes in a modified form, the characteristic vowel *ā*, which added to the base gives a form which is called the stem. Thus the stem of *stella* is *stellā-*. The first declension is sometimes called the *ā*-declension.

b. Special forms. *Dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, in the dative and ablative plural have the forms deābus and filiābus.*

c. Locative case. In the singular the locative case has the same form as the genitive; in the plural it has the same form as the ablative. *Rōmae, in Rome; mīlitiae, in war; Athēnis, in Athens.*

d. The ending of the genitive singular is given in the vocabulary to indicate the declension to which a noun belongs. If the noun has no singular form, the ending of the genitive plural is given. Thus *pecūnia, -ae, and dīvitiae, -ārum, belong to the first declension and are declined respectively like stella, -ae, and stellae, -ārum.*

e. Learn the declension of *stella*, giving careful attention to the case-endings and to the quantity of the vowels.

f. Make a similar table for the noun *nauta*.

g. Decline *puella, corōna, clāra*; decline together *puella parva*. Practice the declension of nouns of the first declension until the declension of any noun or adjective can be given orally or in writing without hesitation and with absolute accuracy.

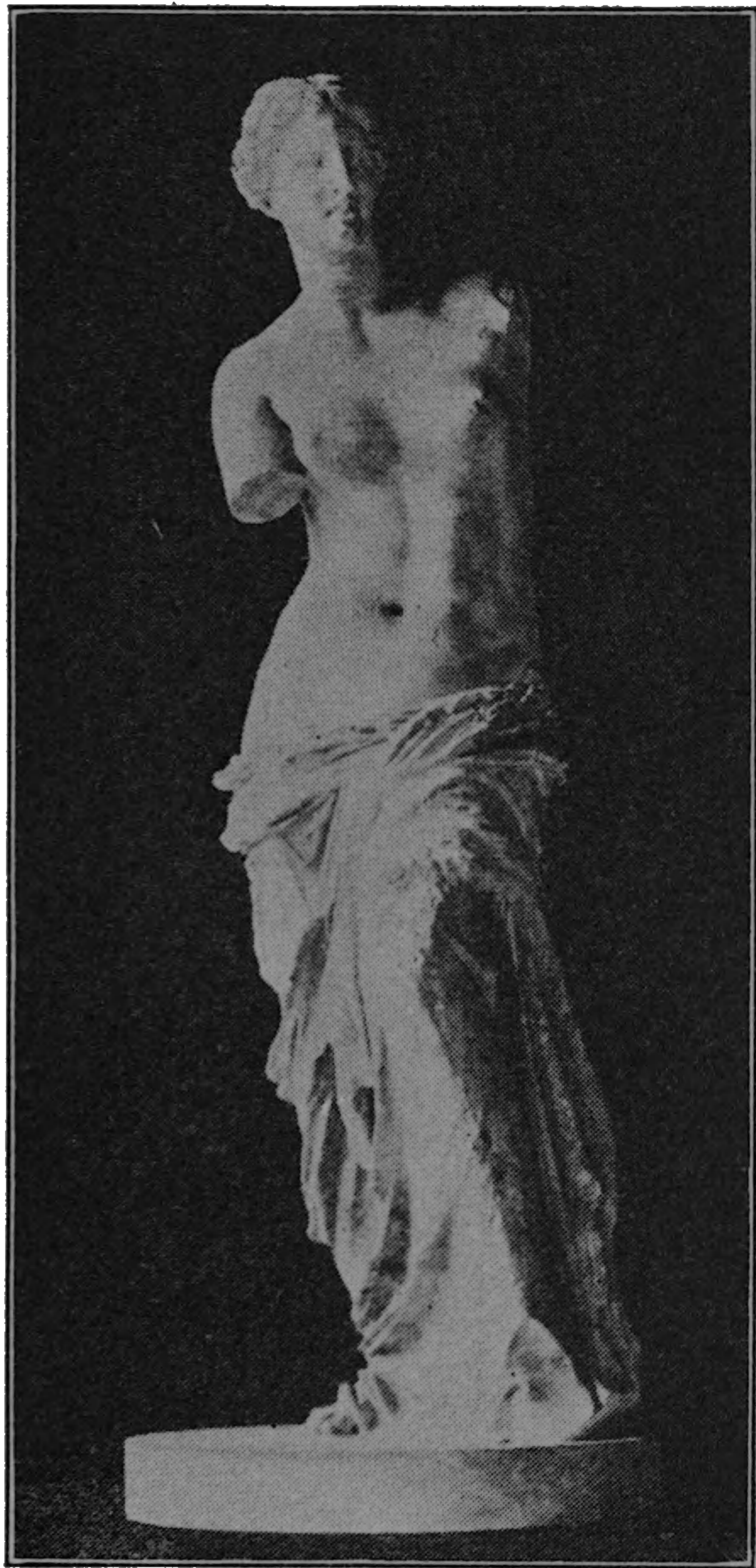


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

STATUA DEAE VENERIS

SYNTAX

Predicate Noun or Adjective

31. A predicate noun or adjective belonging to the subject agrees with the subject in case. (7)

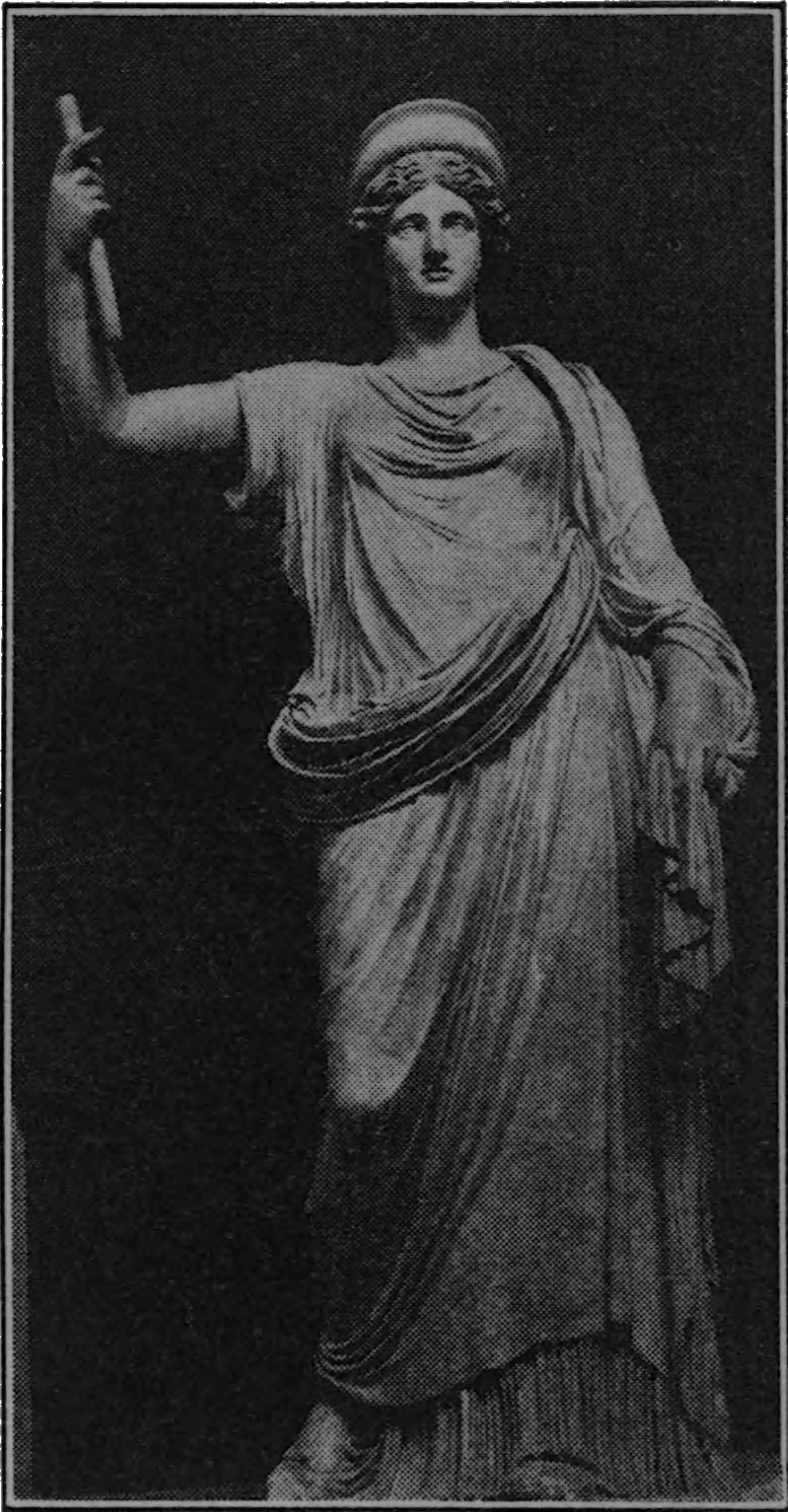
Incolae insulrāum sunt nautae et agricolae, the inhabitants of the islands are sailors and farmers; ārae et corōnae deābus sunt grātae, altars and garlands are acceptable to the goddesses.

The Locative Case

32. The locative case of a few nouns is used to denote the place where. (8)

Rōmae et Athēnis multae deārum statuae sunt, in Rome and in Athens there are many statues of goddesses.

COMPOSITION



IŪNŌ RĒGĪNA DEĀRUM

33. 1. Ancient Troy was in Asia. 2. Rome was far away from Troy. 3. Not far from the shores of Asia are many islands. 4. The inhabitants of the islands are sailors. 5. Sailors obtain (petunt) wealth from the water. 6. Whence, O farmer, do your riches come (veniunt)? 7. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom. 8. Discord came (vēnit) between two (duās) goddesses. 9. On account of the quarrel of the goddesses Troy was destroyed. 10. Aeneas comes from the shores of Troy to Italy. 11. A goddess shows (to) Aeneas the way. 12. Stars show sailors the way. 13. The stars are

pleasing to the sailors' daughters. 14. In Rome and in Athens there are many statues of goddesses. 15. The inhabitants (of) Greece love the ancient statues. 16. The city of Rome is adorned with many statues. 17. Do you like (amāsne) the beautiful statues?

CHAPTER V .

THE SECOND DECLENSION

Masculine Nouns

THE NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE CASES

34. In the second declension the endings of masculine nouns in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative,</i> -us, -er, -ir	<i>Nominative,</i> -ī
<i>Accusative,</i> -um	<i>Accusative,</i> -ōs
<i>Vocative,</i> -e, -er, -ir	<i>Vocative,</i> -ī

Nouns whose nominative ends in **-us** have the ending **-e** in the vocative singular, but **filius**, *son*, has the vocative **fili**, *O son, my son*; and proper nouns ending in **-ius** in the nominative singular have the ending **-ī** in the vocative. **Cassius** (nom.) *Cassius*; **Cassī** (voc.) *O Cassius*. In the singular of all other nouns, and always in the plural, the vocative case has the same ending as the nominative. On account of this similarity the vocative case may be omitted from the paradigms.

Many adjectives have the endings of the first and the second declensions. An adjective used with a feminine noun has the forms of the first declension; an adjective used with a masculine noun has the forms of the second declension. Adjectives of the third declension will be discussed in connection with nouns of the third declension.

35. Read aloud the sentences in the following exercise and translate into English. From the English translation, either written or dictated, write and recite the sentences in Latin.

Study the nouns and adjectives and determine the case of each noun from its use in the sentence. Observe the endings of the nouns in the nominative, the accusative, and the vocative cases.

In the vocabulary the nominative singular of each noun is given, or the nominative plural if the singular is lacking, and the ending of the genitive. If the ending of the genitive singular is *-ae*, the noun belongs to the first declension; if the genitive ending is *ī*, the noun belongs to the second declension.



HOMINĒS IN VIĀ APPIĀ

READING EXERCISE

36. 1. In urbe Rōmā est dominus. 2. Dominus est bonus. 3. Dominus bonus malum servum habet. 4. Servus malus dominum bonum habet. 5. Dominus est agricola. 6. Dominus et nauta sunt amīcī. 7. Agricola et nauta sunt virī validī. 8. Agricola validus validum filium habet. 9. Filius agricolae et malus servus sunt amīcī. 10. Filius agricolae est puer malus. 11. Puer malus malōs amīcōs habet. 12. Agrī agricolae nōn longē ab urbe absunt.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

38. Read aloud the sentences in section 39 and translate into English. From the written English translation or from dictation write and recite the sentences in Latin, testing the accuracy of the forms by the Latin original. Imitate the arrange-

ment of the words in the Latin sentences.

Review the first declension of nouns and compare the endings of the first declension with those of the second in each case. Review also the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases of the second declension, sections 34, 35, and 36.

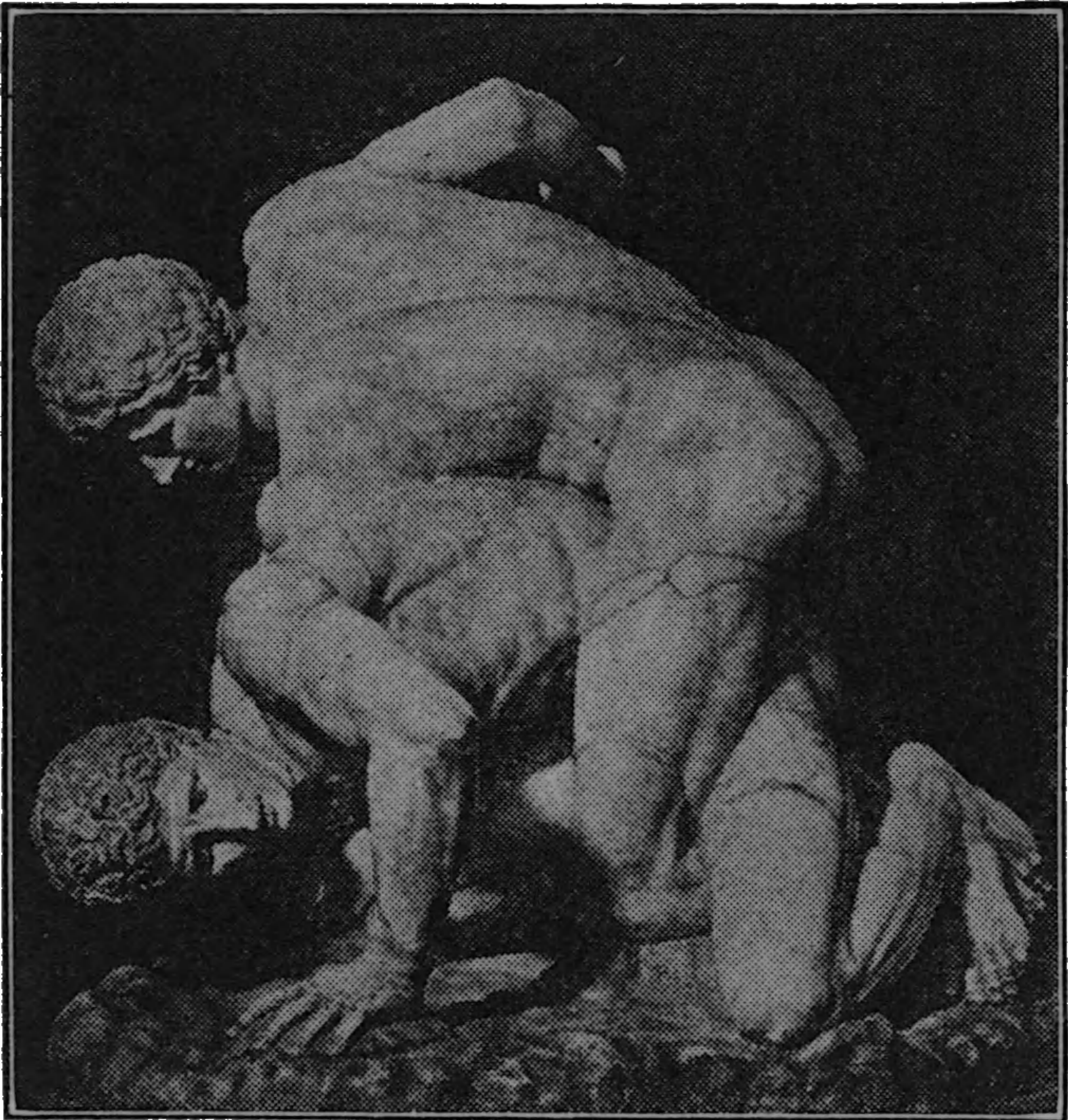


Photo Brown Brothers, N. Y.

LUDUS PUERORUM

Mārci in hortō cum amicis lūdunt. 4. Liberī Mārci ab amicis amantur. 5. Lūdī liberōrum Mārcō sunt grātī. 6. Liberis quoque lūdī sunt grātī. 7. Lūdī ā liberis amantur. 8. Filii dominī nōn semper lūdunt; interdum in hortō labōrant. 9. Servi in agris dominī labōrant. 10. Dominus magnum servōrum numerum habet. 11. Servi nōn semper labōrant; interdum cum liberis dominī lūdunt. 12. Lūdī servis grātī sunt. 13. Boni servi ā dominō laudantur. 14. Dominus bonō servō praemium dat. 15. Magister discipulis librōs dat. 16. Ā multis pueris boni libri amantur. 17. Pueri et

READING EXERCISE

39. 1. Mārcus est agricola Rōmānus. 2. Mārcus hortum pulchrum habet. 3. Liberī



PUER ET LIBER

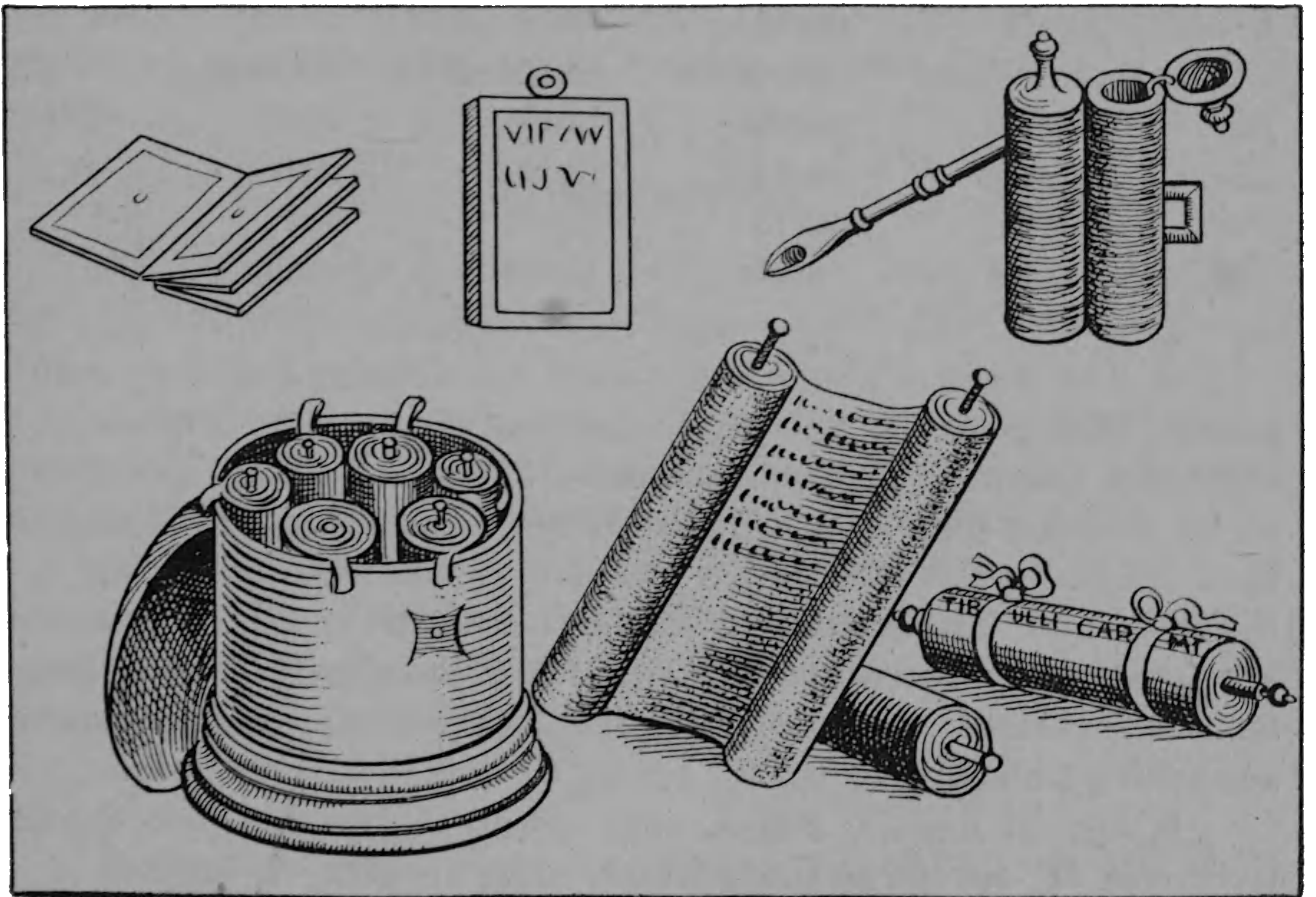
puellae librōs bonōs amant. 18. Magister magnum librōrum bonōrum numerum habet. 19. Liber Latīnus ā magistrō discipulō bonō datur (is given). 20. Hic liber est bonus. 21. Latīna lingua est in hōc librō. 22. In librīs poetārum bonī virī laudantur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the nouns and adjectives of the second declension in these sentences which are in the genitive singular, the genitive plural, the dative singular, the dative plural, the ablative singular, and the ablative plural.

b. Tell the case and number of all the nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions which are found in this exercise.

c. Write and repeat orally all of the cases of **servus**, **puer**, and **liber** (book). Find the genitive singular in the vocabulary. Arrange the cases in the same order as in section 30.



HIS RĒBUS RŌMĀNI SCRĪBĒBANT

GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION

40. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir** are masculine.

TYPICAL NOUNS

41. Nom., **amicus**; gen., **amicī**; m.; *friend*.
 Nom., **puer**; gen., **puerī**; m.; *boy*.
 Nom., **liber**; gen., **librī**; m.; *book*.
 Nom., **vir**; gen., **virī**; m.; *man*.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	amicus	puer	liber	vir	-us, —
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō	puerō	librō	virō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum	puerum	librum	virum	-um
<i>Voc.</i>	amice	puer	liber	vir	-e, —
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō	puerō	librō	virō	-ō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	librōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	-īs

a. The stems of nouns of the second declension end in **o**; **amico-**, **puero-**, **libro-**, **viro-**. The final vowel, **o**, of the stem is modified by the letter following and in some cases it seems to have disappeared. In its modified form it is included in the case-ending. It is supposed that originally the nominative singular was formed by adding **-s** to the stem, and the accusative by adding **-m** to the stem; nom., **amicos**; acc., **amicom**. On account of the tendency to substitute easier sounds for those more difficult the nominative finally became **amicus**, and the accusative **amicum**.

b. Special forms. **Filius**, *son*, and proper nouns whose nominatives end in **-ius** form the genitive singular with **-ī** instead of **-iū**; **fili** for **filiū**; **Cassī** for **Cassī**. These nouns also have the ending **-ī** instead of **-ie** in the vocative singular: **fili** for **filie**; **Horātī** for **Horātie**.

The accent is retained on the same syllable as in the nominative; **Horā'tius** (nom.), **Horā'tī** (gen.). Such changes are called phonetic changes. They are due to the tendency to substitute easier sounds for those which are more difficult to pronounce.

c. For the declension of **deus**, *god*, see section 548.

d. Locative. The noun **domus**, *home*, whose declension is irregular (section 548), has the locative form **domī**, *at home*.

e. In nouns like **puer**, stem **puero-**, the nominative singular is formed by dropping the final *o* of the stem; but in nouns like **liber**, stem **libro-**, the vowel *e* is developed before *r* in the nominative singular. The vowel *e* is more easily pronounced than any other before *r*, and for this reason it is said to be the favorite vowel before the consonant *r*.

f. The genitive singular of all nouns of the second declension ends in **-ī**, and this ending is given in the vocabulary as a guide to the declension.

g. Learn the declension of **amicus**, **puer**, **liber**, and **vir**, giving careful attention to the case-endings and to the quantity of the vowels. What vowels in the case-endings are marked long? What cases have the same endings as the corresponding cases of the first declension?

h. Decline **dominus**, **hortus**, and **magnus** like **amicus**; **miser** (gen., **miserī**) like **puer**; **ager** (gen., **agrī**), **magister** (gen., **magistrī**), and **pulcher** (gen., **pulchrī**) like **liber**. Decline together **liber Latinus**, **vir bonus**, **servus miser**, **hortus pulcher**, **validus agricola**, and **lūdus grātus**.

COMPOSITION

42. Write the following sentences in Latin and recite them orally, using the words and constructions which have been introduced in the preceding exercises.

Consider the gender of nouns. All of the nouns of the first declension used thus far are feminine except **agricola**, **nauta**, and **poēta**. All nouns of the second declension used thus far are masculine.

Adjectives must be in the same case, number, and gender as the nouns which they modify. If an adjective is used with a masculine noun, it has the endings of the second declension; if it is used with a feminine noun, it has the endings of the first declension.

Review the declension of typical nouns of the first and the second declensions, sections 30 and 41.

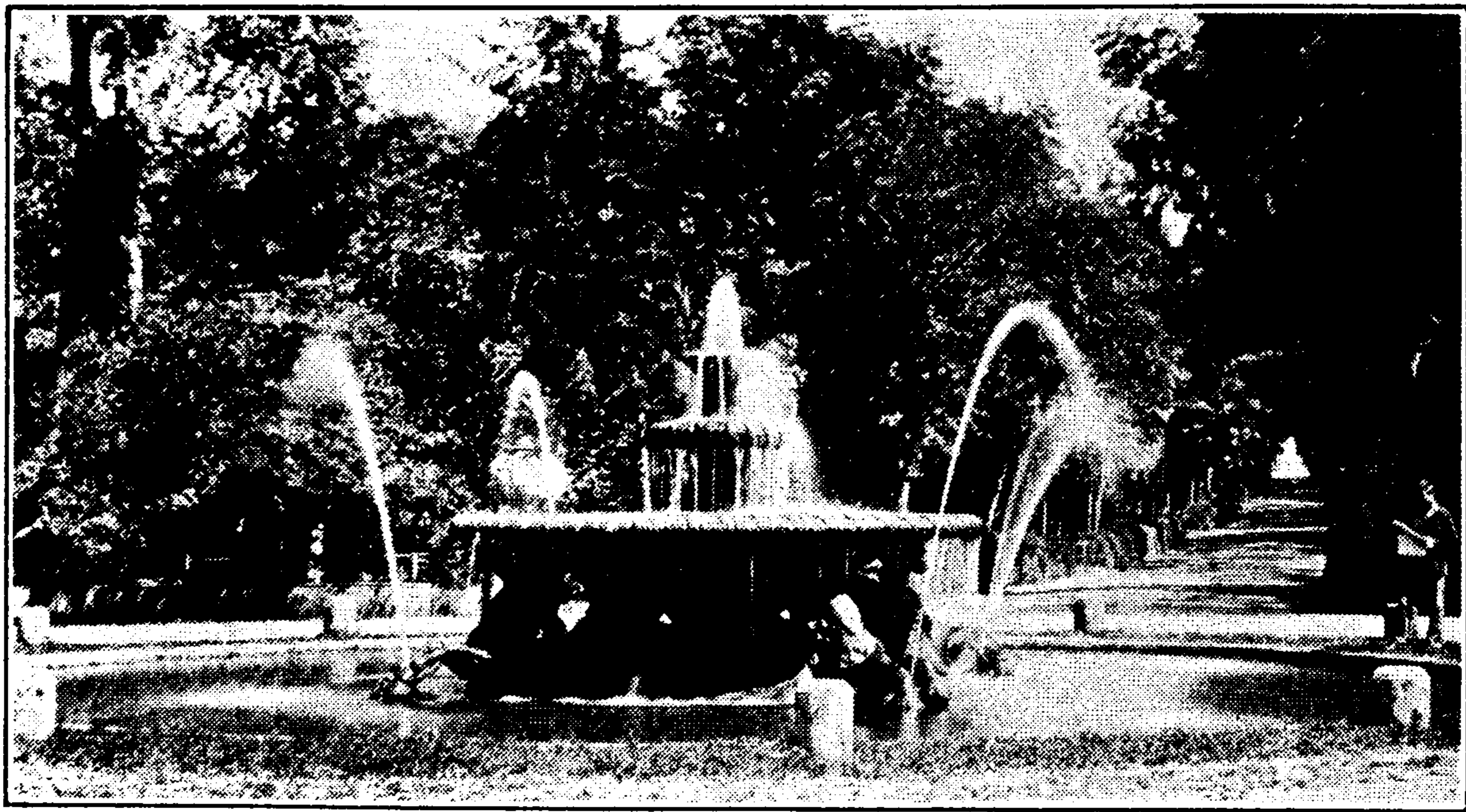
Review the rules of syntax, sections 12, 13, 14, 19, 20, 21, 31, and 32.

In writing mark the long vowels.

1. The farmer's son has a bad friend. 2. The boy's friend is a bad slave. 3. The boy and the slave are friends. 4. The boy and (his) friend are often in the streets. 5. Books are not pleasing to the farmer's bad son. 6. The bad boy does not please the farmer. 7. The master (dominus) does not praise the bad slave.

8. The strong sons of Marcus work in the fields. 9. The boys work in the fields with the slaves. 10. The boys play in the garden with (their) friends. 11. The master's children love sports. 12. The master is delighted with the sports of (his) children. 13. The master sees the slaves in the field. 14. The sports of the slaves are not pleasing to (their) master.

15. The master (magister) gives good books to (his) pupils. 16. Master, do the pupils like their books? 17. (My) friend, the books are pleasing to the pupils. 18. Children, where are the master's books? 19. The master has the books at home (domi), Cassius. 20. My son, the master's book is good. 21. The master loves the Latin language. 22. In (their) books the poets praise the city (urbem) Rome.



HORTUS RŌMĀNUS UT HODIĒ VIDĒTUR

CHAPTER VI

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

43. Neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have the same endings as masculine nouns except in the nominative and vocative singular, where the ending is **-um**; and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, where the ending is **-a**.

In all neuter nouns the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike; and in the plural these three cases end in **-a**.

44. Read the sentences aloud and translate into English. Then turn the sentences back into Latin, verifying the forms by comparison with the Latin text.

Remember that the adjective always has the same case and number as its noun.

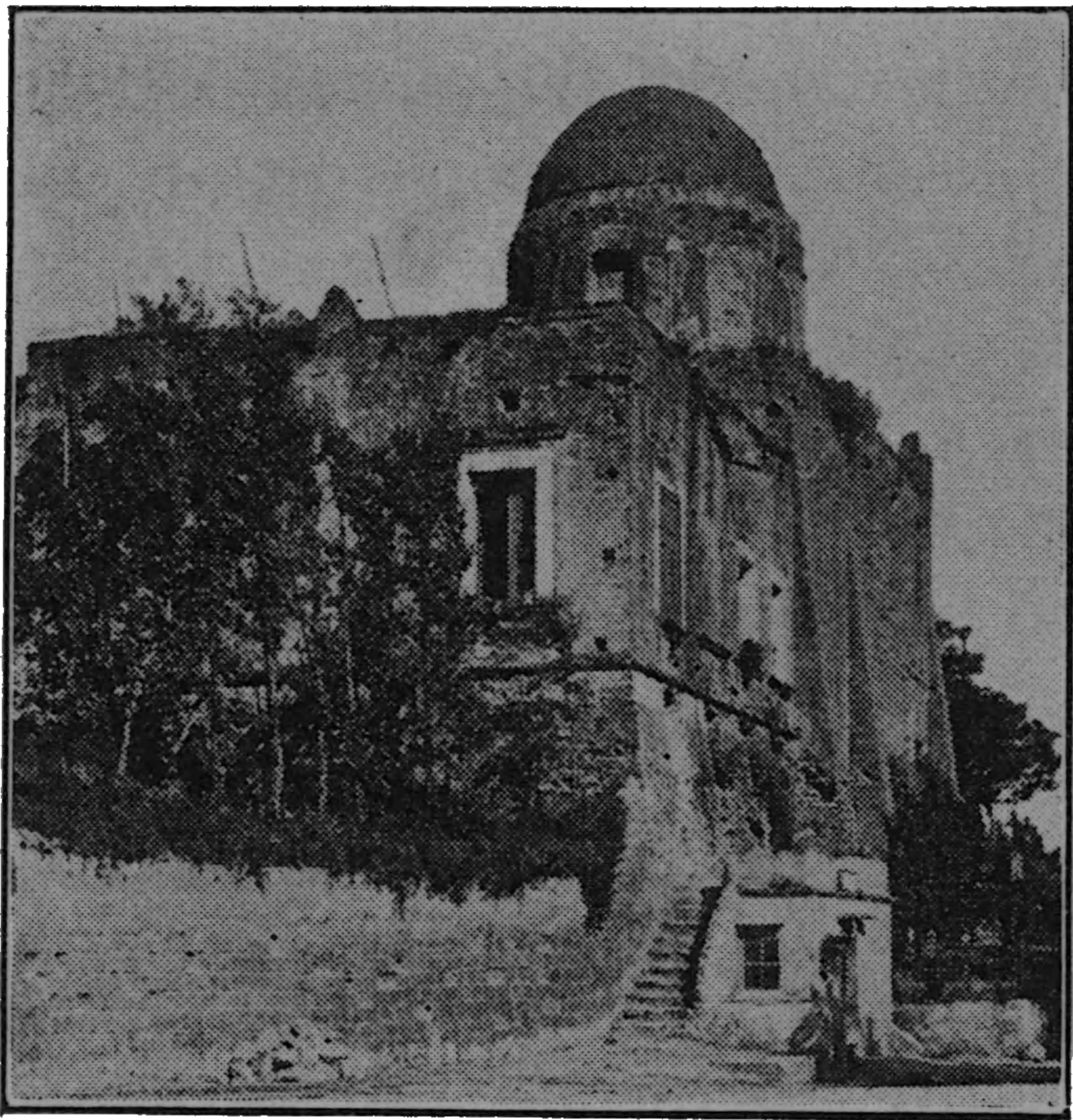
Review the first declension, section 30, and masculine nouns of the second declension, section 41. Review also all the rules of syntax which have been given.

READING EXERCISE

45. 1. Lūna et stellae sunt in caelō. 2. Caelum est clārum. 3. Nautae semper caelum vident. 4. Caelum est super; infrā est terra. 5. Aqua dē caelō in terram venit. 6. Frūmentum mātūrum est in agrīs. 7. Agricolaе frūmentum in oppida portant. 8. Cōpia frūmentī mox in oppidīs erit. 8. Aurum est in terrā. 9. Argentum quoque est in terrā. 10. Est-ne in oppidō argentī et aurī cōpia?

11. Pater filiō praemium dat. 12. Dominī servīs dōnant. 13. Ā magistrō praemium discipulō datur. 14. Dōna dominōrum servōs dēlectant. 15. Discipulus praemiō magis-

trī dēlectātur. 16. Librī Latīnī discipulōs dēlectant. 17. Libērī lūdīs, dōnīs servī dēlectantur. 18. Lūdī libērōs, dōna servōs dēlectant. 19. Pater Horātī villam in Āpūliā habēbat. 20. Horātius villam pulchram et agrōs pulchrōs amābat.



VILLA RŌMĀNA

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write and recite the declension of **caelum** in the singular, and of **oppidum** in the singular and plural.

GENDER

46. Nouns of the second declension whose nominative ends in **-um** are neuter. **Caelum**, **argentum**, **dōnum**.

TYPICAL NOUN

47. Nom., **dōnum**; gen., **dōnī**; neuter; *gift*.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	-um	<i>Nom.</i>	dōna	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	-ī	<i>Gen.</i>	dōnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	-ō	<i>Dat.</i>	dōnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	-um	<i>Acc.</i>	dōna	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	dōnum	-um	<i>Voc.</i>	dōna	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	-ō	<i>Abl.</i>	dōnīs	-īs

a. The stem ends in **ō**; **dōno-**.

b. Nouns whose nominative ends in **-ium** have the genitive ending in **-ī** instead of **-iū**, with the accent on the syllable which is accented in the nominative case. **Inge'nium**, nom., **inge'nī** (for **ingeniū**), gen.

c. The neuter of all adjectives of the second declension is declined like **dōnum**.

d. In the same way decline **oppidum**, **magnum**, and **praemium grātum**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



CHAPTER VII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

49. If an adjective of the first and second declensions is used with a masculine noun, it is declined like **amīcus**, **puer**, or **liber** (section 41); if the adjective is used with a feminine noun, it is declined like **stella** (section 30); if the adjective is used with a neuter noun, it is declined like **dōnum** (section 47).

An adjective is always in the same case, number, and gender as the noun which it modifies, but it does not always have the same case-ending; for example, **agricola bonus**, nom., sing., masc.; **servus miser**, nom., sing., masc.; **nautam validum**, acc., sing., masc.

50. Read the following exercise aloud in Latin and translate into English; then from the English translation recite and write the sentences in Latin, verifying the accuracy of the work by comparison with the Latin text.

Study the forms of the adjectives and observe the agreement of adjectives with the nouns which they modify.

When looking for a noun in the vocabulary always observe the gender as indicated by the letter *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

READING EXERCISE

51. 1. Rōma antīqua est urbs pulchra. 2. Populus Rōmānus urbem Rōmam amat. 3. Poētae Rōmānī urbem Rōmam laudant. 4. In Ītaliā sunt multa oppida. 5. Frūmentum mātūrum in oppida portātur. 6. Agricolaē frūmentum mātūrum ex agrīs portant. 7. Mārcus agricola est vir validus. 8. Agricola validus hortum pulchrum habet. 9. In hortō pulchrō servus miser labōrat. 10. Malus servus

est miser quod labōrat. 11. Bonī servī miserī sunt nōn quod labōrant sed quod nōn liberī sunt. 12. Validus vir et validus puer quod labōrant laetī sunt. 13. Validus agricola filiōs validōs habet. 14. Multī virī validī et laetī sunt. 15. Ego sum laetus et validus. 16. Tū quoque es laetus et validus. 17. Ego et tū sumus laetī et validī. 18. Tū et amīcus tuus laetī et validī estis.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Tell the case, number, and gender of each noun and adjective found in this exercise, and point out the noun which each adjective modifies.

b. Decline together amīcus bonus, oppidum magnum, vir liber, hortus pulcher, servus miser, puer parvus, puella pulchra, nauta validus.

TYPICAL ADJECTIVES

52.

Bonus, bona, bonum; *good*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. **Bonus** is declined like **amīcus**, **bona** like **stella**, and **bonum** like **dōnum**. The stems are **bono-**, **bonā-**, and **bono-**.

53. Miser, misera, miserum; *unhappy*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Voc.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Voc.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

a. Miser is declined like puer, misera like stella, miserum like dōnum. The stems are misero-, miserā-, and misero-.

54. Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum; *beautiful*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Voc.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Voc.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

a. Pulcher is declined like liber, pulchra like stella, pulchrum like dōnum. The stems are pulchro-, pulchrā- and pulchro-.

SYNTAX

Agreement of Adjectives

55. An adjective agrees with its noun in case, number, and gender. (9)

Populus Rōmānus, the Roman people; liber bonus, a good book; stellae clārae, bright stars; dōnīs pulchrīs, with beautiful gifts.

The Dative with Adjectives

56. With adjectives denoting quality the dative is used to denote the person or thing towards which the quality is directed. (10)

Lūdī liberīs grātī sunt, sports are pleasing to children.

COMPOSITION

57. Write and recite in Latin.

1. The full moon is in the clear sky. 2. The sailor sees the full moon and the bright stars. 3. The city of Rome is praised by the Roman poets. 4. The poets love the language of the Roman people. 5. The language of the Roman people is the Latin language. 6. The books of the Roman poets are pleasing to the master. 7. The farmer gives his son a large field. 8. The field is pleasing to the farmer's son. 9. Healthy boys love the fields. 10. The sick boy is unhappy. 11. A good friend gives a beautiful gift to the sick boy. 12. The beautiful gift is acceptable to the sick boy. 13. Strong boys are entertained with many sports. 14. You are well and happy. 15. I am well and happy also. 16. We are happy because we are well.

NOTE.—The utmost attention should be given to the correct use of adjectives. Accuracy or the lack of accuracy in this one particular will make or mar the excellence of the pupil's work and will help or hinder his future progress.



From an original photograph of Old Sarum by Henry V. Stearns.

CASTRĀ RŌMĀNA IN BRITANNIĀ VĀLLŌ FOSSĀQUE MŪNĪTA

CHAPTER VIII

REVIEW

English Words Derived from Latin

58. The matter presented in the preceding chapters should be learned with absolute accuracy. Future progress will be far easier, more rapid, and much more satisfactory if these preliminary chapters are completely mastered; but if there is any degree of uncertainty in the mind of the student, progress will be slow and difficult, and it will be necessary continually to interrupt the work and to go back to the beginning in order to fix clearly in the mind the forms and principles which have been slighted.

59. In the following outline the points are specified which should be the basis for a thorough review before a further advance is attempted.

(1) *Reading and pronunciation.* The exercises should be read with sufficient repetition to enable the student to pronounce all the Latin words correctly and to read the Latin sentences without hesitation and with appropriate expression. In pronouncing words of more than one syllable attention should be given to the placing of the accent with precision.

(2) *Vocabulary.* It should be possible for the student to give readily the English equivalent of any Latin word or sentence found in the preceding pages, and also to translate at sight or hearing simple original sentences composed by the teacher or by the members of the class. In order that the memory of a considerable number of Latin words in common use may be made definite and certain, a list of 600 words, selected from this book, has been prepared for vocabulary drill. This list will be found in section 573, page 377, where the words are arranged by groups in the order of their first occurrence in this book. Thus the drill

may be commenced early in the study and may be continued at convenient intervals. Ordinarily only one English equivalent of each Latin word is given, and that the most characteristic, but other meanings may be supplied. The entire list should be thoroughly learned before the study of this book is completed.

With each noun should be associated the declension to which it belongs and the gender. Let the student give the English definition when the Latin word is pronounced, and the Latin word on hearing the English. By covering each column alternately each member of the class may profitably drill himself on the vocabulary.

(3) *Translation.* The meaning of the Latin sentences should be represented clearly and correctly in the English translation; but it is not always possible nor desirable to reproduce the Latin constructions. The pupil should cultivate original and expressive ways of translating, and should avoid awkward and ungrammatical English phraseology.

(4) *Declension.* The paradigms should be memorized so that the declension of nouns and adjectives may be repeated rapidly and written without errors. The case, number, and gender of any noun or adjective of the first and second declensions should be recognized at sight and the proper case supplied in a rapid test on the forms which have been learned.

(5) *Quantity.* As a guide to the pronunciation the quantity of the vowels, particularly of the vowels in the case-endings, should be definitely learned. In written exercises the long vowels should be marked.

(6) *Syntax.* The uses of words as explained in the rules of syntax should be fully understood; and the pupil should be tested by questions on the rules themselves and the illustrative sentences. In connection with each exercise there should be sufficient practice in parsing to impress on the mind the principles of syntax and their application.

(7) *Composition.* To some extent the exercises provided for Latin composition are review exercises since they furnish an opportunity for the application of all the knowledge which has previously been acquired. Latin composition will be an interesting and attractive exercise if there is sufficient practice on sentences which are not too difficult. It will encourage the beginner if he is permitted to attempt original composition; and rudimentary efforts in this direction should not be too severely criticised.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

erat. 10. Postea Flaccus paedagogus erat et filium ad magistrum iterum-que domum ducēbat (led, conducted, took). 11. Saepe Flaccus cum filiō sic loquēbatur (used to talk). 12. Hic vir, fili, bonus est; ille (that) vir est malus. 13. Hoc factum (this deed) est bonum; illud (that) est malum. 14. Haec (this) statua antiqua est pulchra; illud templum novum nōn est pulchrum. 15. Haec doctrina vera est; illa (that) nōn vera est. 16. Hic liber bonus, ille malus est. 17. Hōc modō (in this manner) puer discit quid sit pulchrum (what is beautiful), quid sit bonum, quid sit verum.

18. Horātius iuvenis (when a young man) Athēnis erat ibique optimōs doctōrēs habēbat. 19. In illā urbe clārissimā Parthenōnem templum pulcherrimum orbis terrārum (of the world) vidēbat. 20. Adultus (when grown to manhood) Horātius ipse poēta iucundus erat. 21. Librī Horā'tī poētae puerīs et puellīs grātī sunt. 22. Discipulī librīs poētae dēlectantur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Recite and write the declension of the following nouns and adjectives: *silva*, *columba*, *sapientia* (sing.), *dea*, *statua pulchra*, *Horātius* (sing.), *filius*, *servus bonus*, *puer parvus*, *discipulus*, *magister primus*, *poēta iucundus*, *vir bonus*, *ager lātus*, *caelum clārum* (sing.), *templum pulchrum*, *folium novum*.

b. Recite and write in three genders the declension of *primus*, -a, -um, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*; *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*.

c. Tell the case, number, and gender of all the nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions found in the reading exercise above.

d. What is unusual in the genitive and vocative cases of *Horātius*? in the genitive and vocative of *filius*? in the dative and ablative plural of *dea*?

e. Explain the construction (use) of all the nouns and adjectives in this exercise to which the rules of syntax already given apply.

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN

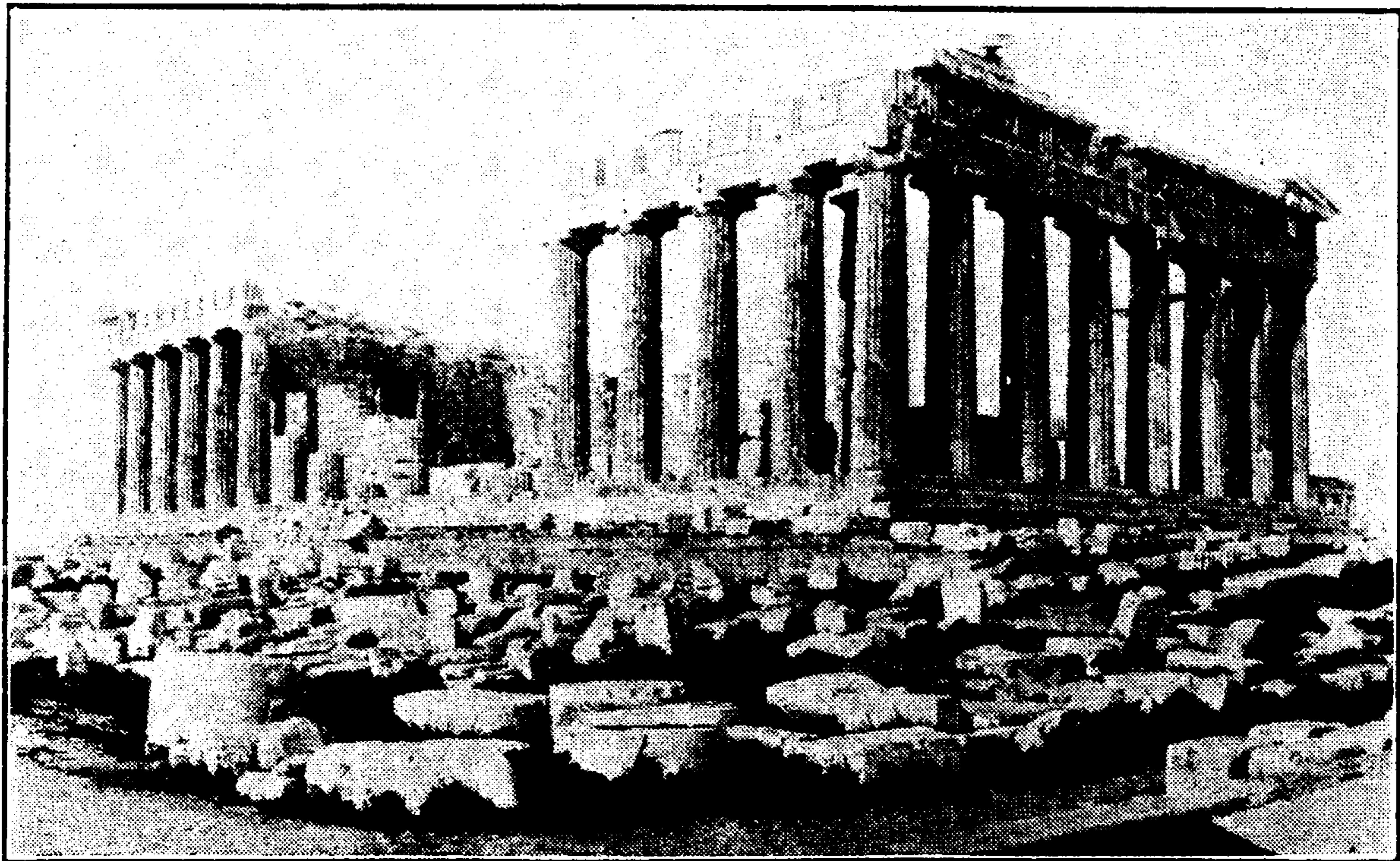
61. More than one-half of the words in the English language have been derived from the Latin. Some of these



ATHĒNAE URBS GRAECIAE CLĀRISSIMA

© Brown & Dawson, N. Y.

have been transferred from Latin to English with little or no change in form or meaning; as, **praemium** (Latin), *pre-mium* (English). Sometimes the resemblance is not quite so obvious on account of a change in some of the letters or the dropping of a syllable or ending; as, **clārus** (Latin), *clear* (English); **templum** (Latin), *temple* (English). Other



© Brown & Dawson, N. Y.

PARTHENON, TEMPLUM PULCHERRIMUM ORBIS TERRĀRUM

words have come into the English language through the French, into which they were first introduced from the Latin; as, **lingua** (Latin), *langage* (French), *language* (English).

Even a limited knowledge of the Latin source of English words is an invaluable aid to a proper understanding of the English language; and it will be exceedingly profitable for the student to begin early to observe the relationship between those English and Latin words whose resemblance is most apparent.

In connection with the review lessons material is provided to illustrate the derivation of English words from the Latin; and the illustrations, which are necessarily restricted in this book, may be extended indefinitely by the aid of an unabridged English dictionary.

All the Latin words used in this book to illustrate derivation will be found in an alphabetical list with the corresponding English equivalents in section 572, page 365.

WORD LIST

62. It should be observed that *the English derivative is not always an accurate translation of the Latin original*, but in most cases it is not difficult to detect the common element both in the form of the words and in their meaning.

agricultūra, *agriculture.*

antīquus, *antique.*

clārus, *clear.*

corōna, *crown.*

discipulus, *disciple.*

discordia, *discord.*

doctrīna, *doctrine.*

folium, *foliage.*

īnsula, *isle.*

lingua, *language.*

magister, *master.*

mātūrus, *mature.*

miser, *miser.*

numerus, *number.*

poēta, *poet.*

populus, *people.*

praemium, *premium.*

prīmus, *prime.*

scripta, *script.*

statua, *statue.*

templum, *temple.*

validus, *valid.*

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. To what Latin words in the above list may the origin of the following English words be traced?

antiquity

discipline

magistrate

maturity

misery

peninsula

populace

primer

scripture

SYNTAX

63. Explain the construction (use) of all the nouns and adjectives in section 60, to which the rules of syntax given apply.

Quote the proper rule in explanation of the case of **Flaccus**

(section 60, sentence 3), agrōs (3), Āpūliae (7), foliīs (7), bonus (12), antīqua and novum (14), puerīs and puellis (21), fili (12).

Does any one of the rules given apply to dea (6)?

Apposition

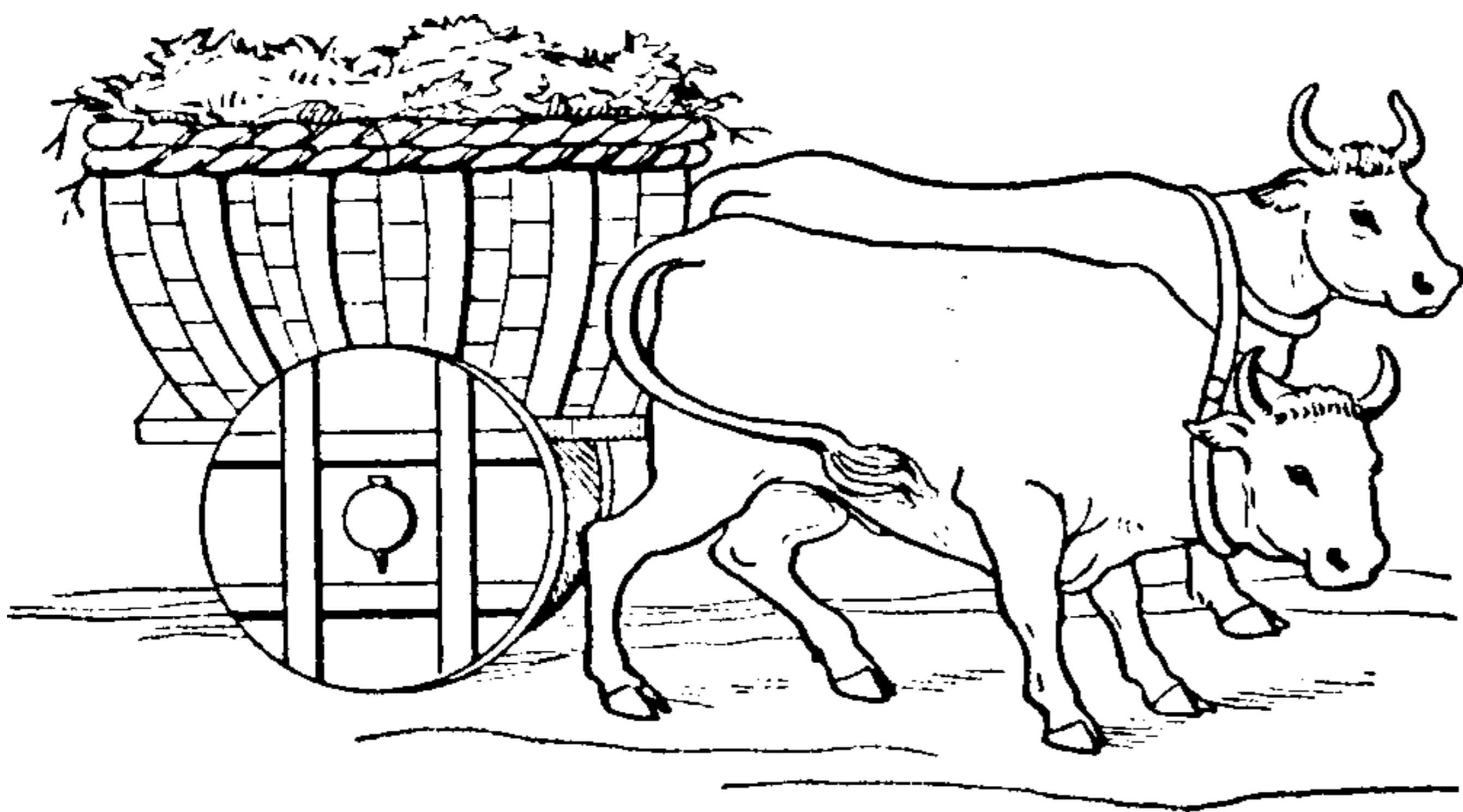
64. A noun used to describe another noun and denoting the same person or thing, if not a predicate noun, is an appositive and is in the same case as the noun which it describes. (11)

Diāna, dea silvārum, Diana, the goddess of the woods; librī Horāti poētae, the books of Horace the poet.

COMPOSITION

65. Write the following sentences in Latin, justifying the form of each noun and adjective by reference to the rules of syntax.

1. The poet Horace was the son of Flaccus, a farmer.
2. Flaccus the farmer had fields in Apulia. 3. Flaccus was once a slave. 4. The woods of Apulia were pleasing to the



PLAISTRUM

boy Horace. 5. The boy's wisdom was wonderful. 6. Flaccus came (vēnit) with his son from Apulia to the city of Rome. 7. Flaccus gives his son a teacher. 8. In Athens Horace saw many beautiful temples.

9. The ancient temples are adorned with beautiful statues.
10. My friend, does your son like (amatne) books? 11. The boy is good but he does not care for (like) books. 12. My son, do you like (amāsne) the books of the poet Horace?
13. I like (amō) books but I like the woods also.

CHAPTER IX

VERBS

Personal Endings of the Active Voice

66. In Latin as in English verbs agree with their subjects in person and number. The person and number of the Latin verbs are indicated by terminations which are called personal endings.

In all tenses of the indicative mood except the perfect, the personal endings of the active voice with their meanings are as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
<i>First person</i>	-m, -ō	<i>I</i>	-mus	<i>we</i>
<i>Second person</i>	-s	<i>you</i>	-tis	<i>you</i>
<i>Third person</i>	-t	<i>he, she, it</i>	-nt	<i>they</i>

Sometimes the subject of a verb is not expressed by a separate word. The ending of the verb then tells whether the subject is *I, you* (sing.), *he (she, it), we, you* (pl.), or *they*. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are regularly not expressed unless they are emphatic or contrasted.

67. In the reading exercise in section 68 observe the form of the verb which is used with each personal pronoun and with subjects of the third person, singular and plural.

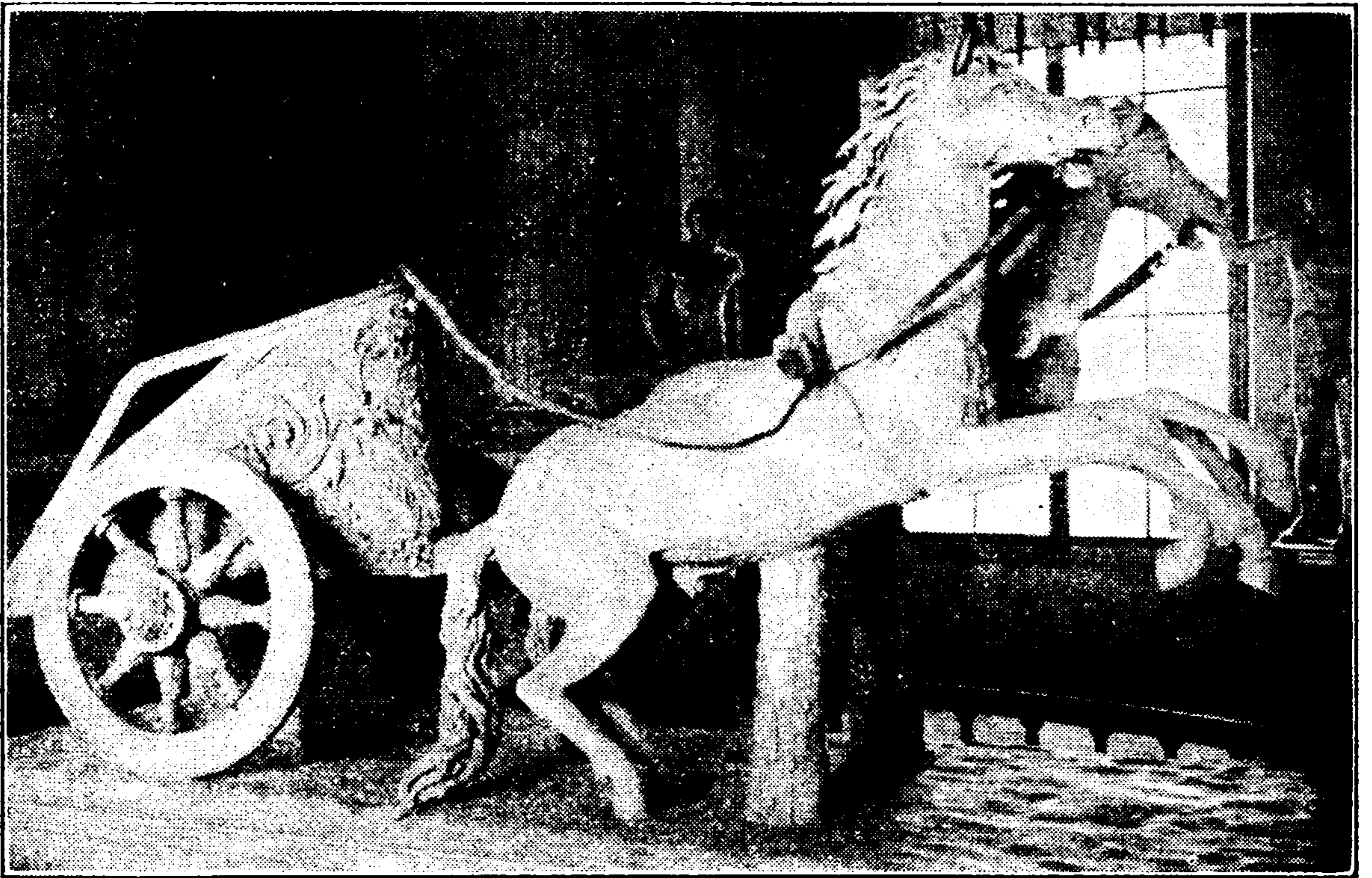
Notice the personal endings meaning *I, we, you* (sing. and pl.), *he, she, it, they*.

Read the sentences aloud in Latin and translate into English. Then recite and write the sentences in Latin from the dictation of the English or from the written translation.

NOTE.—Too great emphasis can not be given to the importance of reading aloud in the Latin as a preparation for translation. Let it be understood that such reading should always precede translation. There should be daily practice also in reproducing the sentences both orally and in writing, using the English translation as a basis.

READING EXERCISE

68. 1. Ego sum agricola. 2. Tū es nauta. 3. Horātius est poēta. 4. Nōs sumus amīcī. 5. Vōs estis amīcī. 6. Agricola et nauta sunt amīcī. 7. Ego sum aeger sed tū es validus. 8. Nōs sumus aegrī sed vōs estis validī. 9. Servī sunt laetī quod dominus est benignus.



CURRUS ET EQUĪ

10. Ego silvam amō. 11. Tū stellās amās. 12. Mārcus lūdum puerōrum amat. 13. Ego et tū librōs magistrī amāmus. 14. Tū et Mārcus statuās pulchrās amātis. 15. Liberī Mārcī linguam Rōmānam amant.

16. Ego amīcō dōnum dō. 17. Tū amīcō dōnum dās. 18. Dominus servō praemium dat. 19. Nōs amīcīs dōna damus. 20. Vōs amīcīs dōna datis. 21. Patrēs liberīs dōna dant.

22. (Ego) equōs videō. 23. (Tū) equōs vidēs. 24. Discipulus equōs videt. 25. (Nōs) equōs vidēmus. 26. (Vōs) equōs vidētis. 27. Discipulī equōs vident.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

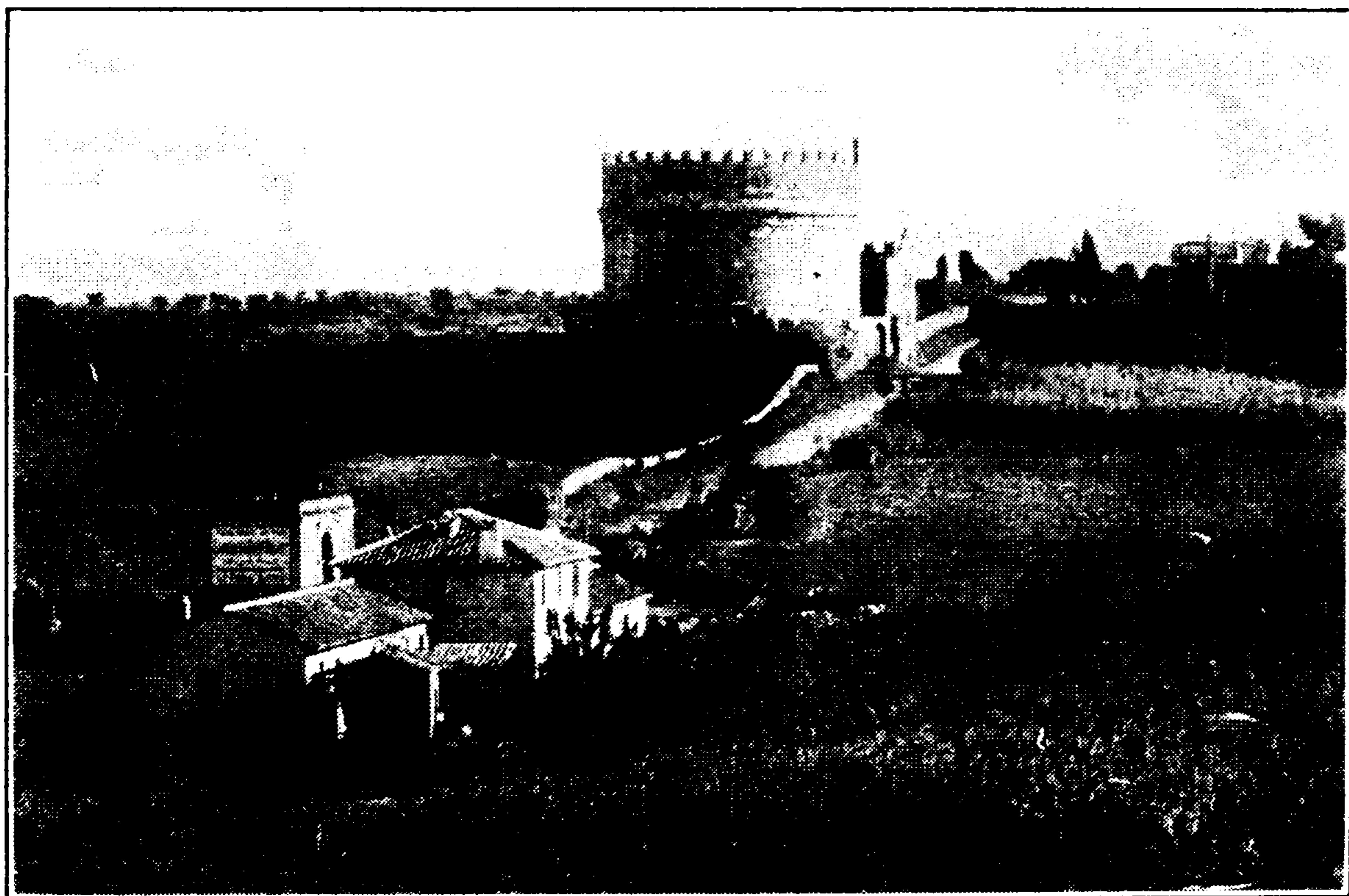
*Fair usage policy applies

1. I am in the city (of) Rome. 2. You are in the field. 3. Marcus is in the garden. 4. We are friends. 5. You (pl.) are friends of the master. 6. The boy and the slave are friends.

7. I love the city (of) Rome. 8. You love the ancient temples. 9. Horace loves the beautiful temples. 10. We love the poet's books. 11. You (pl.) love the statues of Diana. 12. The Romans love Italy.

13. The master gives gifts to his son. 14. The little girls give gifts to their friends. 15. You and I (I and you) give gifts to the little boys. 16. You, masters, give books to the pupils. 17. I give my friend a new book.

18. (I) see the narrow street of the ancient town. 19. (You) see the beautiful statue of the goddess. 20. The boy sees the master's beautiful garden. 21. (We) see the broad fields. 22. (You, pl.) see the master with his children. 23. The children see the full moon and the bright stars in the sky.



VIA APPIA NŌN LONGĒ AB URBE RŌMĀ

CHAPTER X

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Four Conjugations

72. There are four types in the conjugation of Latin verbs, which are designated as *the First, the Second, the Third, and the Fourth Conjugations*. These conjugations are distinguished from each other chiefly by the vowel which precedes the personal ending in the present tense. In the first conjugation the characteristic vowel is *ā*; in the second, *ē*; in the third, *e* (*i, u*); in the fourth, *ī* (*iu*).

73. In the following exercise, verbs of the four conjugations are given in the present tense, indicative mood, active voice. Concentrate the attention on the verbs and notice particularly the vowel before the personal ending in each verb, and observe the forms which are used with subjects of the first, second, and third persons, singular and plural.

When there is no subject expressed, the personal ending of the verb indicates of what person the subject is. If the subject is a personal pronoun of the first or the second person (*I, we, you*), it is frequently omitted; but if the verb is in the third person, the subject is generally expressed unless it is readily understood from the preceding sentence.

READING EXERCISE

74. 1. (Ego) amō, videō, mittō, audiō. 2. (Tū) amās, vidēs, mittis, audīs. 3. (Ille) amat, videt, mittit, audit. 4. (Nōs) amāmus, vidēmus, mittimus, audīmus. 5. (Vōs) amātis, vidētis, mittitis, audītis. 6. (Illī) amant, vident, mittunt, audiunt.

7. "Quid agis, fili?" pater filium rogat. 8. "Epistulam scribō," filius respondet. 9. "Ad quem (whom) epistulam scribis?" 10. "Ad amicum scribō, quem maximē amō." 11. Pater laetus est quod memoria amīcī in animūm fili veniit. 12.

In epistulā puer multa (many things) dē librīs et dē lūdīs scribit. 13. Et lūdī et librī puerum dēlectant. 14. Amīcus puerī dēlectātur quod epistula bona ad eum (him) venit.

15. Audīs-ne ventum, puer? Timēsne ventum? 16. Ventum audiō sed nōn timeō. 17. Nōnne ventum, puellae, audītis? Nōnne ventum timētis? 18. Ventum audīmus et timēmus. 19. Num nautae ventum audiunt et timent? 20. Nautae semper ventum audiunt atque maximē amant.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write out the conjugation of *rogat* (*rogō*), *timeō*, *scribō*, and *venit* (*veniō*), imitating the arrangement in section 69. As a guide to the conjugation consult the forms of *amō*, *videō*, *mittō*, and *audiō*, in sentences 1-6.

b. What does the verb end in if the subject is *I*? *you* (sing.)? *he*? *we*? *you* (pl.)? *they*?

SELECTIONS FOR READING

75. The student has now proceeded far enough in the study of the simplest elements of the Latin language to make it profitable for him to apply his knowledge in reading connected paragraphs. Beginning with section 77 short paragraphs with Latin titles will be introduced at intervals, which will furnish material for reading and translation and for the application of the principles which have previously been presented; and they will also give the student an opportunity to become acquainted with some of the legends of early Rome as they were written for the Romans themselves by one of the most interesting of the Roman writers. Under the title *Virī Rōmae* the stories of the legendary kings of Rome were selected from the first book of the Roman historian Livy, and arranged for the use of beginners in Latin by Charles François Lhomond, a professor in the University of Paris, who died in 1794.

In this book, *Elementa Prīma*, some of the same stories are used with such modifications as are necessary to adapt them to the student's advancement. For example, in the first selection, section 77, all the verbs are in the present tense of the active voice; and with few exceptions, the nouns and adjectives are those which belong to the first and second declensions. The

constructions, also, are usually such as are explained by the preceding rules of syntax or by the rules introduced in the chapter in which the selection is found. Forms and constructions which have not been previously developed are occasionally introduced, but the attention of the pupil need not be specially directed to these. When the proper place for their discussion is reached, it will be found that the partial familiarity, gained incidentally, has given the mind a pre-disposition to receive the more complete explanation.

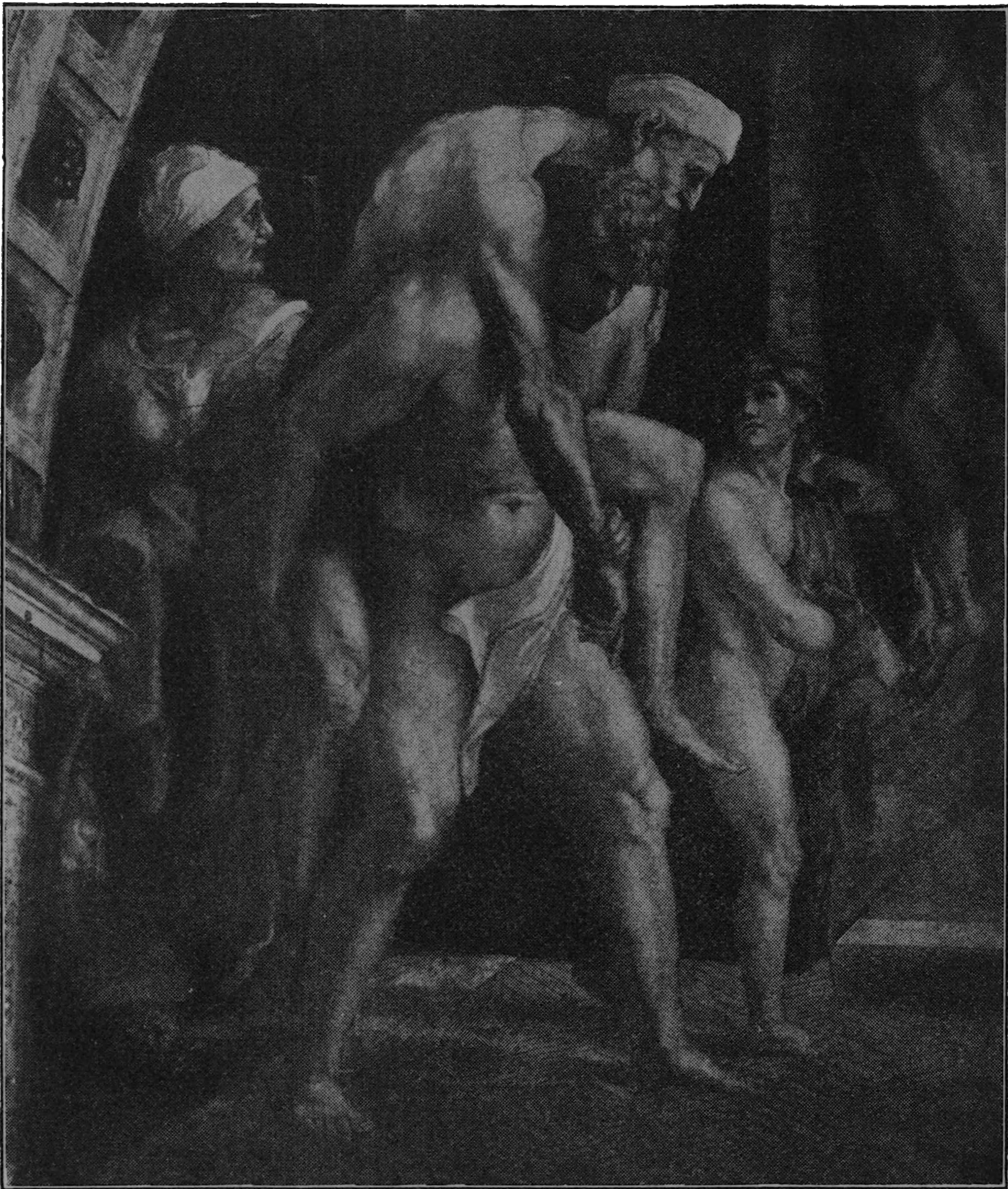
76. In preparation for the lesson it is recommended that the selections for reading and translation be read aloud in Latin several times before they are translated. It is important that the learner become familiar with the sound of the Latin words and phrases. Fluency and accuracy of speech depend largely upon the readiness with which the images of sound arise in the mind; and it is not reasonable to expect freedom in the recitation unless the pupil has become accustomed to the sound of the words as they are pronounced by his own voice.

Reading in Latin should also be with proper expression. Connected words should be grouped together and the accent and emphasis should be rightly placed. Good Latin reading will add much to the pupil's interest and will help to make his progress certain and satisfactory.

The passages for translation may also be made the basis for review questions and for drill on forms and constructions; but this should not be carried too far. Grammar is the means, not the end of instruction; and the chief purpose of the reading lesson is not to illustrate grammar but to awaken interest and to arouse thought.

AENĒAS IN ĪTALIAM VENIT

77. Aenēās, vir clārus, ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliā venit. Patrem ex Trōiā in umerīs portat. Fīlium Ascanium sēcum dūcit. Multōs sociōs quoque Aenēās sēcum in Ītaliā dūcit. Latīnus in hīs locīs rēgnat. Inter Latīnum et Aenēān (acc.) est amīcitia. Latīnus Aenēae fīliam in mātrimōnium dat. Aenēās urbem Lavinium aedificat. Posteā Ascanius, fīlius Aenēae, rēgnum habet. Ille Albam Longam condit. Ascanius est prīmus rēx Albānōrum.



AENĒAS CUM PATRE ET FĪLIŌ

- a.* For the declension of **Aenĕās** see section 548.
b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *humerus*, *matrimony*, *reign* (noun and verb).

THE PRESENT STEM

78. The present stem is that part of the verb which forms the basis of the present, the past (imperfect), and the future tenses. The present active infinitive contains the

present stem with the characteristic vowel unchanged; and therefore this form is given in the vocabulary immediately following the present indicative to designate the conjugation to which the verb belongs.

The present stem may be found by dropping the ending **-re** of the present active infinitive.

The following table contains the present active indicative, the present active infinitive, and the present stem of typical verbs of the four conjugations.

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM
I.	amō	amāre	amā-
II.	videō	vidēre	vidē-
III.	mittō	mittere	mitte-
IV.	audiō	audire	audi-

a. What is the characteristic vowel of the first conjugation? of the second? of the third? of the fourth? What is the quantity of each of these vowels in the present infinitive?

CONJUGATION

79. Amō, *I love*; videō, *I see*; mittō, *I send*; audiō, *I hear*.

SINGULAR

amō	videō	mittō	audiō
amās	vidēs	mittis	audīs
amat	videt	mittit	audit

PLURAL

amāmus	vidēmus	mittimus	audimus
amātis	vidētis	mittitis	auditis
amant	vident	mittunt	audiunt

a. The personal endings are the same in all the conjugations. What is the personal ending of each person, singular and plural?

b. In the first person singular of amō and mittō the characteristic stem vowel has disappeared by uniting with the personal ending **-o** (amaō, amō; mitteō, mittō). In videō, audiō, and audiunt the stem vowel is shortened. Before the endings **-t** and **-nt** the vowel is always

short. In the third person plural stem of *mittō* the vowel becomes *u*; and before the other endings in *mittō* the vowel *i* is found instead of *e*. These are phonetic changes, the effect of which is to make the words easier to pronounce or more agreeable to hear.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Present Indicative

80. The present tense is used (1) to represent an act as going on at the time of speaking; (2) to express a general truth; (3) like the historical present in English, to represent a past event vividly, as if it were present. (13)

(1) *Puer epistulam scribit*, *the boy is writing (writes) a letter*;
 (2) *liberī lūdum amant*, *children love play*; *Aenēās urbem aedificat*,
Aeneas builds a city.

COMPOSITION

81. 1. (I) ask, reply, write, come. 2. (You, sing.) ask, reply, write, come. 3. (He) asks, replies, writes, comes. 4. (We) ask, reply, write, come. (You, pl.) ask, reply, write, come. 6. (They) ask, reply, write, come.

7. The boy is writing (writes) a letter. 8. (He) sends the letter to his friend. 9. The boy's letter pleases his friend. 10. (We) are sending (send) gifts to our friends. 11. (Our) friends see and like (love) the gifts. 12. You (pl.) are writing (write) many letters. 13. The letters which (quās) you (sing.) write please your friends. 14. The boys and girls are coming (come) home (domum). 15. They are bringing (bring) their books. 16. I see the books which (quōs) the boys and girls are bringing home.

17. Ascanius comes to Italy with Aeneas. 18. Many companions of Aeneas come to Italy. 19. Latinus has a kingdom in Italy. 20. Aeneas leads his companions to Italy. 21. Ascanius, the son of Aeneas, builds the city of Alba Longa. 22. Ascanius is the first king of Alba Longa. 23. Latinus the king gives his daughter Lavinia in marriage to his friend Aeneas.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

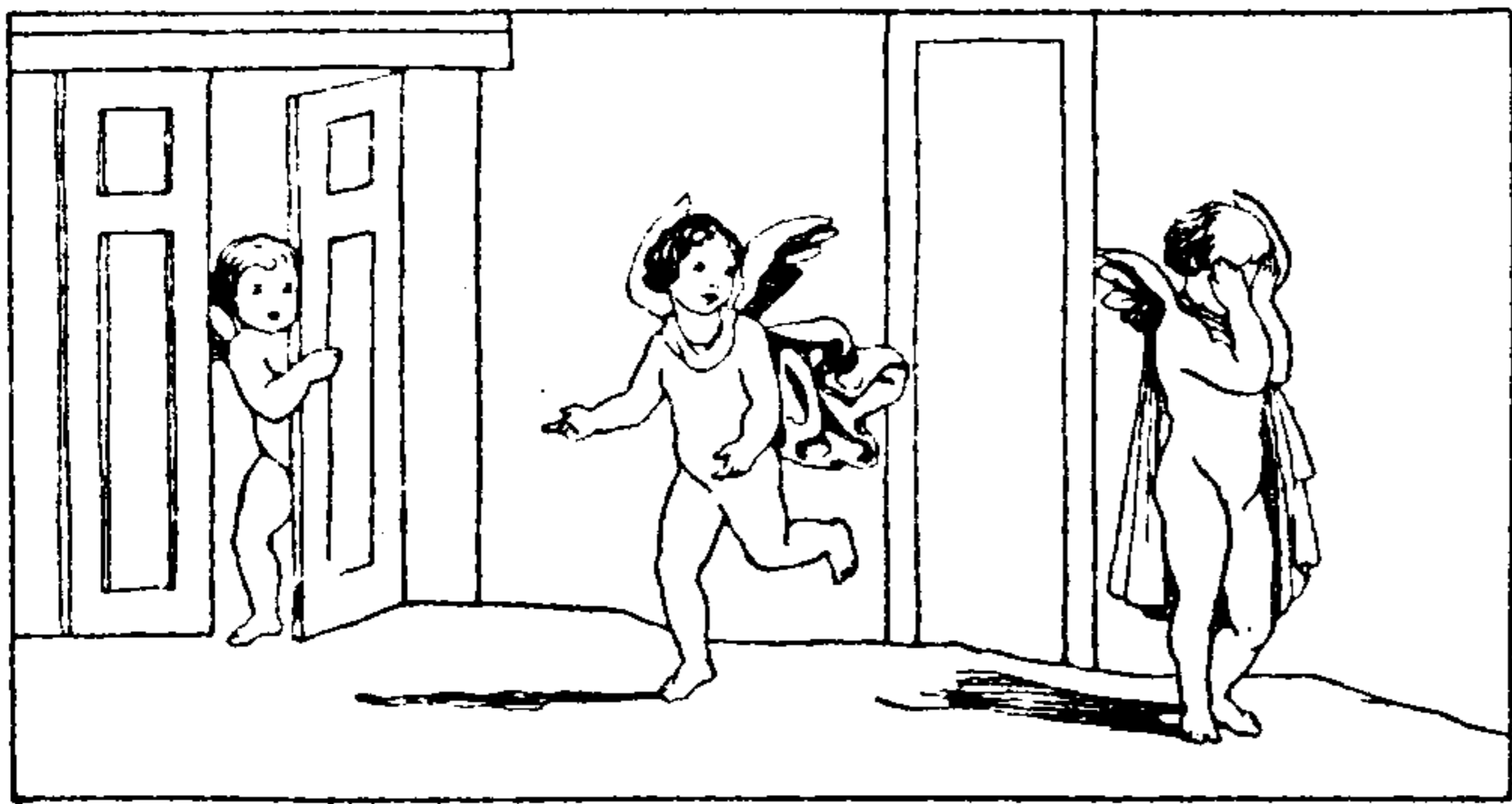
Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

11. Vōs puerōs vidētis et ā pueris vidēmini. 12. Puerī sociōs vident et ā sociis videntur.

13. Mārcus ad Cornēliam servum cum epistulā mittit. 14. Servus ad Cornēliam cum epistulā mittitur. 15. Unde quō-que, serve, mitteris (mittere)? 16. Ā Mārcō dominō ad Cornēliam cum epistulā mittor. 17. Hoc in epistulā scribitur: “Nūntium ad tē, Cornēlia, cum epistulā mittō.” 18. Domini servōs in agrōs mittunt. 19. Quō, servī, mittimini? 20. Mittimur in agrōs. 21. Servī ā dominis in agrōs mittuntur.

22. Ventus nautam impedit. 23. Nauta ventō impeditur.



“SPECTŌ”

24. Nōne ventō, nauta, impediris (impedire)? Ventō impediō. 25. Ventī nautās impediunt. 26. Nōne ventis, nautae, impedimini? Ventis impediōmur. 27. Multī socii ab Aenēā in Ītaliā dūcuntur. 28. In ōris Ītaliae Latīnus rēx ab Aenēae sociis videtur. 29. Urbs Lavinium ab Aenēā aedificātur. 30. Aenēās vir clārus habetur. 31. Ab Ascaniō Alba Longa conditur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Arrange all the passive forms of *amō*, *videō*, *mittō*, and *impediō* in tables of conjugation with section 79 as a model.

b. In the present indicative passive what is the personal ending if the subject is *I*? *you* (sing.)? *he, she, it*? *we*? *you* (pl.)? *they*?

LŪDUS QUI “SPECTŌ” APPELLĀTUR

85. Liberi lūdum habent qui “Spectō” appellātur. Ūnus ex liberis dēligitur qui dux appellātur. Dux oculōs vēlat dum reliquī discurrunt atque sē cēlant. Cum omnēs

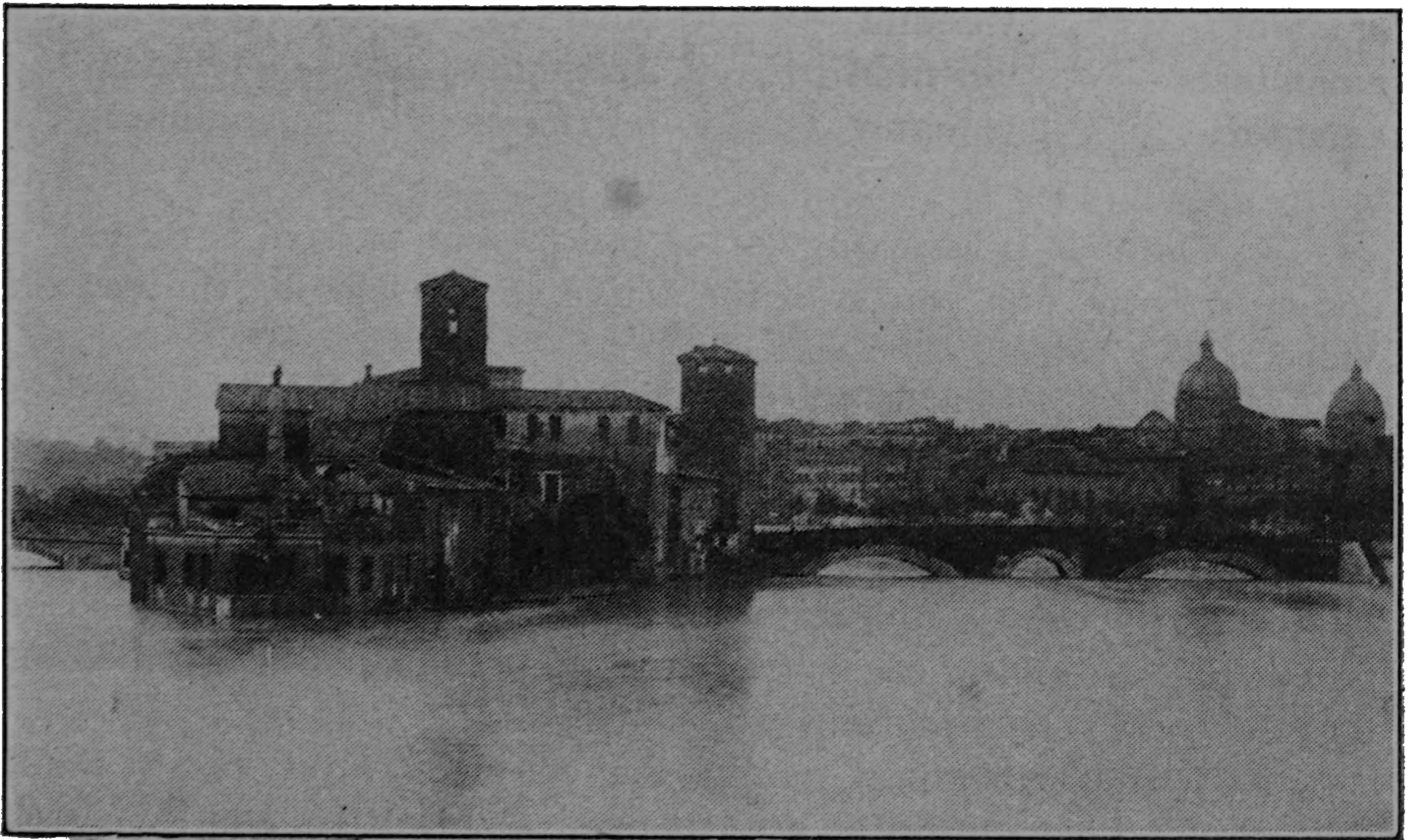
tacitī sunt dux clāmat, “Ūnus, duo, trēs! Mē cavēte! veniō! Vōs omnēs quī nōn parātī estis ‘Ego!’ clāmāte.” Deinde sī nihil audītur dux sociōs petit. Mox ūnum ex sociīs videt atque “Tē spectō!” clāmat. Alter quī nōn vidētur accurrit atque clāmat, “Adsum! Ipse mē spectō!” Mox omnēs aut spectantur aut sē spectant. Puer quī prīmus spectātur dux habētur. Reliquī iterum sē cēlant et ā duce iterum petuntur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write out and repeat orally the conjugation of all the verbs used above in the present indicative active or passive.

RŌMULUS ET REMUS IN TIBERIM MITTUNTUR

86. Post multōs annōs Proca erat rēx Albānōrum. Proca duōs filiōs habet, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Numitōrī (to Numitor), quī nātū maior (the elder) erat, rēgnum relinquitur sed Amūlius rēgnum occupat atque filiōs frātris (of his brother) obtruncat. Fīlia autem Numitōris (of Numitor), Rhēa Silvia, Rōmulum et Remum geminōs habet. Fīliū



FLŪMEN TIBERIS SUPER RĪPĀS

Silviae ab Amūliō timentur. Silvia in cūstōdiam datur atque puerī parvī in Tiberim mittuntur. Forte flūmen erat super rīpās. Aqua puerōs in siccō locō relinquit. Ab lupā puerī audiuntur et cūrantur.

a. Tell the person, number, and voice of each verb and conjugate at least one verb of each of the four conjugations in the present tense, active and passive: *e. g.*, **obtruncō**, **habeō**, **relinquō**, **audiō**.

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *cure*, *custody*.

CONJUGATION

Amor, *I am loved*; **videor**, *I am seen*; **mittor**, *I am sent*; **audior**, *I am heard*.

87.

SINGULAR

amor	videor	mittor	audior
amāris (-re)	vidēris (-re)	mitteris (-re)	audīris (-re)
amātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur

PLURAL

amāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī
amantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur

a. The first person singular of the present passive is formed by adding **r** to the first person of the active and shortening the vowel **o**. **Videō**, *I see*; **videor**, *I am seen*.

b. Except in the first person singular, the personal endings are joined directly to the present stem; but in the third person plural the long stem vowel becomes short, and in the fourth conjugation the vowel **u** is inserted before the ending **-ntur**.

c. In the third conjugation the stem vowel becomes **i** in the third person singular and in the first and second persons plural, and becomes **u** in the third person plural.

d. Write and repeat orally the conjugation of **cūrat**, **timet**, **relinquit**, and **impedit** in the present passive indicative, and review the conjugation of these verbs in the present indicative active.

SYNTAX

The Agent with Passive Verbs

88. The agent or person by whom anything is done, if the verb is in the passive voice, is denoted by the ablative case with **ā** or **ab**. **Ab** is used before vowels and consonants, **ā** before consonants only. (14)

Servi ā dominis in agrōs mittuntur, the slaves are sent into the fields by their masters; Silvia ab Amūliō in cūstōdiam datur, Silvia is put into custody by Amulius.

a. Remember that the means or the instrument by which or with which anything is done is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition. *Nauta ventō impeditur, the sailor is hindered by the wind.* Animals personified may be regarded grammatically as persons. *Pueri ab lupā cūrantur, the boys are cared for by a she-wolf.*

COMPOSITION

89. 1. I am praised, feared, led, hindered. 2. You (sing.) are praised, feared, led, hindered. 3. He is praised, feared, led, hindered. 4. We are praised, feared, led, hindered. 5. You (pl.) are praised, feared, led, hindered. 6. They are praised, feared, led, hindered.

7. Marcus is praised by his friend. 8. Beautiful temples are seen in the ancient city. 9. The sailors are hindered by the wind. 10. A letter is sent by the boy to his friend. 11. The friend is delighted with the boy's letter. 12. Good books are written by the Roman poets.

13. Many companions are led to Italy by the famous Aeneas. 14. Ascanius reigns at Alba Longa (loc.). 15. Proca is king of the Albans. 16. Amulius and Numitor are sons of Proca. 17. The kingdom is not left to Amulius but Amulius reigns. 18. Silvia and her sons are feared by Amulius. 19. The twin sons are thrown (sent) into the Tiber (in Tiberim). 20. Romulus and Remus are heard and cared for by a she-wolf.

CHAPTER XII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Stems in *c, d, g, p,* and *t*

90. The nouns in sections 92, 93, and 94, whose endings differ from those of the first and second declensions, belong to the third declension. The stems of these nouns end in the consonant **a, c, d, g, p,** or **t,** and the different cases are formed by adding the case-endings to the stem.

The case-endings of the third declension are as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nominative,</i>	-s	—	-ēs	-a
<i>Genitive,</i>	-is	-is	-um	-um
<i>Dative,</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Accusative,</i>	-em	—	-ēs	-a
<i>Vocative,</i>	-s	—	-ēs	-a
<i>Ablative,</i>	-e	-e	-ibus	-ibus

91. The case of a noun can generally be determined by its use in the sentence; but after the declension has been learned, the case can be recognized by the case-ending except in those cases which have the same form as other cases. An adjective of the first and second declensions, which may be used with a noun of the third declension, is often a guide to the case, number, and gender of the noun which the adjective modifies.

By observing the use of the nouns and with the aid of the suggestions made above, determine the case of the nouns which belong to the third declension.

The nominative and the genitive cases of all nouns are given in the vocabulary. The gender also is indicated.

Read and translate rapidly, giving attention chiefly to the nouns of the third declension.

READING EXERCISES

92. 1. Rēx est in urbe Rōmā. 2. Ubi est rēx? 3. Rēx in urbe est. 4. Rēgis fīlius est in viā. 5. Ubi est filius rēgis? 6. Fīlius rēgis est in viā. 7. Agricola rēgīnae rosās dat. 8. Rēgī poēta librum dat. 9. Quid poēta rēgī dat?



MĪLITĒS RŌMĀNĪ IN ITINERE

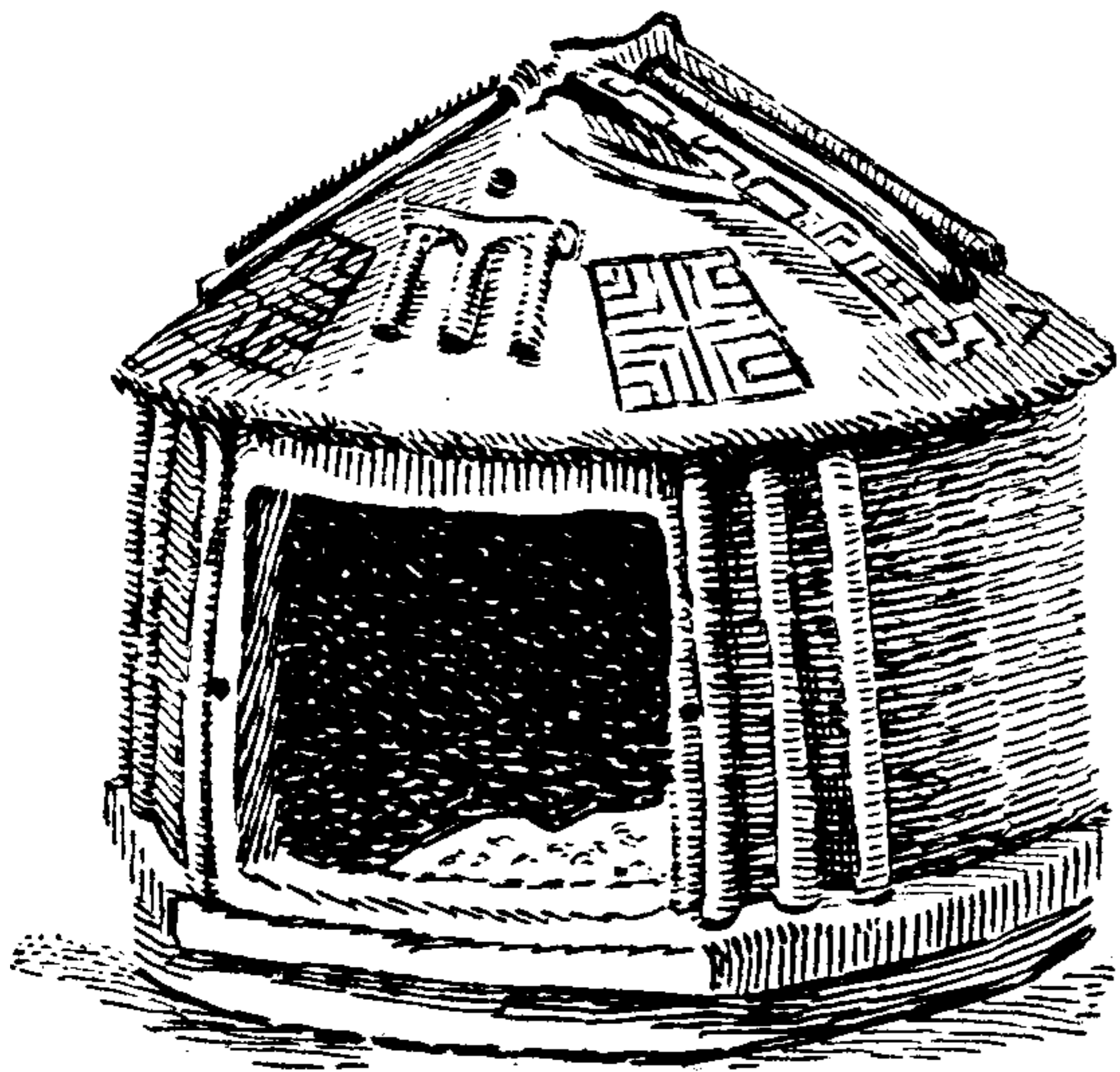
10. Poēta rēgī librum dat. 11. Nūntius rēgī et rēgīnae epistulās dat. 12. Videō rēgem in viā. 13. Iūstitiam tuam, magne rēx, videō et laudō. 14. Fīlius rēgis est cum rēge in urbe.

15. Multī rēgēs sunt in terrā. 16. Facta magnōrum rēgum nōn semper sunt bona. 17. Bonī virī rēgibus sunt grātī. 18. Bonōs rēgēs hominēs semper amant. 19. Vic-tōriās vestrās, magnī rēgēs, laudāmus. 20. Rēgīnās cum rēgibus in viīs vidēmus.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Arrange the forms of *rēx* in a table of declension.

93. 1. Rēx populī Rōmānī multōs mīlitēs habet. 2. Mīlitēs Rōmānī ducem bonum habent. 3. Dux mīlitum Rōmānōrum est vir fortis. 4. Virtūs mīlitum et ducis est magna. 5. Dux in capite pilleum habet. 6. Mīlitēs in capitibus galeās habent. 7. Arma mīlitum sunt hastae et scūta. 8. Mīlitēs in sinistrīs scūta portant. 9. Hastae in dextrīs portantur. 10. Gladius est in dextrā ducis. 11. Dux



CASA ANTĪQUA

bonō mīlitī equum pulchrum dat. 12. Caput equī est album. 13. Equus mīlitis album caput et pedēs albōs habet. 14. Mīlitēs quī equōs habent equitēs appellantur. 15. Equī quī equitēs portant capita alta tenent. 16. Et peditēs et equitēs in castrīs cum duce sunt. 17. Bellum nunc ā mīlitibus nōn geritur. 18. Pāx et mīlitibus et populō est grāta.

19. Amūlius est rēgis filiū. 20. Ascanius et Proca sunt filiī rēgum. 21. Filiī Silviae ab Amūliō rēge timentur. 22. Proca filiō rēgnū relinquit. 23. Rōmulus et Remus in Tiberim mittuntur. 24. Ab lupā audiuntur et cūrantur. 25. Frātrēs in silvīs aetātem agunt.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Tabulate by cases all the forms of the nouns of the third declension used above and supply any forms which are needed to complete the declension.

b. With *mīles* as a guide write the declension of *virtūs* (gen., *virtūtis*), *aetās* (gen., *aetātis*), and *pēs* (gen., *pedis*).

c. What is the case of *caput* in sentence 12? in sentence 13? of *capita* in sentence 15? What three cases of neuter nouns are alike? What is the ending of all neuter nouns in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural? What case besides the nominative is given in the vocabulary? With these suggestions decline *caput*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

disappears and the preceding vowel is sometimes modified; as, **mīle(t)s**, **mīlītis**, **pē(d)s**, **pedis**.

d. In the neuter **caput** there is no case-ending in the nominative, accusative, or vocative singular; and the **t** of the stem is retained. In all other cases of **caput** the vowel **i** is found before the case-endings.

e. Decline **dux** and **aetās**, observing that in **aetās** there is no change in the vowel **ā**.

SYNTAX

The Place to Which

96. With verbs of motion, the place to which is regularly denoted by the accusative case with the preposition **ad** or **in**. **Domum**, *homeward, home*, **rūs**, *to the country*, and names of towns and small islands are used in the accusative without a preposition to denote the place whither. (15)

Mīlītēs ad oppidum veniunt, *the soldiers come to the town*; **Aenēās sociōs in Ītaliā dūcit**, *Aeneas leads his companions to Italy*; **pater Horātī filium Rōmam portat**, *the father of Horace brings his son to Rome*.

The Place in Which

97. The place in which is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition **in**. **Domī**, *at home*, **humī**, *on the ground*; **mīlītae**, *in war*, and **rūri**, *in the country*, are locative forms. 16

Dux mīlītēs in oppidō tenet, *the leader keeps the soldiers in the town*; **Rōmae erant rēgēs**, *In Rome there were kings*; **pāstōrēs domī mīlītēs mīlītae aetātem agunt**, *shepherds spend their time (life) at home; soldiers, in military service*.

The Place from Which

98. The place from which is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, or **ex**. **Domō**, *from home*, **rūre**, *from the country*, and names of towns and small islands are used in the ablative without a preposition to denote the place whence. (17)

Servi ex oppidō in agrōs mittuntur, the slaves are sent out of the town into the fields; Trōia longē ab Italiā abest, Troy is far away from Italy; aqua dē caelō in terram venit, water comes down from the sky to the earth; Aenēās Trōiā Rōmam venit, Aeneas comes from Troy to Rome.

COMPOSITION

99. 1. Now the leader of the soldiers is in the town. 2. A messenger comes to Rome from the leader of the soldiers. 3. The king praises the leader and the soldiers. 4. The valor of the soldiers is pleasing to their leader. 5. The son of the king is sent to the camp as a messenger. 6. The brave leader is in the camp with the cavalry and the infantry. 7. We are at home but the soldiers are in military service with their leader. 8. Peace is loved by the leader and the soldiers.



PĀSTOR

9. A game of Roman children is called "I spy." 10. One of the children is the leader. 11. The eyes of the leader are covered. 12. The other children hide themselves (*sē*). 13. Then (*tum*) the leader calls, "One, two, three! I am coming!" 14. If the children are not ready, they call out. 15. When (*cum*) the leader sees one of his companions, he calls, "I spy you!" 16. The children who are not seen by the leader run up and call out, "Here (*hic*) we are."

17. Faustulus is the shepherd of the king. 18. The wife of Faustulus is Larentia. 19. The shepherd Faustulus finds the little boys and gives them (*eōs*) to his wife Larentia. 20. Romulus and his brother pass their life (*aetās*) in the forests.

CHAPTER XIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Nominatives in *l* and *r*

100. In nouns whose stems end in *l* or *r* the nominative and vocative singular have the same form as the stem; as, nom., *sōl*; gen., *sōlis*; stem, *sōl-*; nom., *pāstor*; gen., *pāstōris*; stem, *pāstor-*.

In nouns like *pater* (gen., *patris*; stem, *patr-*) *e* is developed before *r* in the nominative and vocative, *pater* being more easily pronounced than *patr*. Hence *e* is said to have been developed between *t* and *r* for the sake of euphony.

101. While reading in Latin observe the case of each noun of the third declension, and recall also the case forms of nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions. Notice the number and the gender of all nouns and adjectives. Review the conjugation of verbs in the present tense of the indicative, both active and passive. Apply all the rules of syntax which are illustrated in these exercises.

READING EXERCISE

102. 1. *Lūna et stellae sunt in caelō.* 2. *Sōl quoque est in caelō.* 3. *Vidēsne sōlem in caelo?* 4. *Calor sōlis est magnus.* 5. *Calor dē sōle in terram incidit.* 6. *Sōl terrae lūcem et calōrem dat.* 7. *Aestāte calor sōlis est maximus.* 8. *Diē sōlem, noctū lūnam et stellās in caelō vidēmus.* 9. *Noctū sōlem vidēre nōn possumus.*

10. *Quīdam homō quattuor liberōs habet; duo filiī, duae filiae sunt.* 11. *Ūnus ex filiīs frātreū ūnum, duās sorōrēs habet.* 12. *Quaeque (each) filia duōs frātrēs, sorōrem ūnam habet.* 13. *Neque frātrēs neque sorōrēs habeō; sed*

pater huius viri est mei patris filius. (Quis est "hic vir"?)

14. Pater et mater liberos amant et a liberis amantur.

15. Liberi verba patris et matris audiunt. 16. Verba nostrorum patrum et matrum audire debemus. 17. Bona

facta liberorum sunt patribus et matribus grata atque a patribus et matribus laudantur. 18. Memoria patrum est liberis cara.

19. In urbe Roma a principio erant reges. 20. Postea

Romae (loc.) erant consules. 21. Uno anno (in one year)

erant duo consules. 22. Consules erant imperatores militum.

23. Nomen primi consulis erat Iunius Brutus.

24. Fortuna parvos pueros servat et coniunx pastoris

eos curat. 25. Pastores silvas peragrant. 26. Pastorum

actas in silvis agitur. 27. Regnum Numitori a patre

relinquitur. 28. Numitor erat Rhæae Silviae pater. 29.

Inter pastores Romulus et Remus erant principes. 30.

Remus erat matri similis.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Tabulate all the forms of the nouns of the third declension which are used above, and complete the declension of *sol* in the singular and of *pater*, *soror*, and *consul* in the singular and plural.

b. What is the usual case-ending of the nominative singular in the third declension? How does the nominative compare with the stem if the stem ends in *l* or *r*; How does the nominative case differ from the stem in *mater*, *pater*, and *frater*?

REMUS A PRAEDATORIBUS EST CAPTUS

103. Praedatores cum Romulo et Remo in silvis pugnant. Remus captus est; Romulus armis se (himself) defendit. Tum Faustulus pastor, necessitate compulsus, Romulo dicit: "Numitor est tuus avus; Rhæa Silvia est tua mater." Romulus statim pastores armat et Albam properat.

a. *Albam*, to Alba. See section 96.

b. (*Notebook*). Explain the derivation of *arm* (noun and verb), *defend*, *necessity*, *pastor*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

104.	Nom., cōsul;	gen., cōsulis;	m.;	<i>consul.</i>
	Nom., pāstor;	gen., pāstōris;	m.;	<i>shepherd.</i>
	Nom., pater;	gen., patris;	m.;	<i>father.</i>

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	pāstor	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	pāstōris	patris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	pāstōrī	patri	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	pāstōrem	patrem	-em
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsul	pāstor	pater	—
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	pāstōre	patre	-e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	pāstōrum	patrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus	-ibus

a. The stems are found by dropping the ending *-is* in the genitive singular. They are *cōsul-*, *pāstor-*, and *patr-*.

b. The genitive plural of *sōl*, *sun*, is not found in the classical writings, but the omission may be accidental. Nouns which lack one or more cases are called defective nouns.

SYNTAX

The Ablative of Time

105. The time when or the time within which an event occurs is denoted by the ablative case without a preposition. (18)

Aestāte calor sōlis est magnus, in the summer the heat of the sun is great.

The Ablative of Accompaniment

106. Accompaniment is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition *cum*. (19)

Praedātōrēs cum Rōmulō pugnant, *the robbers fight with Romulus.*

a. The instrument or the means with which or by which anything is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. **Rōmulus armīs sē dēfendit, *Romulus finds himself with his arms.*** (See section 21.)

COMPOSITION

107. 1. I see the sun and the moon in the sky. 2. The sun gives great heat. 3. At night we do not see the sun. 4. In the summer the heat of the sun is greatest. 5. The consul comes into the city with the soldiers. 6. The boys see the soldiers with the consul in the street.

7. Romulus and Remus are brothers. 8. The brothers fight with the robbers in the woods. 9. The robbers capture (*capiunt*) the brother of Romulus. 10. Rhea Silvia is the daughter of Numitor and the mother of Remus. 11. Remus was like (to) his mother. 12. The shepherds are armed at once by Romulus. 13. Romulus leads the shepherds to Alba. 14. The brothers are protected by fortune.

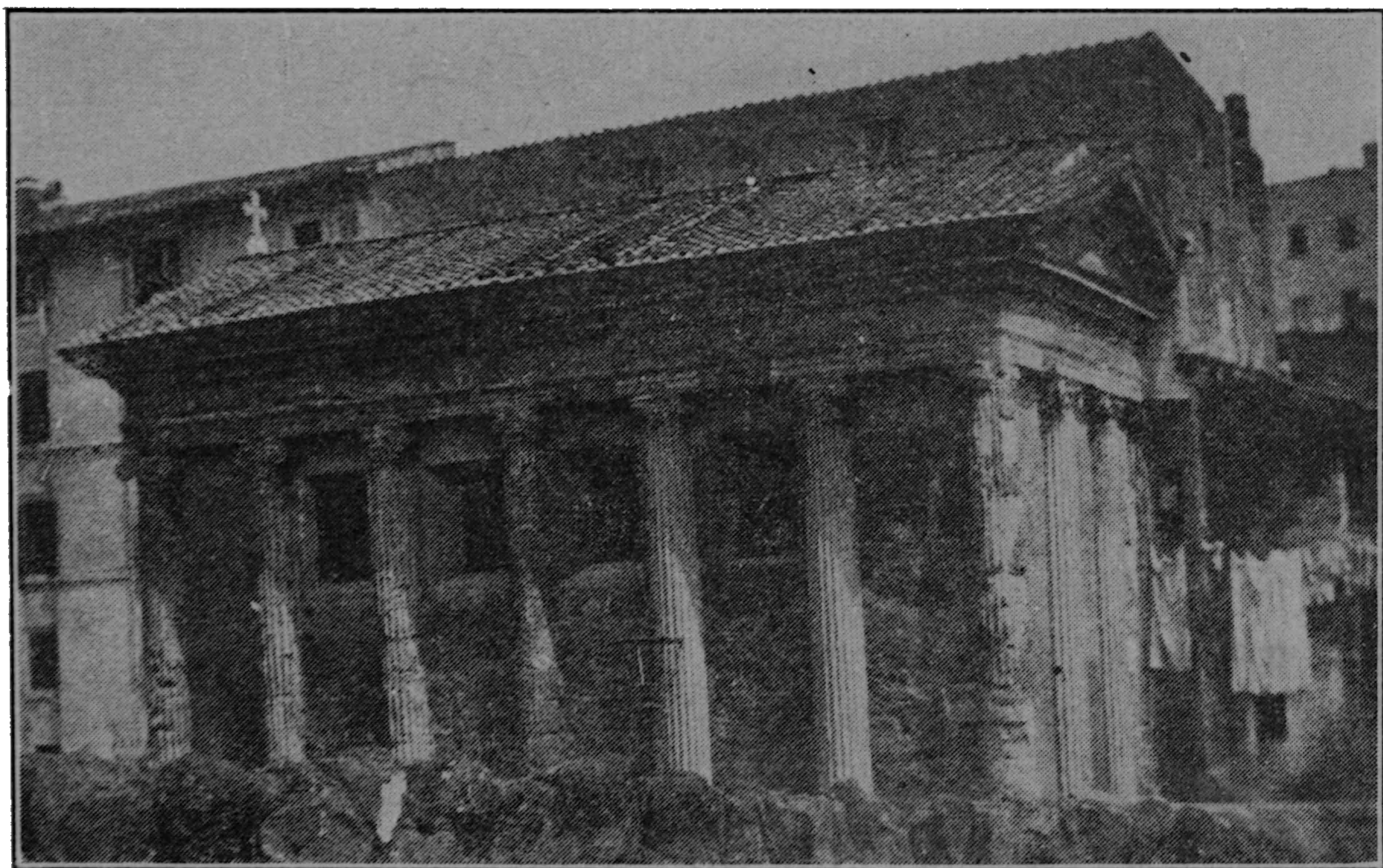


Photo by Henry V. Stearns

TEMPLUM FORTŪNAE UT DĪCITUR

CHAPTER XIV

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *n*

108. Many masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension have the nominative ending in *-ō*, with the genitive singular ending in *-ōnis* or *-inis*; as, *leō*, *leōnis*; *imāgō*, *imāginis*. The genitive form shows that the stem ends in *n*, but this letter does not appear in the nominative singular. There are many neuter nouns with stems in *n* which have the nominative in *n* also; as, *flūmen*, *flūminis* (stem, *flūmin-*).

109. Study the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of each noun. From the genitive case find the stem by dropping the case-ending, and compare the stem with the nominative case. Notice the omission of the case-ending and the dropping of the final letter of the stem (*n*) in the nominative and vocative singular. Observe also the variation in the vowel which precedes *n* in the other cases.

Review the declension of *rēx*, *mīles*, *prīnceps*, and *caput* (section 95); *cōnsul*, *pāstor*, and *pater* (section 104).

READING EXERCISE

110. 1. *Homō magnum leōnem in silvā videt.* 2. *Leō est rēx bēstiārum.* 3. *Leō hominem timet et ab homine timētur.* 4. *Nōn longē ā silvā est altum flūmen.* 5. *Cotīdiē leō ad flūmen venit.* 6. *Imāginem suam (his own) in aquā videt.* 7. *Sī leō vidētur, in silvam celeriter redit.* 8. *Timor hominum leōnem in silvam mittit.* 9. *In silvā leō aetātem agit et libertātem amat.* 10. *Cybele, magna deōrum māter, currū ab leōnibus tractō vehēbātur.*

11. *Flūmen nōn longē ab urbe Rōmā abest.* 12. *Nōmen flūminis est Tiberis.* 13. *In Ītaliā sunt multa flūmina.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

in cūstōdiā Remum habet, memoria nepōtum venit. Nam Remus mātrī similis erat. Repente Rōmulus cum armātis pāstōribus venit et frāterem liberat. Amūlium rēgem obtruncat et Numitōrem avum rēgem salūtat. Ita beneficiō nepōtum Numitor erat Albae rēx.

a. Write the declension of **rēx** and **nepōs** (stems in *g* and *t*); **pāstor** and **frāter** (stems in *r*); **latrō** (stem in *n*).

b. (*Notebook*). Explain the derivation of *accuse*, *liberate*, *memory*, *salute*, *similar*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

112.	Nom., leō ;	gen., leōnis ;	m.;	<i>lion.</i>
	Nom., imāgō ;	gen., imāginis ;	f.;	<i>image.</i>
	Nom., flūmen ;	gen., flūminis ;	n.;	<i>river.</i>

SINGULAR

				M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	leō	imāgō	flūmen	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnis	imāginis	flūminis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnī	imāginī	flūminī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnem	imāginem	flūmen	-em	—
<i>Voc.</i>	leō	imāgō	flūmen	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	leōne	imāgine	flūmine	-e	-e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnum	imāginum	flūminum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. The stems are **leōn-**, **imāgin-** and **flūmin-**.

b. In masculine and feminine nouns of this type the nominative singular is regularly formed from the stem by dropping **n** and changing the preceding **i** to **o**. The usual case-ending **-s** is omitted. All neuter nouns with stems ending in **n** have **-en** in the nominative, which becomes **-in** before the case-endings. This variation in the vowel is an illustration of the phonetic changes which are continually taking place.

c. Like **imāgō** decline **homō**, gen., **hominis**.

SYNTAX

Two Accusatives

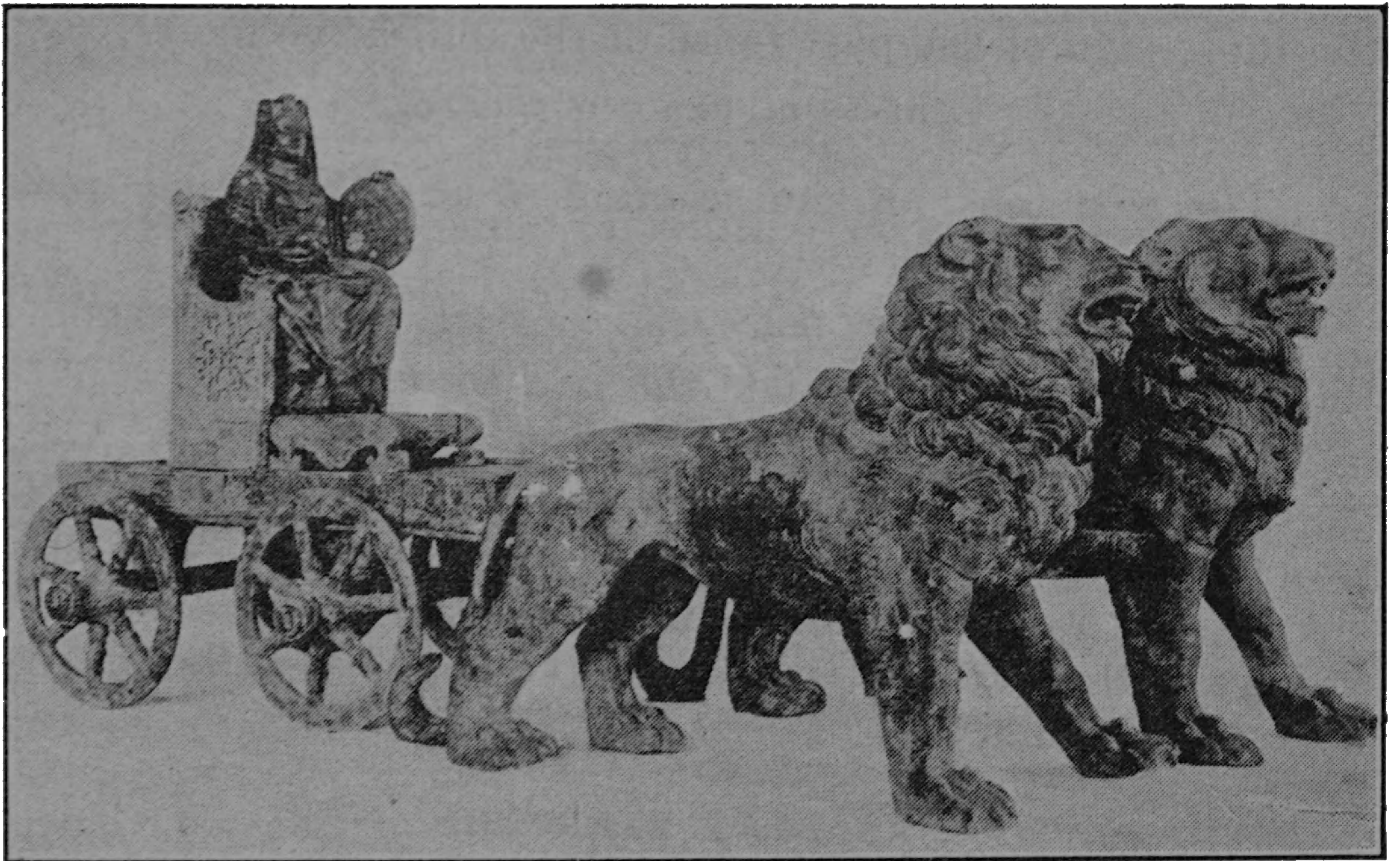
113. Verbs of making, calling, choosing, regarding, etc., may take two accusatives denoting the same person or thing. The second accusative may be an adjective. (20)

Numitōrem rēgem salūtat, he salutes Numitor as king; Scriptor Aenēān clārum habet, the writer regards Aeneas as famous.

COMPOSITION

114. 1. The wild beasts have the lion as king. 2. The car of Cybele, the mother of the gods, was drawn by lions.

3. Amulius is the name of the king. 4. The names of the shepherds are Romulus and Remus. 5. The robbers accuse the shepherds. 6. Numitor recognizes Remus as his grandson. 7. Remus is set free by his brother. 8. Then Numitor is saluted as king.



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

CURRUS CYBELAE AB LEONIBUS IUNCTIS TRACTUS

CHAPTER XV

THE PAST (IMPERFECT) INDICATIVE ACTIVE

115. The action of a verb may be represented as present, past, or future. It may also be represented as going on or as completed. In Latin the tense denotes both the time and the completeness or the incompleteness of the action. Thus the present tense represents the action as incomplete and the time as present: as,

Liberi lūdunt, *the children are playing (play).*

The past tense of the indicative represents the action as incomplete and the time as past; as,

Liberi lūdēbant, *the children were playing (played).*

In regular verbs the letters **-bā-** (**-ba-**) which appear between the present stem and the personal ending form the tense-sign of the past tense of the indicative mood; as,

Lūdē-ba-nt, *they were playing.*

The past tense of **sum** is **eram**, *I was*; **erās**, *you were*; **erat**, *he was*; etc.

The term *imperfect tense* was formerly used to designate the form which is here called the *past tense*.

116. Study the form of each verb in the following exercise and compare the new forms with those which have previously been learned, and translate so as to express the meaning naturally.

Rapidly review the conjugation of verbs in the present tense, and recall the personal endings of the active and the passive (sections 79 and 87).

READING EXERCISE

117. 1. Hodiē sum in agrīs; herī eram in urbe. 2. Tū herī ubi erās? 3. Ubi erat Mārcus? 4. Ego et Mārcus in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

b. **Sum** is an irregular verb and its forms differ considerably from the corresponding forms of other verbs. These forms occur very frequently and should be thoroughly memorized.

c. **Dō** has a short vowel (**a**) before the tense-sign **-bā-** and in this respect differs from the regular verbs of the first conjugation.

d. Conjugate the past tense of **sum**, **laudō**, and **videō**. Commit the forms to memory so that they may be recited rapidly and written correctly.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS

119. The past tense of the active voice, formed in the same manner in each of the four conjugations, is composed of three elements: (1) the present stem, with the characteristic vowel changed from **e** to **ē** in the third conjugation, and from **ī** to **iē** in the fourth conjugation; (2) the tense-sign **-bā-**, shortened to **-ba-** before **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**; (3) the regular personal endings of the active voice. **Amā-bā-s**, **vidē-ba-t**, **mittē-bā-tis**, **audiē-ba-nt**.

120. Find the present infinitive of each verb in the vocabulary and from the ending of the infinitive determine to what conjugation each verb belongs.

Notice how the past tense is formed in verbs of each of the four conjugations and translate each verb in the past tense so as to represent the action as incomplete and the time as past.

READING EXERCISE

121. 1. Herī librōs ad magistrum portābam. 2. Quid trāns viam herī portābās? 3. Nihil portābam; ego cum Mārcō eram; ille rosās ad filiās Cornēliae portābat. 4. Certē! hodiē librōs portāmus; herī rosās ad puellās portābāmus. 5. Ego vōs spectābam; tū et Mārcus rosās trāns viam ad filiās Cornēliae portābātis. 6. Portābant puerī rosās ad puellās.

7. In antiquīs urbibus erant multa templa deōrum.
8. Hominēs in templa deōrum multa dōna portābant.
9. Multās deōrum imāginēs in templis pulchris vidēbāmus.

10. Multī liberī in viīs lūdēbant. 11. Multī hominēs in Ītaliā antiquā prō patriā pugnābant.

12. Latrōnēs in agrīs Numitōris erant. 13. Cum latrōnibus Rōmulus et Remus saepe pugnābant. 14. Rōmulus fortiter sē armīs dēfendēbat. 15. Remum latrōnēs ad



Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

PANTHĒUM, TEMPLUM IOVIS

Amūlium perdūcēbant. 16. Ita eum accūsābant. 17. “Rēgis agrōs vāstābās.” 18. Sic Rēx Remum ad supplicium Numitōrī dabat. 19. Rōmulus cum armātīs pāstōribus veniēbat. 20. Rōmulus magnum amicōrum numerum habēbat. 21. Amīcī Rōmulī Numitōrem rēgem salūtābant.

NOTEBOOK WORK

b. Write and repeat orally the conjugation of **pugnābant**, **habēbant**, **ducēbant**, and **veniēbant** in the past indicative active.

CONJUGATION

122. **Amābam**, *I was loving, I loved*; **vidēbam**, *I was seeing, I saw*; **mittēbam**, *I was sending, I sent*; **audiēbam**, *I was hearing, I heard*.

SINGULAR

amābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
amābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
amābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat

PLURAL

amābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
amābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

a. The vowel preceding the tense-sign **-bā-** is always long except in the verb **dō**. (See section 118, c.)

The vowel **a** in the tense-sign **-bā-** is long except when it is followed by **-m**, **-t**, or **-nt**. In the fourth conjugation the characteristic vowel is changed from **ī** to **iē**.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Past Tense

123. The past tense represents action as going on in the past and may be called the past descriptive. (21)

Frātrēs cum latrōnibus pugnābant, *the brothers were fighting (fought) with the robbers*.

a. The past tense of the indicative is used to describe particulars and to represent habitual or attempted action. **Rōmulus cum pāstōribus veniēbat**, *Romulus was coming (came) with the shepherds*; **cum latrōnibus saepe pugnābant**, *they used to fight often with robbers*; **librīs operam dabāmus**, *we tried to give (were giving) attention to our books*.

COMPOSITION

124. 1. The leader was sending the soldiers into the fields. 2. The soldiers were bringing grain from the fields



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XVI

THE PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE

125. The past indicative passive is formed from the same tense of the active by changing the personal endings from **-m, -s, -t, etc.**, to **-r, -ris (-re), -tur, etc.** (See section 82.) Before the endings **-r** and **-ntur** the tense-sign **-bā-** is shortened to **-ba-**. This tense is formed in the same manner in verbs of all the conjugations.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>dabam, I was giving, I gave.</i>	<i>dabar, I was given.</i>
<i>timēbat, he was fearing, he feared.</i>	<i>timēbātur, he was feared.</i>
<i>mittēbāmus, we were sending, we sent.</i>	<i>mittēbāmur, we were sent.</i>
<i>impediēbant, they were hindering, they hindered.</i>	<i>impediēbantur, they were hindered.</i>

126. In reading the following exercise give attention chiefly to the passive forms of the verbs in the past tense. Recall the personal endings of the passive voice and the tense-sign of the past tense.

Review the conjugation of the past indicative active, section 122. Review also the conjugation of the present indicative, active and passive, sections 79 and 87.

The declension of nouns and adjectives should be reviewed occasionally, and also the rules of syntax.

Before the vocabulary is consulted, an effort should be made to recall the meanings of words previously used.

READING EXERCISE

127. 1. Herī ego lūdīs operam dabam; tū librīs operam dabās. 2. Tū ā magistrō laudābāris (-re); ego ā patre culpābar. 3. Puerī in hortō labōrābant; servī in agrīs lūdēbant. 4. Ā puerīs labōrī, lūdō ā servīs opera dabātur. 5. Servī ā dominō vidēbantur dum in agrīs lūdēbant. 6.

Posteā servi in poenam dabantur; puerī ā patribus in urbem mittēbantur. 7. Pueri ā sociīs beātī habēbantur quod in urbem a patribus mittēbantur. 8. Discipulī librōs noctū lūce lucernae legēbant; 9. sed lucerna lūcem nōn clāram dabat. 10. Itaque discipulī in viās veniēbant et in viīs cum amicīs lūdēbant.

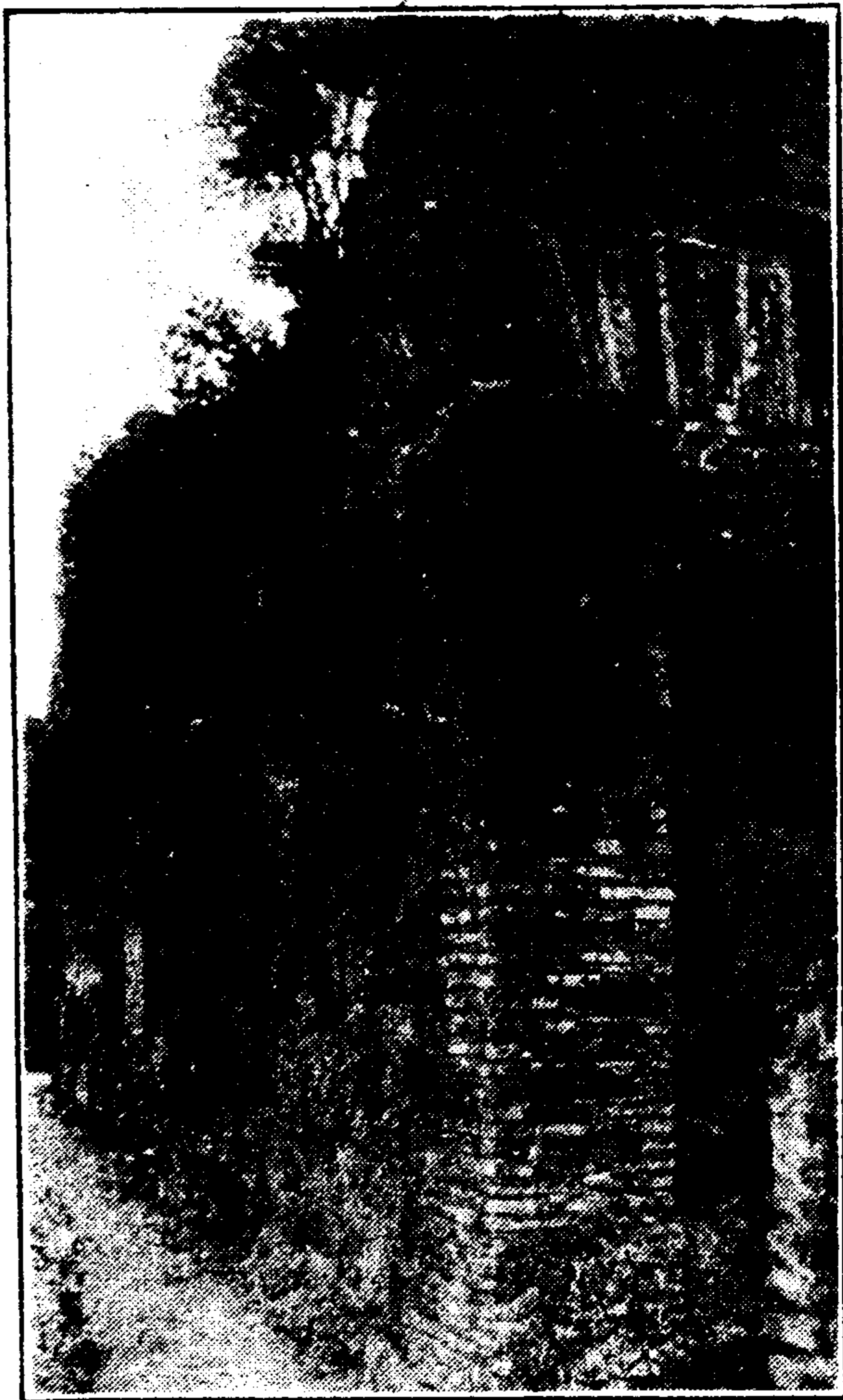
11. Remus ad rēgcm perdūcēbātur. 12. Ā latrōnibus accūsābātur. 13. Ad supplicium Numitōrī dabātur. 14. Repente frāter venit et eum (him) liberat. 15. Ā pāstōribus armātis Numitor rēx salūtābātur. 16. Beneficiō nepōtum Numitor erat rēx.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find a verb in each person of the past indicative passive.

b. Orally and in writing conjugate **dabātur** (**dabar**), **habēbantur** (**habēbar**), **dūcēbantur** (**dūcēbar**), and **audiēbantur** (**audiēbar**).

c. What time is denoted by the past tense? Is the action represented as completed or as incomplete?



MŪRUS RŌMULĪ

RŌMULUS URBEM RŌMAM VOCAT

128. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem aliam in Palātiō

vallum satis esse vidēbātur. Remus angustum vāllum inrīdēbat et id (it) trānsiliēbat. Proptereā frātrem irātus Rōmulus obtruncat. Itaque sōlus Rōmulus rēgnābat.

a. Suō nōminē, from his own name; vidēbātur, seemed.

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *augury*, *principle*, *sole* (alone), *victor*, *vulture*, *wall*.

CONJUGATION

129. Amābar, *I was (being) loved*; vidēbar, *I was (being) seen*; mittēbar, *I was (being) sent*; audiēbar, *I was (being) heard*.

SINGULAR

amābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
amābāris (-re)	vidēbāris (-re)	mittēbāris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)
amābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur

PLURAL

amābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

a. The vowel preceding the tense-sign *-bā-* is long; and the vowel *a* in the tense-sign *-bā-* is long except when it is followed by the ending *-r* or *-ntur*.

SYNTAX

Voice

130. The active voice represents the subject of the verb as acting or being. The passive voice represents the subject of the verb as acted upon. (22)

Remus vallum trānsiliēbat, *Remus was leaping over the rampart*;
Remus ab irātō frātre obtruncātur, *Remus is killed by his angry brother*.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

131. A transitive verb represents the action as directed towards some person or thing which is called the direct



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in s

133. In most of the nouns of the third declension the case-endings are joined directly to the stem; as, **rēx** (**rēg-s**), **milit-is**, **cōsul-em**, **sorōr-ēs**, etc. But in the declension of nouns whose stems end in s the case-ending is omitted in the nominative singular, which therefore has the same ending as the stem; and whenever the s of the stem occurs between two vowels it is changed to r, the sound of which in this position is more agreeable. Thus **flōs** instead of **floss** is the nominative, and **flōris** instead of **flōsis** is the genitive of **flōs**; **temporis** instead of **temposis** is the genitive of **tempus**; and **mōribus** rather than **mōsibus** is the ablative plural of **mōs**.

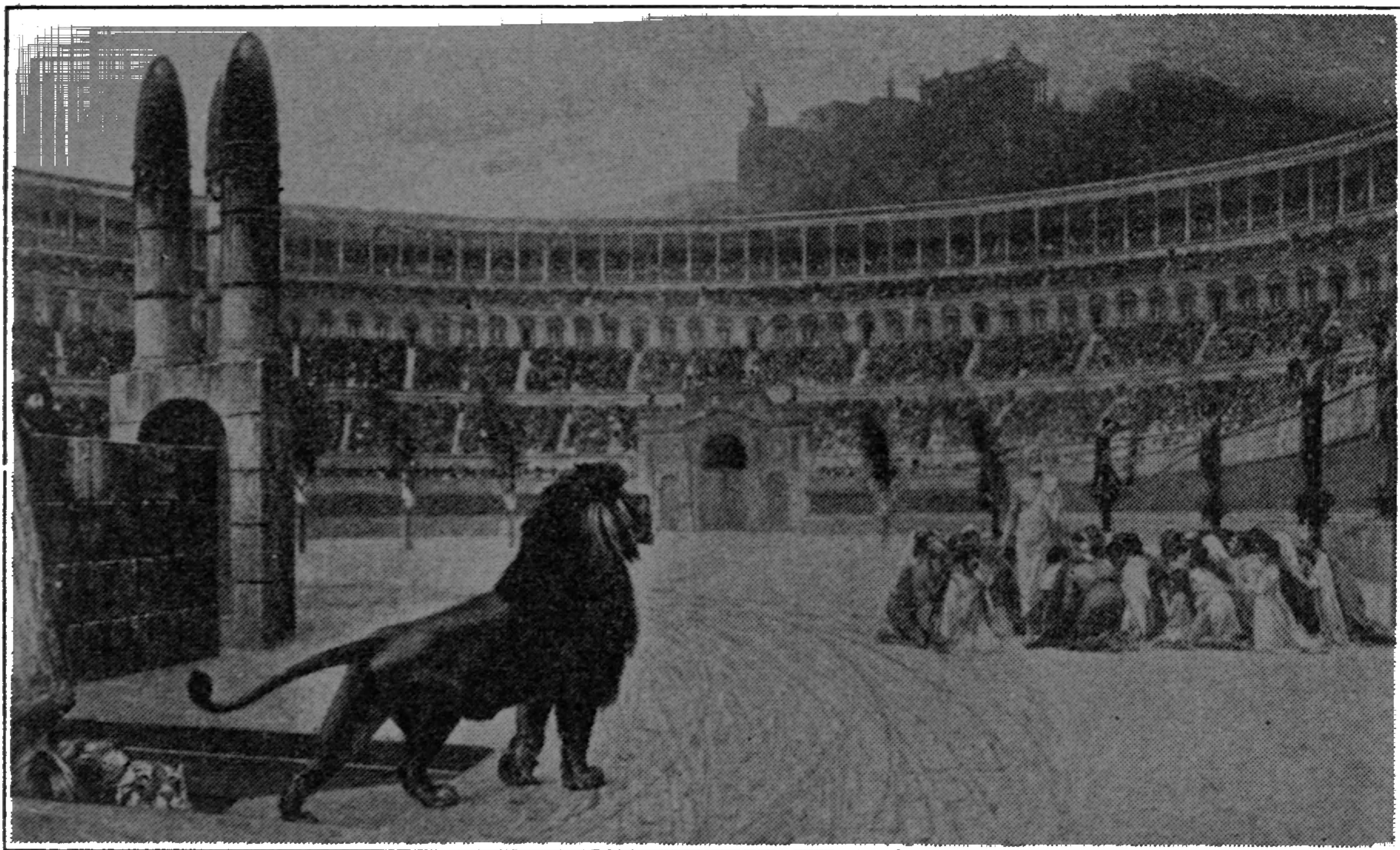
The declension of any of these nouns can easily be completed by joining the usual case-endings to that form of the stem which appears in the genitive case.

134. Review the nouns of the third declension found in sections 95, 104, and 112, and study the nouns of the third declension found in the following reading exercise. Particularly observe those nouns whose nominatives and stems end in s. Observe the case-endings and consider the use of each noun, and thus determine the case.

READING EXERCISE

135. Rosa est flōs pulcher. 2. Color flōris est albus. 3. Puella flōrem album habet. 4. Puella parva flōre pulchrō dēlectātur. 5. Nōmina multōrum flōrum puellae sunt nōta. 6. In hortō agricolae sunt multī flōrēs. 7. Flōrēs multōrum generum sunt in hortō. 8. Multa genera flōrum sunt in terrā. 9. Herī nostra mēnsa flōribus pulchris ōrnābātur.

10. Antīquīs temporibus multī hominēs erant barbarī. 11. Nostrō tempore nōn omnēs hominēs sunt urbānī. 12. Tempora patrum nostrōrum erant clāra. 13. Nostra tempora sunt quoque bona. 14. Senex tempora patrum laudat; nostrum tempus culpat. 15. Rōmae antīquīs temporibus hominēs cum leonibus in arēnā pugnābant. 16. Multī Rōmānōrum mōrēs bonī erant, sed nōn omnēs eōrum mōrēs laudāmus. 17. Multa dē mōribus hominum antīquōrum audīmus.



From the painting by Gerome

LEŌ ATQUE HOMINĒS IN ARĒNĀ

18. Rōma in Palātiō ab Rōmulō et Remō condēbātur. 19. Ā Remō sex, ā Rōmulō duodecim vulturēs vidēbantur. 20. Auguriō Rōmulus erat victor. 21. Remus parvum vallum novae urbis inrīdēbat. 22. Proptereā Rōmulus irātus frātrē obtruncat.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write and recite the declension of *mōs, mōris*; *tempus, temporis*; and *genus, generis*.

INCOLAE URBI NOVAE DE-ERANT

136. Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem habēbat; incolae de-erant. Erat in proximō lūcus. In hōc locō asyllum aperit. Eō multitudō multōrum generum, latrōnum pāstōrumque, liberōrum atque servōrum venit. Id erat prīncipium magnitudinis populī Rōmānī.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Explain the derivation of *asylum*, *image*, *magnitude*, *multitude*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

137.	Nom., flōs;	gen., flōris;	m.;	<i>flower.</i>
	Nom., tempus;	gen., temporis;	n.;	<i>time.</i>
	Nom., genus;	gen., generis;	n.;	<i>kind.</i>

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	flōs	tempus	genus
<i>Gen.</i>	flōris	temporis	generis
<i>Dat.</i>	flōrī	temporī	generī
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrem	tempus	genus
<i>Voc.</i>	flōs	tempus	genus
<i>Abl.</i>	flōre	tempore	genere

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Gen.</i>	flōrum	temporum	generum
<i>Dat.</i>	flōribus	temporibus	generibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Voc.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Abl.</i>	flōribus	temporibus	generibus

a. The stems of these nouns are found by comparing the forms in the nominative and genitive singular. They are **flōs-**, **tempos-**, and **genus-** (**genos-**). The case-ending is omitted in the nominative singular, and between two vowels the **s** of the stem is changed to **r**. This is in accordance with the general law of phonetic change, the sound of **r** being easier to pronounce between two vowels.

b. In the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of **tempus** and **genus** the vowel **o** is weakened to **u**; and in all other cases of **genus** **o** is weakened to **e**. Thus we find **tempus** for **tempos**, and **generis** for **genosis** or **genoris**.

c. Many neuter nouns are declined like **tempus** and **genus**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

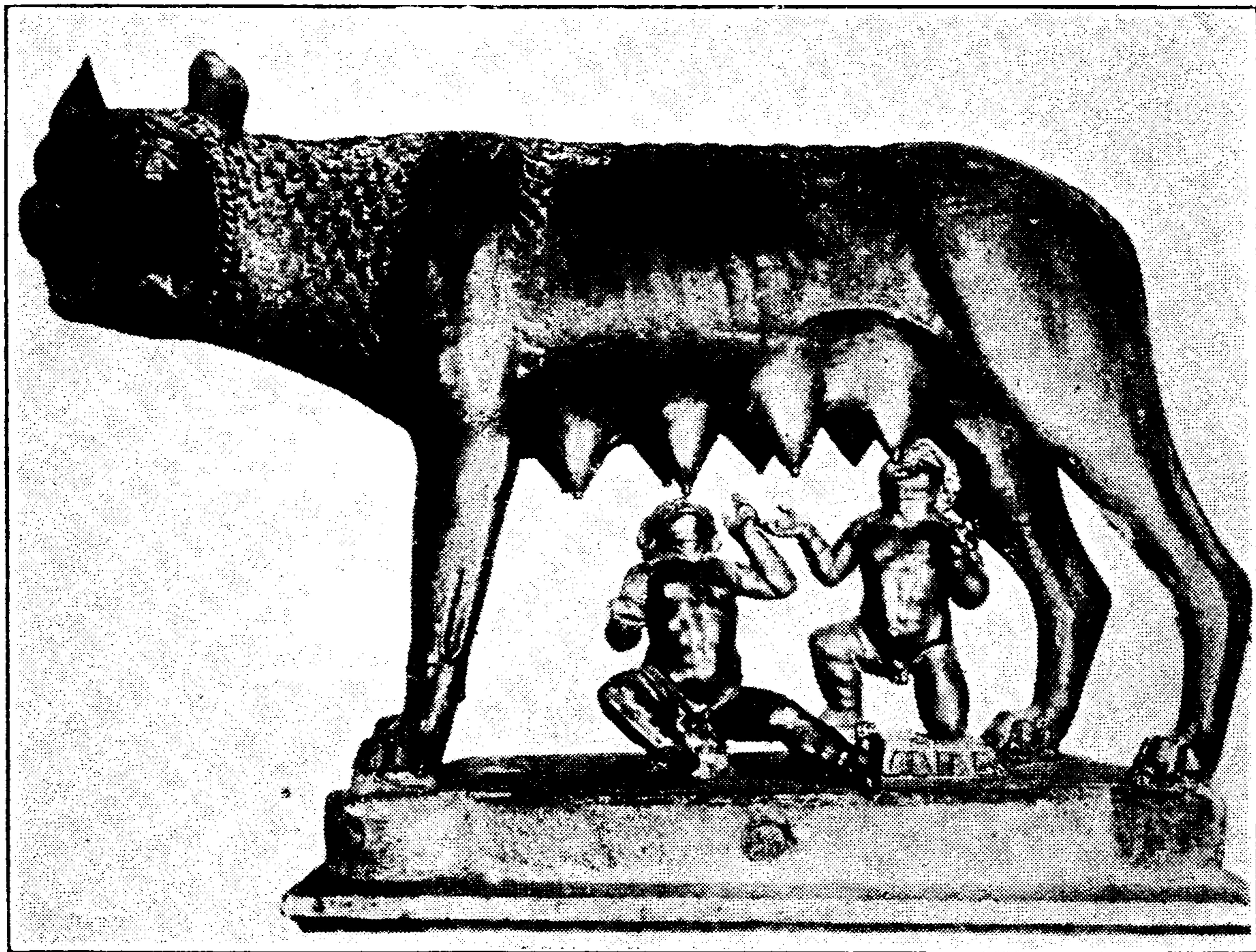
*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *i*

140. All of the nouns of the third declension whose stems end in *i* have the ending **-ium** in the genitive plural.



STATUA LUPAE

© *Brown Bros., N. Y.*

Masculine and feminine nouns with *i*-stems have either **-ēs** or **-īs** in the accusative plural, and a few have the ending **-im** instead of **-em** in the accusative singular and **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular. All neuter nouns with *i*-stems have **-ī** in the ablative singular and **-ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural. These endings, which at first seem peculiar, are due to the presence of the vowel *i* in the stem.

141. Continue the study of the nouns of the third declension, observing especially the peculiar endings which belong to the *i*-stems. The position and the use of the noun in the sentence and the form of a modifying adjective are usually sufficient to enable the student to determine the case of any noun although its form may be the same in several different cases.

READING EXERCISE

142. 1. Urbs Rōma est in Ītaliā. 2. Rōma est nōmen antīquae urbis. 3. Multae urbēs sunt in Ītaliā. 4. Rōma est maxima urbium Ītaliae. 5. Hostēs quondam cōpiās in multās urbīs (urbēs) Ītaliae mittēbant. 6. Hostēs populī Rōmānī multās nāvīs habēbant. 7. Militēs hostium nāvibus veniēbant. 8. Terrā marique hostēs magnō cum numerō militum veniēbant. 9. Rōmānī quoque nāvīs longās in mari habēbant. 11. His (with these) nāvibus ōrās Ītaliae ab hostibus dēfendēbant. 12. Cīvēs Rōmānī cum hostibus prō patriā pugnābant. 13. Carthāginiēnsēs erant hostēs Rōmānōrum. 14. Hannibal erat dux hostium. 15. Trāns iuga Alpium, montium altissimōrum, cōpiās in Ītaliā dūxit (he led). 16. Tandem erat fīnis longī bellī et Rōmānī erant victōrēs.

17. Ītalia est inter duo maria, quōrum (of which) Mare Īnferum et Mare Superum sunt nōmina. 18. Flūmen Tiberis in Mare Īnferum influit. 19. In Ītaliā sunt aitī montēs. 20. Urbs Rōma est in septem collibus sita. 21. Urbs septem collium est Rōma. 22. Mōns Iāniculum nōn longē ab flūmine Tiberī aberat. 23. In flūmen Tiberim antīquīs temporibus filiī Rhēae Silviae mittēbantur.

24. In prīncipiō incolae novae urbis erant paucī. 25. Multī autem in asyllum veniēbant. 26. Latrōnēs pās-tōrēsque erant primī cīvēs Rōmānī. 27. In prīncipiō urbis animālia quoque partem habēbant. 28. Lupa Rōmulum Remumque servābat et vulturēs Rōmulō rēgnum dabant.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write all the forms of **mōns**, **collis**, **nāvis**, and **mare** which are found in this exercise and complete the declension by supplying any omitted forms.

b. What is the ending of these nouns in the genitive plural?

c. What are the accusative and the ablative cases of **Tiberis**?

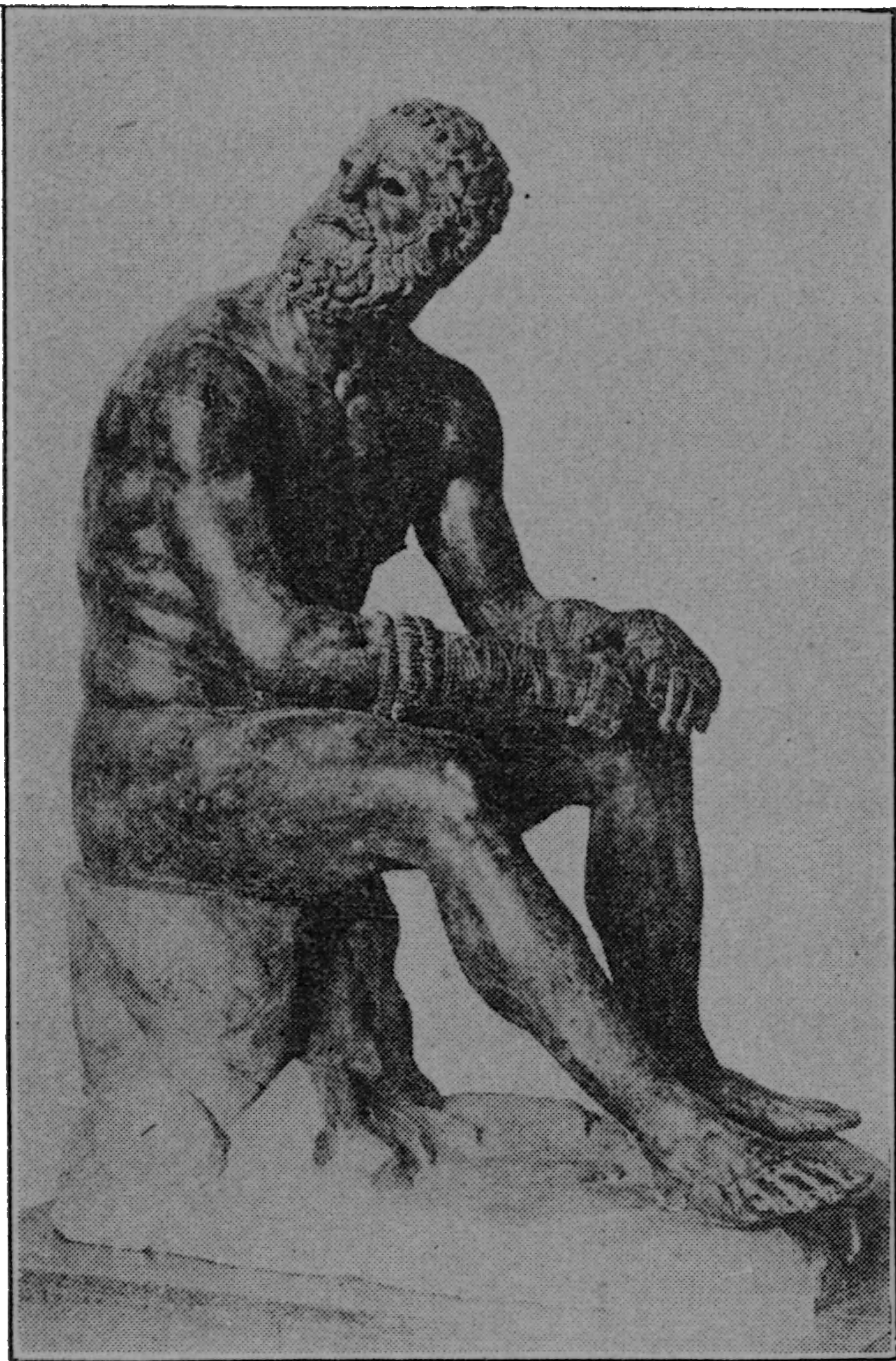


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

PUGIL

VIR QUĪ IN LŪDĪS CAESTŪ PUGNAT

RŌMULUS SOCIETĀTEM
POPULŌ NOVŌ PETIT

143. Rōmulus ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habēbant. Itaque lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mittit. Societātem cōnūbi-umque novō populō petit. Nusquam benignē audī-tur lēgātiō. Fīnitimī novam urbem et spernē-bant et timēbant. Ā multīs rogābātur, “Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asy-lum aperīs?” Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dis-simulāns lūdōs parat. Indīcī (to be announced) fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī undique conveniunt. Sabīnōrum omnis multitudō cum

liberīs ac coniugibus venit.

a. Explain the derivation of *convene*, *legation*, *society*, *spectacle*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

144.	Nom., urbs ;	gen., urbis ;	f.;	<i>city</i> .
	Nom., hostis ;	gen., hostis ;	m.;	<i>enemy</i> .
	Nom., nāvis ;	gen., nāvis ;	f.;	<i>ship</i> .
	Nom., mare ;	gen., maris ;	n.;	<i>sea</i> .



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

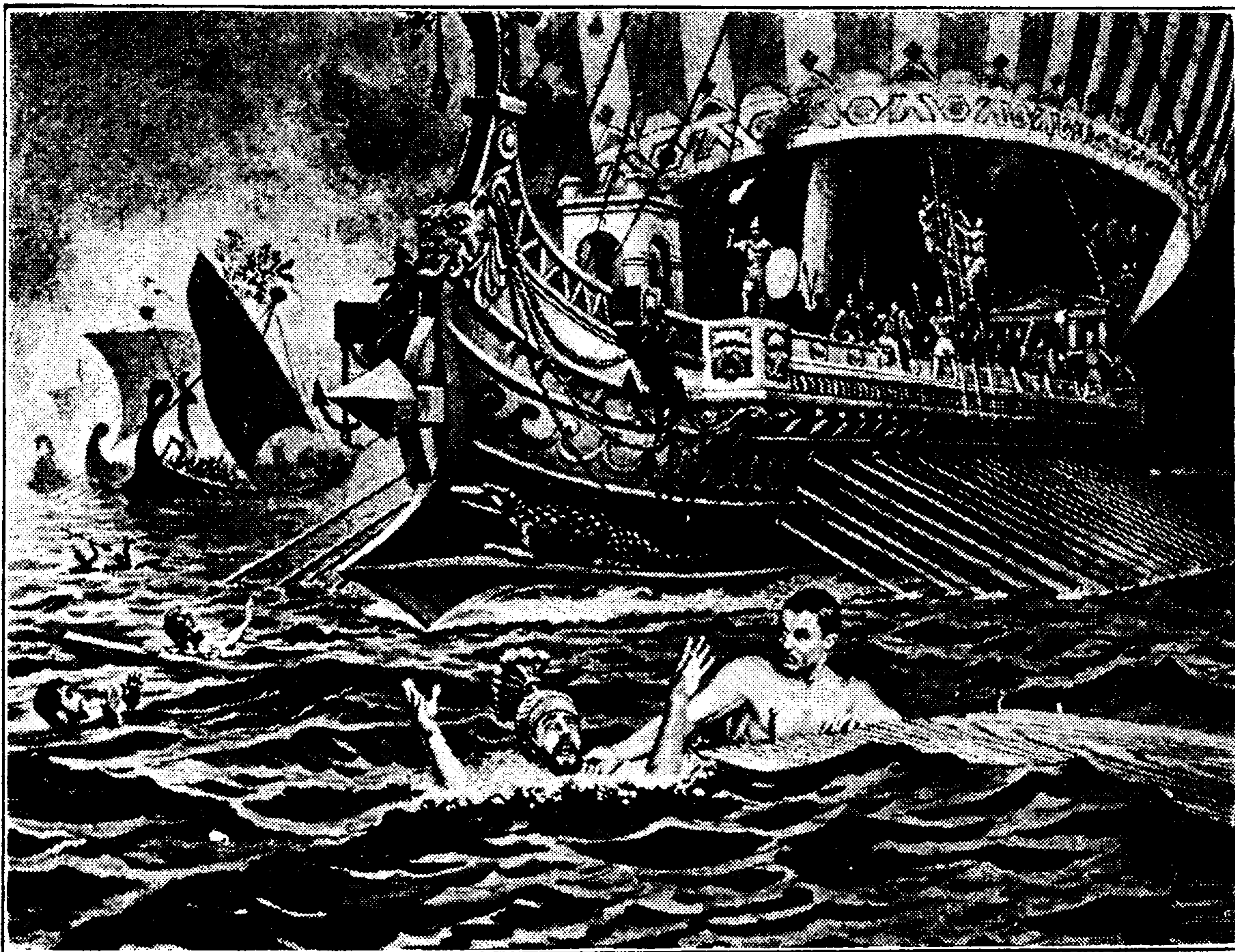
Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the forces of the enemy. 6. Rome is not far away from the sea into which (quod) the river Tiber flows. 7. Across the river Tiber is Mount Janiculum, and in the river there is an island.



CERTĀMEN INTER NĀVĪS LONGĀS

8. Bad people came to the asylum of Romulus. 9. The citizens of the new city seemed (were seen) to be (esse) bad people. 10. The neighboring tribes feared the inhabitants of the new city. 11. The inhabitants of new cities are not always bad. 12. The neighboring tribes were not giving wives to the men of the new city. 13. Romulus concealed his disappointment (grief of mind). 14. Games are prepared and announced to the neighbors. 15. The wives and children of the Sabines were coming to the spectacle.

CHAPTER XIX

REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

English Nouns Derived from Latin Nouns

146. Nouns of the third declension are classified in groups according to the endings of their stems. The char-



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM ET TEMPLUM SĀTURNIUM

acteristics of each group have been pointed out in connection with the paradigms in sections 95, 104, 112, 137, and 144. The paradigms should be reviewed as often as may be necessary until the student is able to write them readily

and to repeat them without hesitation; and the typical nouns should serve as models for the identification of the cases of any other nouns of the third declension.

147. In studying the following exercise give attention particularly to the nouns of the third declension. Find the nominative and the genitive cases in the vocabulary and observe the gender of each noun. Classify the nouns, according to the endings of the stems, in the groups represented by the typical nouns whose declension is given in the paradigms. A few irregular nouns will be found which will require special consideration, but whose case forms can easily be identified by the aid of the vocabulary and the usual case-endings.

Determine the case, number, and gender of each noun and explain the use of the case by reference to the proper rule of syntax (section 571, 1-24).

Read the Latin sentences aloud, grouping the words properly and giving the right expression, and translate into idiomatic English.

READING EXERCISE

148. 1. Rōma est caput Ītaliae. 2. Antīquīs temporibus Rōma erat caput orbis terrārum. 3. Flūmen Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. 4. Aqua flūminis flāva est. 5. Multī pontēs super flūmen sunt. 6. Urbs Rōma in septem collibus est sita. 7. Nōmina collium sunt haec: Mōns Capitōlīnus, Palātīnus, Aventīnus, Quirinālis, Vīminālis, Esquilīnus, Caelius. 8. In monte Capitōlīnō Rōmulus asyllum aperit quod (because) incolae urbī novae deerant. 9. In hōc monte quoque erat arx atque templum Iovis. 10. Ab ūnā parte huius montis erat rūpēs Tarpēia, unde scelerātī ad mortem mittēbantur. 11. Inter Capitōlium et Palātium erat forum Rōmānum. 12. In forō Rōmānō ruinae templōrum magnōrum videntur. 13. Columnae octo templī Sāturniī etiam nunc ā viātōre videntur. 14. Nōn longē ab forō est Colossēum. 15. In hōc locō antīquīs temporibus ferae cum hominibus pugnābant. 16. Hominēs cum leōnibus et



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

149. Nouns of the third declension are classified in the following groups according to the ending of the stems.

(1) Mute stems ending in *c, g, d, t, or p*. *Dux* (*duc-*), *rēx* (*rēg-*), *pēs* (*ped-*), *mīles* (*mīlit-*), *caput* (*capit-*), *prīnceps* (*prīncip-*).

(2) Liquid stems ending in *l* or *r*. *Cōnsul* (*cōnsul-*), *pāstor* (*pāstor-*), *pater* (*patr-*).

(3) Nasal stems ending in *n*. *Leō* (*leōn-*), *imāgō* (*imāgin-*), *flūmen* (*flūmin-*).

(4) Stems ending in *s*. *Flōs* (*flōs-*, *flōr-*), *tempus* (*tempos-*, *tempor-*), *genus* (*genos-*, *gener-*).

(5) Stems ending in *i*. *Urbs* (*urbi-*), *hostis* (*hosti-*), *nāvis* (*nāvi-*), *mare* (*mari-*).

(6) Irregular nouns. *Iuppiter*, *iter*, and *vis* are examples.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

150. Many English nouns have been derived from Latin nouns of the third declension. These derivatives are based on the stem rather than on the nominative case, and in many instances they have the form of the Latin stem without change; as,

lēgātiō, *lēgātiōn-is*, *legation*.

pars, *part-is*, *part*.

If the Latin nominative is the same as the stem, the English noun is identical with the Latin; as,

cōnsul, *cōnsul-is*, *consul*.

pāstor, *pāstōr-is*, *pastor*.

Some characteristic endings occur with great frequency; as, the English *-ion* in *legation* from the Latin *lēgātiō*, *lēgātiōn-is*; and the English *-ty* for the Latin *-tās* in *society* from *societās*, *humanity* from *hūmānitās*, etc.

Frequently the English ending shows the general ten-

dency to simplify words by substituting sounds easier to pronounce for those which are more difficult; as, *virtue* from *virtūs* (*virtūt-is*), *host* from *hostis*, etc.

LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

151. In the following list are included several Latin nouns not previously used in this book, but formed from Latin nouns or other words which have been used. This illustrates the process of word-formation in Latin, which will be described later, a single word often serving as the basis for the formation of several other Latin words from each of which English words may have been derived. English derivatives from Latin nouns include not only nouns but verbs and adjectives.

<i>animal</i> , <i>animal</i> .	<i>īnfīnitās</i> (in-fīnis), <i>infinity</i> .
<i>cīvitās</i> (cīvis), <i>city</i> .	<i>leō</i> , <i>leōn-is</i> , <i>lion</i> .
<i>fīnis</i> , <i>sine</i> .	<i>magnitūdō</i> , <i>magnitude</i> .
<i>hostis</i> , <i>host</i> (army).	<i>mōns</i> , <i>mont-is</i> , <i>mount</i> .
<i>hostilitās</i> (<i>hostilis</i> from <i>hostis</i>), <i>hostility</i> .	<i>nāvis</i> , <i>nave</i> (in architecture), <i>navy</i> .
<i>hūmānitās</i> (<i>hūmānus</i> from <i>homō</i>), <i>humanity</i> .	<i>necessitās</i> , <i>necessity</i> .
<i>imperātor</i> , <i>emperor</i> .	<i>orbis</i> , <i>orb</i> , <i>orbit</i> .
	<i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> , <i>peace</i> .
	<i>soror</i> , <i>sorority</i> (as if from <i>sorōritās</i>).

NOTEBOOK WORK

a: Trace the following English nouns to Latin nouns of the third declension

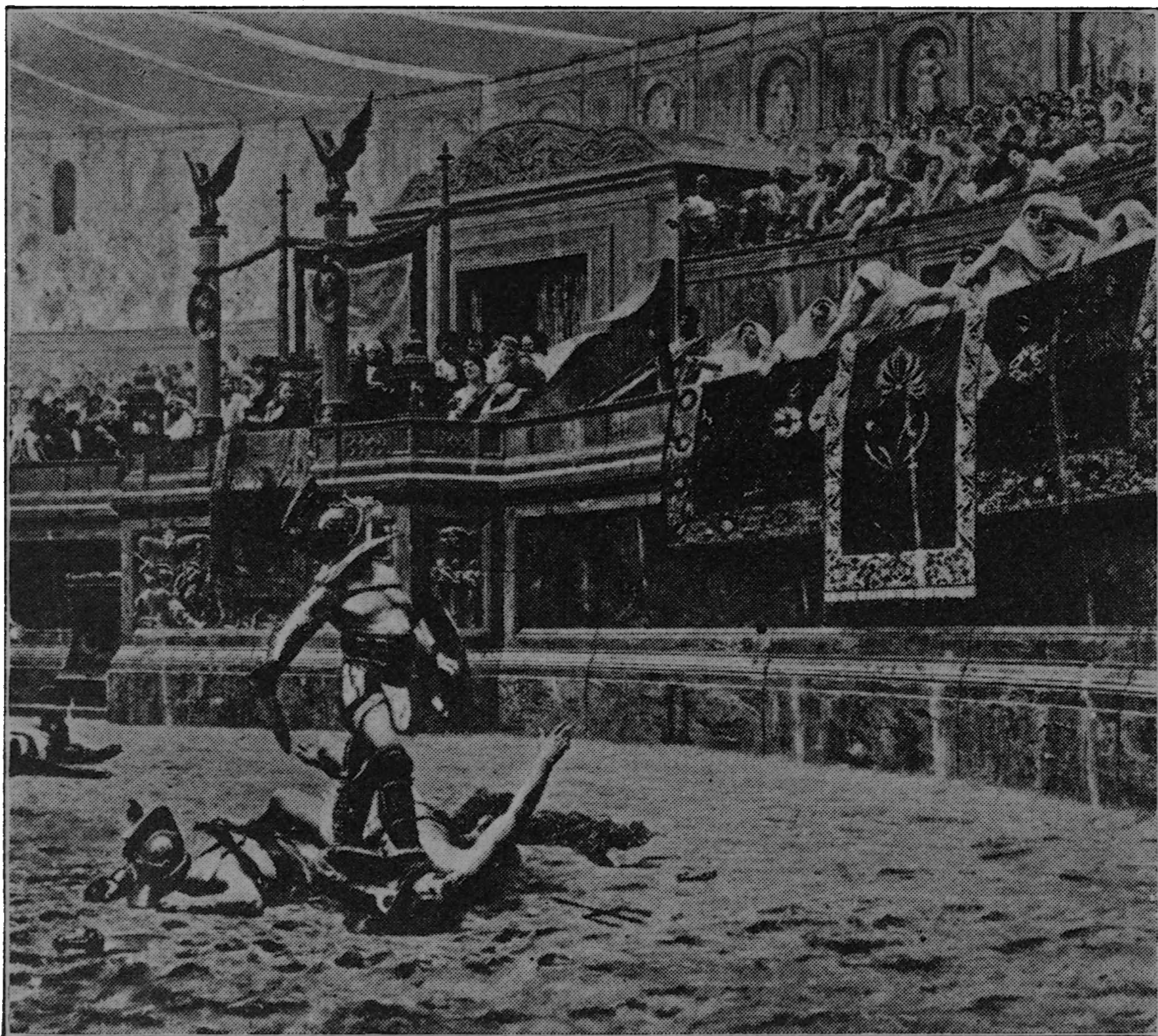
art	fraternity	navigation
charity	image	victor
florist	liberty	virtue

NOTE.—An unabridged English dictionary will furnish additional material for studies of this kind. Practice in observing the connection between Latin and English words in the lists given will develop an intelligent interest in the subject of word-formation and will prepare the way for more extended study. This study need not be confined to the review lessons but may be continued at convenient intervals.

COMPOSITION

152. 1. The capital of Italy is an ancient city. 2. The yellow Tiber flows through the city of Rome. 3. Tell me (*Dic mihi*) the names of the seven hills of Rome. 4. The

pupil tells (to) his master the names of the seven hills of Rome. 5. The Roman citadel was on the Capitoline hill. 6. Romulus, the first king of Rome, had an asylum on the mountain where the temple of Jupiter now is. 7. In ancient times criminals were thrown from the Tarpeian rock. 8. The



PUGNA GLADIĀTŌRUM

ruins of the forum are seen between the Capitol and the Palatine. 9. In the temples the people offered (gave) gifts to their gods. 10. In the great colosseum the ancient Romans used to see (were seeing) sports and exhibitions. 11. Men used to fight in the arena with wild beasts. 12. Exhibitions were pleasing to the ancient Romans. 13. Armies



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XX

THE FUTURE TENSE

153. The future tense has the same significance in Latin as in English, but in Latin it is used with somewhat greater exactness; for example,

Discipulus laetus erit si magister eum laudābit, the pupil will be happy if the master shall praise (praises) him.

In the first and second conjugations the future tense is distinguished by the tense-sign **-bi-** (changed to **-bō-** in the first person singular, and to **-bu-** in the third person plural.

laudā-bi-t, he will praise; habē-bu-nt, they will have; da-bō, I will (shall) give.

The future tense of **sum** is **erō, I shall be; eris, you will be; erit, he will be, etc.**

154. Review the active forms of the verbs which have previously been learned: the present tense (sections 69, 79), and the past (imperfect) tense (sections 118, 122).

In the following exercise study the future forms and observe how they differ from the present and the past tenses. Compare the tense-sign **-bā-** of the past tense with the tense-sign **-bi-** of the future, and notice the modifications of the future tense-sign in the first person singular and the third person plural.

At first it will be well to translate the Latin future literally; but after its use is thoroughly understood, the Latin future may sometimes be translated by the English present, as in the illustrative sentence above.

READING EXERCISE

155. 1. Herī eram in agrīs; hodiē sum domī; crās iterum in agrīs erō. 2. Ubi tū crās eris? 3. Ego cum Mārcō in hortō erō. 4. Eritne Mārcus tēcum? 5. Ego et Mārcus in hortō erimus. 6. Eritisne tū et Mārcus in hortō? 7. In hortō erimus; amīcī nostrī nōbiscum in hortō crunt.

8. Hodiē magister discipulōs laudat; herī eōs culpābat; crās fortasse eōs iterum laudābit. 9. “Nōne nōs laudābis,” discipulī ex magistrō rogant, “sī dīlīgenter labōrābimus?” 10. “Lībenter vōs laudābō,” magister respondet, “sī dīlīgenter labōrābitis.” 11. Sī discipulī dīlīgenter labōrābunt, magister eōs lībenter laudābit.

12. Quid, puer, in dextrā habēs? 13. Pilam nunc habeō, sed mox eam nōn habēbō. 14. Cūr nōn diūtius pilam habēbis? Quis eam habēbit? 15. Magister pilam mox habēbit. Mē in poenam dabit sī nōn librum Latīnum in dextrā habēbō. 16. Fortasse pilam parvīs puerīs dabō; magister nōn irātus erit sī puerī parvī pilam habēbunt. 17. Eritisne laetī, puerī, sī pilam habēbitis? 18. “Laetī erimus,” puerī respondent, “sī pilam habēbimus.”

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write out the conjugation of **sum** (**erō**), **laudō** (**laudābō**), **dō** (**dabō**), and **habeō** (**habēbō**) in the future tense, giving the meaning of each form. Observe that in **dabō** the vowel **a** is short.

CONJUGATION

156. **Erō**, *I shall be*; **dabō**, *I shall give*; **habēbō**, *I shall have*.

SINGULAR

			TENSE- PERSONAL		
			SIGN	ENDING	
erō ,	<i>I shall be</i>	dabō	habēbō	-bō	(-ō)
eris ,	<i>you will be</i>	dabis	habēbis	-bi-	-s
erit ,	<i>he will be</i>	dabit	habēbit	-bi-	-t

PLURAL

erimus ,	<i>we shall be</i>	dabimus	habēbimus	-bi-	-mus
eritis ,	<i>you will be</i>	dabitis	habēbitis	-bi-	-tis
erunt ,	<i>they will be</i>	dabunt	habēbunt	-bu-	-nt

a. The tense-sign **-bi** (**-bō**, **-bu-**) belongs to the first and second conjugations only.

- b. In *dō* the vowel *a* is short before the tense-sign. See also 118, c.
 c. All the tense forms of *sum* should be learned as they are introduced.
 d. Commit to memory the future of *sum*, *laudō*, *dō*, and *habeō*.

SYNTAX

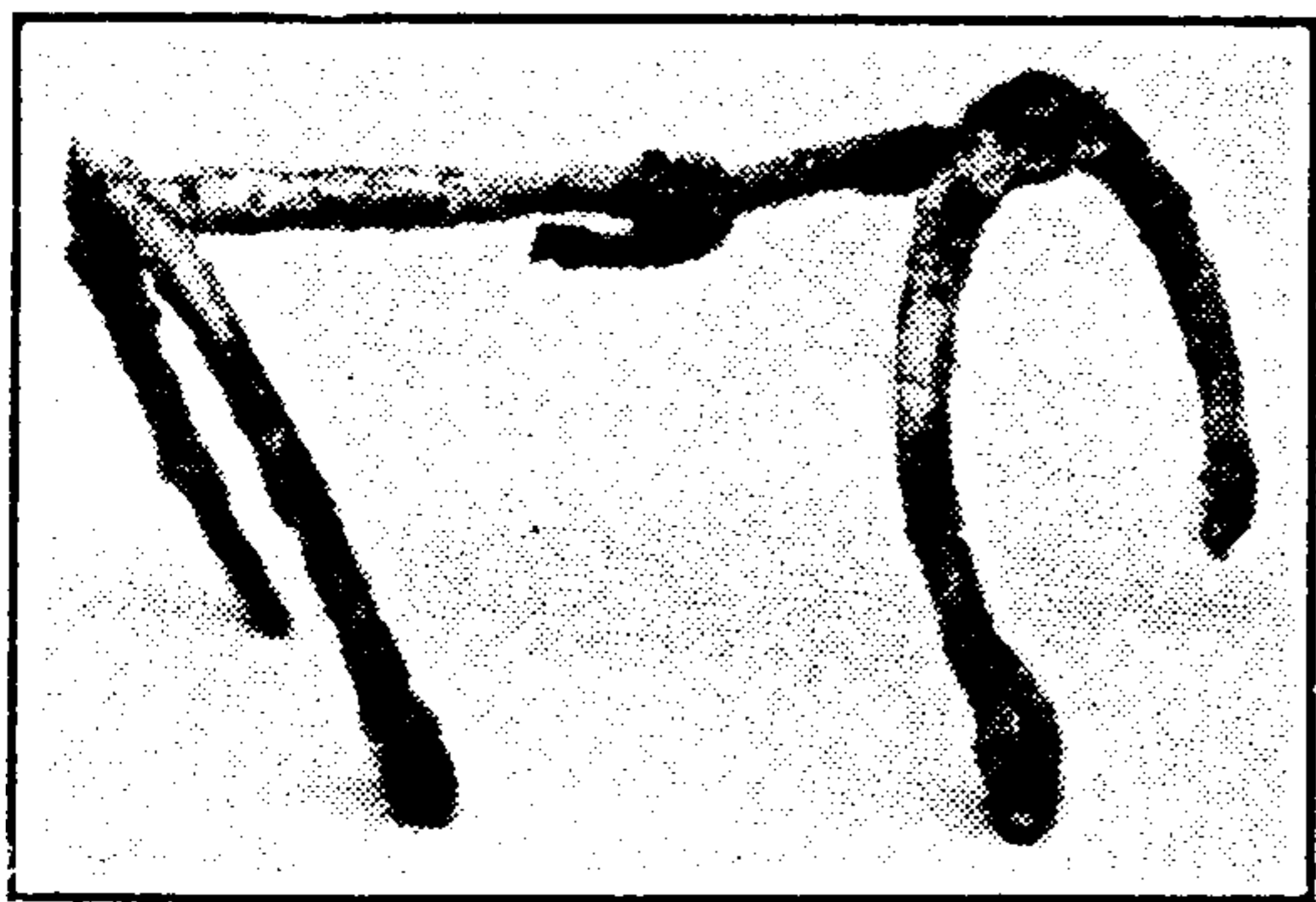
The Use of the Future Tense

157. The future indicative represents action as going on in the future. (25)

Rōmulus novae urbī nōmen dabit, Romulus will give a name to the new city.

COMPOSITION

158. 1. Yesterday I was in the forest; to-day I am at home; to-morrow I shall be in the city. 2. If you are (shall be) in the city to-morrow, you will see the soldiers in the streets. 3. The general will be in the city with a large number of soldiers. 4. We shall be happy when we see (shall see) our friends again. 5. The boys will be happy if they see (shall see) the soldiers. 6. Boys, shall you be happy if you see the soldiers?



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

FRĒNUM

7. Who will give a name to the new city? 8. Will the neighbors give wives to Romulus and the Roman people? 9. The messengers of Romulus are sent to the neighboring tribes. 10. The messengers ask, "Will you (pl.) give wives to Romulus and the Romans?" 11. The neighbors reply, "We will not give wives to the Romans." 12. Romulus will conceal his disappointment and will prepare games and exhibitions.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

hominēs Rōmam undique venient atque ibi templa antīqua et imāginēs clārōrum Rōmānōrum vidēbunt. 4. Aliquandō ego ipse fortasse Rōmam veniam et monumenta temporis antīquī vidēbō. 5. Nōne tū aliquandō in Ītaliā veniēs? 6. Fortasse tū atque pater tuus ūnā veniētis. 7. Laetī veniēmus sī poterimus (if we shall be able, if we can). 8. Nōne ad mē, dum in urbe Rōmā eris, epistulam mittēs? 9. Sī ad mē tū scribēs, ad tē ego scribam. 10. Mihi erit grātum sī ad mē cotīdiē epistulam mittēs.

11. In urbe quam Rōmulus regēbat erant paucī incolae. 12. Unde urbs incolās habēbit? 13. Rōmulus populusque uxōrēs nōn habēbant. 14. Num vicīnae gentēs filiās uxōrēs mittent? 15. Fīliās nōn mittent quod novam urbem timent. 16. Lēgātī circā vicīnās gentēs mittuntur. 17. Nusquam benignē audītur lēgātiō. 18. Itaque ā Rōmulō lūdī parantur. 19. Sabīnī finitimī cum filiīs atque fīliābus ad spectāculum veniunt. 20. Nōne Rōmānī filiās Sabīnōrum uxōrēs habēbunt? Fortasse.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Distinguish carefully and explain the difference between the present tense in the second conjugation and the future tense in the third. **Habent**, they have; **mittent**, they will send.

b. Write out the conjugation of **parō** (**parābō**), **dēleō** (**dēlēbō**), **regō** (**regam**), and **audiō** (**audiam**) in the future indicative active.

RŌMĀNĪ VIRGINĒS SABĪNŌRUM RAPIUNT

162. Ubi spectāculī tempus venit et in lūdōs conversae mentēs cum oculīs sunt, tum signum datur et Rōmānī discurrunt atque virginēs rapiunt. Haec (this) erat statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmunt. Dum Rōmae appropinquant Tarpēiam virginem vident, quae aquam extrā mūrōs petēbat. Tarpēiae pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae dicit, “Tibi optiōnem dabō mūneris sī Sabīnōs in Capitōlium dūcēs.”

a. *Ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seized maidens, on account of the seizing of the maidens: praeerat arcī, was in command of the citadel.*

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *capitol, cause, extra, oculist, option, sign, virgin.*

CONJUGATION

163. *Amābō, I shall love; vidēbō, I shall see; mittam I shall send; audiam, I shall hear.*

SINGULAR

amābō	vidēbō	mittam	audiam
amābis	vidēbis	mittēs	audiēs
amābit	vidēbit	mittet	audiet

PLURAL

amābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis	audiētis
amābunt	vidēbunt	mittent	audient

a. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the tense-sign **-bi-**, is changed to **-bō** in the first person singular and to **-bu-** in the third person plural. The vowel preceding **b** is long except in the verb **dō** (**dabō**), and the vowel following **b** is short except **ō** in the first person singular.

b. In the third and fourth conjugations the sign of the future tense is **-ē**, which becomes **-a-** in the first person singular and **-e-** before the endings **-t** and **-nt**.

SYNTAX

The Dative with Certain Compound Verbs

164. The dative case is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, or super.** (26)

Rōmae appropinquant (ad-propinquant), they approach (to) Rome; Tarpēiae pater arcī prae-erat, Tarpeia's father was in command of the citadel.

COMPOSITION

165. The Sabines fear the inhabitants of the new city but they will come to the sports. 2. The Romans will have

wives from the Sabines. 3. When it is (shall be) time for the spectacle, Romulus will give the signal. 4. The Romans will run-to-and-fro. 5. The Romans will have the maidens as wives. 6. This (haec) will be a cause for (of) war. 7. The Sabines will undertake the war. 8. They will approach (to) the city. 9. The maiden Tarpeia was going-to-fetch water. 10. The maiden's father was in-command-of the citadel. 11. The Sabines see Tarpeia outside the walls. 12. Tarpeia will have (her) choice of a reward if she will lead the Sabines into the city. 13. Tarpeia, you will not lead the Sabines into the city, will you?



PLATĒA POPULĪ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

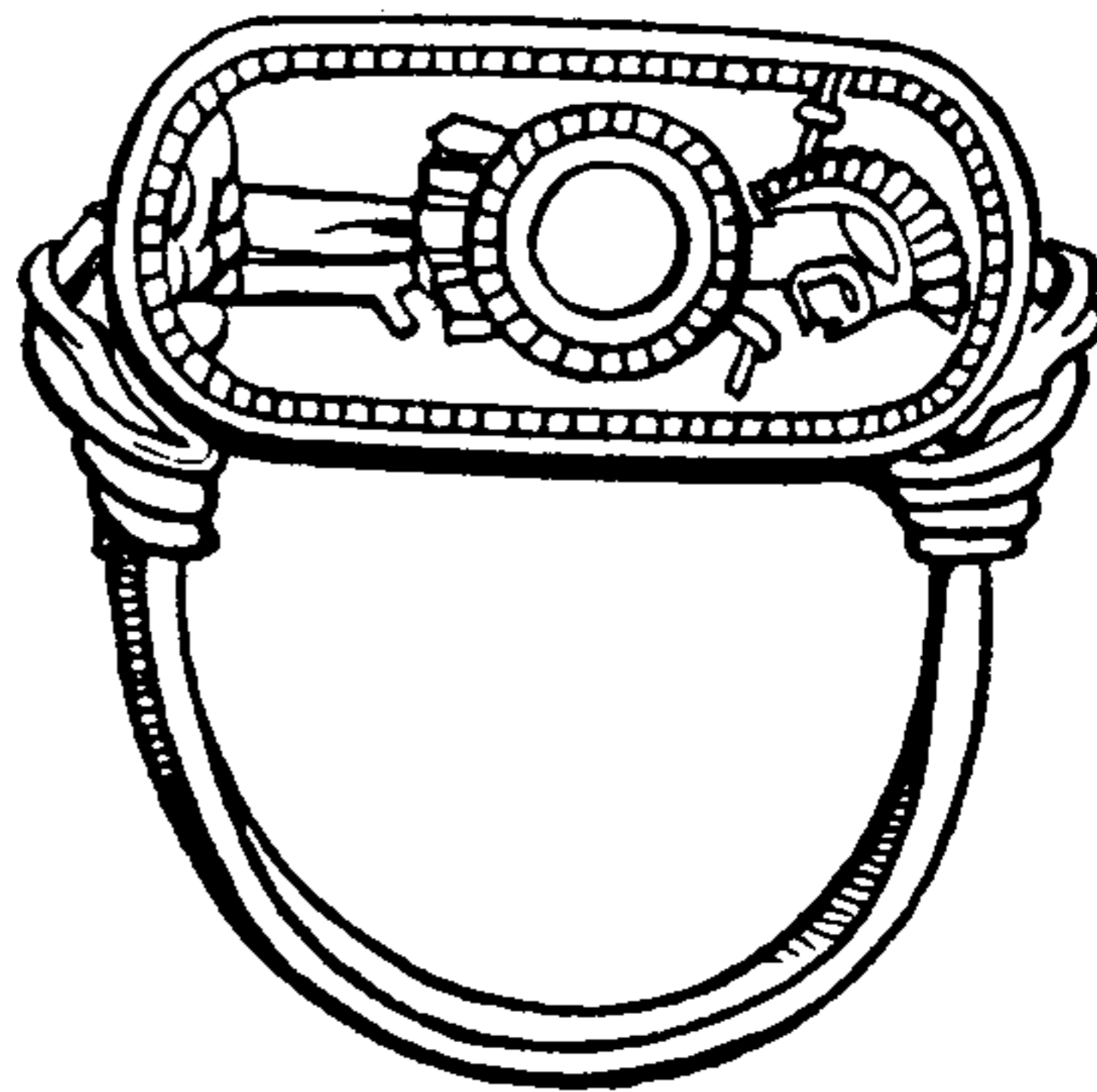
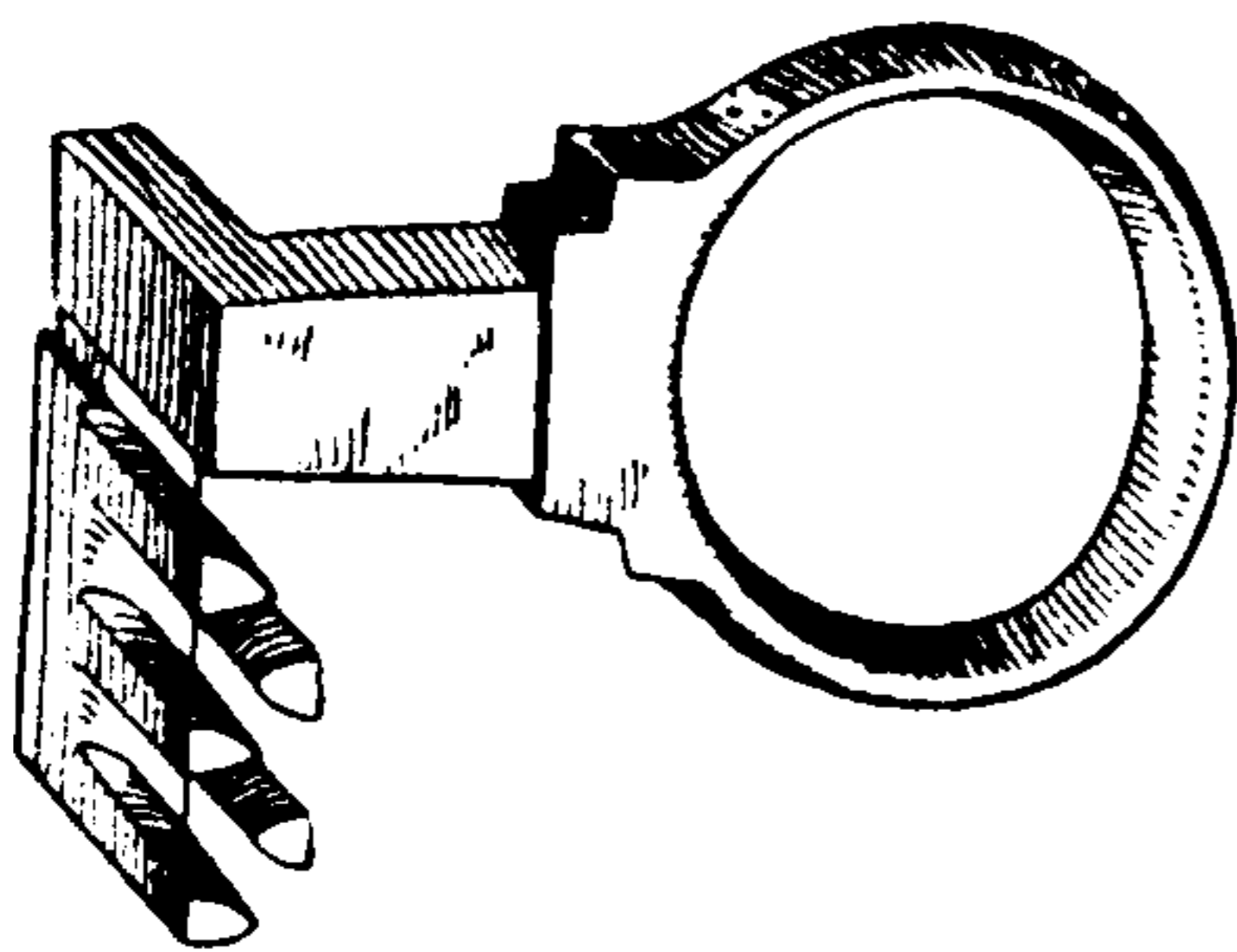
Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ōrum ā Rōmānīs rapiētur. 7. Rōmānī discurrent atque virginēs rapiēnt. 8. Ob filiās raptās erit statim bellum. 9. Bellum adversus Rōmānōs ā patribus raptārum filiārum sūmētur. 10. Sī Tarpēiae optiō mūneris dabitur, Sabīnī in Capitōlium dūcentur. 11. Num dūcet Tarpēia in urbem Sabīnōs? 12. Quod mūnus ad id erit satis?

NOTEBOOK WORK

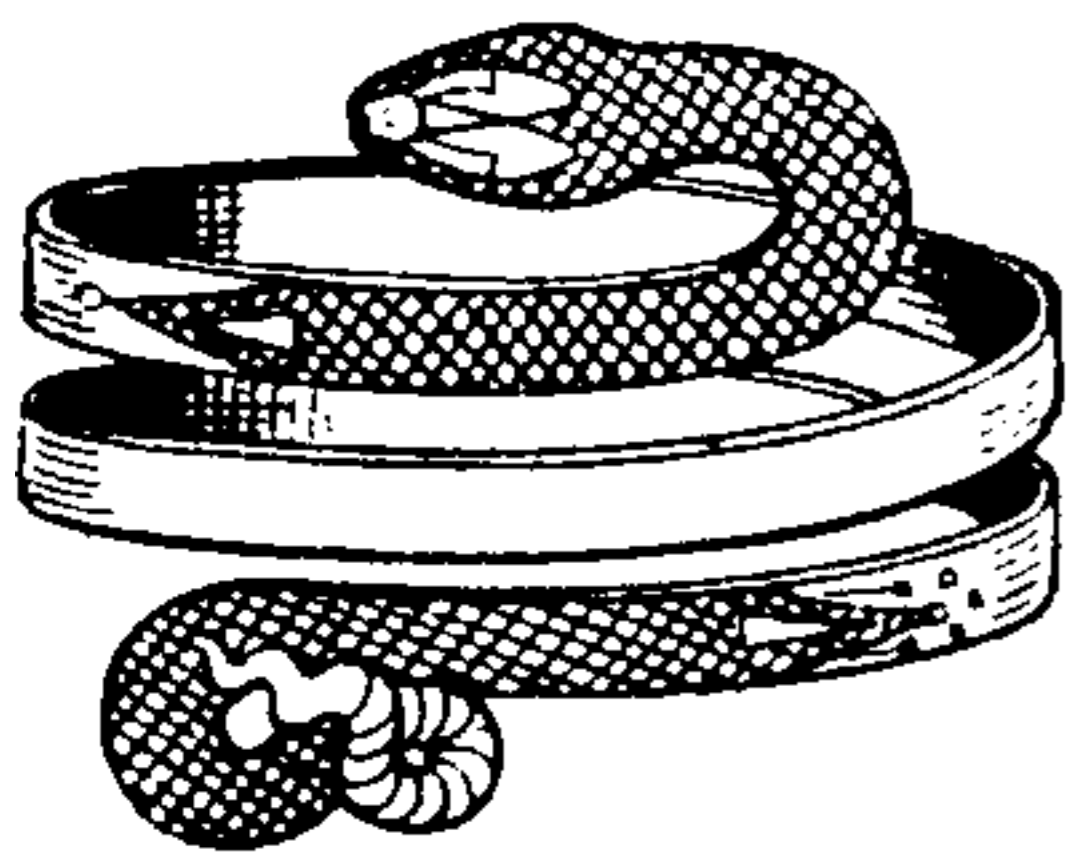
a. Write and recite the conjugation of **dō** (**dabor**), **teneō** (**tenēbor**), **dūcō** (**ducar**), and **impediō** (**impediar**) in the future indicative passive, giving the meaning of each form.



ANULĪ

SABĪNĪ TARPĒIAM SCŪTĪS OBRUUNT

168. Tarpēia petit quod (that which) Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus (in their left hands) gerēbant; nam aureōs anulōs et armillās magnī ponderis gerēbant. Deinde Sabīnōs in arcem perdūcit, ubi militēs scūtīs eam (her) obruunt. Nam scūta quoque in laevīs habēbant.

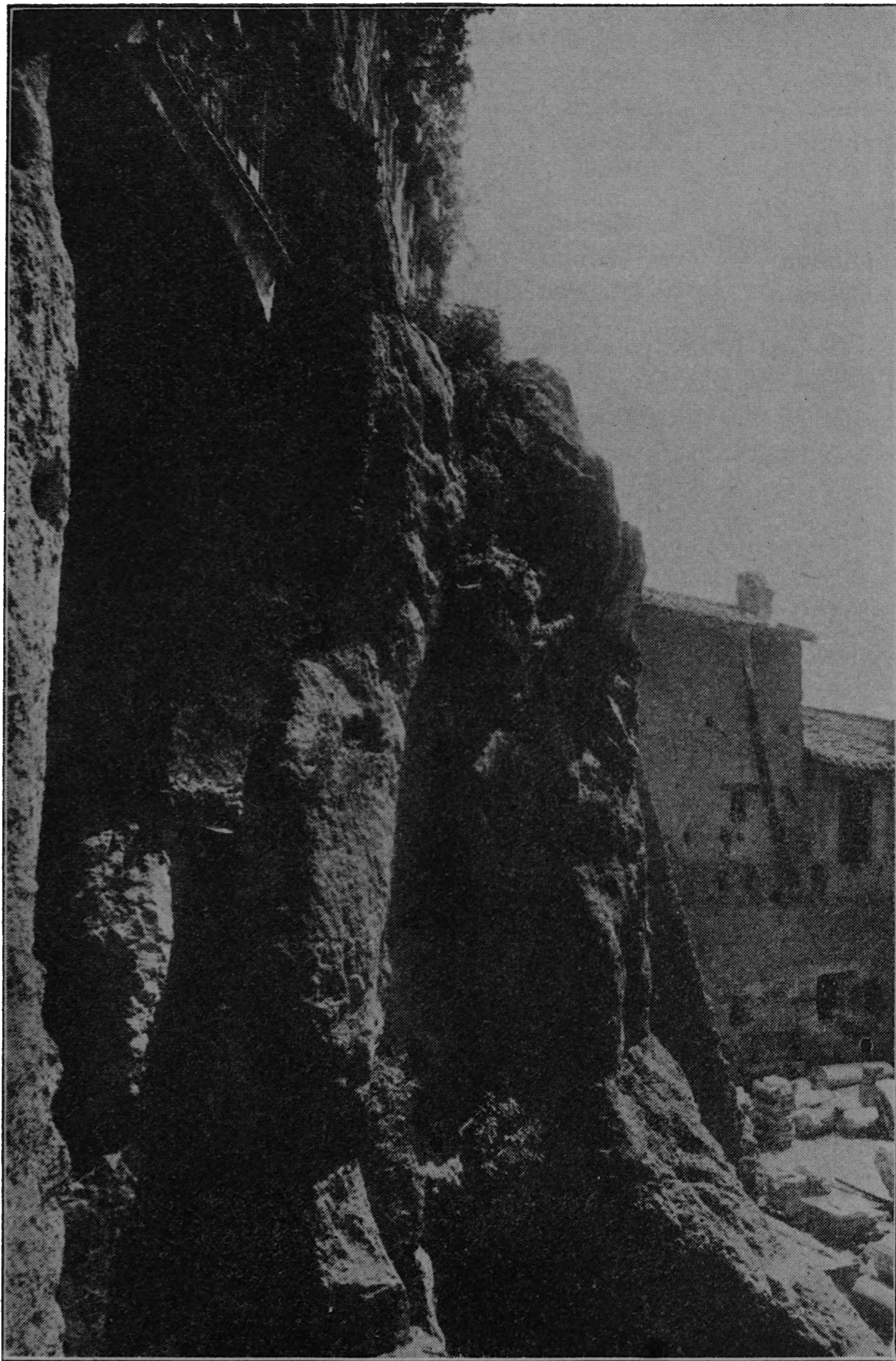


ARMILLA

a. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *ponder*, *sinister*.

CONJUGATION

169. **Amābor**, *I shall be loved*; **vidēbor**, *I shall be seen*; **mittar**, *I shall be sent*; **audiēbar**, *I shall be heard*.



RŪPĒS TARPĒIA

SINGULAR

amābor	vidēbor	mittar	audiar
amāberis (-re)	vidēberis (-re)	mittēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
amābitur	vidēbitur	mittētur	audiētur

PLURAL

amābimur	vidēbimur	mittēmur	audiēmur
amābiminī	vidēbiminī	mittēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	vidēbuntur	mittentur	audientur

a. The future passive contains the present stem, the tense-sign of the future, and the personal endings of the passive.

b. Notice the difference between **mitteris** (present), *you are being sent*, and **mittēris** (future), *you will be sent*.

SYNTAX

Conjunctions

170. Conjunctions are used to connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences. (27)

Coördinate Conjunctions

171. Coördinate conjunctions connect words or expressions which are of equal rank in the sentence. (28)

Et, *-que*, *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*; **atque**, **āc**, *and also*, *and*; **neque**, *and not*, *nor*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*; **sed**, *but*; **nam**, **enim**, *for*; etc.

a. **Et** is a simple connective; **-que** is joined to the second of two connected words, or to the first word in the second group when two groups of words are connected, and denotes close relationship between the parts; **atque** and **āc** often give prominence to the word or expression which follows the conjunction.

b. A word attached to another word, like **-que** in **terrā marique**, *by land and sea*, is called an enclitic.

Subordinate Conjunctions

172. Subordinate conjunctions connect dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend. (29)

Ubi, *where*, *when*; **dum**, *while*; **quod**, *because*; **sī**, *if*; **cum**, *when*; etc.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XXIII

VERBS IN *iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

174. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in *-iō* in the present indicative active. The ending of the present infinitive, *-ere*, shows that these verbs belong to the third conjugation; but they have forms similar to those of the fourth conjugation wherever in a verb of the fourth conjugation the *i* of the stem is followed by another vowel. With this exception the verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation are conjugated like *mittō*.

Thus *capere* is like *mittere*, *capit* like *mittit*, *capimus* like *mittimus*, etc.; while *capiō* is like *audiō*, *capiunt* like *audiunt*, *capiēbam* like *audiēbam*, *capiam* like *audiam*, etc.

175. Study the verbs that have *-iō* in the present indicative and *-ere* in the present infinitive and observe their variation from the corresponding forms of *mittō*. The present infinitive of every new verb should be learned, since this is the form which shows to what conjugation the verb belongs and is the key to the conjugation of all the tenses in which the present stem appears. Thus *capiō*, *capere*, belongs to the third conjugation; *veniō*, *venire*, to the fourth.

READING EXERCISE

176. 1. *Latrōnēs Remum capiunt.* 2. *Rēmus ā latrōnibus capitur.* 3. *Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem faciēbat.* 4. *Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapiunt.* 5. *Virginēs Sabīnōrum ā Rōmānīs rapiuntur.* 6. *Fīliae Sabīnōrum rapiēbantur.* 7. *Lēgātī ad vicīnās gentēs mittēbantur.* 8. *Lēgātiō nōn benignē audiēbātur.* 9. *Tarpēia hostēs ad arcem dūcet.* 10. *Capientne hostēs arcem?* 11. *Hostēs ad arcem venient sed urbem nōn capient.* 12. *Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerent sed nova urbs nōn capiētur.*

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write and repeat the conjugation of *capio* in the present, the past, and the future tenses, active and passive, with translation.

CONJUGATION OF CAPIŌ

Present, Past, and Future Tenses

177. *Capio, capere; take.*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>			
<i>capio</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis (-re)</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>
<i>Past</i>			
<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebamus</i>	<i>capiebar</i>	<i>capiebamur</i>
<i>capiebās</i>	<i>capiebātis</i>	<i>capiebāris (-re)</i>	<i>capiebāmini</i>
<i>capiebat</i>	<i>capiebant</i>	<i>capiebātur</i>	<i>capiebantur</i>
<i>Future</i>			
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris (-re)</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capientur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

a. *Capio* is like *mittō* except in those forms in which two vowels occur in succession. Wherever two vowels come together in the endings of the fourth conjugation, the verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation are conjugated like *audiō*.

b. In the compounds of *capio* and *facio* the vowel *a* of the simple verb is weakened to *i*; as, *accipio*, *concupio*, *efficio*, *conficio*, *perficio*, etc.

COMPOSITION

178. 1. Romulus and the people seize the maidens of the Sabines. 2. When the time of the sports comes, the maidens are seized. 3. This was a cause of war between the fathers of the maidens and the Romans. 4. The Romans were doing that which (*id quod*) was a cause of war. 5. The Sabines will come to the citadel but they will not take the city. 6. Tarpeia was doing that which the Sabines wished (*volēbant*), but the city will not be taken. 7. Thus the Romans will keep (will have) the daughters of the Sabines whom (*quās*) they were seizing.

CHAPTER XXIV

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

The Present, Past, and Future of Possum

179. The present active infinitive is formed by the addition of the ending **-re** to the present stem. It contains the present stem in its unmodified form and is given in the vocabulary to indicate the conjugation to which a regular verb belongs. (See section 78.)

The present passive infinitive is formed in verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations by adding **-rī** to the present stem, and in verbs of the third conjugation by changing the final vowel of the stem to **-ī**.

Including the stem vowel, the endings of the present infinitive, active and passive in the four conjugations are as follows:

CONJUCATION	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	-āre	-ārī
II.	-ēre	-ērī
III.	-ere	-ī
IV.	-īre	-īrī

The meaning of the present infinitive in Latin is similar to the meaning of the present infinitive in English.

180. **Possum**, *I am able, I can*, is an irregular verb composed of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, *I am*. The present, past, and future tenses are formed by combining **pos-** with those forms of **sum** which begin with **s**, and **pot-** with the forms of **sum** which begin with a vowel; as, **pos-sumus**, **pot-estis**.

Possum is generally used in connection with the infinitive of some other verb.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ficiō avium Rōmulus urbī nōmen dare et sōlus rēgnāre poterat. 16. Ad tūtēlam novae urbis vallum satis esse vidēbātur (seemed). 17. Rōmulus societātem cum vicinīs gentibus facere nōn poterat. 18. Itaque lūdōs fīnitimīs indicī iubet. 19. Facile erat spectāculum parāre. 20. Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāre poterat. 21. Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapere poterunt. 22. Propterea Sabīnī bellum cum Rōmānīs sūment (future). 23. Sed arx capī nōn poterit. 24. Prōditiō Tarpēiae laudārī nōn potest.

. NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make lists of all the infinitives, active and passive, arranged by conjugations. What is the ending of the present active infinitive? What is the ending of the present passive infinitive in the third conjugation? in the other conjugations? What is the present infinitive of *sum*, *to be*?

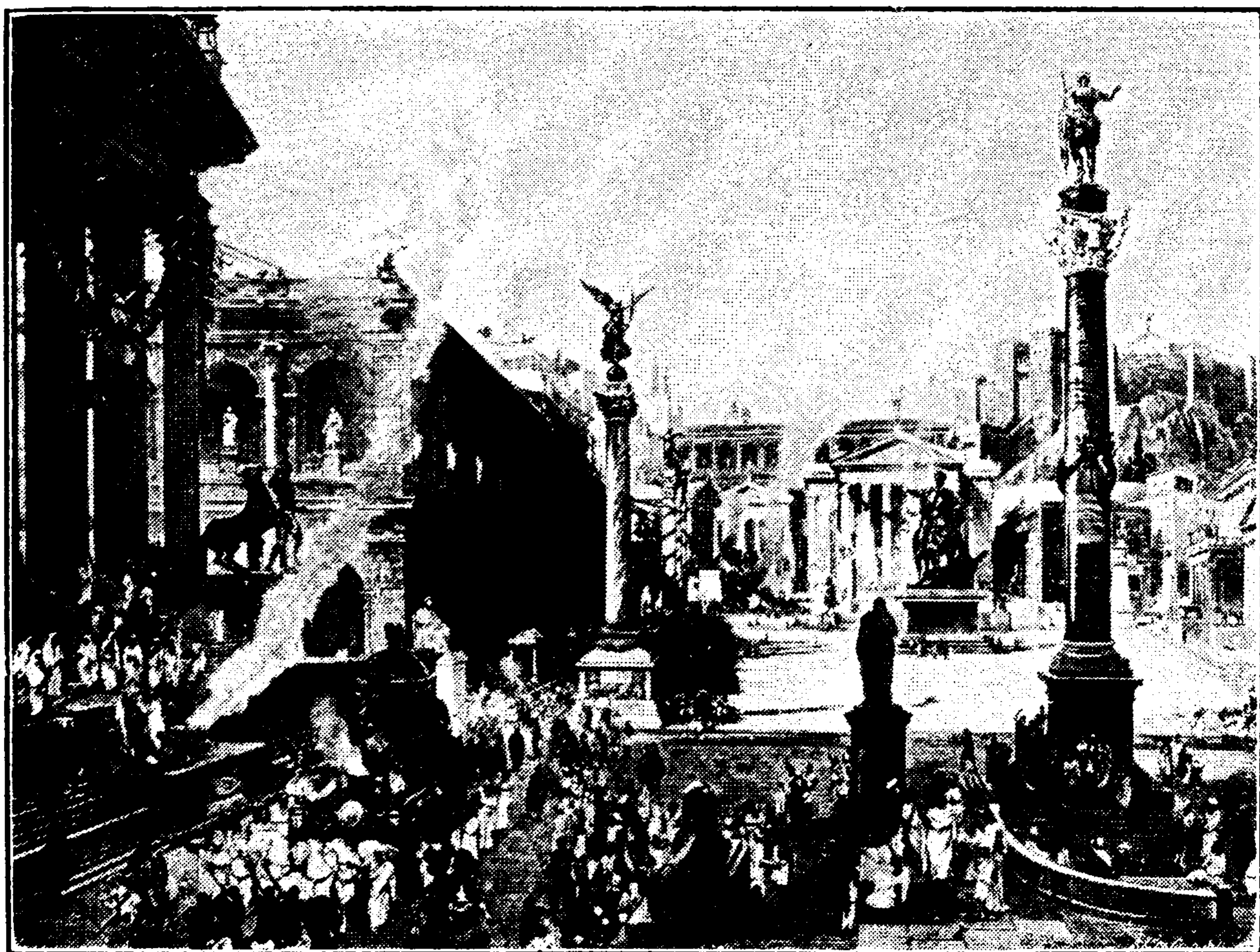


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM UT QUONDAM ERAT

b. Write and recite the conjugation of **possum** in the present, the past, and the future tenses, giving the translation.

AD CERTĀMEN UTRIMQUE PRŌCĒDUNT

183. Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcēdit, et in eō locō ubi nunc forum Rōmānum est pugnam committit. Prīncipēs utrimque pugnābant, ab Sabīnīs Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostius Hostīlius. Hostīlius fortissimē dīmīcāns cadit. Cōsternātī Rōmānī fugiēbant. Mettius Curtius, ab Sabīnīs prīnceps, clāmitābat. “Vincimus perfidōs hospitēs, imbellīs hostēs; longē aliud est virginēs rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs.”

a. Aliud . . . aliud, *one thing . . . another thing; different . . . than.*

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *commit*, *forum*, *proceed*, *vanquish*.

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE OF TYPICAL VERBS

Four Conjugations

184.

CONJUGATION	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
II.	vidēre, <i>to see</i>	vidērī, <i>to be seen, to seem</i>
III.	mittere, <i>to send</i>	mittī, <i>to be sent</i>
IV.	audire, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>

Sum and Verbs in -iō

esse, <i>to be</i>	
capere, <i>to take</i>	capī, <i>to be taken</i>

a. The present infinitive of **sum** has the ending **-se**, which is an irregular termination, and perhaps older than the regular ending, **-re**.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

185. **Possum**, *I am able, I can*; **poteram**, *I was able, I could*; **poterō**, *I shall be able, I can*.

SINGULAR		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
possum	poteram	poterō
potes	poterās	poteris
potest	poterat	poterit
PLURAL		
possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt

SYNTAX

The Complementary Infinitive

186. The infinitive may be used with an intransitive verb to complete the predicate. (30)

Carmina avium audire possum, I can hear the songs of the birds.

The Infinitive as Subject

187. The infinitive may be used as the subject of the verb *est*; a predicate adjective generally follows. (31)

Avīs audire est grātum, to hear the birds is pleasant.

The Infinitive as Object

188. The infinitive may be used as the direct object of another verb. (32)

Lūdōs indicī iubet, he orders the games to be proclaimed.

The Time Denoted by the Present Infinitive

189. The time denoted by the present infinitive is present with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends. (33)

Societātem facere nōn poterat, he was not able to make an alliance; arx capī nōn potest, the citadel can not be taken; Rōmānī virginēs rapere poterunt, the Romans will be able to seize the maidens.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XXV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The Present Participle and the Present Imperative

192. Adjectives of the third declension are declined with the endings of nouns of the third declension, and with few exceptions they have the same endings as nouns with stems in *i* (section 144): *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-īs* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural.

193. The present participle has the form of an adjective of the third declension. It contains the present stem of the verb and the nominative singular ends in *-ns*. It is translated by the present active participle in English. *Amāns*, loving; *vidēns*, seeing. The Latin has no present passive participle.

194. The present active imperative is found by dropping the ending *-re* of the present active infinitive. *Mittere*, to send, *mitte*, send thou; *laudāre*, to praise, *laudā*, praise thou. The plural ending is *-te*. *Vidēte*, see ye; *audīte*, hear ye.

The present passive imperative does not often occur.

195. Review the case-endings of the third declension, especially the endings of nouns with stems ending in *i*, section 144, and recall the identical forms of neuter nouns in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases.

Study the adjectives of the third declension in the following exercises, identifying the cases by the similarity of adjectives to nouns and remembering that an adjective is always in the same case, number, and gender as the noun which it modifies.

Find the participles and imperatives and translate by the corresponding English forms.

READING EXERCISE

196. 1. Augustus Caesar erat imperator audax. 2. Militēs imperatoris audacis sunt quoque audacēs. 3. Imperator militem audacem semper laudabit. 4. Imperator praemium militi audaci dabit. 5. Hostis ab audaci milite non timebitur. 6. Militēs audacēs hostem non timent. 7. Virtus militum audacium patriam servabit. 8. Bellum militibus audacibus non semper gratum est. 9. Pacem, militēs audacēs, et petite et servate. 10. Aetate Caesaris Augusti apud omnes gentes erat pax.

11. Rōmulus populusque Rōmānus circa vicinās gentēs lēgātōs mittunt. 12. Quod Rōmānī ab omnibus vicinīs gentibus timebantur, lēgātiō nusquam benignē audītur. 13. Rōmulus aegritūdinem animi dissimulāns lūdōs parābat. 14. Sabīnōrum omnis multitudō cum liberis ac coniugibus ad lūdōs veniunt. 15. Ubi omnes mentēs cum oculis in lūdōs conversae erant, subitō Rōmānī virginēs omnēs rapiunt. 16. Acrēs Sabīnī ob raptās virginēs bellum cum Rōmānīs gerunt. 17. Cum omnibus cōpiīs ad



Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

AUGUSTUS CAESAR, IMPERATOR

novam urbem contendunt. 18. Ducem Sabīnōrum cum ācribus mīlitibus Tarpēia in arcem perdūcit. 19. Audāx Hostīlius, ab Rōmānīs prīnceps, fortiter dīmīcāns cadit.

20. Validus puer lūdēns in viā parvam puellam videt quae onus magnum portābat. Statim ad eam venit et ipse onus usque ad fīnem itineris prō eā portat. Magister forte puerum onus portantem vidēbat. Posteā audiēbam magistrum puerum laudantem.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the adjectives of the third declension found in this exercise.

b. Write out the declension of **audāx** in the masculine gender; also write the declension of **audāx** in the neuter gender, remembering that the nominative, the accusative, and the vocative cases are alike.

c. With **nāvis** and **mare** as models (section 144) write the declension of **omnis** (m. and f.), **omne** (n.).

d. Make a list of the imperative forms found in the exercise above.

e. For the declension of **iter** see section 548.

IUPPITER RŌMĀNĪS TERRŌREM DĒMIT

197. Iam Rōmānī ad veterem portam Palātī fugiēbant. Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, "Iuppiter," inquit, "arcem iam Sabīnī tenent; inde hūc armātī tendent. At tū, pater deūm (deōrum) hominumque, hinc saltem arcē (arceō) hostēs, dēme terrōrem Rōmānīs fugamque foedam siste.

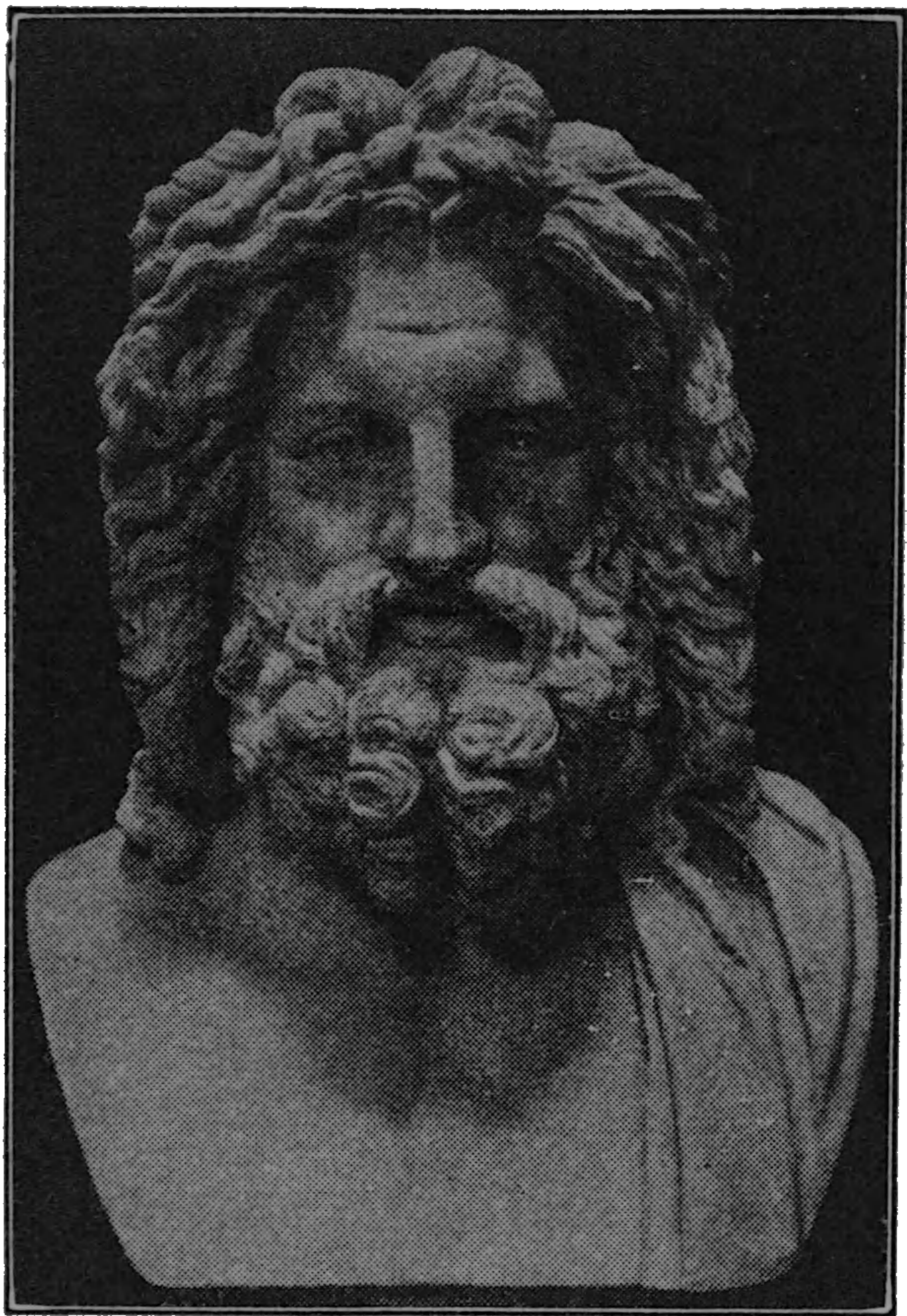


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

IUPPITER OPTIMUS MAXIMUS

deūm (deōrum) hominumque, hinc saltem arcē (arceō) hostēs, dēme terrōrem Rōmānīs fugamque foedam siste.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	omnīs (-ēs)	omnia
<i>Voc.</i>	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus

a. Adjectives like **audāx** have only one form in the nominative singular, the three genders being alike. Adjectives like **omnis** have two forms in the nominative singular, the masculine and the feminine being the same.

b. **Vetus, veteris**, has one form in the nominative singular. It is declined like the nouns with consonant stems; gen. plu., **veterum**.

199.

Ācer, ācris, ācre; eger.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. **Ācer** has three forms in the nominative singular. The feminine is like **omnis** and the neuter like **omne**.

b. Notice the cases which are alike in the three genders, and those which are the same in the masculine and the feminine.

NOTE.—The use of adjectives of the first and second declensions has become familiar; in like manner adjectives of the third declension may be used with nouns of any other declension. The essential thing to remember is that an adjective must agree with its noun in case, number, and gender.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

200. Amāns, amantis; *loving*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

a. The present participle is formed from the present stem by the addition of **-nt-** with the case-endings of the third declension. Verbs in **-iō** of the third conjugation and regular verbs of the fourth conjugation have **-ent-** as the suffix. The vowel before **-ns** in the nominative and vocative singular is long. In the nominative and vocative singular **t** is dropped as usual before **s**. **Amā-**, **amantis**; **vidē-**, **videntem**; **audī-** **audientēs**; **capiō**, **capiēns**.

b. Adjectives of the third declension ending in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** except in the ablative singular, where the adjective has the ending **-ī**. The participle also has the ending **-ī** in the ablative singular when it is used as an adjective; but when it is used strictly as a participle, it has the ending **-e**.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE

201. **Amā**, *love thou*; **vidē**, *see thou*; **mitte**, *send thou*; **audī**, *hear thou*; **es**, *be thou*; **cape**, *take thou*.

		ACTIVE			
<i>Sing.</i>	amā, <i>love thou</i>	vidē	mitte	audī	
<i>Pl.</i>	amāte, <i>love ye</i>	vidēte	mittite	audīte	
		PASSIVE			
<i>Sing.</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>	vidēre	mittere	audire	
<i>Pl.</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>	vidēmini	mittimini	audimini	
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Sing.</i>	es, <i>be thou</i>	cape		capere	
<i>Pl.</i>	este, <i>be ye</i>	capite		capimini	

a. The present imperative is used in the second person only.

b. The present imperatives of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō** are **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**, the final vowel being dropped.

c. The conjugation of the future imperative may be found in sections 562–570, where the conjugation of the verb is given in full.

THE PRESENT STEM

202. All of the forms of the verb which have thus far been described are based on the present stem. The present stem is that part of the verb which remains the same throughout the conjugation of the present, the past, and the future tenses. These tenses in all the moods, both active and passive, comprise the present system in the conjugation of verbs, and they represent action as incomplete or as going on in present, past, or future time.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Participle

203. The participle is a verbal adjective. It agrees in case, number, and gender with the substantive to which it belongs, and it may govern the same case as any other form of the verb. (35)

Vidēbam puerum onus portantem, I saw the boy carrying the burden.

a. The time denoted by the present participle is present with reference to the time of the verb upon which the participle depends.

The Use of the Imperative

204. The imperative is used in commands. (36)

Arcē hostēs, keep off the enemy; redintegrāte, Rōmānī, pugnam, Romans, renew the fight.

The Dative with Verbs of Separation

205. With verbs of separation, especially with verbs compounded with *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ē*, or *ex*, the person concerned is denoted by the dative case. (37)

Dēmē terrōrem Rōmānīs, take away fear from the Romans.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XXVI

NUMERALS

Adjectives with Genitive in -īus

207. The only cardinal numerals which are declined are *ūnus*, -a, -um, *one*; *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, *two*; *trēs*, *tria*, *three*; and *mīlia*, *mīlium*, *thousands*.

Ūnus is one of nine adjectives which have the ending -īus in the genitive singular and -ī in the dative singular in all genders. *Alius*, *other*, *another*, has the form *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular in the neuter gender. In all other cases these adjectives have the regular endings of the first and second declensions.

Alius and *alter* when repeated have special meanings. *Alius* . . . *alius*, *one* . . . *another* (of an indefinite number); *aliī* . . . *aliī*, *some* . . . *others*; *alter* . . . *alter*, *one* . . . *the other* (of two); *alterī* . . . *alterī*, *some (one party)* . . . *the others (the other party)*.

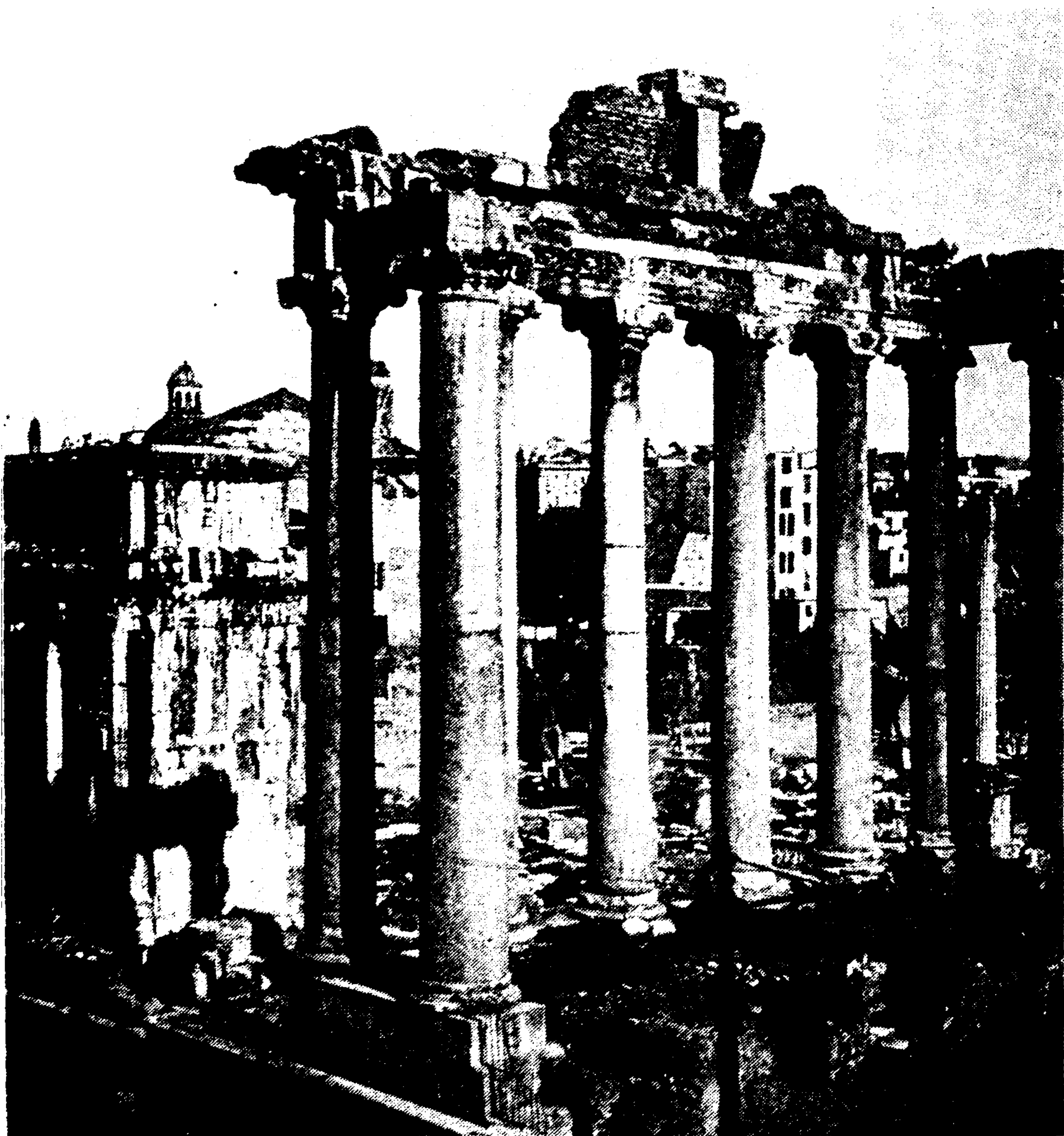
208. Study the numerals and observe the forms of those which are declined. Notice particularly the unusual endings in the genitive and dative singular of certain adjectives.

READING EXERCISE

209. 1. Homō ūnum caput, duās manūs, duōs pedēs habet. 2. Dextra et laeva sunt duārum manuum nōmina. 3. Dextra manus quīnque digitōs habet. 4. Ambae manūs habent digitōs decem. 5. Ūnus digitus et alter digitus sunt duo digitī. 6. Duo et ūnus sunt trēs; trēs et ūnus sunt quattuor; quattuor et ūnus sunt quīnque; quīnque et quīnque decem sunt. 7. Sī ūnī digitō quīnque digitī adduntur, summa est sex. 8. Sī ūnī digitō sex adduntur, septem sunt. 9. Duo dē decem octō, ūnus dē decem novem sunt.

10. Parvī discipulī ita numerant: 11. Ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem: 12. Undecim, duodecim, tredecim, quattuordecim, quīndecim, ēdecim, septendecim, duodēvīgintī, ūndēvīgintī, vīgintī.

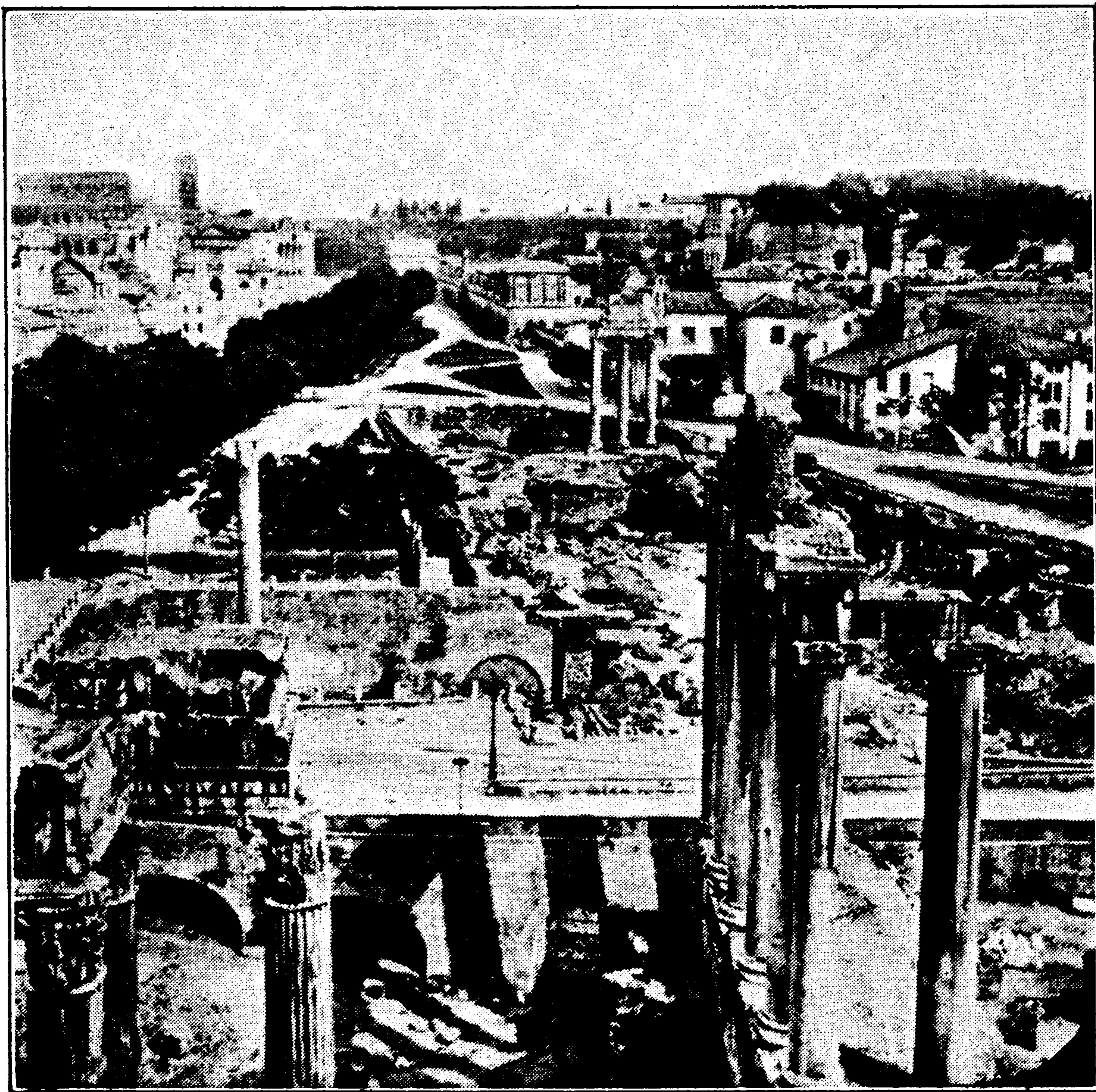
13. Ūnius corporis sunt multae partēs. 14. Ūnius partis nōmen est caput; alterius partis nōmen est manus; alii partī corporis nōmen pēs datur. 15. In ūnō corpore sunt multa membra. 16. Omnia membra nōn idem nōmen



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

COLUMNÆ OCTŌ TEMPLĪ SĀTURNĪ

habent. 17. Alia (one) pars corporis aliud (one) nōmen habet, alia (another) pars aliud (another) nōmen habet.



FORUM RŌMĀNUM

18. Alia pars aliud, alia pars aliud nōmen habet. 19. Alia pars corporis aliud nōmen habet.

20. Urbs Rōma ab ōre Tiberis circiter mīlia passuum vīgintī abest. 21. Rōma in septem collibus aedificātur. 22. Inter duōs montēs, Capitōlium et Palātium, erat Forum Rōmānum. 23. Forum Rōmānum erat sescentōs trīgintā pedēs longum et centum pedēs lātum. 24. Duo frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, erant urbis Rōmae conditōrēs. 25. Du-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

212.**Duo, duae, duo; two.**

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

a. **Ambo, ambae, ambo, both,** is declined like **duo**.

213. Trēs, tria, three; mīlia, mīlium, thousands.

	M. & F.	N.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs (-īs)	tria	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

a. In the singular **mīlle, a thousand,** is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is used as a noun and is followed by another noun in the genitive case. **Mīlle hominēs, a thousand men; duo mīlia hominum, two thousands of men, two thousand men.**

214.**Alter, altera, alterum, the other.**

<i>Nom.</i>	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
<i>Dat.</i>	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. The ending **-īus** is sometimes shortened to **-ius**, especially in **alterīus (alterius)**.

b. The nine adjectives which have **-īus** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative are:

alius, other, another	nūllus, no	alter, the other
sōlus, alone	ūllus, any	uter, which (of two)
tōtus, whole	ūnus, one	neuter, neither (of two)

a. In the plural these adjectives are declined like **bonus**.

b. **Alius** has **aliud** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

SYNTAX

The Accusative of Extent

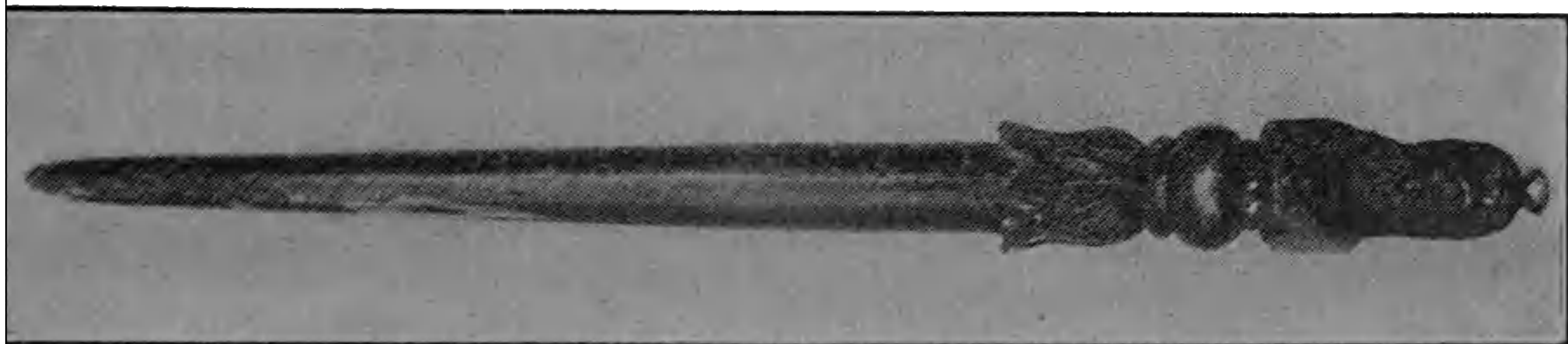
215. Extent in space is denoted by the accusative case. (38)

Centum pedēs lātum, one hundred feet wide; vīgintī mīlia passuum ab marī, twenty thousands of paces (twenty miles) from the sea.

COMPOSITION

216. 1. Italy is between two seas. 2. I know (sciō) the names of three cities of Italy. 3. The mouth of the Tiber is twenty miles (thousands of paces) from Rome. 4. Ascanius was the first king of the Albans. 5. Of the two sons of Proca one was king, the other was driven away (pulsus est) by his brother. 6. Another city is built by Romulus and Remus. 7. Each of the brothers wished to give a name to the new city. 8. Remus saw six vultures; Romulus saw twelve. 9. On account of the augury (auguriō) Romulus called the city Rome.

10. The Romans, commanded by the voice of Romulus, renew the battle. 11. Romulus commands the Romans to renew the battle. 12. The Sabine women with dishevelled hair come between the fighting men. 13. On this side (hinc) they entreat their fathers, on the other side (hinc) their husbands, to put away their wrath. 14. We have been the cause of wounds. 15. Without husbands we shall be widows; without fathers we shall be orphans. 16. Without either (alterīs) of you (vestrum) we shall be widows or orphans.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.
ACUS EBURNEA

CHAPTER XXVII

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

217. The present, past, and future tenses represent action as incomplete or as *going on* in present, past, and future time, respectively; as,

Rōmulus et Remus urbem novam aedificābant, *Romulus and Remus were building a new city.* (The work of building was going on.)

The perfect tense represents action as completed now or as completed at the time of speaking: as,

Vīdī urbem quam Rōmulus aedificāvit, *I have seen the city which Romulus built.* (Both verbs represent completed action.)

The perfect tense, indicative active, is formed by joining the personal endings of the perfect tense to the perfect stem.

Vīd-ī, aedificāv-it, fu-istī (sum).

In the vocabulary the third form of a regular verb is the first person singular of the perfect tense. From this the perfect stem is found by dropping the ending **-ī**; as,

amō, amāre, amāvī (amāv-ī); perfect stem, **amāv-**.

videō, vidēre, vīdī (vīd-ī); perfect stem, **vīd-**.

sum, esse, fuī (fu-ī); perfect stem, **fu-**.

The personal endings of the perfect indicative active are,

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>First person,</i>	-ī	-imus
<i>Second person,</i>	-istī	-istis
<i>Third person,</i>	-it	-ērunt (-ēre)

218 Review the present, past, and future tenses, sections 79, 122, 163, and recall the personal endings of those tenses in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



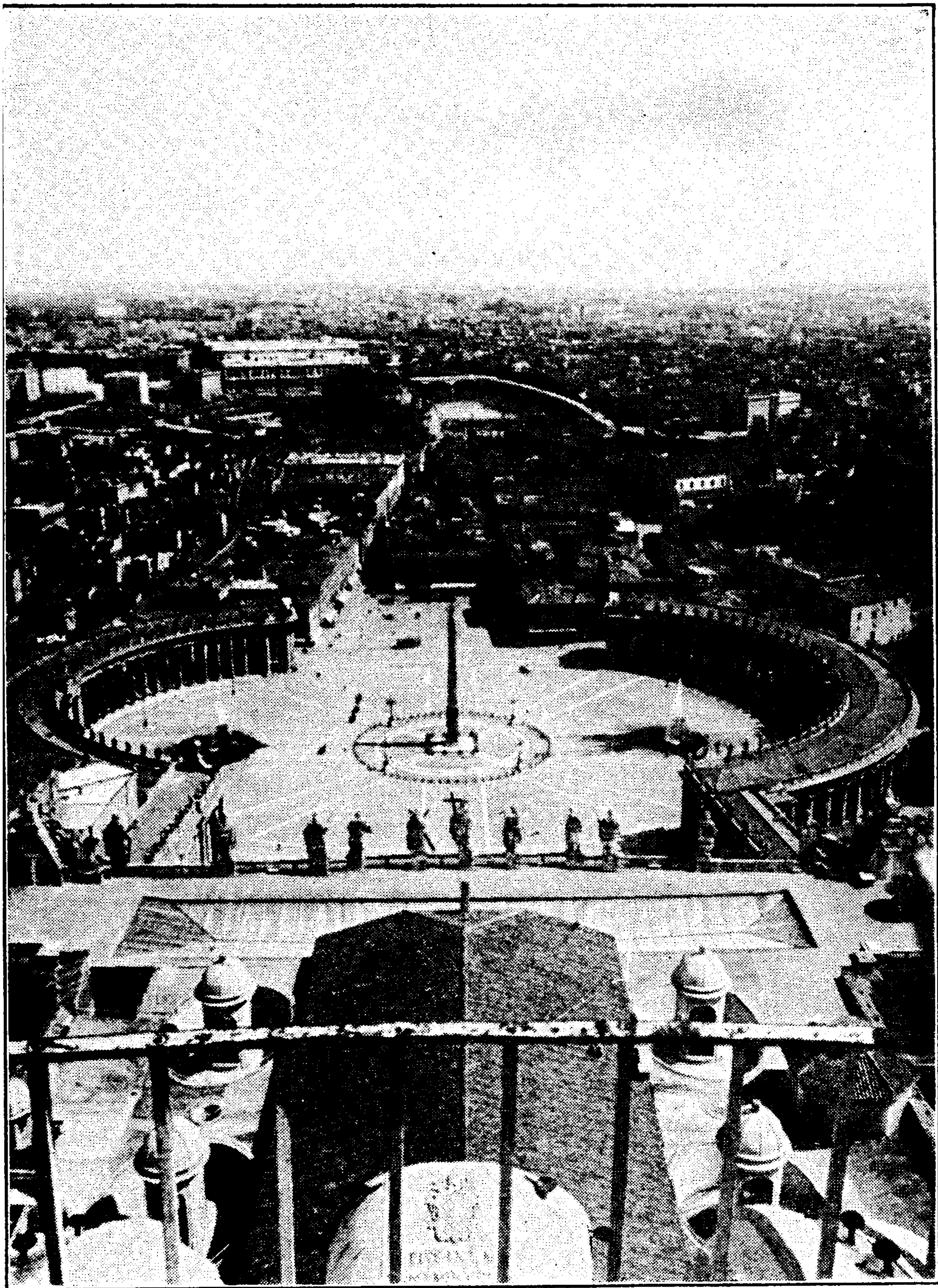
Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

URBS RŌMA UT NUNC VIDĒTUR

CONJUGATION

220. *Fuī, I was, I have been; dedī, I gave, I have given; vidī, I saw, I have seen.*

SINGULAR

			Endings	
<i>ū,</i>	<i>I was (have been)</i>	<i>dedī</i>	<i>vidī</i>	-ī
<i>istī,</i>	<i>you were</i>	<i>dedistī</i>	<i>vidistī</i>	-istī
<i>it,</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>dedit</i>	<i>vidit</i>	-it

PLURAL

<i>imus, we were</i>	<i>dedimus</i>	<i>vidimus</i>	-imus
<i>istis, you were</i>	<i>dedistis</i>	<i>vidistis</i>	-istis
<i>ērunt (-ēre), they were</i>	<i>dedērunt (-ēre)</i>	<i>vidērunt (-ēre)</i>	-ērunt (-ēre)

a. Learn the conjugation of these verbs and the personal endings of the perfect tense.

b. Conjugate the perfect tense of *scribō* (*scripsī*) and *terreō* (*terruī*).

THE PERFECT TENSE IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

221. Find the present tense of each verb and learn the first three forms given in the vocabulary. Recall the characteristic form of the present infinitive in each of the four conjugations, and observe that in the perfect tense all verbs are conjugated alike. Translate the perfect tense according to the directions given in section 217.

READING EXERCISE

222. 1. *Aenēās ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliā vēnit.* 2. *Multōs comitēs sēcum in Ītaliā dūxit.* 3. *Fīlius Aenēae Albam Longam condidit.* 4. *Posteā Proca fuit rēx Albānorum.* 5. *Ille Numitōrī rēgnum reliquit, sed Amūlius rēgnum occupāvit.* 6. *Amūlius rēx filiōs Silviae in Tiberim nīsit.* 7. *Aqua in siccō locō puerōs reliquit atque lupa eōs nūrāvit.* 8. *Faustulus puerōs invēnit coniugīque eōs dedit.* 9. *Adultī Rōmulus et Remus novam urbem condidērunt, quam Rōmulus Rōmam vocāvit.* 10. *Posteā Rōmulus*

frātre obtruncāvit sōlusque rēgnāvit. 11. Rōmānī uxōrēs nōn habēbant; itaque virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuērunt. 12. Haec (this) fuit statim causa bellī. 13. Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit. 14. Mīlitēs eam scūtīs obruērunt. 15. Ubi Hostīlius, ab Rōmānīs prīnceps, cecidit (cadō), Mettius Curtius, "Vīcimus," clāmitāvit. 16. Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī templum vōvit et Rōmānōs pugnam redintegrāre iussit (iubeō).

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Conjugate the perfect tense of several verbs, writing the translation of some of them. For the same verbs write the first three forms given in the vocabulary observing that the third form is the perfect tense.

b. What part of the verb indicates the conjugation to which it belongs? Is the perfect tense conjugated in the same way or differently in the four conjugations? What are the personal endings?

DUCĒS FOEDUS FACIUNT

223. Precēs mulierum et multitudinem et ducēs movent. Repentīnum silentium est. Deinde foedus ducēs faciunt; nec pācem modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt. Ex bellō tam trīstī laeta pāx cāriōrēs Sabīnās virīs ac parentibus et ante omnēs Rōmulō ipsī fēcit (faciō). Centum deinde ex senibus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Eōrum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Inde commūne rēgnum duōbus rēgibus fuit.

a. Cāriōrēs, comparative degree of cārus; pāx cāriōrēs Sabīnās fēcit, *peace made the Sabine women dearer: Rōmulō ipsī, to Romulus himself.*

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *cent, century, city, common, counsel, distribute, move, nominate, senator, silence.*

THE PERFECT STEM

224. That part of the verb to which the personal endings of the perfect tense are joined is called the perfect



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

a. The perfect tense and all of the tenses which contain the perfect stem are inflected in the same way in all of the conjugations.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Definite Perfect

227. The definite perfect, or the present perfect tense, represents action as completed at the present time, or at the time of speaking. (39)

Librōs Livī lēgī, *I have read the books of Livy.*

The Use of the Indefinite Perfect

228. The indefinite perfect, or the historical perfect tense, represents action as completed at some indefinite time in the past. (40)

Pāx mulierēs cāriōres fēcit, *peace made the women dearer.*

The Ablative of Cause

229. The ablative case is used to denote that because of which, on account of which, or in accordance with which anything is done. (41)

Senātorum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat, *he did (was doing) everything according to the advice of the senators.*

The Dative Denoting Possession

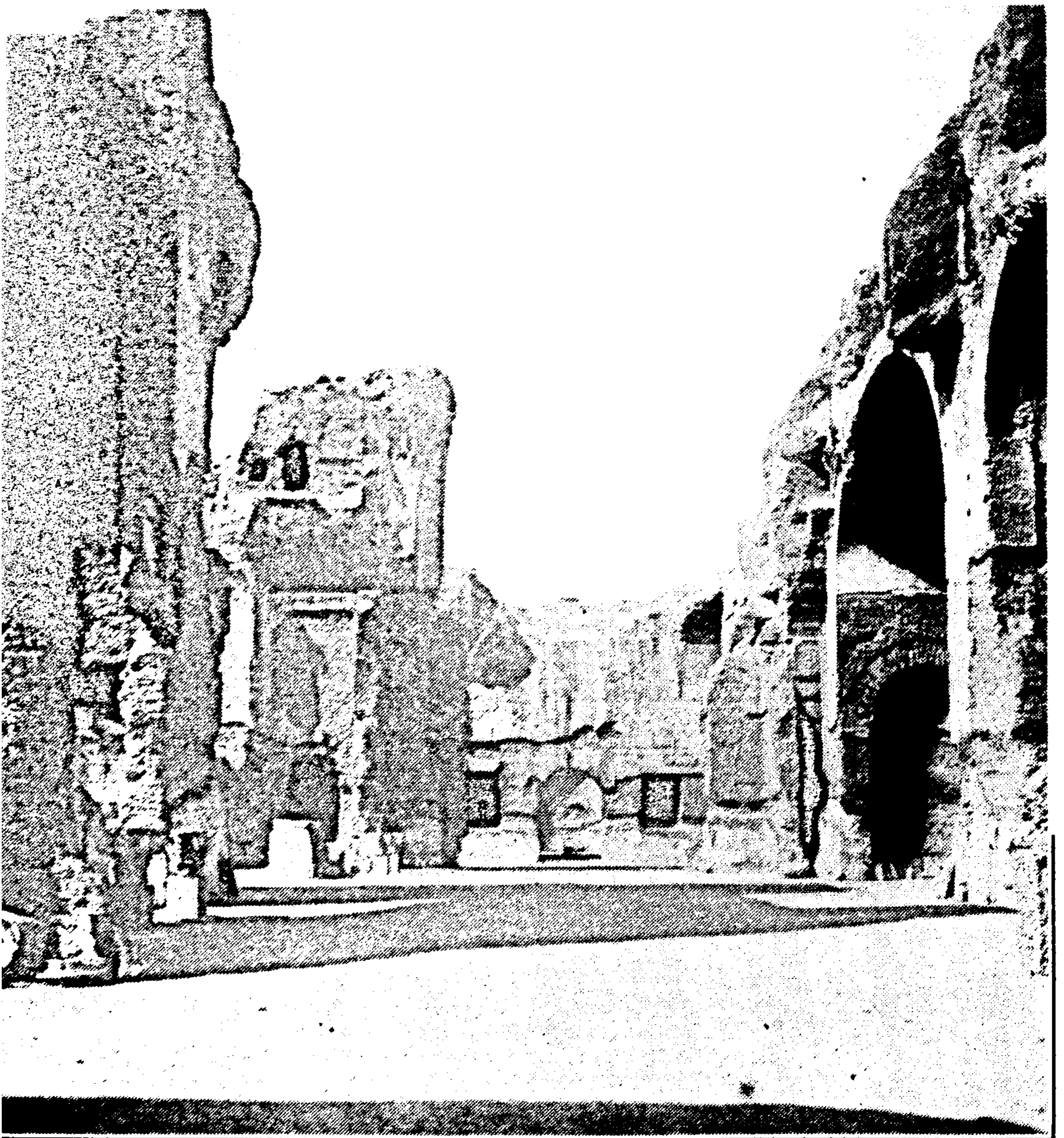
230. The dative case with the verb **sum** is used to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject. (42)

Commūne rēgnum duōbus rēgibus fuit, *two kings had the kingdom in common (the common kingdom was to two kings).*

COMPOSITION

231. 1. The entreaties of the Sabine women have moved the multitude. 2. The leaders of the Romans and the Sabines make peace. 3. Out of two states they made

ne. 4. After so sad a war peace made the leaders glad.
. Peace made the Sabine women dearer to their husbands.
. Peace was acceptable (*grāta*) to Romulus above (*ante*)
ll. 7. Romulus selected one hundred senators. 8. He
was conducting all things in accordance with the advice of
the senators. 8. Romulus and Tatius had the kingdom
in common (to Romulus and Tatius there was a common
kingdom).



THERMAE CARACALLAE

CHAPTER XXVIII

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE .

232. The past perfect tense (sometimes called the pluperfect), like the corresponding tense in English, represents action as completed at some time in the past.

Rōmānī virginēs Sabinās quās rapuerant uxōrēs habēbant, The Romans kept as wives the Sabine maidens whom they had seized.

The past perfect tense of the indicative mood, active voice, contains the perfect stem, the tense-sign **-era-**, and the usual personal endings of the active voice.

Amāv-era-m, vid-era-t, mis-erā-mus, audīv-era-nt, fu-erā-s.

233. In the following exercises find the verbs which are in the past perfect tense, learn and recite the first three of the principal parts of each verb, and translate so as to express the exact meaning.

READING EXERCISE

234. 1. Herī tē in viā ambulāntem vidī. Ubi fuerās?
2. Apud amīcum Mārcum fueram; namque ille erat aeger.
3. Ita timēbam; namque eum cum cēteris pueris nōn videram. Nempe Mārcus nimis dīligenter librīs operam dederat. 4. Nōn librīs sed lūdīs operam dederat; namque in flūmine Tiberī Mārcus fuerat dum frīgus erat magnum. 5. Num tū atque frāter cum Mārcō in flūmine fuerātis?
6. In aquā cum eō nōn fuerāmus; namque omnēs quī illō diē in flūmine fuerant herī erant aegrī. 7. Multōs diēs sōlem nōn viderāmus; itaque aqua erat gelida. 8. Maximōs imbrēs quoque habuerāmus atque mēnsis est Aprīlis. 9. Valēns tē valentem laetus videō. 10. Et ego laetus sum tē valentem vidēns.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

SINGULAR

amāveram	vīderam	mīseram	audīveram
amāverās	vīderās	mīserās	audīverās
amāverat	vīderat	mīserat	audīverat

PLURAL

amāverāmus	vīderāmus	mīserāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	vīderātis	mīserātis	audīverātis
amāverant	vīderant	mīserant	audīverant

a. The quantity of **a** in the tense-sign **-era-** is short when followed by **m**, **t**, or **nt**, and long before the other endings.

b. The past perfect tense in the indicative active is conjugated in the same way in all the conjugations.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Past Perfect Tense

237. The past perfect tense is used to represent action as completed at some time in the past. (43)

Senēs quōs ēlēgerat Rōmulus senātōrēs nōmināvit, the old men whom he had selected Romulus called senators.

COMPOSITION

238. 1. The boy Marcus was sick because he had been in the river. 2. The water was cold because it was the month of April. 3. There had also been very great rains. 4. The boys had given their attention too much to sport. 5. The master had told (ordered) the boys to give attention to their books. 6. The master had been a boy himself and had loved the water. 7. Therefore the sports of the boys were pleasing to the master.

8. The seizing of the maidens (the maidens seized) had been the cause of war. 9. The Sabine women had come between the weapons of their husbands and fathers. 10. The entreaties of the women had moved the leaders. 11. The women had been dear to their parents and husbands, but peace made them dearer.

CHAPTER XXIX

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

239. The future perfect tense in Latin, if translated literally, is equivalent to the same tense in English.

Cum Tarpēia hostēs in arcem perdūxerit, mūnus habēbit, *when Tarpeia shall have conducted the enemy to the citadel, she will have her reward.*

The tenses are used with greater exactness in Latin than in English, and hence the Latin future perfect may sometimes be translated by the English present.

Sī mulierēs inter tēla vēnerint, patrēs et virī irās dīriment, *if the women come (literally, shall have come) between the weapons, their fathers and husbands will put away their wrath.*

The future perfect tense of the indicative active contains the perfect stem, the tense-sign **-eri-** (first person, **-erō**), and the personal endings of the active voice; as,

Fu-erō, ded-eri-t, vid-eri-mus.

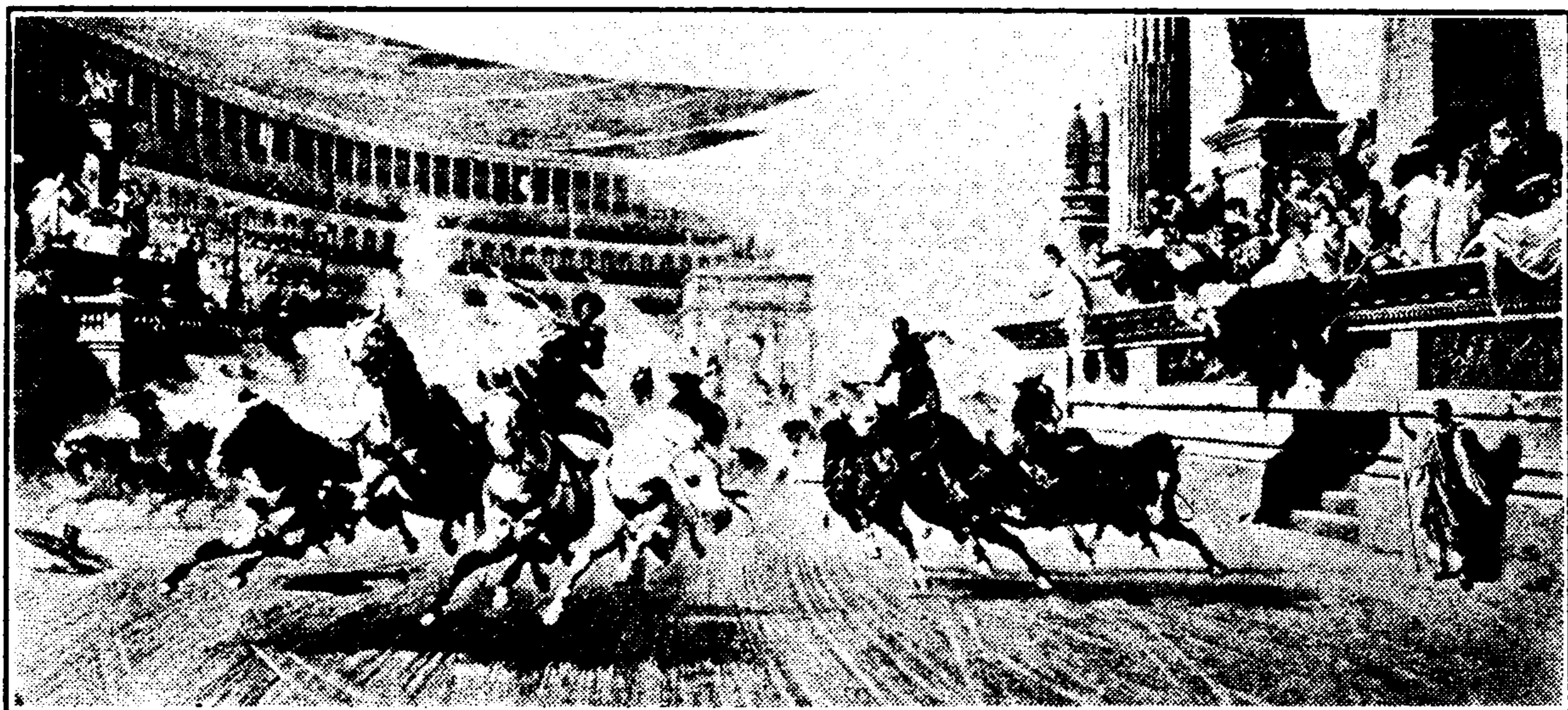
240. Review the perfect and the past perfect tenses, sections 226, 236.

In the following exercises translate the future perfect tense literally, and again in accordance with the English idiom.

READING EXERCISE

241. 1. Fīlius cuiusdam (a certain) oppidānī erat malī servī amicus. 2. Pater id intellēxit sed amicitiam eōrum prohibēre nōn poterat. 3. Fīlium monēbat, servum terrēbat. 4. Servus minās dominī timēbat et haec (this) amīcō dīxit: 5. "Sī tuōrum cōnsiliōrum fuerō particeps, pater tuus mē in poenam dabit; 6. sī mē in poenam dederit, erō miserrimus."

7. Tum fīlius “Sī pater,” inquit, “propter mē tibi fuerit saevus, prō tē ego poenam dabō. 8. Numquam, cum mihi fīdus fueris, tē miserum vidēbō. 9. Sī autem ambo in maleficiō fuerimus, aut ūnā supplicium dabimus aut ūnā perīculum vitābimus.” 10. Posteā pater puerōs in agrōs mīsit. 11. “Sī impigrī,” inquit, “hodiē fueritis, crās in circō lūdōs vidēbitis.” 12. Nempe ita putāvit: “Sī hodiē puerī dīligentēs fuerint, iīs (to them) praemium dabō.” 13. Sic



CERTĀMEN CURRUM IN CIRCŌ

in agrōs veniunt. 14. Vesperī cum pater nihil factum vīderit, quid puerī spērābunt?

15. Cum mulierēs inter pignantēs militēs vēnerint, repentīnum silentium erit. 16. Sī Rōmānī cum hostibus foedus fēcerint, ex duābus cīvitātibus erit ūna. 17. Cum Rōmulus senātōrēs ēlēgerit, eōrum cōnsiliō omnia aget. 18. Omnibus pāx erit laeta. 19. Duo rēgēs commūne rēgnum habēbunt.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the future perfect forms. Write the conjugation in the future perfect tense of **sum** (**fuerō**), **dō** (**dederō**), **videō** (**vīderō**), **ēligō** (**ēlēgerō**), and **veniō** (**vēnerō**), giving the translation of the first person singular.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

b. At what time does the future perfect tense represent action as completed?

TEMPESTĀS AB TERRIS RŌMULUM AUFERT

242. Post aliquot annōs Tātius, alter rēgum, interficitur. Rōmulus, sōlus iterum rēx, multitūdini et patribus grātus fuit atque maximē acceptus militum animīs. Posteā dum cōntiōnem in campō habet, subita tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque dēnsō rēgem operuit nimbō; nec inde in terrīs Rōmulus fuit. Proculus Iūlius, gravis vir, cōntiōnem vēnit. “Rōmulus,” inquit, “Quirītēs, parēns huius urbis, primā hodiernā lūce caelō repente dēlapsus sē mihi obvium dedit. ‘Mea Rōma,’ inquit, ‘caput orbis terrārum erit; nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere poterunt.’ ” Deinde deum et rēgem parentemque urbis Rōmae salvēre ūniversī Rōmulum iubent.

a. **Cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque**, with a great peal of thunder (literally, with a great noise and thunder); **primā hodiernā lūce**, at dawn to-day (lit., at to-day’s first light); **sē mihi obvium dedit**, met me (lit., put himself in the way to me, in my way); **salvēre ūniversī Rōmulum iubent**, all hail Romulus (lit., all bid Romulus hail).

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *accept*, *camp*, *dense*, *grave* (adj.), *human*, *tempest*, *universe*.

CONJUGATION

243. **Fuerō**, I shall have been; **amāverō**, I shall have loved; **vīderō**, I shall have seen; **mīserō**, I shall have sent; **audīverō**, I shall have heard.

SINGULAR

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, you will have been
fuerit, he will have been

PLURAL

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

SINGULAR

amāverō	vīderō	mīserō	audīverō
amāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit

PLURAL

amāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint

a. Both vowels in the tense-sign *-eri-* are short; in the first person singular *o* in *-erō* is long.

b. In the future perfect tense, and in all tenses which contain the perfect stem, all verbs are conjugated alike.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Future Perfect Tense

244. The future perfect tense represents action as completed at some future time. (44)

Sī dīligentēs fueritis, vōbīs praemium dabitur, if you shall have been (are) diligent, a reward will be given to you.

COMPOSITION

245. 1. When the prayers of the women shall have moved the multitude, there will be silence. 2. When the leaders make (shall have made) a treaty, there will be peace. 3. When Romulus chooses (shall have chosen) one hundred senators, he will do all things according to their advice. 4. If the leaders make (shall have made) a treaty, two kings will have the kingdom in common (a common kingdom will be to two kings).

5. When a thick cloud covers (shall have covered) Romulus, he will not be longer on earth. 6. "If my Rome," said Romulus, "shall be the capital of the world, no human power will be able to withstand Roman arms." 7. The city which Romulus founded was the capital of the world. 8. Hail (imperative), Romulus (voc.), king and father of the Roman city. 9. Romulus, we bid you hail (to hail). 10. All hailed Romulus as father and king (bade to hail). 11. I bid you hail.

CHAPTER XXX

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

246. The perfect active infinitive is formed by joining the ending **-isse** to the perfect stem; as,

Fu-isse, *to have been*; **rēgnāv-isse**, *to have reigned*.

The present and the perfect tenses of the infinitive denote, respectively, time that is relatively present or past; that is, time that is present or past with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends.

Magister dicit Rōmam esse urbem pulchram, *the master says that Rome is (says Rome to be) a beautiful city*.

Magister dicit Rōmam caput orbis terrārum fuisse, *the master says that Rome was (says Rome to have been) the capital of the world*.

These two sentences illustrate one of the most common uses of the Latin infinitive, following a verb denoting saying or thinking, or some similar expression, and having its own subject in the accusative case. In translating such sentences into English the conjunction *that* is generally used and the English verb is in the indicative mood rather than in the infinitive.

247. Review the present infinitive, sections 179, 184; and the uses of the infinitive, sections 186–190.

Study the verbs that are used in the perfect infinitive in the following reading exercise and find the present indicative of each verb in the vocabulary. It is important that the first three of the principal parts of each verb should be learned.

Notice the meaning of the verbs and expressions which are followed by an infinitive with its accusative subject.

READING EXERCISE

248. 1. **Vesperī pater fīlium ad sē vocat.** 2. **“Quid hodiē,” pater rogat, “ā magistrō didicistī?”** 3. **“Plūrima,”**



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

a. The perfect active infinitive is formed in the same way in verbs of all the conjugations, and in all irregular verbs, by adding the ending *-isse* to the perfect stem.

SYNTAX

The Infinitive with Verbs of Saying

250. The infinitive with a subject in the accusative case is used after verbs of saying and thinking, and after expressions which imply saying or thinking. (45)

Dixit frātrēs urbem condidisse, he said that the brothers had founded the city; suspīciōnem habeō fābulam nōn vēram fuisse, I have a suspicion that the story was not true.

The Time Denoted by the Perfect Infinitive

251. The time denoted by the perfect infinitive is past with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends. (46)

Dicit leōnem vēnisse, he says that a lion came (has come); dixit leōnem vēnisse, he said that a lion had come (came).

COMPOSITION

252. 1. What have you learned to-day? 2. I have learned that after the death of Tatius, Romulus reigned alone again. 3. Livy says that Romulus was very acceptable to the soldiers; 4. that a sudden tempest covered the king with a thick cloud; 5. and that Romulus was no longer on earth. 6. It is said (*dīcitur*) that Romulus descending from the sky met Proculus at dawn. 7. It is said that Rome was the capital of the world; 8. and that no power was able to resist Roman arms. 9. I have heard that the Romans called (*vocō*) Romulus a god and king and the father of the city. 10. Do you think that Romulus was a god? 11. Did you say that Rome was the capital of the world?

CHAPTER XXXI

REVIEW OF NOUNS

Gender

FORMATION OF LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

253. In Latin the gender of names of persons and animals is the same as in English, nouns denoting males being masculine and nouns denoting females being feminine. Other nouns may be masculine, feminine, or neuter in Latin, although the corresponding nouns in English are neuter.

The gender of some Latin nouns may be determined by the following general rules, although there are exceptions:

(1) Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

Tiberis, the Tiber; Auster, the south wind; Aprīlis, April.

(2) Names of cities, countries, islands, and trees are feminine.

Italia, Italy; Rōma, Rome; Sicilia, Sicily; ulmus, the elm.

(3) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, clauses, etc., are neuter.

Nihil, nothing; audire avis grātum est, to hear the birds is pleasing.

The gender of nouns is also indicated by the ending of the nominative singular, certain endings being generally found in masculine nouns, certain others in feminine nouns, and still others in neuter nouns.

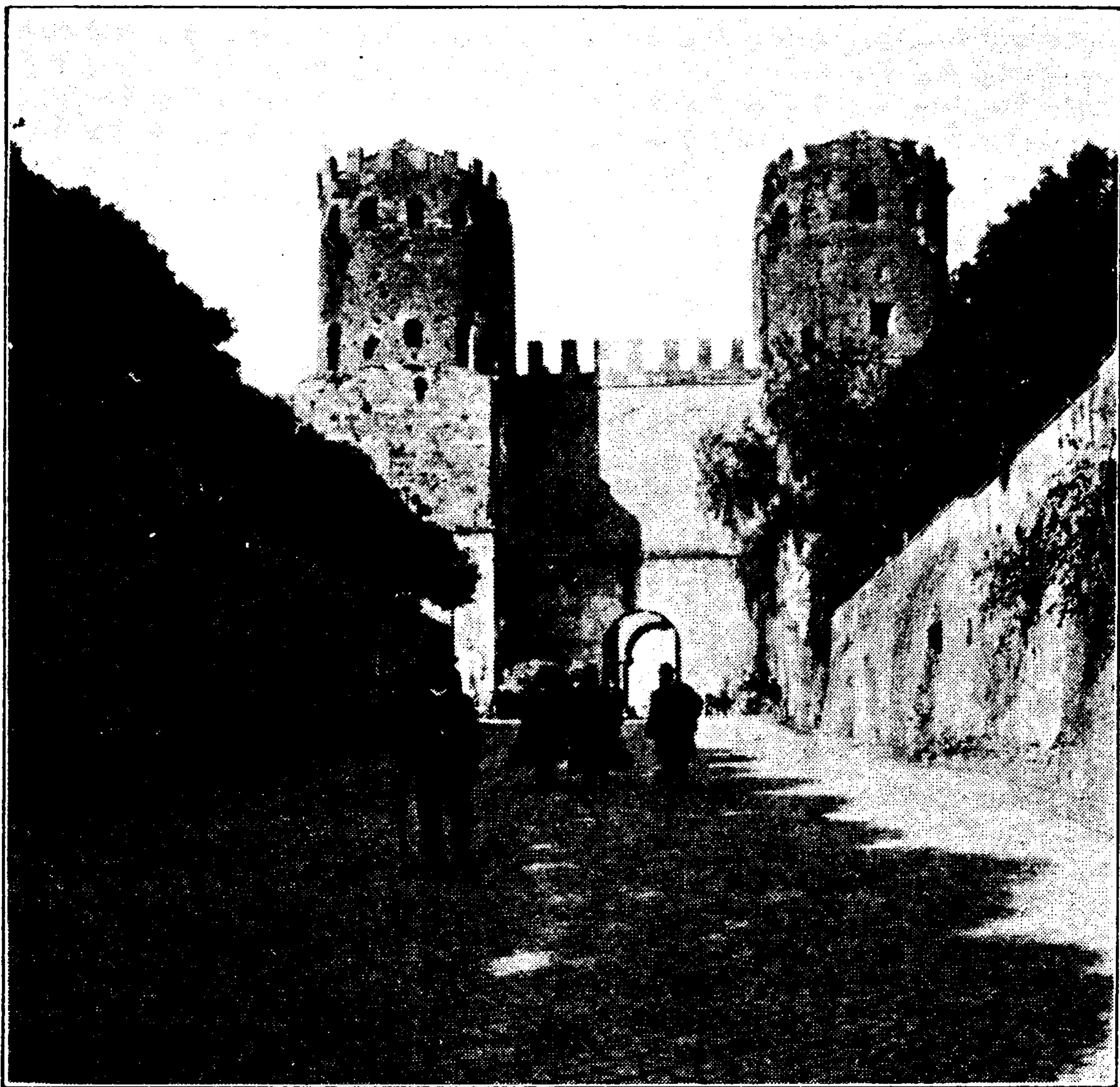
254. In the following exercise find the gender of each noun by consulting the general rules in section 253 or the vocabulary; and notice particularly the endings of nouns of each gender in the nominative singular.

Review the first three declensions of nouns. Learn the declension of the typical nouns, and find a model for the declension of each noun in the reading exercise which follows.

FILIA SALŪTEM DĪCIT MĀTRĪ CORNĒLIAE

(A letter to Cornelia from her daughter.)

255. 1. Ex longā nāvīgātiōne ego et pater Rōmam pervēnimus. 2. Nāvis quae nōs hūc vexit erat bona et



PORTA RŌMĀNA SEBASTIĀNA VOCĀTA

pulchra. 3. Mare, dum per fretum Siciliae vehēbāmur, erat placidum. 4. Lēnis Auster vēla tendēbat. 5. Nūllae nūbēs sed interdiū sōl, nocte lūna et stellae in caelō vidē-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Decline typical nouns and learn the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of each.

b. Make separate lists of all the masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns belonging to each declension, writing the forms in the nominative singular.

c. Make a table to show what nominative endings belong to each gender in the first, the second, and the third declensions.

GENDER IN THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS

256. The gender of nouns, if not determined by the rules in section 253, can best be learned by observation. The following general statements may be made but there are exceptions.

(1) In the first declension nouns ending in *-a*, except names of males and words which refer to males, are feminine. *Stella, star.*

(2) In the second declension nouns ending in *-er, -ir, -us* are masculine. *Puer, boy; vir, man; amicus, friend.* Nouns in *-um* are neuter. *Dōnum, gift.*

(3) In the third declension nouns ending in *-or* (gen., *-ōris*), *-ō* (*-ōnis*), *-er* (*-ris*), *-es* (*-itis*), are masculine. *Scriptor, writer; sermō* (*sermōnis*), *speech; pater* (*patris*), *father; miles* (*militis*), *soldier.*

Nouns ending in *-tās* (*-tātis*), *-tūs* (*-tūtis*), *-ēs* (*-is*), *-gō* or *-dō* (*-inis*), *-iō* (*-iōnis*), and *-is* (*-is*) are feminine. *Tempestās* (*tempestātis*), *weather; virtūs* (*virtūtis*), *valor; nūbēs* (*nūbis*), *cloud; imāgō* (*imāginis*), *image; multitūdō* (*multitūdinis*), *multitude; nāvigātiō* (*nāvigātiōnis*), *voyage; nāvis, ship.*

Collis (*-is*), *hill; ignis* (*-is*), *fire; mēnsis* (*-is*), *month; and orbis* (*-is*), *circle, are masculine.*

The most common endings of neuter nouns of the third declension are *-en, -us, -e, -al.* *Flūmen, river; genus, kind; mare, sea; animal, animal.*

FORMATION OF LATIN NOUNS

257. Latin nouns have been formed by the use of certain suffixes from verbs, from other nouns, and from adjectives; and many Latin nouns thus formed have been transferred with little or no change into the English language.



FLŪMEN ET PŌNS

(1) Nouns denoting the agent or the doer of an act re formed by adding the suffix **-tor** to roots or to stems of erbs.

audītor (audiō), *auditor*.

(2) Nouns denoting action or the result of action are formed by the suffixes **-iō, -tiō, -tūra, -ium**.

legiō, legiōnis (legō), *legion*.
 ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (ōrō), *oration*.
 scrīptūra (scrībō, scrīptum), *scripture*.
 imperium (imperō), *empire*.

(3) Nouns denoting state or condition are formed by the suffix **-or**.

terror (terreō), *terror*.

(4) Nouns denoting quality or condition are formed from nouns and adjectives by the suffixes **-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō**.

cūstōdia (cūstōs, cūstōdis), *custody*.
 iūstitia (iūstus), *justice*.
 societās (socius), *society*.
 multitūdō (multus), *multitude*.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN NOUNS

258. The following list contains examples of English nouns derived from Latin nouns. Notice the Latin nouns which have been formed from verbs, adjectives, and nouns, as explained in section 257.

agricultūra (ager and cultūra, from colō, cultum), <i>agriculture</i> .	imperātor (imperō), <i>emperor</i> .
arma, <i>arms</i> .	libertās (liber), <i>liberty</i> .
augurium (augur), <i>augury</i> .	littera (linō), <i>letter</i> .
avis, <i>aviation</i> (as if from aviātiō).	magnitūdō (magnus), <i>magnitude</i> .
captor (capiō), <i>captor</i> .	rēgnum (rēx), <i>reign</i> .
causa, <i>cause</i> .	religiō, <i>religion</i> .
condiciō (con-dīcō), <i>condition</i> .	sermō (serō), <i>sermon</i> .
corpus, <i>corps, corpse</i> .	similitūdō (similis), <i>similitude</i> .
corpusculum (diminutive from corpus), <i>corpuscle</i> .	tempestās (tempus), <i>tempest</i> .
cūra (caveō), <i>cure</i> .	templum, <i>temple</i> .
cūrātor (cūrō), <i>curator</i> .	verbum, <i>verb</i> .
dux (dūcō), <i>duke</i> .	victōria (victor), <i>victory</i> .
	virgō, virginis, <i>virgin</i> .
	vōx, vōcis (vocō), <i>voice</i> .

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find the Latin noun from which each of the following English nouns has been derived; and if possible, trace the Latin noun to a more



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XXXII

PRONOUNS

Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive

261. The Latin personal pronouns are the following:

First person: ego (meī), *I*; nōs (nostrum or nostrī), *we*.

Second person: tū (tuī), *you* (sing.); vōs (vestrum or vestrī), *you* (pl.).

There is no special personal pronoun of the third person in Latin, but its place is supplied by the demonstrative *is, he; ea, she; id, it;* or by some other demonstrative pronoun. The subject of a verb, when it is not expressed, is implied in the personal ending, which thus becomes a substitute for a personal pronoun.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person is *suī* (gen.), *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves,* the singular and plural forms being the same.

For each personal and reflexive pronoun there is a corresponding possessive:

meus (-a, -um), *my, mine;* *noster*, (nostra, nostrum), *our.*

tuus (-a, -um), *your* (sing.); *vester* (vestra, vestrum), *your* (pl.).

suus (-a, -um), *his, her, its;* *suus* (-a, -um), *their.*

262. Study the case forms of the personal, reflexive, and possessive pronouns. Observe the use of the personal and reflexive pronouns as nouns, and the use of the possessives as adjectives.

Notice the position of the preposition *cum* when it is used with a personal pronoun; as, *mēcum*, *with me*.

Several forms of the pronouns will be readily recognized on account of their use in preceding exercises.



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

AMPHITHEĀTRUM POMPĒIĀNUM ET MŌNS VESUVIUS

READING EXERCISE

263. 1. Meus pater est egēns sed tuus pater est dīves. 2. Ego sum egēns sed tū es dīves. 3. Mihi sunt paucae rēs, tibi sunt multae. 4. Omnēs (hominēs) mē meāsque fortūnās spernunt; tē tuāsque fortūnās laudant. 5. Hominēs immemorēs mei, tuī memorēs sunt. 6. Tēcum cōpia, mēcum inopia est. 7. Nōnne tū ex tuīs bonīs mihi aliquid dabis?

8. Nōs in adversīs fortūnīs sumus sed nōn sumus miserī. 9. Vōs in fortūnīs estis secundīs sed nōn estis beātī. 10. Vōbīs sunt et dīvitiae et cūrae; nōbīs neque dīvitiae neque cūrae sunt. 11. Nōs saepe, vōs nōn semper bonī laudant. 12. Nōn ā nōbīs sed ā vōbīs commūtātiō fortūnārū timētur. 13. Quis nostrum (gen.) fortūnam vestram laudat? Quis vestrum (gen.) laudat fortūnam nostram? 14. Vestrī amīcī, dum in secundīs fortūnīs eritis, vestrī (gen. pl.) erunt memorēs. 15. Nostrī amīcī semper nostrī (gen. pl.) memorēs erunt. 16. Vestrī (gen. pl.), dum in secundīs fortūnīs eritis, nostrī (gen. pl.) semper amīcī erunt memorēs.

17. Malus homō suī est amātor. 18. Sē suāsque fortūnās semper laudat. 19. Sibi est cārus et ab sē amātur. 20. Malī hominēs sunt amātōrēs suī. 21. Sē suāsque fortūnās semper laudant. 22. Sibi sunt cārī et ab sēsē amantur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write the declension of ego (pl., nōs) and tū (pl., vōs). Write also all the forms of suī, singular and plural.

b. Decline the possessive pronouns, meus, noster, tuus, vester, and suus in the nominative and genitive singular in all genders.

c. How does the Latin differ from the English in the use of personal pronouns as subjects of verbs?

DECLENSION.

264. Ego, I; tū, you; suī, of himself, of herself, etc.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

a. The personal pronouns may be used reflexively; as, **ipse mē laudō**, *I praise myself*.

The Use of Possessive Pronouns

267. The possessive pronouns are used like adjectives and agree with the nouns which they modify, not with their antecedents, in case, number, and gender. (49)

Meus pater, *my father*; **tua māter**, *your mother*; **nostrae fortūnae**, *our fortunes*; **pater noster**, *our father*.

a. **Noster** and **vester** are in the same case, number, and gender as the thing possessed; as, **nostra patria**, *our country*.

b. The possessive pronoun is often omitted if the meaning is clear without it; as, **parentēs liberōs amant**, *parents love their children*.

Adjectives as Nouns

268. Some adjectives, generally in the plural, are used as substitutes for nouns. In the masculine and feminine such adjectives denote persons; in the neuter they denote things. (50)

Omnēs, *all (people)*; **bonī**, *the good*; **bona**, *good (things), goods*; **nostrī**, *our friends*; **nostra**, *our possessions*.

The Objective Genitive

269. With nouns denoting action or feeling, and with adjectives denoting desire, memory, participation, etc., the genitive is used to represent the object of the action or feeling. (51)

Amātor suī, *a lover of himself*; **amīcī sunt nostrī** (gen.) **memorēs**, *our friends are mindful of us*.

The Genitive of the Whole

270. The genitive of the whole is used to modify a word denoting a part. (52)

Quis nostrum, *who of us?* **Rōma est maxima urbium Ītalīae**, *Rome is the largest of the cities of Italy*.

a. This is sometimes called the partitive genitive.

COMPOSITION

271. 1. I am a brave soldier but you are not brave. The leader will praise me but you he will blame. 3. To me a reward will be given, to you punishment. 4. The citizens will always have memory of me, but memory of you will not come to mind. 5. Our country will be saved by me, but by you the country is not loved. 6. Be thou brave and fight for thy country.

7. While we are playing ball (*pilā lūdere*), you (pl.) are reading your books. 8. One (*alter*) of us throws (*sendit*) the ball; the other catches (*accipere*) it (*eam*). 9. Some (*alteri*) of you are read-

ing the books of Caesar,

the others (*alteri*) are

reading Vergil's (*Vergi-*

ana). 10. Soon you will

play ball (with the ball)

and we will read our

Latin books. 11. We

will give you the ball.

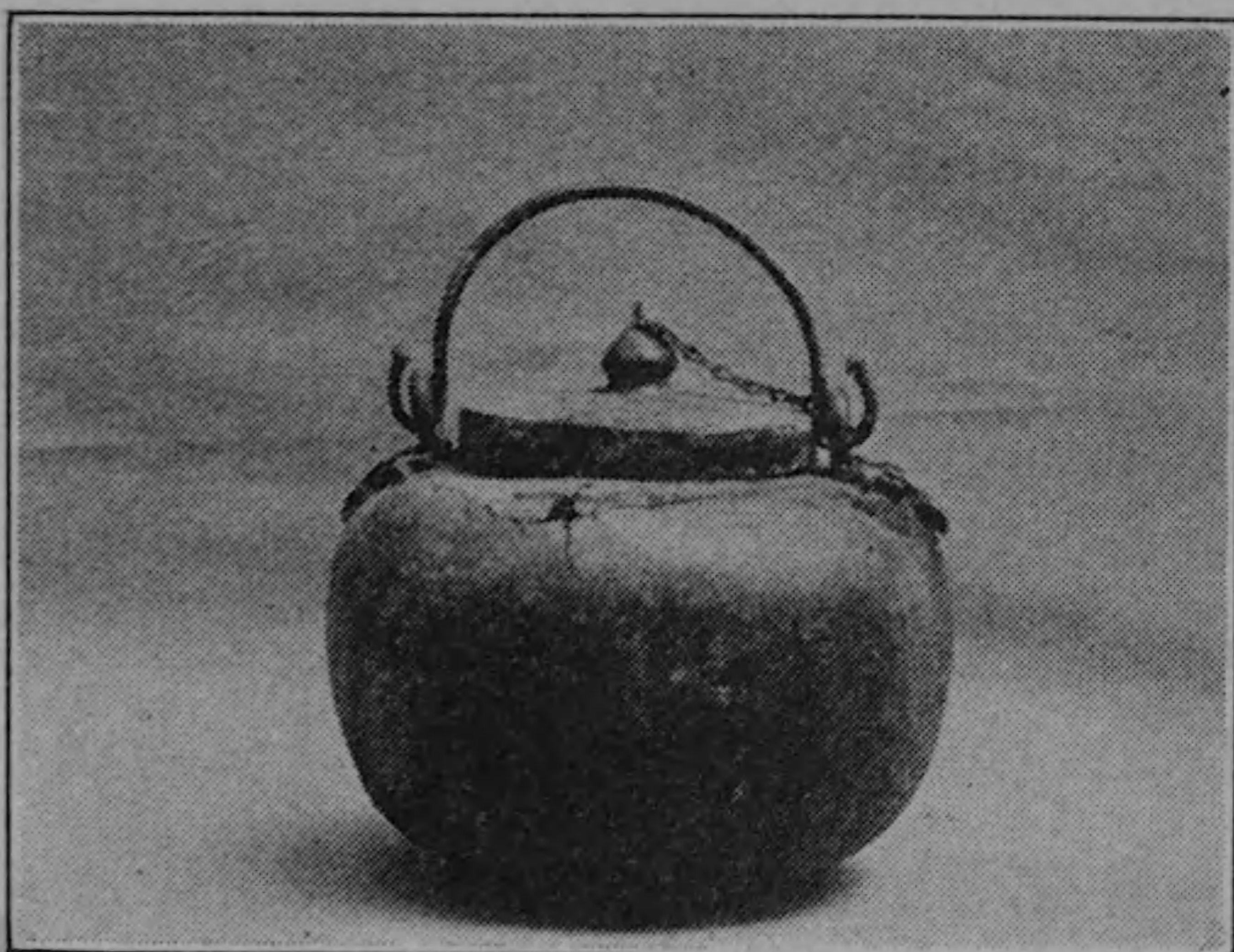
12. Give us the books.

13. The master tells (*or-*

dit) us to read our

Latin books; he tells

you to play ball. 14. The master will be praised by you.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

LEBĒS AĒNEUS

15. Will he also be praised by us?

16. The brave soldier is forgetful of himself. 17. Brave

soldiers are forgetful of themselves. 18. Romulus sought a

wife for himself. 19. The Romans sought wives for them-

selves. 20. Romulus was bravely defending himself. 21.

The Romans were bravely defending themselves. 22.

The brave do not praise themselves. 23. The good are

praised by all. 24. Our own (things) are dear to us, yours

to you.

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC*, *ISTE*, AND *ILLE*

The Intensive *Ipse*

272. The demonstrative pronouns **hic**, *this*, **iste**, *that*, and **ille**, *that*, are used chiefly to designate some definite person or thing. They may be used as adjectives agreeing in case, number, and gender with the nouns defined, or they may be used to represent their antecedents.

Hic generally refers to something connected in time, place, or thought with the person speaking; **iste** refers to something connected with the person addressed; **ille** refers to something remote from both.

The intensive **ipse** (**ipsa**, **ipsum**), *himself* (*herself*, *itself*), is used for emphasis and should be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **sui**.

273. Study the pronouns found in section 274 and observe the use of each as adjective or substantive (noun). If the pronoun is used as an adjective, notice its agreement with the modified noun in case, number and gender; if it is used as a noun, compare its gender and number with the gender and number of its antecedent, and to explain the case apply the rules for the syntax of nouns. Compare the genitive and dative forms in the singular with the corresponding cases of **ūnus**, sections 211.

READING EXERCISE

274. 1. *Hic liber est meus, iste liber est tuus, ille liber est magistrī.* 2. *Quī librōs magistrī scripsērunt?* 3. *Illius Caesar, istius Vergilius, huius Horātius erat scriptor.* 4. *Quibus dē rēbus (on what subjects) Horātī liber est scriptus?* 5. *Multa in illō librō dē sapientiā atque dē hominibus sunt*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

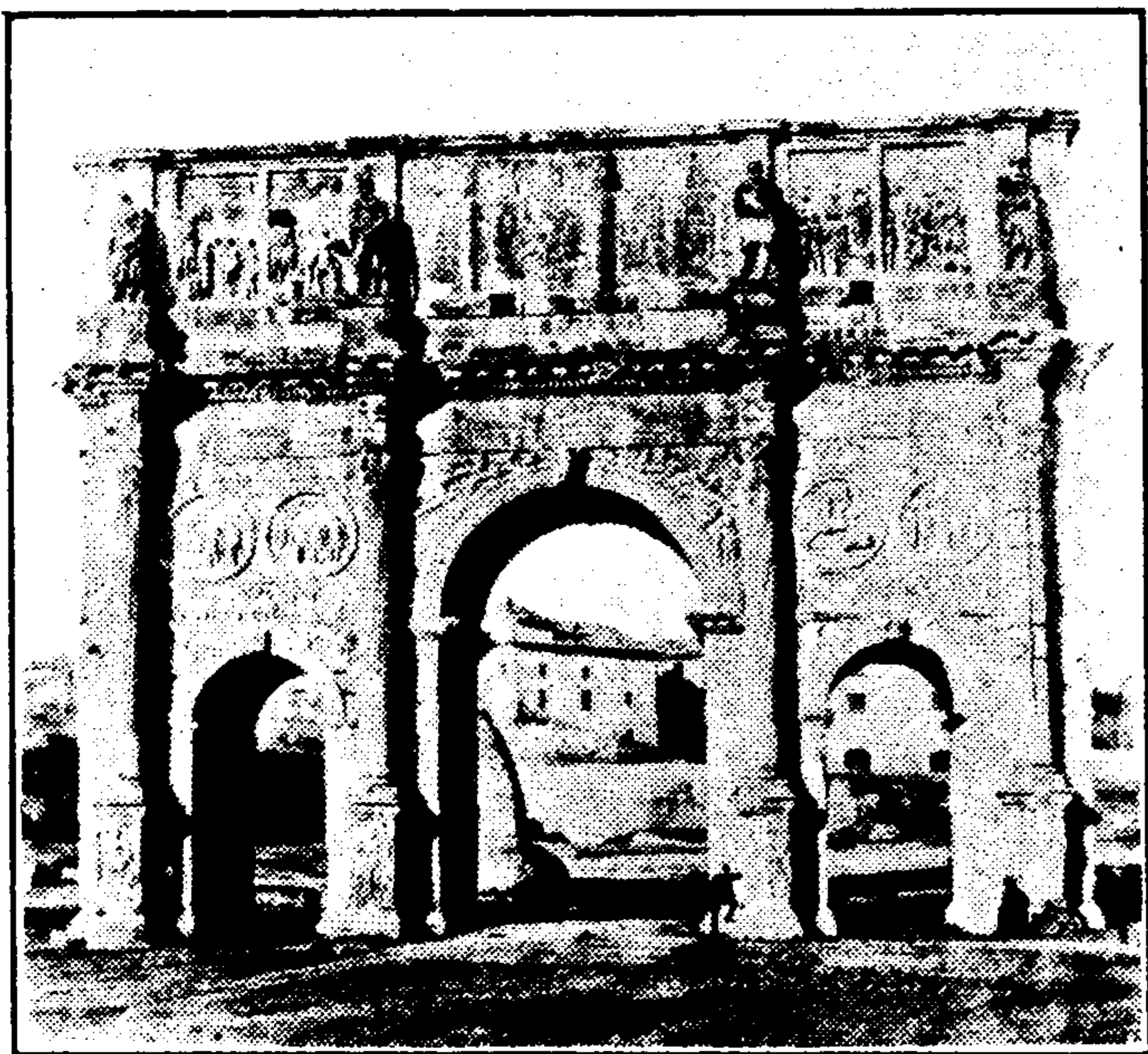
NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write the names of the cases in a column and complete the declension of each pronoun as far as is possible with the forms used above.

b. Notice the special meaning of *illud* and *haec* in sentence 22.

NUMAE POMPILIŌ RĒGNUM DATUR

275. Inclita iūstitia religiōque illō tempore Numae Pompilī erat. Curibus Sabīnīs habitābat, cōsultissimus



ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ

vir omnis dīvinī atque hūmānī iūris. Huic pat-rēs Rōmānī omnēs rēg-num darī volēbant. Numa rēx creātus urbem novam, vī et armīs con-ditam, iūre lēgibusque āc mōribus dē integrō con-dere parat. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cur-sum lūnae dēscripsit. Iānum indicem pācis bellique fēcit; apertus in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus pācātōs circā

omnēs populōs significābat. Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs alius aliā viā, ille bellō hic pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

a. *Curibus Sabīnīs* (loc.), in *Cures of the Sabines*; **Numa . . . parat**, *When Numa had been elected king* (lit., *Numa elected king*), *the new city founded by force of arms* (lit., *by force and arms*), *he prepared to found anew with justice and laws and good morals also*; **alius aliā viā**, *one in one way the other in another*. (See section 207.)

b. For the declension of *vīs* see section 548.

c. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *close*, *create*, *describe*, *divine*, *index*, *integer*, *justice*, *religion*, *signify*, *vim*.

DECLENSION

276. Hic, haec, hoc, *this*; ille, illa, illud, *that*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. Iste, *that of yours*, is declined like ille. Ipse, *self*, is declined like ille except in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, where ipse has ipsum, the regular form of adjectives.

SYNTAX

The Use of Demonstrative Pronouns

277. Demonstrative pronouns may be used as substantives or as adjectives in agreement with nouns. (53)

Hic, *this (man), he*; haec, *these things*; ista epistula, *that letter (of yours)*; illa tempora, *those times*; virginēs ipsae, *the maidens themselves*.

a. Hic and ille are sometimes contrasted, ille meaning the former and hic the latter of two objects. Duo rēgēs, ille bellō hic pāce, cīvītātem auxērunt, *two kings, the former by war the latter by peace, advanced the state*.

Duration of Time

278. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative case. (54)

Rōmulus septem et trigintā rēgnāvit annōs, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years*.

COMPOSITION

279. 1. The new king is Numa Pompilius. 2. The piety of this king is celebrated. 3. He was not living in the city of Rome itself, but at Cures (loc.). 4. That (man) was very learned in divine and human law. 5. For this reason (*hāc dē causā*) the Romans themselves gave the kingdom to Numa. 6. This was Numa's plan. 7. I will found the city anew by means of right, laws, and morals. 8. That plan of yours, Numa, will advance the state. 9. (The temple of) Janus was the sign of peace and war. 10. Open, (the temple of) Janus is the sign of war. 11. When (the temple of) Janus is closed, the state is not in arms. 12. Romulus advanced the state by war, Numa Pompilius by peace. 13. The former reigned thirty-seven years, the latter forty-three.



Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

MONTĒS SABĪNĪ ATQUE VIA AD VILLAM HŌRĀTĪ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Tatius Sabīnus, alter Rōmulus erat. 9. Post mortem Tatī Rōmulus sōlus iterum fuit rēx; is omnibus, patribus atque mīlitibus, fuit acceptus. 10. Post aliquot annōs tempestās eum dēnsō nimbō operuit. 11. Proculus, cui Rōmulus sē obvium dederat, haec in cōntiōne dīxit: 12. “Rōmulus, quī parēns fuit huius urbis, est in caelō. 13. Eius Rōma caput orbis terrārum erit. 14. Nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere poterunt.” 15. Salvē, Rōmule, rēx atque parēns urbis Rōmae.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Arrange the different forms of *is* and *quī* in tables of declension, supplying, as far as possible, the forms which do not appear in the above sentences.

TULLUS HOSTĪLIUS RĒX CREĀTUR

283. Numac morte Tullum Hostīlium, nepōtem Hostīli cuius pugna adversus Sabīnōs fuerat clāra, rēgem populus creāvit. Hic nōn sōlum proximō rēgī dissimilis, sed ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Cum aetās virēsque tum avīta quoque glōria animum stimulāvit. Māteriām igitur bellī undique quaerēbat. Forte pāstōrēs Rōmānī ex Albānō agrō, Albānī ex Rōmānō praedās agēbant. Utrimque lēgātī missī sunt sed Tullus ferōx pācem facere nōlēbat. Bellum igitur parātum est.

a. *Numae morte, at the death of Numa; proximō rēgī dissimilis, unlike the last king (sec. 56); cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.*

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *dissimilar, ferocious, glory, prey, stimulate.*

DECLENSION

284. *Is, that, he; quī, who, which.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>m.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>i.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>l.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>c.</i>	quem	quod	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>l.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Compare the genitive and dative singular with the same cases of **hic**, **iste**, and **ille**, section 276.

b. With **quibus** the preposition **cum** is an enclitic. **Quibuscum**, *h whom*. Compare **mēcum**, *with me*; **tēcum**, *with you*; **nōbiscum**, *h us*; **vōbiscum**, *with you*; **sēcum**, *with him, with them*, etc.

SYNTAX

The Use of *Is*

285. The pronoun **is** may be used (1) as a definitive adjective; (2) as a demonstrative to supply the place of a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they*; or (3) it may stand as the antecedent of the relative **quī**. (55)

(1) **In eō locō urbem aedificant**, *they build a city in this place*; (2) **populus Numam rēgem creāvit; is pāce cīvitatē auxit**, *the people made Numa king; he advanced the state by peace*; (3) **is quem populus rēgem creāvit cīvitatē auxit**, *he whom the people made king advanced the state*.

Agreement of the Relative Pronoun

286. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; its case is determined by its use in the sentence. (56)

Urbs quam Rōmam vocāvit, *the city which he called Rome*.

COMPOSITION

287. 1. On the death (abl. of time) of Numa the people made Tullus Hostilius king. 2. He was the grandson of Hostilius Hostilius who had fought against the Sabines. That fight which had been against the Sabines was

famous. 4. Tullus was different from (to) Numa, who had been the last king. 5. He was even more warlike (ferōcior) than Romulus. 6. The king, whose age and strength aroused his spirit, was seeking an occasion for war. 7. The renown of his grandfather aroused the spirit of Hostilius.

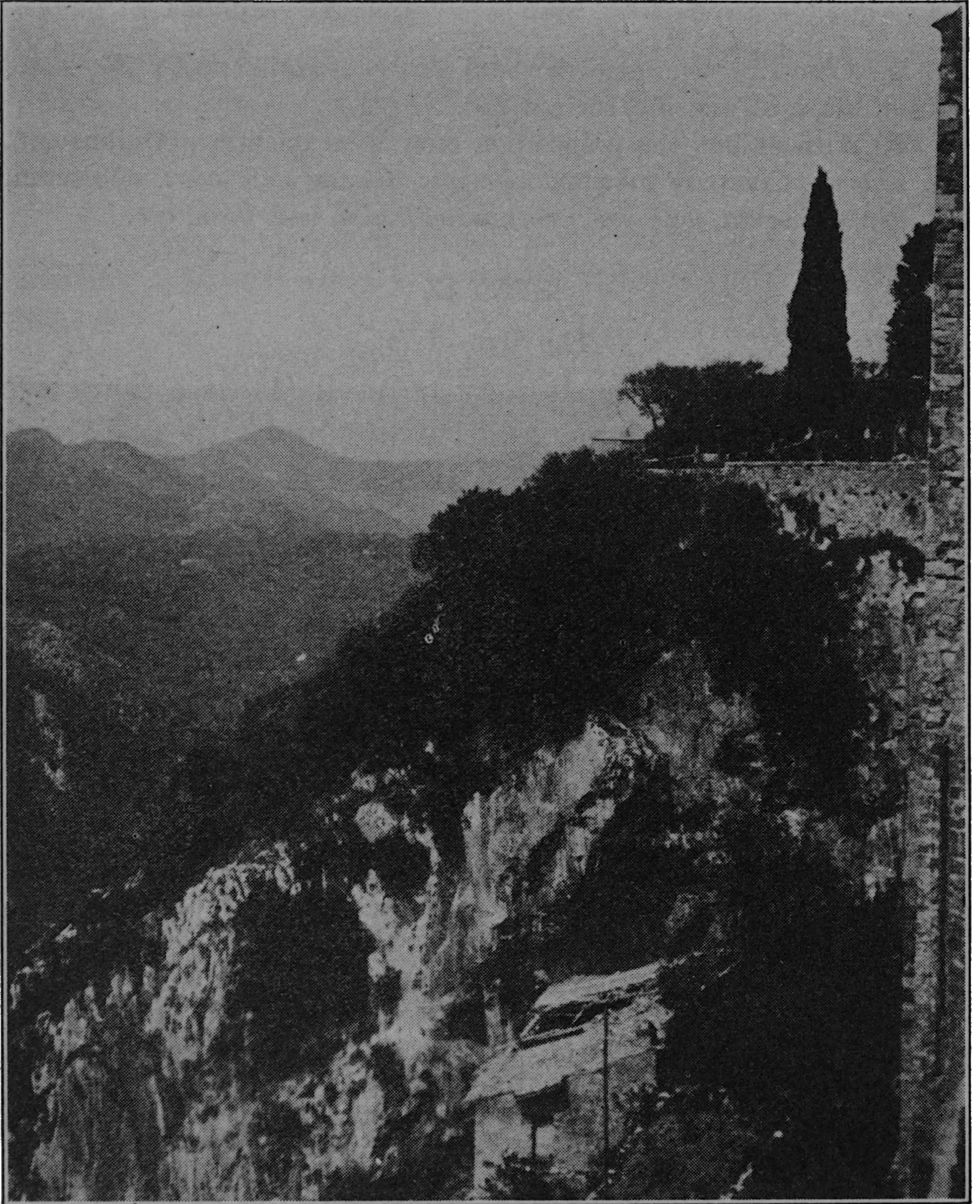


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

MONTĒS IN ETRŪRIĀ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

READING EXERCISE

290. 1. Sabīnī statim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt. 2. Armātī hostēs Rōmae appropinquābant. 3. Mīlitēs in arcem perductī Tarpēiam scūtīs obruunt. 4. Deinde prīncipēs utrimque fortissimē pugnābant. 5. Sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs inter tēla volantia vērunt. 6. Et hinc patrēs hinc virōs ōrantēs multitudinem mōvērunt. 7. Foedere ā ducibus factō mulierēs et virīs et patribus erant cāriōrēs.

8. Urbe septem et trīgintā annōs ab Rōmulō rēgnātā populus Numam rēgem creāvit. 9. Quī urbem vī et armīs conditam, lēgibus āc mōribus dē integrō condere volēbat. 10. Iānum indicem pācis bellique fēcit. 11. Iānus apertus bellum, clausus pācem esse significābat. 12. Morte Numae audītā populus Tullō rēgnum dedit. 13. Tullus animō avītā glōriā stimulātō māteriam belli quaerēbat.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the perfect passive participles together with the nouns which they modify, and tell the case, number, and gender.

b. Make a list of all the expressions in which a noun and a participle are in the ablative case (the ablative absolute), and write out the best possible translation of each of these expressions.

c. Write and recite orally the first three of the principal parts of the verbs, and add the nominative singular masculine of the perfect passive participle as given in the vocabulary; as,

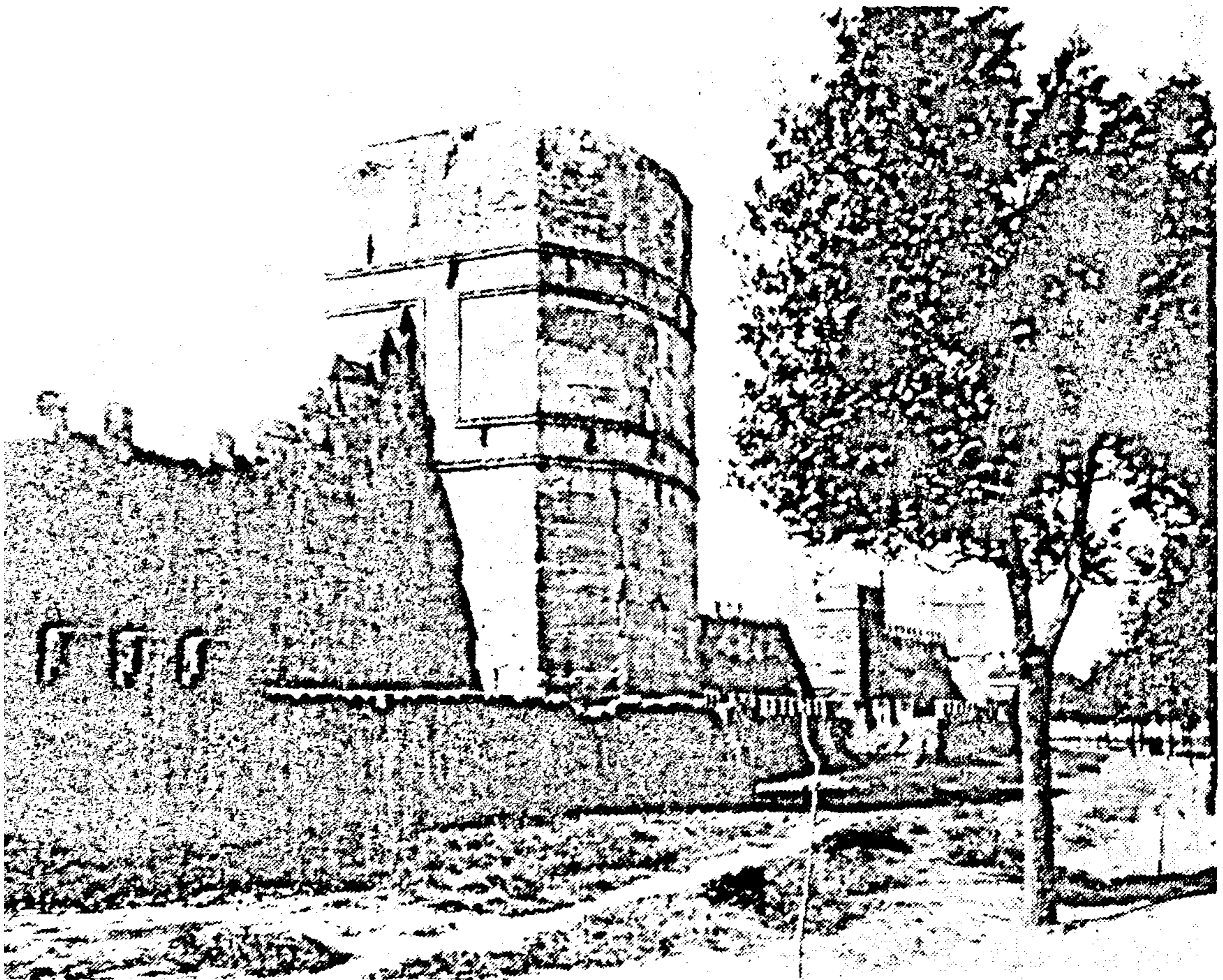
condō, condere, condidī, conditus.

INTER ALBĀNŌS ET RŌMĀNŌS BELLUM

291. Tullō Hostiliō rēgnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs erat. Ducibus Hostiliō et Fūfetiō placuit certāmen paucōrum pugnā finīrī. Forte erant apud Rōmānōs trigeminī frātrēs Horātiī, trēs apud Albānōs Cūriātiī. Cum his agunt rēgēs ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicient ferrō. Foedus his lēgibus Rōmānī et Albānī faciunt: ibi imperium

t unde victōria fuerit; cuius populī cīvēs hōc certāmine erint, is alterī populō cum bonā pāce imperābit.

a. **Ducibus**, dative, indirect object of **placuit**; **certāmen**, acc., object of **finiri**; **Horātū, Cūriātū**, apposition with **frātrēs**; **ut . . . cent**, *that they fight each for his own country*; **his lēgibus**, *under*



TURRIS ET MŪRUS IN HISPĀNIĀ

ese conditions; **cuius . . . imperābit**, *the people whose citizens shall have conquered in this contest shall rule over the other in peace.*

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *empire, finish, please, story.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

292. Regular verbs have four principal parts: the present indicative active, the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active, and the perfect passive participle. Certain verbs lack the perfect passive participle; and of

these the future active participle, when there is such a form, is given as the fourth of the principal parts.

These forms are called the principal parts because they contain the stems upon which is based the conjugation of the verb in all the moods and tenses.

TYPICAL VERBS

293. Amō, videō, mittō, audiō, sum, capiō.

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PER. INDIC.	PER. PART.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus
sum	esse	fūī	futūrus (future)
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus

a. The present indicative is the form under which the verb is found in the vocabulary.

b. The present infinitive shows to what conjugation the verb belongs and contains the present stem, upon which are based the present, past, and future tenses.

c. The perfect indicative active contains the perfect stem, upon which are based the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the active voice.

d. The perfect passive participle (or the future active participle) contains the participial or supine stem. This stem is found by dropping the case-ending *-us* of the perfect participle (or *-ūrus* of the future participle). The tenses of the indicative which are based upon the participial or supine stem are discussed in sections 304–313.

e. Write and recite the principal parts of *parō*, *moveō*, *dūcō*, *aperiō*, and *rapiō*.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Perfect Passive Participle

294. The perfect passive participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs; and it represents action as completed at the time of the verb upon which the participle depends. (57)



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Morte Numae auditā populus Tullō rēgnum dedit, *the death of Numa having been heard of (having heard of the death of Numa, after they had heard of the death of Numa), the people gave the kingdom to Tullus.*

a. The Latin perfect passive participle is often best translated into English by a clause or by the active past participle, which is lacking in Latin.

The Ablative Absolute

295. A noun or a pronoun in the ablative case, with a participle, adjective, or noun in agreement, may be used to form an undefined adverbial relation with the predicate. This construction is called the ablative absolute. (58)

a. The relation between the ablative absolute and the rest of the sentence can be determined only by the context. The following examples will suggest various ways of translating.

Numā rēge, *Numa (being) king, while Numa is (was) king.*

Tullō rēgnante, *Tullus reigning, while Tullus is (was) reigning, during the reign of Tullus.*

Foedere factō ducēs bellum finiunt, *a treaty having been made (when a treaty has been made, having made a treaty), the leaders end the war; or, the leaders make a treaty and end the war.*

Alterō populō victō alter populus imperium habēbit, *one people having been conquered (when one people has been conquered, if one people all have been conquered), the other will have dominion.*

Frātre interfectō Rōmulus sōlus rēgnāvit, *his brother having been killed (having killed his brother, when he had killed his brother), Romulus reigned alone; or, Romulus killed his brother and reigned alone.*

b. In a typical Latin sentence the main thought is presented in the principal clause and the thoughts of secondary importance are often made subordinate by the use of a participle; while in English such subordination is generally indicated by the use of subordinate clauses.

COMPOSITION

296. 1. In the reign of Tullus (Tullus reigning) there was war. 2. An occasion for (of) war having been sought, Tullus undertook (sūmō) war against the Albans. 3. Postulius and Fufetius (being) leaders, there was war between the Romans and the Albans. 4. When an agreement has

been made (an agreement having been made), a few fight with swords. 5. Among the Romans there were three brothers, the Horatii; among the Albans the three Curiatii. 6. The Horatii fight for Rome with swords; the Curiatii fight for Alba.

7. Each one (quisque) fights for his own country. 8. The supremacy will be there where (whence) the victory shall have been. 9. If the Curiatii shall have conquered, the Albans will rule over the Romans. 10. If the Curiatii are conquered (the Curiatii having been conquered), the Romans will have the supremacy (the supremacy will be to the Romans). 11. The leaders make an agreement on these terms. 12. When the fight is finished (the fight having been finished), the victors will rule over the conquered (dative of participle). 13. The people whose citizens conquer (shall have conquered) will rule over the other in peace (with good peace).



Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

VIA TRIUMPHĀLIS IN MONTIBUS ALBĀNĪS



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XXXVI

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

297. In the fourth declension the nominative singular of masculine nouns ends in **-us**, and the nominative singular of neuter nouns in **-ū**. The genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. The case-endings are not very different from those of the third declension except as they are modified by the characteristic stem vowel **u**.

298. In how many ways are nouns declined? How many declensions have been studied? What is the ending of the genitive singular in the first declension? in the second? in the third?

Study the nouns of the fourth declension having the nominative ending in **-us** or **-ū**, and the genitive in **-ūs**. Determine the case of each noun by its use in the sentence. Remember that an adjective is often a guide to the case, number, and gender of the noun which it modifies.

READING EXERCISE

299. 1. Salvē, amīce, quid agis hodiē? 2. Tē ipsum salvēre iubeō. Dā mihi manum tuam. 3. Unde venīs? Quid in manū habēs? 4. Ā portū veniō. Habeō in manū librōs quōs Athēnīs portāvī. 5. Ex longā nāvigātiōne iterum domī mox eris. Tuō adventū gaudeō. 6. Et ego tuō cōspectū gaudeō. Domum veniēns sum laetissimus.

7. Urbs Rōma ab ōre Tiberis circiter mīlia passuum vīgintī abest. 8. Rōmae nūllus portus erat. 9. Urbs Ōstia erat portus Rōmae; eum portum Ancus Mārcius aedificāvit. 10. Ōstia erat Rōmānīs portuī. 11. Portus Ōstiae erat magnō ūsuī Rōmānīs. 12. Nāvēs ā portū solvunt atque in portum ex longā nāvigātiōne veniunt. 13. Ex longā nāvigātiōne cōspectus portūs est grātissimus.

14. Rōmānī scientiam portuum Britanniae nōn habēbant dum Caesar insulam explorāvit. 15. Per orās Italiae sunt multī portūs. 16. Viātōrēs ē portibus Graeciae solvunt et in portūs Italiae veniunt.

17. Rōmānī bellum saepe gerēbant. 18. Magnōs exercitūs habēbant. 19. Rēgēs ipsī Rōmānōs exercitūs dūcēbant. 20. Posteā cōsulēs erant exercituum Rōmānōrum ducēs. 21. In exercitū Rōmānō erant et peditēs et equitēs.

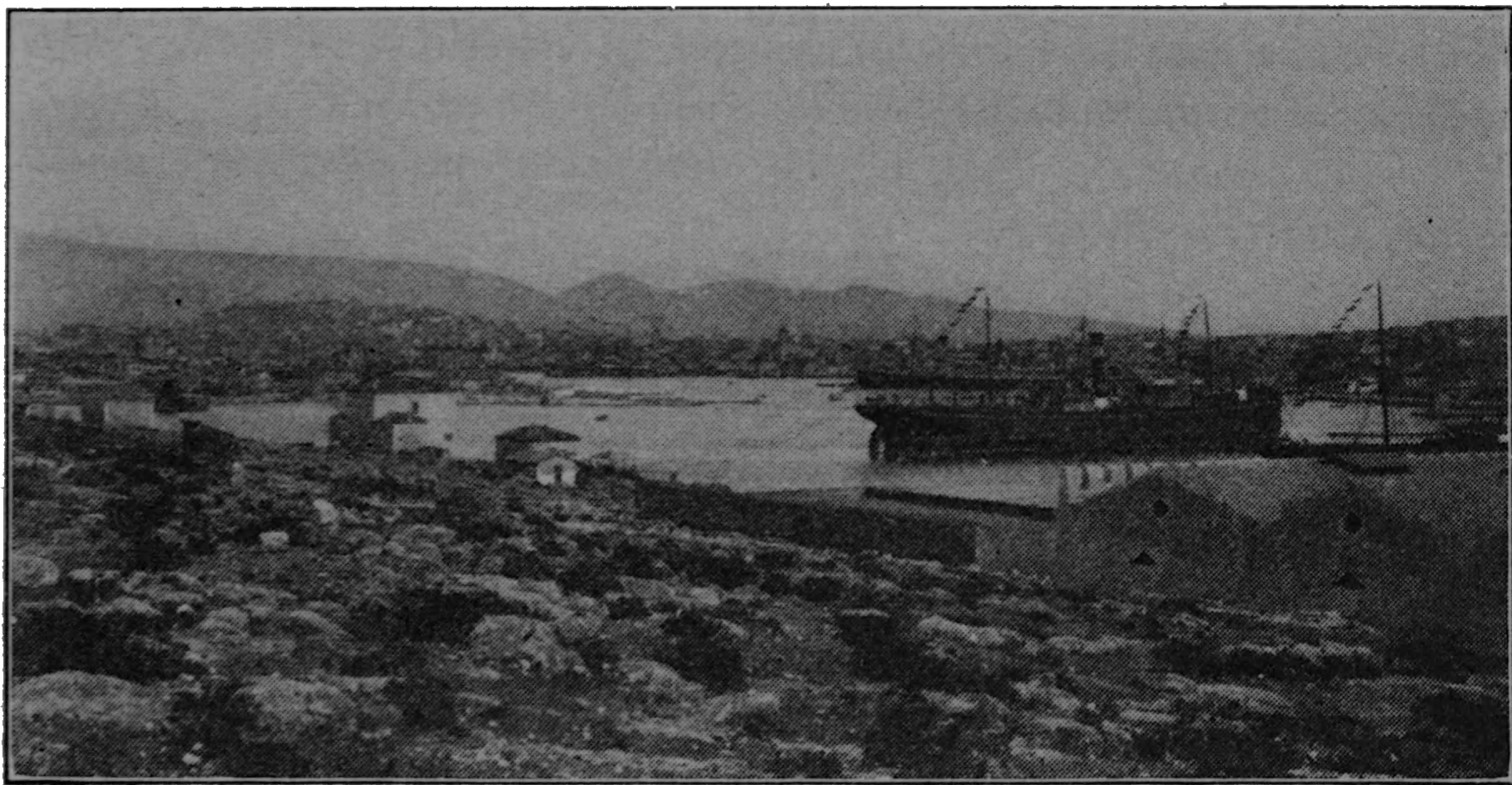


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

PĪRAEUS, PŌRTUS ATHĒNĀRUM

22. In itinere exercitus agmen appellābātur. 23. Exercitūi instrūctō nōmen aciēs dabātur. 24. Exercitūs instrūctī erant partēs trēs, quārum ūna aciēs, alia cornū dextrum, tertia sinistrum cornū appellābātur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the nouns in the exercise above whose genitive singular ends in -ūs, arranging the different cases in the usual order.

b. Write the declension of **exercitus**. What are the case-endings?

TRIGEMINĪ ARMA CAPIUNT

300. Foedere ictō trigeminī arma capiunt et in medium inter duōs exercitūs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque prō

castris duo exercitus, periculi magis praesentis quam curae expertes; nam imperium in tam paucorum virtute erat positum. Datur signum infestisque armis terni iuvenes, magnorum exercituum animos gerentes, concurrunt. Ut primo concursu increpuere (perf.) arma micantesque fulsere gladii, horror ingens spectantes perstringit, et neutris erat vox spiritusque.

a. *Foedere ictō*, ablative absolute (translate several ways); *in medium, into the midst*; *periculi . . . expertes, free from immediate danger rather than from anxiety*; *neutris . . . spiritusque, neither (side) had voice or breath (to neither was there voice and breath)*.

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *concourse, concur, horror, neuter, peril, spirit*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

301. Nom., *portus*; gen., *portus*; m.; *harbor*.

Nom., *cornu*; gen., *cornus*; n.; *horn, wing (of an army)*.

SINGULAR

			M.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornu</i>	-us	-u
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornus</i>	-us	-us
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>portui</i>	<i>cornu</i>	-ui	-u
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>portum</i>	<i>cornu</i>	-um	-u
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornu</i>	-us	-u
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>portu</i>	<i>cornu</i>	-u	-u

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornua</i>	-us	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>portuum</i>	<i>cornuum</i>	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>portibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornua</i>	-us	-ua
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>cornua</i>	-us	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>portibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus

a. The stems of nouns of the fourth declension end in *u*.

b. Most nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are masculine; all ending in *-u* are neuter. *Manus, hand, domus, house*, and a few others are feminine.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



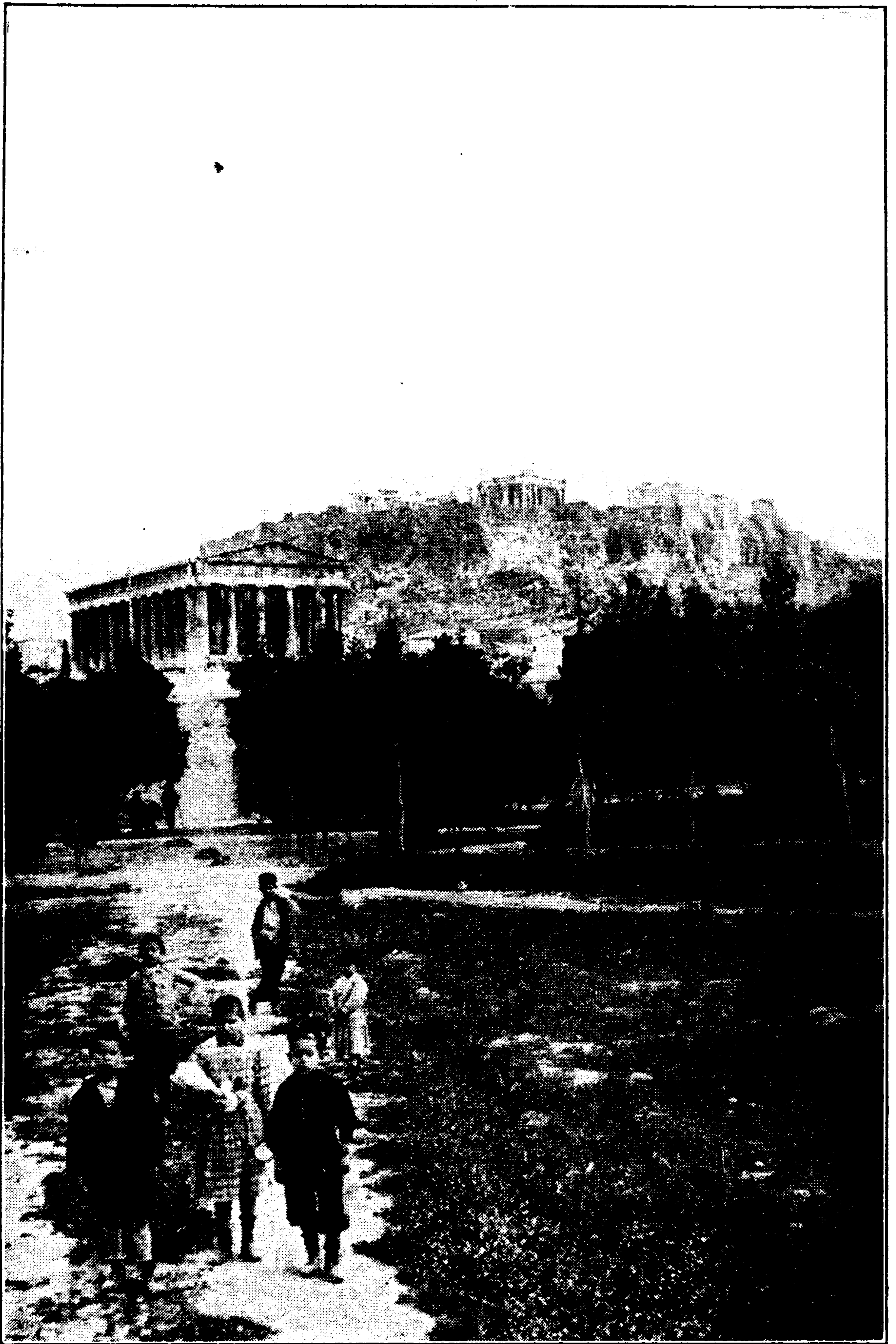
HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

ARX ATHĒNĀRUM ET TEMPLUM THĒSĒUM

THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

304. In English certain tenses are formed by the use of auxiliary verbs; as, *I am praised, you have been advised, etc.* In a similar way the Latin perfect, past perfect (or pluperfect), and future perfect tenses in the passive voice are formed by combining respectively the present, the past, and the future tenses of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle.

Tullus rēx creātus est, Tullus was elected king.

Māteria bellī quaesīta erat, an occasion for war had been sought.

Sī Horātīi victī erunt Albānīs imperium erit, if the Horatii shall have been conquered the supremacy will belong to the Albans.

In these tenses the participle agrees in case, gender, and number with the subject of the verb.

305. In the study of the compound tenses of the passive voice it is necessary to give particular attention to the principal parts of the verbs since the form of the participial or supine stem is not always suggested by the present; for example, **quaerō, quaesītus; vincō, victus; ponō, positus.**

Study the principal parts of the verbs in the following exercise and notice the form of the participle in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive voice, and the agreement of the participle with the subject of the verb.

READING EXERCISE

306. 1. Numae morte Tullus Hostīlius rēx creātus est. Hostius Hostīlius avus eius apud Rōmānōs clārus fuerat. Tullus dissimilis Numae, atque ferōcior quam Rōmulus fuit. 4. Cum aetāte vīribusque tum avītā glōriā animus

stimulātus erat. 5. Māteria igitur bellī undique quaesīta est. 6. Utrimque lēgātīs missīs Tullus ferōx pācem facere nōlēbat. 7. Bellum igitur utrimque parātum est. 8. Ducibus tamen placuit certāmen sine magnā clāde paucōrum pugnā fīnīrī.

9. Hīs lēgibus igitur foedus factum est. 10. Utrimque trigeminī frātrēs, apud Rōmānōs Horātīi apud Albānōs Cūriātīi, prō suā quisque patriā dīmīcābunt ferrō. 11. Sī Horātīi victī erunt, Albānī Rōmānīs imperābunt; sī Cūriātīi victī erunt, Rōmānī Albānīs imperābunt. 12. Foedere ictō frātrēs arma capiunt. 13. Imperium in eōrum virtūte erat positum. 14. Ubi signum datum est, increpuēre arma et fulsēre gladii. 15. Spectantibus erat neque vōx neque spīritus.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write the principal parts of the verbs and conjugate each in the tense in which it is found in the sentences above.

ŪNUM HORĀTIUM TRĒS CŪRIĀTIŪ CIRCUMSTANT

307. Cōnsertīs deinde manibus statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium expīrantēs cecidērunt; trēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Ad cāsum Rōmānōrum conclāmāvit gaudiō exercitus Albānus. Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. Ūnum Horātium trēs Cūriātīi circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit; sed quia tribus impar erat, ut distraheret hostēs, fugere coepit. Iam aliquantum spatī ex eō locō ubi pugnātum est aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum Cūriātium nōn longē ab sēsē abesse. In eum magnō impetū redit, et dum Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātīs ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius caesō hoste victor secundam pugnam petēbat.

a. Cōnsertīs manibus, abl. abs.; alius super alium, *one upon another*; gaudiō, abl. of cause, *for joy*; ut distraheret hostēs, *that he might separate the enemy*; aliquantum spatī, *somewhat of space, a considerable distance*; magnō impetū, *with great fury*; ut opem ferant



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

SINGULAR

amātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō	audītus erō
amātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris	audītus eris
amātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit	audītus erit

PLURAL

amātī erimus	vīsī erimus	missī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	vīsī eritis	missī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	vīsī erunt	missī erunt	audītī erunt

a. The perfect, the past perfect, and the future perfect tenses of the passive voice are conjugated alike in all the conjugations.

b. In the compound tenses of the passive voice the participle agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number.

SYNTAX

Verbs Used Impersonally

311. In the third person singular of the passive voice a verb is sometimes used impersonally, with no subject except that which is implied in the meaning of the verb. (60)

Pugnātur, *there is fighting, a battle is going on.*

a. If the impersonal verb is in a compound tense of the passive, the participle is neuter. **Pugnātum est**, *a (the) battle took place.*

The Ablative of Manner

312. The manner of an action is denoted by a noun in the ablative case with or without the preposition **cum**. With nouns in very common use, and when the noun is modified by an adjective, the preposition may be omitted. (61)

Magnā cum voluptāte, *with great pleasure*; **hōc modō**, *in this manner*; **magnō impetū**, *with great fury.*

COMPOSITION

313. 1. War had been prepared by the Romans and the Albans. 2. An agreement has been made between the leaders. 3. These (hae) are the terms (laws) of the treaty

which was made between the two kings. 4. That people whose citizens shall have been conquered by the sword shall give the supremacy to the other (dative of alter). 5. Having joined in hand to hand combat (hands having been joined) two Romans fell. 6. They fell one upon the other. 7. The Alban army shouted for joy. 8. By chance one Horatius was uninjured. 9. One was unequal to three. 10. The fight took place (it was fought) a considerable distance (somewhat of space) from the city. 11. Horatius flees, but one Curiatius is not far from him. 12. Him with great fury Horatius attacks (seeks). 13. Now one enemy had been slain and Horatius was victor (one enemy having been slain, etc.).

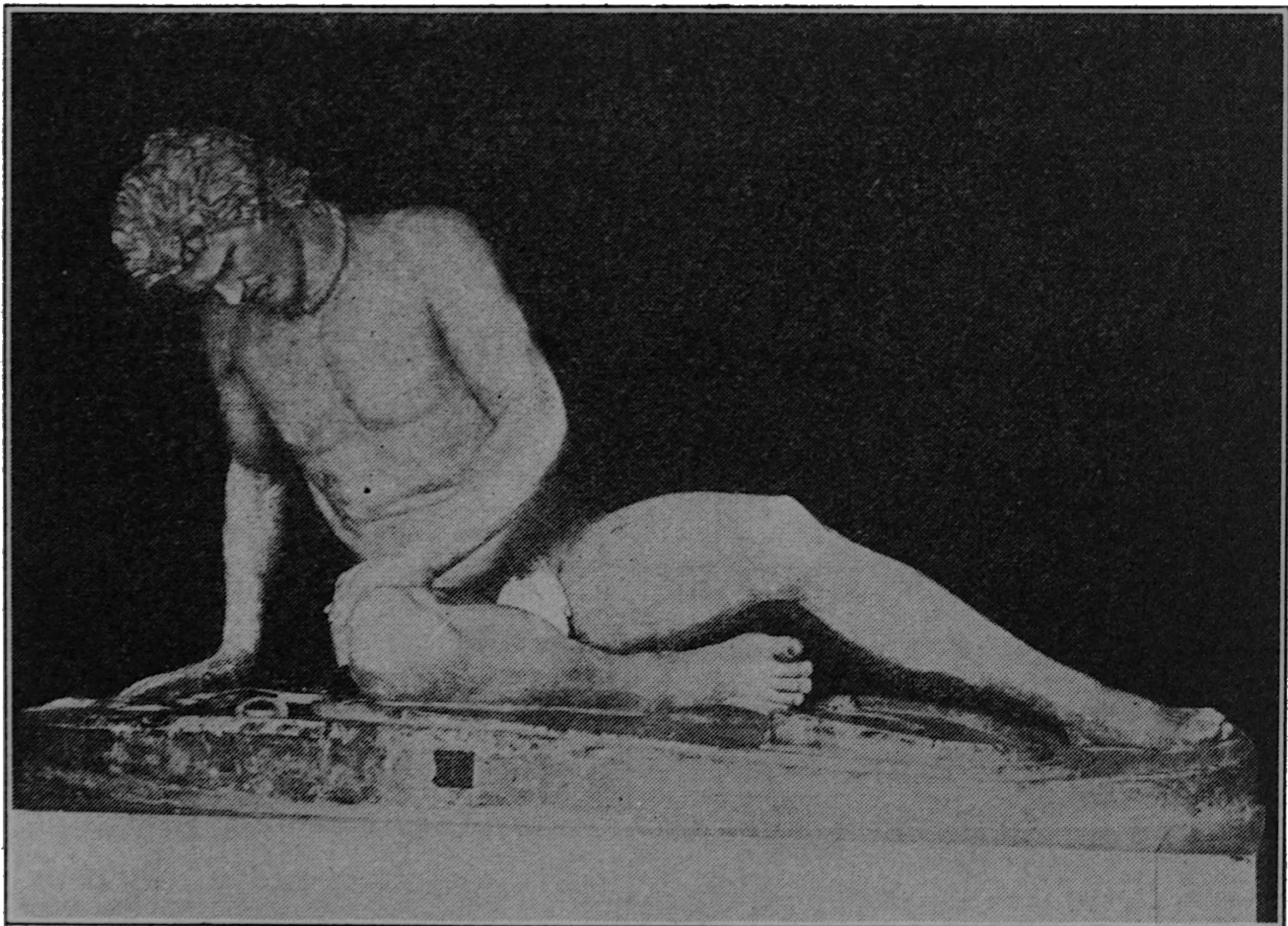


Photo from Gramstorff Bros., Malden, Mass.

GALLUS MORIĒNS

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

314. In nouns of the fifth declension the nominative singular ends in **-ēs** and the genitive in **-ēī**. The endings of the other cases are similar to those of the third declension, except the ending of the genitive plural (**-ērum**), which more closely resembles the genitive plural of the first and second declensions (**-ārum, -ōrum**).

The similarity of the cases in the different declensions, *e. g.*, the final **s** in the nominatives **hortus, hostis, portus, diēs**, and the final **m** in the accusatives **stellam, hortum, donum, hostem, portum, diem**, is an indication that the five declensions are only variations of a single type, modifications having been introduced before the language had taken permanent form in written literature.

315. In the following exercise determine the case of each noun by its use, and thus discover the endings of the different cases. Compare the case-endings with those of the other declensions.

READING EXERCISE

316. 1. **Ūnus** diēs quattuor et vīgintī hōrās habet. 2. In **ūnō** diē sunt hōrae vīgintī quattuor. 3. Apud Rōmānōs diēs duodecim hōrās habēbat. 4. Nox quoque duodecim habēbat hōrās. 5. Hōrae diēi ab oriente sōle ad occāsum sōlis pertinēbant. 7. Aestāte hōrae diēi longae, noctis hōrae brevēs erant. 8. Hieme noctis hōrae longae, diēi brevēs erant. 9. Hieme brevēs, aestāte longī sunt diēs. 10. Diem sōl, lūna noctem regit. 11. Hōrae diēi erant prīma, secunda, tertia, quārta, quīnta, sexta, septima, octāva, nōna, decima, ūndecima, duodecima. 12. Noctis hōrae iisdem (same) nōminibus vocātae sunt. 13. Nox est dīvisa in vigiliās quattuor, quārum quisque (each) trēs hōrās habēbat.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

we count) in the Roman calendar is *ante diem tertium decimum Kalendās Aprilēs*.

In dates we should expect to find the ablative case, *diē tertio decimo ante Kalendās*; but the Latin idiom is *ante diem*, etc., which is usually abbreviated as follows: *a. d. XIII Kal. Apr.* The Nones, Ides, and Kalends used as dates are in Latin *Nōnīs, Īdibus, Kalendīs*.

The Romans designated the year by counting from the founding of Rome, *ab urbe conditā*, or by using the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute with the noun *cōsulibus*: as, *Brūtō Tarquiniō cōsulibus*. We use the calendar prescribed by Julius Caesar, and the common abbreviation *A. D.* represents the Latin words *Annō Domini*.

A table of Roman numerals is given in section 555.

RŌMĀNĪ HORĀTIUM VICTŌREM ACCIPIUNT

317. Tunc clāmōre Rōmānī adiuvant mīlitem suum, et ille alterum Cūriātium cōnficit. Iamque aequātō Mārte singulī supererant sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. Alter erat intāctus ferrō et gemināta victōriā atrōx; alter fessum vulnere, fessum cursū trahēbat corpus. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns male sustinentem arma Cūriātium cōnficit; iacentem spoliat. Rōmānī ovariantēs Horātium accipiunt et domum dēdūcunt.

a. *Clāmōre*, abl. means (sec. 21); *aequātō Mārte*, abl. abs. (sec. 295); *spē*, in hope; *vīribus*, in strength; *victōriā*, vulnere, *cursū*, abl. of cause (sec. 229); *iacentem*, in agreement with pronoun not expressed referring to *Cūriātium*; *domum*, place to which (sec. 96).

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *atrocious*, *clamor*, *course*, *par*, *single*, *spoil* (verb), *sustain*.

TYPICAL NOUNS

318. Nom., *diēs*; gen., *diēi*; m.; *day*.
Nom., *rēs*; gen., *reī*; f.; *thing*.

	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ēi (-eī)</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēi (-eī)</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-em</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ē</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

a. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are found in all the cases. Some others have the singular entire and the nominative and the accusative plural.

b. The nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs**, which is regularly masculine in the singular and always masculine in the plural; but **diēs** may be feminine when it means *time* or *an appointed day*.

c. In the fifth declension the stem ends in **ē**.

d. In the genitive and dative singular **-ēī** (long e) is found after a vowel, and **-eī** (short e) after a consonant. **Diēī, reī**.

SYNTAX

The Ablative of Specification

319. A noun may be used in the ablative case to specify in what respect the meaning of a verb or an adjective applies. (62)

Nec spē nec vīribus parēs, *equal neither in hope nor in strength.*

COMPOSITION

320. 1. This month has thirty-one days. 2. The next month (*proximus*) will have thirty days. 3. All the months do not have the same (*eundem*) number of days. 4. The months are not equal in (respect to) the number of days. 5. My friend will be with me three days (*acc.*). 6. In three days (*abl.*) he will go to Athens. 7. He will remain in Athens (*loc.*) two months. 8. In two months he will come home. 9. I shall be at home on the Kalends of July. 10. We will go home at sunset (the setting of the sun).

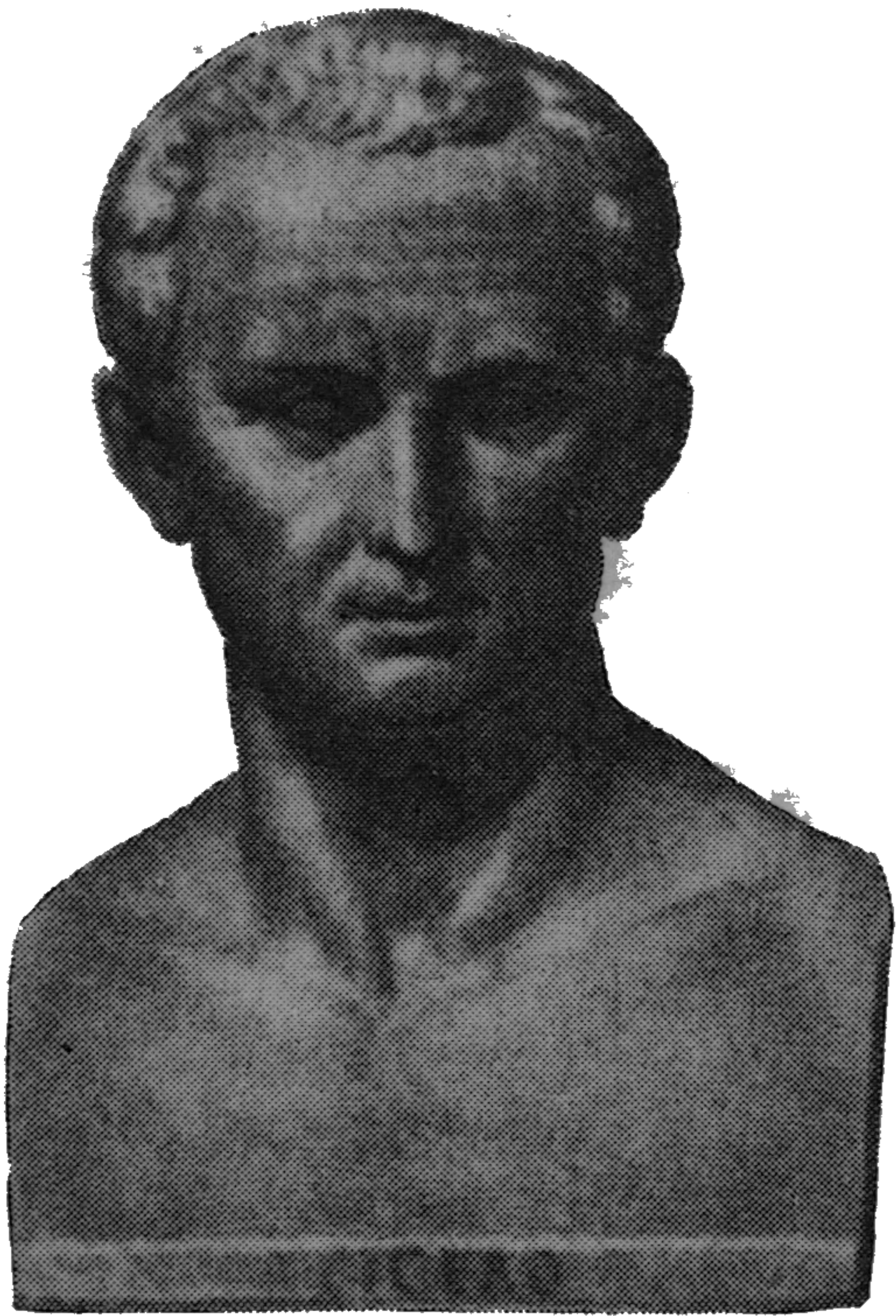
11. In one day three Albans were slain. 12. That was a sad day for the Albans. 13. Horatius and Curiatius were not equal in hope. 14. They were not equal in strength. 15. One was uninjured by the sword; the other was weak from a wound. 16. One was fierce because of his victory; the other with difficulty held up his arms. 17. The exulting Horatius strips the prostrate enemy. 18. His enemies having been slain, Horatius was conducted home by the Romans.

CHAPTER XXXIX

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quis and Qui

321. The interrogative pronouns are **quis**, *who?* and **quī**, *what?* Of these **quis** is used as a substantive and **quī** as an adjective. The interrogative **quī** is declined like the relative **quī** (sec. 284); **quis** differs from the relative in the nominative singular masculine and feminine (**quis**), in the accusative singular feminine (**quem**), and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter (**quid**).



CICERO

322. In the following exercise study the interrogative pronouns **quis** and **quī** and the other interrogative words. Observe the manner in which questions are asked and answered in Latin.

READING EXERCISE

- 323.** 1. *Pater.* Quis venit?
2. *Filius.* Ego, filius tuus, veniō.
3. *P.* Unde venis, fili?
4. *F.* Ā magistrō veniō.
5. *P.* Quid est quod in manibus tē habēre videō?
Num librōs habēs?
6. *F.* Librōs habeō quōs magister mihi hodiē dedit.
7. *P.* Quot librōs habēs?
8. *F.* Habeō librōs ab scriptōribus magnīs quattuor.
9. *P.* Quī sunt istōrum librōrum scriptōrēs?



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the interrogative pronouns and other interrogative words used above.

MOVET HORĀTIUM COMPLŌRĀTIŌ SORŌRIS

● **324.** Prīnceps ībat Horātius trium frātrum spolia prae sē gerēs. Cui obvia fuit soror, quae dēspōnsa fuerat ūnī ex Cūriātiis, vīsōque super umerōs frātris palūdāmentō spōnsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcerat, flēre et crīnēs solvere coepit. Movet ferōcis iuvenis animum complōrātiō sorōris in tantō pūblicō gaudiō; atque strictō gladiō trānsfīxit puellam simul eam verbīs increpāns: “Abī hinc cum immātūrō amōre ad spōnsum, oblīta frātrum, oblīta patriae. Sic eat quaecumque Rōmāna lūgēbit bostem.”



PALŪDĀMENTUM

a. Cui . . . soror, *whom his sister met, who was met by his sister*; abī hinc, *go hence*; eat, *may she go*; quaecumque Rōmāna, *whatever Roman woman*.

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *immature, solve, spoil (noun), strict, transfix, verb.*

DECLENSION OF QUIS

325.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The interrogative quī is declined like the relative quī. (See section 284.)

SYNTAX

Interrogative Words

326. Quis and quī are interrogative pronouns; quis is generally used as a substantive, quī as an adjective. (63)

Quis venit; *who is coming?* quī vir vēnit? *What man came?*

a. Besides the interrogative pronouns the following interrogative words are in common use:

(1) **Uter, *which?*** is used with reference to two persons or things. **Frātrum uter nōmen urbī dedit; *which of the (two) brothers gave the name to the city?***

(2) **Quot, *how many?*** is an indeclinable adjective. **Quot librōs habēs; *how many books have you?***

(3) **Num** implies the answer *no*; **nōnne** implies the answer *yes*; the enclitic **-ne** implies nothing about the answer to the question asked. **Num omnēs librōs lēgistī; *you have not read all the books, have you?*** **nōnne Caesar magnus fuit imperātor; *was not Caesar a great general?*** **lēgistīne librōs Caesaris; *have you read the books of Caesar?***

(4) **Cūr, *why?*** is an interrogative adverb. **Cūr Horātius sorōrem increpuit? *why did Horatius upbraid his sister?***

(5) **Quantus, *how large?* quālis, *of what kind?* quotus, *which (numerically, first, second, etc.)?*** are interrogative adjectives. **Quanta insula est Britannia? *how large an island is Britain?* quālis scriptor fuit Livius; *what kind of a writer was Livy?* quota hōra est; *what hour is it?***

b. Instead of the simple *yes* or *no* in answering questions, the verb is often repeated. **Lēgistīne librum? lēgī; *have you read the book? I have.***

COMPOSITION

327. 1. What brothers were fighting on the side of the Romans? 2. Who were fighting for the Albans? 3. Who survived as victor? 4. One of (from) the Horatii was victor. 5. What was Horatius carrying before him (self)? 6. Horatius was carrying in his hands the spoils of the three Curiatii. 7. Whose cloak (the cloak of whom) was over his shoulders? 8. Over his shoulders he had the cloak which his sister had made for her betrothed. 9. Seeing the cloak which she had made, Horatius' sister weeps. 10. The fierce youth is moved by his sister's lamentation. 11. The fierce youth upbraids his weeping sister. 12. Had not the girl forgotten her brothers? 13. She had not forgotten her betrothed, had she? 14. How many enemies had Horatius slain? 15. Why did Horatius upbraid his sister? 16. What kind of a brother was Horatius? 17. How much (quantus, -a, -um) love did he have for (of) his sister?

CHAPTER XL

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

328. The Latin adjective, like the adjective in English, has different forms to denote the different degrees of comparison. The degrees of comparison are the positive, the comparative, and the superlative; and they are distinguished by characteristic terminations. The ordinary form of the adjective is the positive degree; in the comparative degree the nominative case ends in **-ior**, masculine and feminine, and **-ius**, neuter: in the superlative degree the nominative endings are generally **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**. The comparative degree is declined like adjectives of the third declension and the superlative like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Following an adjective in the comparative degree **quam** is sometimes used as the equivalent of the English *than*; sometimes **quam** is omitted and the comparative is followed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case.

329. Study the adjectives which illustrate the different degrees of comparison and use the English *than* to denote the comparison, whether the adjective in the comparative degree is accompanied by **quam** or by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case.

READING EXERCISE

330. 1. Vergilius fuit clārus poēta; Horātius fuit clārior; omnium poētārum antiquōrum Homērus fuit clārissimus. 2. Horātius fuit clārior quam Vergilius; Homērus clārior Horātiō fuit. 3. Rōma est urbs antiqua; Carthāgō est antiquior; Trōia est antiquissima. 4. Trōia est Carthāgine antiquior. 5. Inter Galliam et Hispāniam sunt P̄yrēnaei montēs. 6. Illi montēs sunt altī, sed altiōrēs



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

populum prōvocāvit. Intereā pater eius ōrābat populum nē sē orbum liberis faceret. Nōn tulit populus patris lacrimās iuvenemque absolvit admirātiōne magis virtūtis quam iūre causae.

a. Nē . . . faceret, *not to make him childless*; admirātiōne, ablative of cause (sec. 229); liberis, ablative of separation (sec. 336); nōn . . . -que, *not . . . but*.

b. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *absolute*, *absolve*, *accede*, *admiration*, *condemn*, *judge*, *provoke*, *virtue*.

COMPARISON OF TYPICAL ADJECTIVES

332. The comparative degree is regularly formed by dropping the final vowel from the stem of the positive and adding *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter.

The superlative is formed by adding to the same base *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*, for the masculine, feminine, and neuter respectively.

POSITIVE	STEM	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	alto-	altior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
antīquus	antīquo-	antīquior, -ius	antīquissimus, -a, -um
clārus	clāro-	clārior, -ius	clārissimus, -a, -um
ferōx	ferōci-	ferōcior, -ius	ferōcissimus, -a, -um
trīstis	trīsti-	trīstior, -ius	trīstissimus, -a, -um

a. Some adjectives are compared by prefixing *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*, to the positive. Most adjectives ending in *-ōsus* and in *-us* preceded by a vowel are compared in this manner: *bellicōsus*, *magis bellicōsus*, *maximē bellicōsus*, *warlike*, *more warlike*, *most warlike*.

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

333. Altior, altius; *higher*, *deeper*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs (-īs)	altiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

a. The superlative is declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions. *Altissimus, -a, -um; highest, deepest.*

SYNTAX

The Ablative with a Comparative

334. An adjective in the comparative degree may be followed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case. (64)

Homērus clārior Vergiliō fuit, Homer was more famous than Vergil.

a. *Quam, than,* may be used after the comparative, and is regularly used if the first of the nouns compared is in any case except the nominative or the accusative. The two nouns compared are then in the same case. *Tullus ferōcior quam Rōmulus fuit, Tullus was more fierce than Romulus.*

The Ablative of Degree

335. The degree of difference denoted by the comparative is expressed by the ablative case. (65)

Multō altiōrēs sunt Alpēs quam Pyrēnaei, the Alps are much higher than the Pyrenees.

The Ablative of Separation

336. Verbs and adjectives denoting separation may be followed by the ablative without a preposition. (66)

Pater Horātī ōrābat populum nē sē orbum liberis faceret, the father of Horatius entreated the people that they should not make him childless (bereft of children).

COMPOSITION

337. 1. The deed of Tarpeia was cruel. 2. The murder of Remus was more cruel. 3. The crime of Horatius seems (*vidētur*) most cruel of all. 4. The times of the ancient Romans were more cruel than ours. 5. Rome is a famous city. 6. Rome is more famous than Alba. 7. Of all the cities of Italy Rome is the most famous. 8. I have not seen the most famous cities of the world.

9. The crime of Horatius seemed to the fathers cruel.
10. The judges condemned Horatius, who had been hurried to trial (having been hurried to trial). 11. "I shall be bereft of all my children," Horatius' father said. 12. The people did not make him childless (bereft of children).
13. Horatius was acquitted more on account of his father's tears than because of the justice of his cause.



Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS IN SICILIĀ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



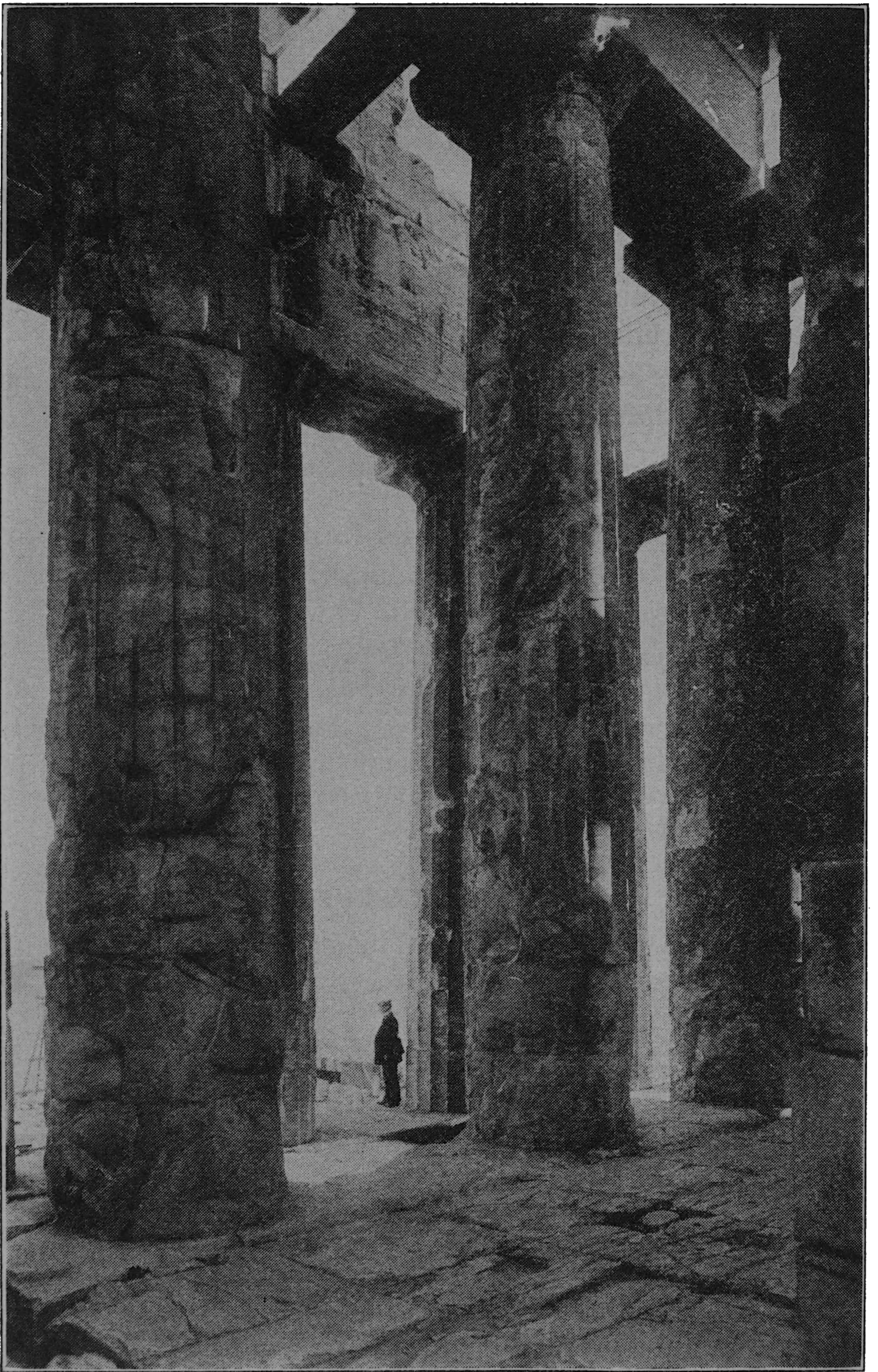
Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



© *Brown & Dawson, N. Y.*

COLUMNÆ PARTHENŌNIS, TEMPLĪ PULCHERRIMĪ

hoc facinus multō ferōcius quam illud fuit. 10. Horātius ab iūdicibus condemnātus ad populum prōvocāvit. 11. Pater eum in poenam dari nōlēbat. 12. Sī Horātius in poenam datus erit, pater orbus liberis erit. 13. Pugnā tam trīstī factā Horātius patrī multō cārīor fuit quam anteā fuerat. 14. Horātius et Tullus ingeniō erant simillimī.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. What adjectives used above have the ending **-rimus** in the superlative? What adjectives have the ending **-limus**?

b. Write out the comparison of **difficilis**, **pulcher**, **similis**, **ferōx**, **trīstis**, and **cārus**.

c. Write the declension of **cārus** in the comparative degree.

RŌMA CRĒSCIT ALBAE RUĪNIS

341. Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnis; duplicātur cīvium numerus, mōns Caelius urbī additur, et eam sēdem Tullus rēgiae cāpit ibique deinde habitāvit. Prīncipēs Albānōrum in patrēs lēgit; equitum decem turmās . ex Albānis lēgit; legiōnēs et veterēs explēvit et novās scripsit. Haud multō post pestilentia vēnit. Nūlla tamen ab armīs quiēs dabātur. Crēdēbat enim rēx bellicōsus salūbriōra militiae quam domī esse iuvenum corpora, donec in ipsum longinquus vēnit morbus. Nūllī rei posthāc nisi sacrīs operam dabat. Tullus magnā glōriā bellī rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trīgintā.

a. **Ruīnis**, ablative of cause (sec. 229) **salūbriōra** with **corpora**, predicate adjective; **militiae** and **domī**, locative; **corpora** subject of **esse**; **magnā glōriā**, ablative of manner (sec. 312).

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *add*, *bellicose*, *credit*, *creed*, *duplicate*, *legion*, *militia*, *number*, *opera*, *pestilence*, *quiet*, *ruin*, *scribe*, *script*.

SPECIAL FORMS OF COMPARISON

342. Positive in **-er**; superlative in **-rimus**.
Positive in **-lis**; superlative in **-limus**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

SYNTAX

Special Meanings in Comparison

343. The comparative degree of the adjective is sometimes equivalent to *rather* or *too*, and the superlative to *very*. (67)

Meus liber difficilior, tuus facillimus est, my book is rather hard, yours is very easy.

COMPOSITION

344. 1. There are many beautiful cities in Italy. 2. Of all the ancient cities in Italy, Rome was the most beautiful. 3. It was not very difficult to conquer the Albans. 4. Rome grew because of the fall of Alba. 5. The palace of Tullus was on mount Caelius, which had been added to the city. 6. The chiefs of the Albans were chosen among the senators. 7. The Albans filled ten troops of cavalry and two new legions. 8. A pestilence which came not long (much) after did not give rest from war. 9. The bodies of the soldiers were more healthy in military service than at home. 10. Finally a lingering disease came upon the warlike king himself. 11. After this he gave his attention to religion. 12. Tullus reigned with great renown thirty-two years. 13. Because of a lingering disease Tullus was very unhappy. 14. His nature was too fierce. 15. Tullus sought an occasion for war and he was unwilling (*nōlēbat*) to make peace.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

is the regular ending of the superlative? What is the superlative ending of adjectives in *-er*? What is the superlative ending of adjectives in *-lis*? How is *than* expressed in a Latin sentence with the comparative?

Study the comparison of **bonus**, **magnus**, **malus**, and **multī**. Notice the idiom **summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain*.

READING EXERCISE

347. 1. Rōma est magna urbs. 2. Rōma est maxima urbs Ītalīae. 3. Urbs Rōma reliquīs Ītalīae urbibus est maior. 4. Situs Rōmae est superior quam Ōstīae. 5. Ītalīa est inter duo maria; ūnā ex parte est Mare Superum, alterā ex parte est Mare Īnferum. 6. Mare Superum est minus quam Mare Īnferum. 7. In Ītalīā sunt multī montēs quōrum summus est Āpennīnus. 8. Summus mōns procul vidēri potest.

9. Apud Rōmānōs erant multī quī bonī cīvēs erant. 10. Cicerō melior cīvis quam Catilīna fuit. 11. Malus cīvis in poenam darī dēbet. 12. Malus cīvis peior habētur quam ācerrimus hostis. 13. Pessimī sunt īī quī bonī videntur et malī sunt. 14. Plūrēs bonī vidēri quam esse bonī volunt. 15. Optimī cīvēs patriam maximē amant. 16. Multī cīvēs sunt dīvitēs, plūrēs sunt egentēs, plūrimī neque egentēs neque dīvitēs sunt. 17. Erantne temporibus maiōrum nostrōrum plūrēs bonī quam temporibus nostrīs? 18. Dē rēbus maiōrum multa audīvimus; dē nostrīs rēbus minōrēs audient multa. 19. Ab maiōribus nostrīs multa accēpimus; minōribus nostrīs nōs dabimus multa.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write the comparison of **bonus**, **magnus**, **malus**, **multī**, and **parvus**, and the declension of **maior**, **-ius**.

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

348. In the comparison of these adjectives the form of the stem is changed, or a different stem is substituted for the stem of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
superus	superior, superius	suprēmus, -a, -um
		summus, -a, -um
īferus	īferior, īferius	īfimus, -a, -um
		īmus, -a, -um
	prior, prius	prīmus, -a, -um

a. Superus and īferus have two irregular forms in the superlative. Prior has no positive.

SYNTAX

Adjectives Denoting a Part

349. Certain adjectives are used to denote a part of the thing modified by the adjective. (68)

Summus mōns, the highest part of the mountain, the top of the mountain; mediā aestāte, in mid-summer; prīmā lūce, at dawn.

COMPOSITION

350. 1. The moon is large, the earth is larger, the sun is the largest. 2. At midnight very many stars can be seen. 3. There are more trees in my garden than in yours. 4. There were many good poets among the Romans. 5. Of all the Roman poets Horace seems to me to be the best. 6. Livy was a better writer than Caesar, but Caesar was a very great general. 7. An unfaithful friend is worse than an enemy. 8. Those who are worst often seem to be good. 9. The tree tops (the highest trees) are higher than the house. 10. Romulus first built a wall around (circumdō with dative) the city of Rome. 11. At dawn I can hear the birds singing.

CHAPTER XLIII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

351. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives, nouns, and pronouns by the use of adverbial terminations; for example,

✓ **benignus**, *kind*; **benignē**, *kindly*.
celer, *quick*; **celeriter**, *quickly*.
✗ **fors**, *chance*; **forte**, *by chance*.

An adverb formed from an adjective is generally compared if the adjective admits of comparison. The comparative of the adverb regularly ends in **-ius** and the superlative in **-ē**.

Bene (*bonus*), *well*; **melius**, *better*; **optimē**, *best*.

Celeriter (*celer*), *quickly*; **celerius**, *more quickly*; **celerrimē**, *most, or very quickly*.

352. Study the forms of the adverbs and observe the ending of each adverb which is formed from an adjective. Notice also the numerous adverbs in common use, **sīc**, **nunc**, **tam**, **nōn**, **semper**, **saepe**, etc., which are not derived from other words and are not compared.

READING EXERCISE

353. 1. Ubi magister puerōs hodiē dīmīsit, Mārcus celeriter domum vēnit. 2. Cum eō pater sīc loquitur: 3. “Quid, fili, hodiē ēgisti?” 4. “Optimē,” filius respondit. “Herī bene ēgī, sed multō melius hodiē.” 4. “Quid,” pater rogat, “hodiē fēcisti?” 6. “Librum Latīnum legēbam, quī mē maximē dēlectābat.” 7. “Quid! num liber magis quam lūdus tē dēlectābat?” 8. “Certē, nam in eō plūrima magnā



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(4) Some adverbs are formed from pronouns. From **hic**, *this*, are formed **hīc**, *here*, **hūc**, *to this place, hither*, **hinc**, *from here, hence*; from **is**, *this*, **eō**, *in this place, there*; from **quī**, *who*, **quō**, *whither*; from **ille**, *that*, **illō**, *in that place, thither*; etc.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

355. An adverb which is formed from an adjective is generally compared if the adjective admits of comparison. If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb has the same peculiarity.

The comparative of the adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative degree of the adjective.

The superlative degree of the adverb is formed by changing **-us** in the adjective to **-ē**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altē (altus)	altius	altissimē
audācter (audāx)	audācius	audācissimē
celeriter (celer)	celerius	celerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
— (magnus)	magis	maximē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē

SYNTAX

The Use of Adverbs

356. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. (69)

Rōmānī bellum maximē amābant, *the Romans loved war very much.*

COMPOSITION

357. 1. The river Tiber is not far from the city of Rome. 2. We are very far from Italy. 3. To-day we enjoy

our Latin book (our book delights us) very much. 4. Yesterday we did well but to-day we are doing much better. 5. Sometimes we give attention to books, not always to play. 6. Our bodies will be more healthy if we sometimes give attention to play. 7. I will gladly give attention to my books to-day if I can (shall be able to) play to-morrow.

8. The warlike king kindly kept the young men in arms. 9. Tullus Hostilius reigned a long time. 10. Romulus reigned five years longer (longer by five years) than Tullus. 11. Numa reigned the longest of them all. 12. Another day we shall read about Ancus Marcius. 13. The days come very quickly.

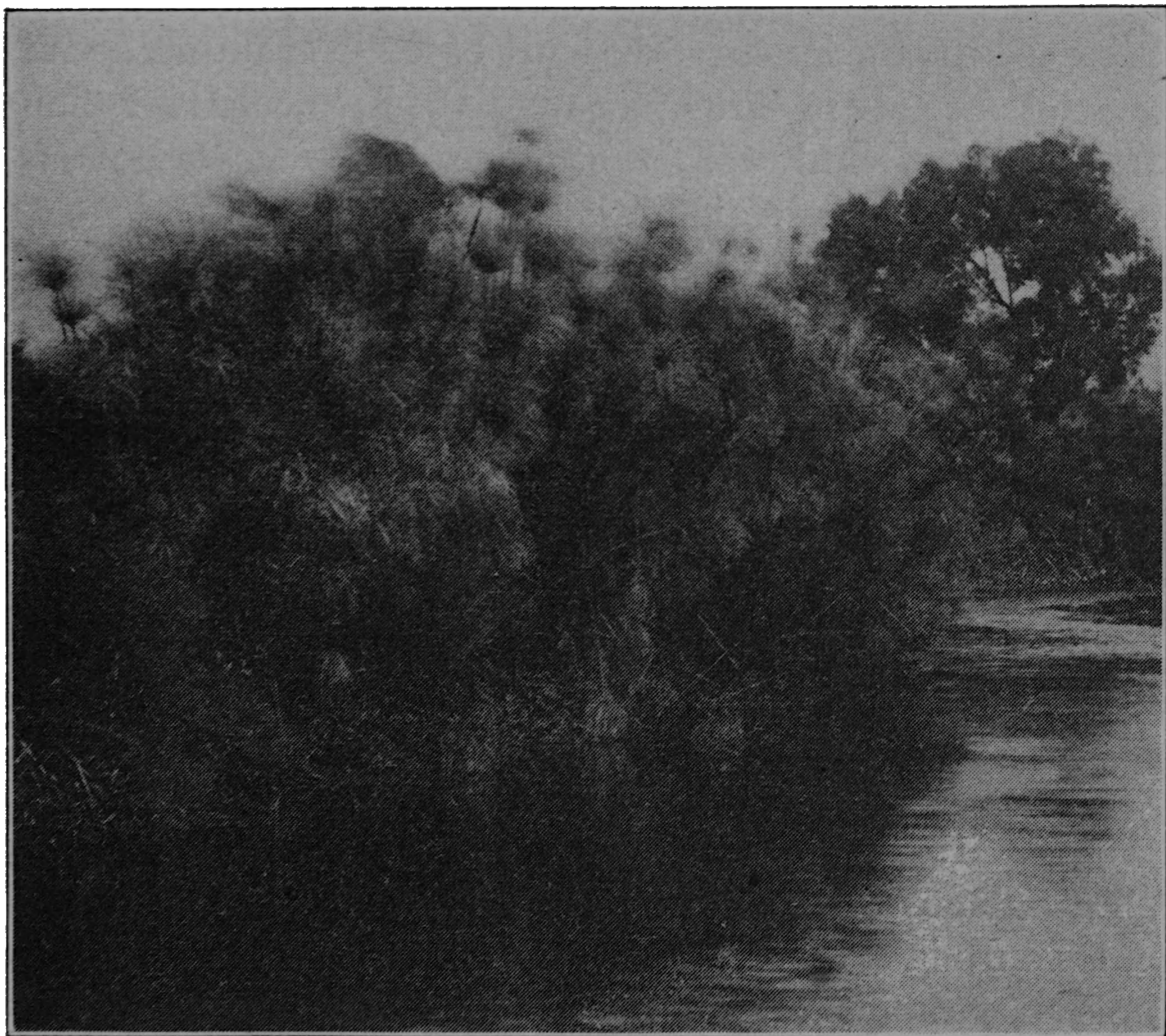


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

PAPYRUS IN RĪPA FLŪMINIS

CHAPTER XLIV

THE SUPINE STEM

358. Several Latin verb forms have as their common base the participial or supine stem. The supine stem is found in the perfect passive participle by dropping the case-ending **-us**, or, in the future active participle, by dropping the case-ending **-ūrus**; as, perfect passive participle, **amātus**, supine stem, **amāt-**; future active participle, **futūrus**, supine stem, **fut-**.

The verbal forms here introduced are the perfect passive infinitive, ending in **-us**, (**-a**, **-um**) **esse**; the future active participle, ending in **-ūrus**, **-a**, **-um**; the future active infinitive, **-ūrus** (**-a**, **-um**) **esse**; the supine, ending in **-um** or **-ū**; and the future passive infinitive, ending in **-um iri**.

The supine is a verbal noun with the endings of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative cases. **Petitum**, *to seek*; **auditū**, *to hear*.

359. Find examples of the perfect passive participle, the perfect passive infinitive, the future active participle, the future active infinitive, the supine in **-um** and **-ū**, and the future passive infinitive. Translate these forms so as to express their meaning in idiomatic English.

READING EXERCISE

360. 1. Tarpēia extrā mūrōs aquam petītum vēnerat. 2. Ea Sabīnōs in arcē Rōmānōrum ductūrā, petit aureōs anulōs quōs in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. 3. Illius prōditiō impia incrēdibilis est auditū. 4. Dux Sabīnōrum dolōsē pollicitus est (promised) anulōs Tarpēiae datum iri. 5. Sa-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

TYPICAL VERBS

The Perfect Passive Infinitive

- 362.** amātus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been loved.*
 vīsus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been seen.*
 missus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been sent.*
 audītus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been heard.*
 captus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been taken.*

a. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by joining the infinitive *esse* to the perfect passive participle. The participle agrees in case, number, and gender with the subject of the infinitive, which is in the accusative in accordance with section 190. **Fertur prōditionem vindicātam esse**, *it is said that the treason was punished.*

The Future Active Participle

- 363.** amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*
 vīsūrus, -a, -um, *about to see.*
 missūrus, -a, -um, *about to send.*
 audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*
 futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*
 captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*

a. The future active participle is formed by substituting the ending *-ūrus* (-a, -um) for the ending *-us* (-a, -um) of the perfect passive participle. **Sabinōs in arcem ductūra**, *about to lead the Sabines to the citadel.*

The Future Active Infinitive

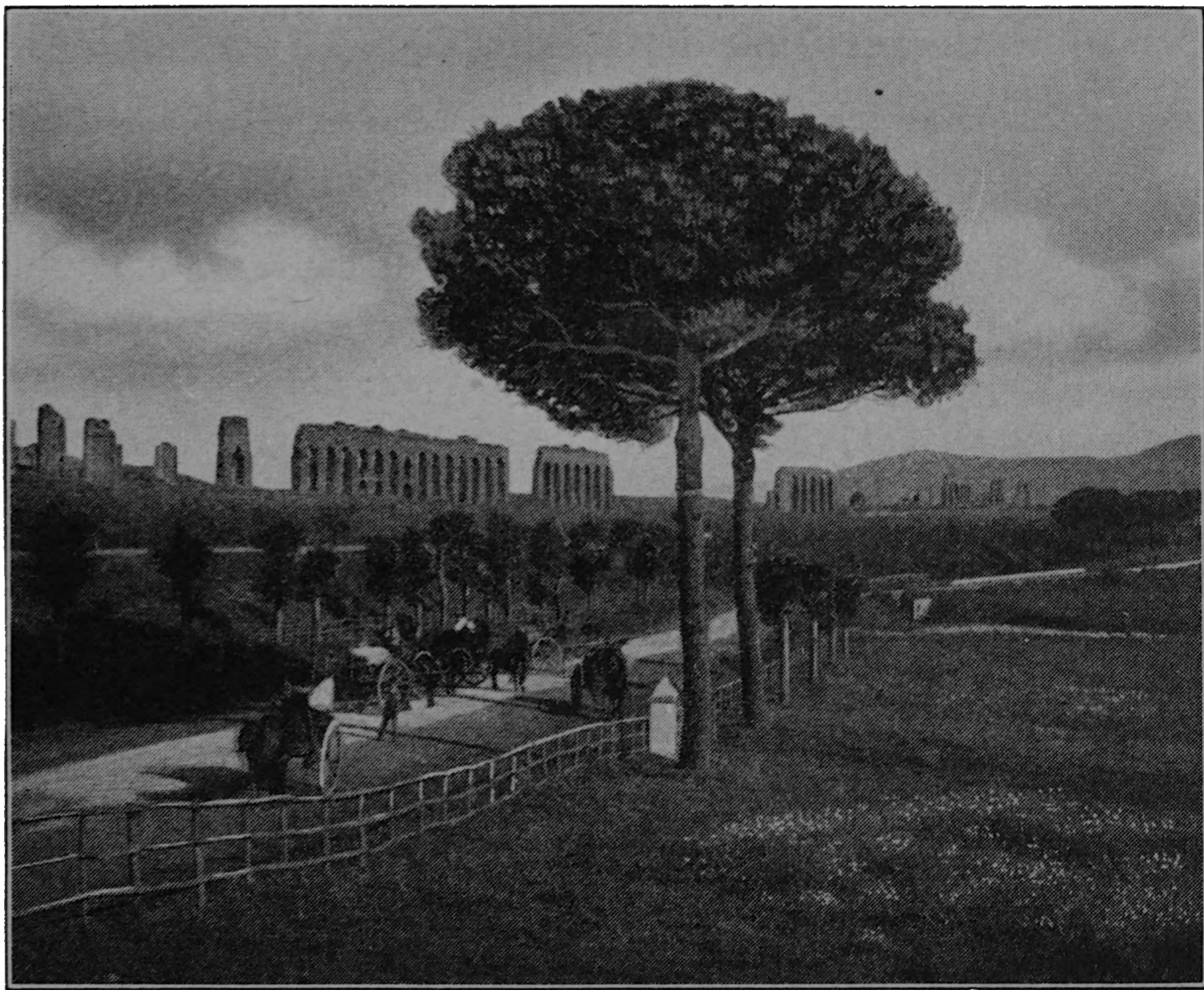
- 364.** amātūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to love.*
 vīsūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to see.*
 missūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to send.*
 audītūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to hear.*
 futūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to be.*
 captūrus (-a, -um) esse, *to be about to take.*

a. The future active infinitive is formed by joining the infinitive *esse* to the future active participle. The participle agrees in case, number, and gender with the subject of the infinitive. *Esse* is often omitted. **Crēdebat sine iniūriā pācem sē haud facile habitūrum (esse)**, *he believed that he would not easily have peace without injury.*

The Supine

- 365.** amātum, *to love*; amātū, *to love*.
 vīsum, *to see*; vīsū, *to see*.
 missum, *to send*; missū, *to send*.
 audītum, *to hear*; audītū, *to hear*.
 captum, *to take*; captū, *to take*.

a. The supine is a verbal noun which has the accusative and ablative cases, singular, in the forms of the fourth declension.



AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS AB VIĀ APPLĀ VĪSUS

The Future Passive Infinitive

- 366.** amātum irī, *to be about to be loved*.
 vīsum irī, *to be about to be seen*.
 missum irī, *to be about to be sent*.
 audītum irī, *to be about to be heard*.
 captum irī, *to be about to be taken*.

a. The future passive infinitive is formed by adding the infinitive form *irī* to the accusative of the supine. The supine is not changed to agree with the subject. *Dux pollicitus est anulōs datum irī, the leader promised that the rings would be given.*

b. The future passive infinitive is not in very common use.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Future Active Participle

367. The future active participle represents action as about to take place or as intended at the time of the verb upon which the participle depends. (70)

Sabinōs in arcem ductūra Tarpēia petiit anulōs, about to lead the Sabines to the citadel, Tarpeia asked for their rings.

The Time Denoted by the Future Infinitive

368. The time denoted by the future infinitive is future with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends. (71)

Rōmulus dixit Rōmam caput orbis terrārum futūram esse. Romulus said that Rome would be the capital of the world.

The Use of the Supine

369. (1) The accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to denote purpose. (72)

Tarpēia aquam petitum vēnerat, Tarpeia had come to fetch water.

(2) The ablative of the supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. (73)

Tarpēiae prōditiō est incrēdibilis auditū, Tarpeia's treason is incredible to hear (in respect to hearing).

COMPOSITION

370. 1. After the death of Tullus, Ancus Marcius was made king by the people. 2. Numa Pompilius was the grandfather of king Ancus. 3. Ancus was like Numa in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XLV

DEPONENT VERBS

371. Some Latin verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meanings of the active. These are called deponent verbs.

Certain deponent verbs in very common use, although apparently transitive, do not have a direct object in the accusative case, but have an object in the ablative case.

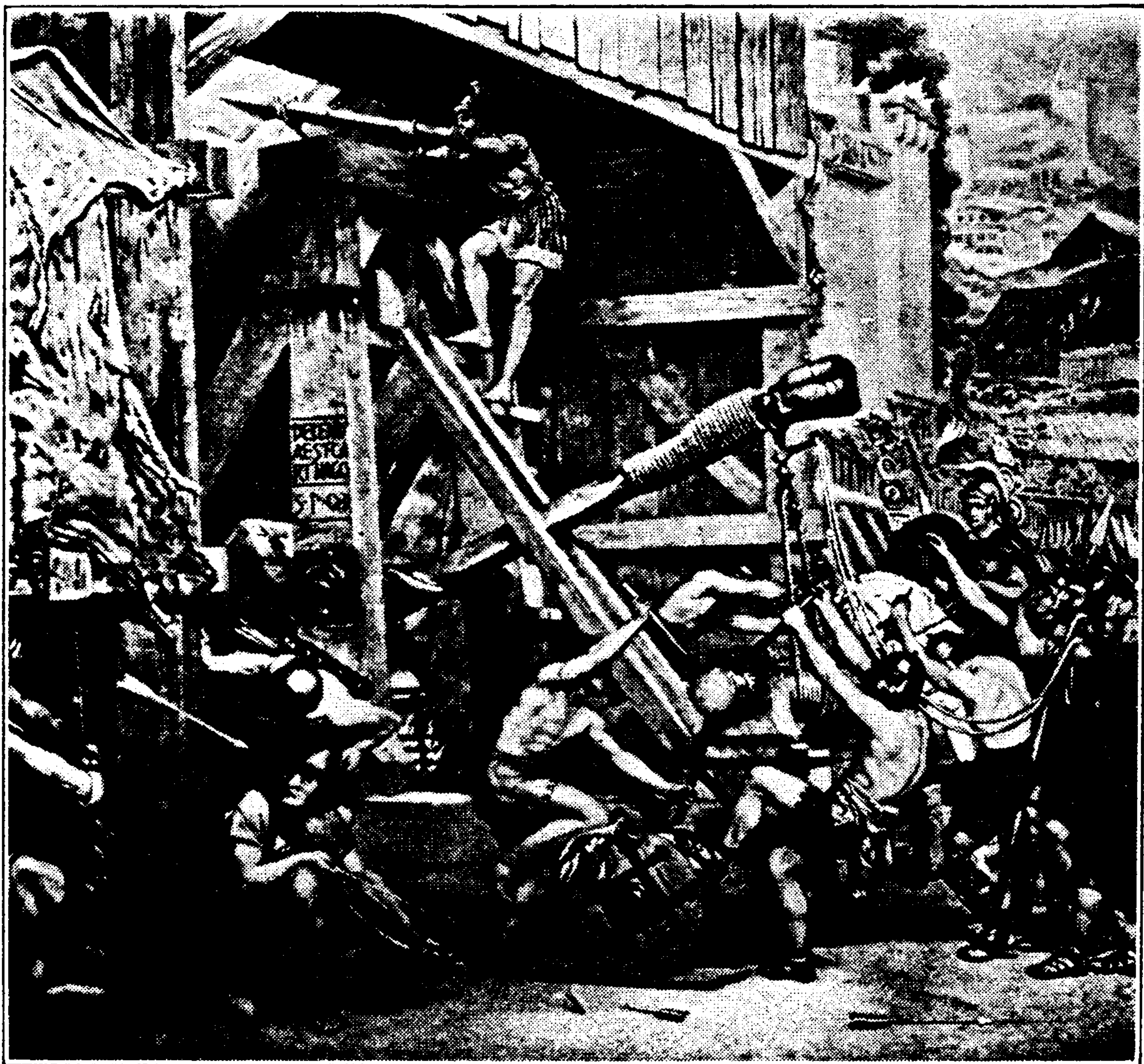


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

CATAPULTA, MĀCHINA QUĀ RŌMĀNĪ PUGNĀBANT

Puer lūdō fruitur, a boy enjoys sport; Rōmānī linguā Latīnā ūsī sunt, the Romans used the Latin language.

372. In the vocabulary deponent verbs may be recognized by their passive forms and the principal parts consisting of the present indicative, the present infinitive, and the perfect indicative. Learn the principal parts of the deponent verbs as they are given in the vocabulary, translate by the corresponding active forms, and notice particularly the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fungor*, and *potior*, which are accompanied by a noun in the ablative case.

READING EXERCISE

373. 1. Puer librum Horātī poētae legere cōnātur sed legere nōn potest. 2. Latīnā linguā nōn ūtitur. 3. Librum poētae difficilem esse arbitrātur. 4. Primum, puer, diligenter elementīs primīs operam dā (imper.); tum tibi polliceor Horātī librum facillimum futūrum (esse). 5. Ego maximē Horātiō fruor; ille multās et pulchrās sententiās locūtus est. 6. Nōne Latīnā linguā potirī cōnāberis ut tū quoque Horātiō fruāris (may enjoy)? 7. Sī puer labōrem patiētur, praemiō potiētur. 8. Ad astra per aspera aliquandō veniet.

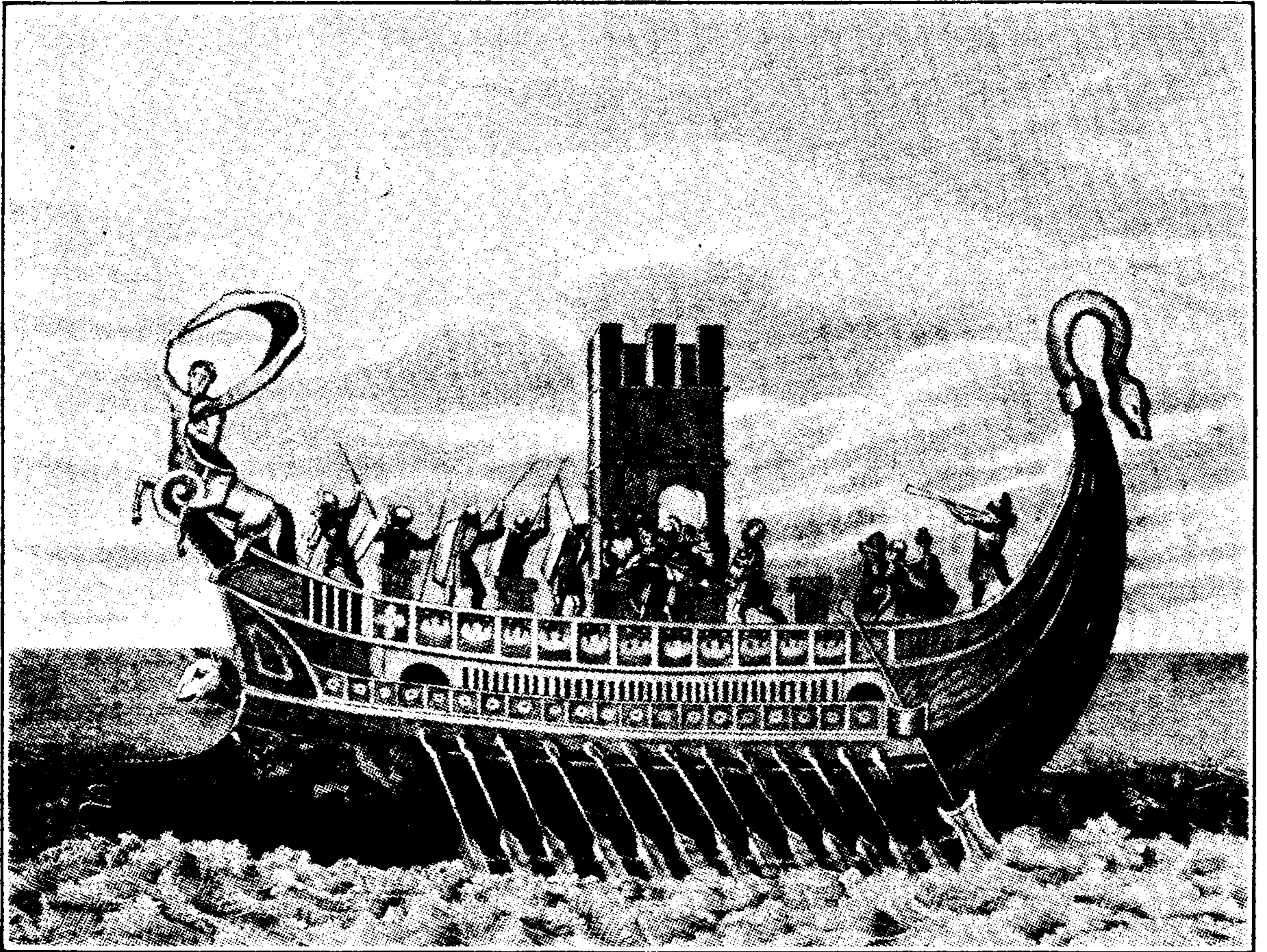
9. Frātre interfectō sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus. 10. Postquam Tullus mortuus est (moriōr), populus Ancum Mārcium rēgem creāvit. 11. Ancus Mārcius religiōne erat Numae Pompiliō similis. 12. Ancus Numae quam Tullō erat similior. 13. Tullō rēgnante Rōmānī cum Latīnīs foedus fēcerant. 14. Ancō rēge (abl. abs.) Latīnī animōs sustulērunt. 15. Incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. 16. Num rēx Rōmānus cum Latīnīs bellum geret? 17. Illī rēgem bellum nōn gestūrum esse ratī sunt. 18. Ancus ratus est pācem haud facile sē habitūrum (esse). 19. Tempora bellō apta arbitrābātur. 20. Lēgātō quem Ancus miserat superbē respōnsum est ā Latīnīs. 21. Latīnīs igitur bellum Ancus indīxit. 22. Arbitrārisne id bellum longum esse futūrum?

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write or recite the principal parts of the deponent verbs and also the conjugation of the tenses which are found in this exercise.

LATINIS BELLUM EST INDICTUM

374. Bellum autem hōc modō indicēbātur. Lēgātus, ubi ad finēs eōrum vēnit ā quibus rēs repetuntur, capite



NĀVIS LONGA

vēlātō, “Audī, Iuppiter,” inquit, “audīte, finēs huius populī. Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī; iūstē piēque lēgātus veniō; verbīs meis fidēs sit.” Deinde peragit postulāta. Sī nōn deduntur rēs quās exposcit, diēbus tribus et trīgintā perāctīs, bellum ita indicit. “Audī, Iuppiter, et tū, Iūnō, Quirīne, diīque omnēs caelestēs, vōsque terrestres vōsque infernī, audīte! Ego vōs testor populum (Latīnum) iniūstum esse neque iūs persolvere.” Tum hastam in finēs eōrum ēmittit. Hōc tum modō Latīnis bellum est indictum.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

is an example. In order to learn the language so as to understand it fully, one must become accustomed to the Roman way of thinking. Reading aloud and the oral repetition of words and idiomatic phrases will gradually give the desired familiarity with the Roman way of thinking and speaking.

It is not always possible nor desirable to reproduce in the English translation the exact and literal equivalent of the expressions which are peculiar to the Latin. The translation should represent the thought of the original rather than the grammatical constructions.

SYNTAX

The Ablative with Deponent Verbs

377. The ablative case is used with the deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds. (74)

Lingūā Latīnā ūtitur, he uses the Latin language; *Horātiō fruor*, I enjoy Horace; *Ancus rēgnō potītus est*, Ancus obtained the kingdom.

a. The ablative with these deponent verbs is supposed to have been originally an ablative of means, with which the verbs were used in a reflexive sense; as, *Horātiō fruor*, I enjoy (myself with) Horace.

COMPOSITION

378. 1. Tullus having died, Ancus Marcius obtained the kingdom. 2. At first Ancus tried to do the same as (eadem quae) his grandfather had done. 3. Ancus wished to enjoy peace. 4. The Latins attempt to invade (make an invasion into) the Roman territory. 5. War was declared by the Romans in this manner. 6. The ambassador said, "Hear, Jupiter, hear, boundaries of this people. 7. If the things which I demand are not given (shall not have been given) within thirty-three days, war will be declared. 8. I call all the gods of heaven and earth to witness that you are unjust. 9. You do not discharge your obligation." 10. The public messenger throws a spear into the territory of the enemy, and in this way declares war.

CHAPTER XLVI

IRREGULAR VERBS

379. In the present tense of a few verbs in very common use certain phonetic changes have taken place which make the verbs seem somewhat irregular. These irregular verbs are **eō**, *I go*; **ferō**, *I bear*; **fiō**, *I become*; **volō**, *I wish*; **nōlō**, *I do not wish*; **mālō**, *I prefer*. If inflected regularly **fiō** and **eō** would belong to the fourth conjugation; **ferō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** to the third.

380. Find the principal parts of the irregular verbs in the vocabulary and carefully observe the forms which occur in the following exercise.

DĒ RŪSTICŌ MŪRE ATQUE MŪRE URBĀNŌ

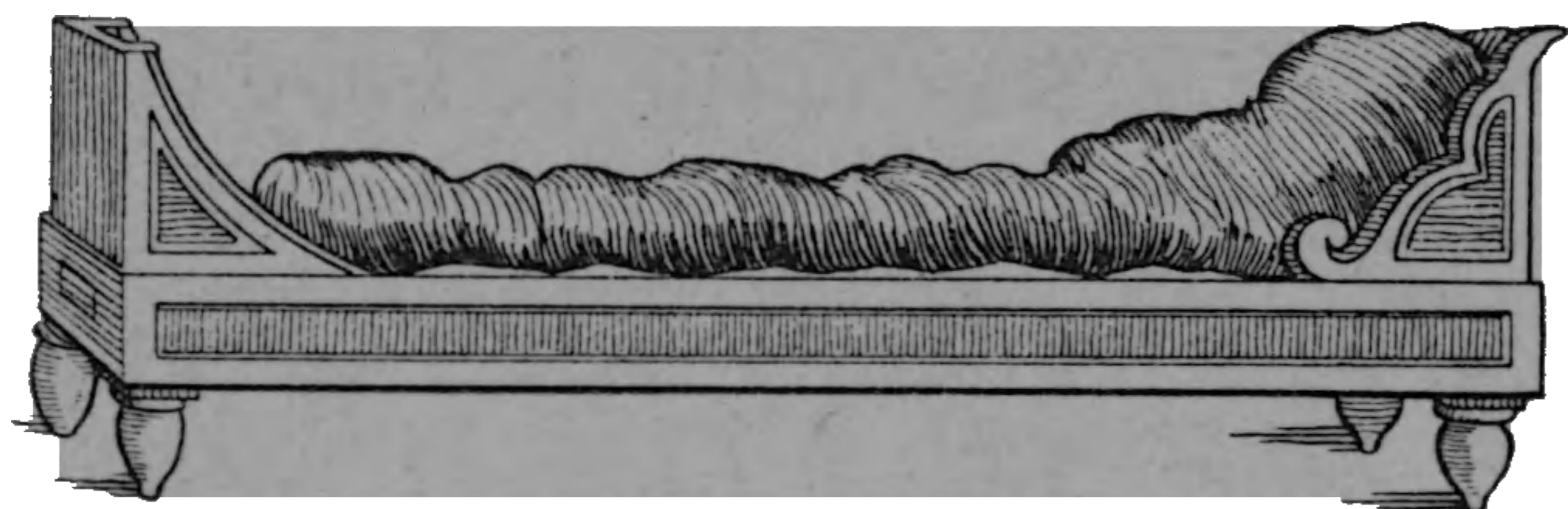
Fābula Horātī Poētae

381. 1. Ōlim rŭsticus mŭs mŭrem urbānum in paupere cavō accēpisse fertur (is said). 2. Āridum acinum sēmēsaque lārdī frŭsta ōre fert et amīcō dat. 3. Fastidium eius vincere vult. 4. Ipse (mŭs rŭsticus) meliōrem dapīs partem relinquit. 5. Sed ille (mŭs urbānus) dente superbō male singula tangit. 6. Tandem urbānus, “Cūr vīs,” inquit, “amīce, in agrīs vīvere? 7. Ego in urbe quam rŭrī (loc.) vīvere mālō. 8. Nōnne tū vīs hominēs praepōnere silvīs? 9. Vīta est brevis; dum licet vīve beātus. 10. Nōnne mēcum in urbem



CĒNA

ire vis?" ✕ 11. His verbis pulsus mus rusticus domo exit. 12. Inde comes muris urbani in via fit et ambo ad urbem ibant. 13. In urbis moenia noctu introire volunt. 14. Iamque tenebat nox medium caeli spatium; 15. cum ponit

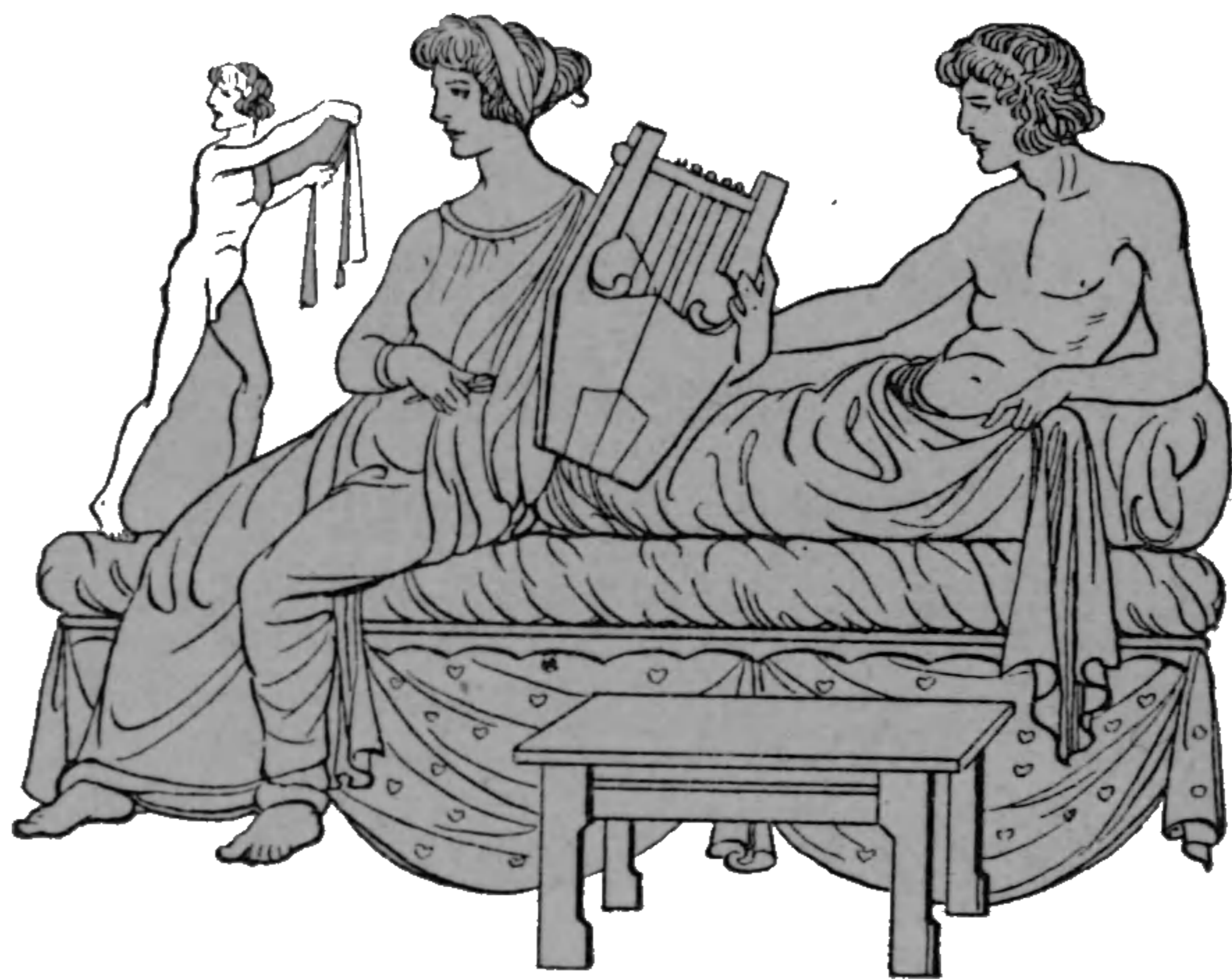


LĒCTUS

uterque in locuplete domo vestigia. 16. Ibi tincta vestis super lectos eburneos candebat; 17. multa que de magna cenasupererant hesternam. 18. Ergo ubi porrectum purpuream in veste locavit rusticum, 19. urbanus servi fungitur officii, cibum quem adfert praelambans. 20. Ille (mus rusticus) cubans gaudet mutata sorte, 21. cum subito ingens strepitus terruit utrumque. 22. Pavidi per totum currunt conclave. 23. Simul domus alta personuit canibus.

24. Tum rusticus, "Hic vivere nolo," inquit; "in silva cavoque tuto esse quam hac vitam frui malo. Vale."

25. Mus urbanus dixit se in silvis vivere nolle. 26. Rusticum murem comitem suum fieri vult. 27. Rusticus dixit se cum illo ire velle. 28. Postea se male in cavo tuto esse quam in urbe vitam frui existimabat. 29. "Noli," inquit, "me in urbe tenere; domum eo; vale."



MĒNSA

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Write the conjugation in the present tense of *eo* and *fiō* as if they were regular verbs of the fourth conjugation; and of *ferō*, *volō*, *nolō*, and *mālō* like verbs of the third conjugation; and then make the phonetic changes which would be likely to occur in the frequent repeti-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

SYNTAX

Negative Commands

383. Negative commands are often expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlīte** and the infinitive. (75)

Nōlī hīc mē tenēre, do not keep me here.

COMPOSITION

384. 1. A country mouse once welcomed a city mouse in his humble hole. 2. He gives his friend bits of bacon which he brings in his mouth. 3. The city mouse does not wish to touch the food. 4. Why, my friend, are you unwilling to live in the country? 5. Said the city mouse, "We will go to the city if you please (wish)." 6. They go forth and become companions on the way. 7. The mice enter the city by night. 8. In the rich house the city mouse performs the duty of a slave. 9. Each rejoices in the changed condition. 10. Suddenly they hear the dogs. 11. Then said the frightened country mouse, "I wish to go to the forest and to live in my safe hole."

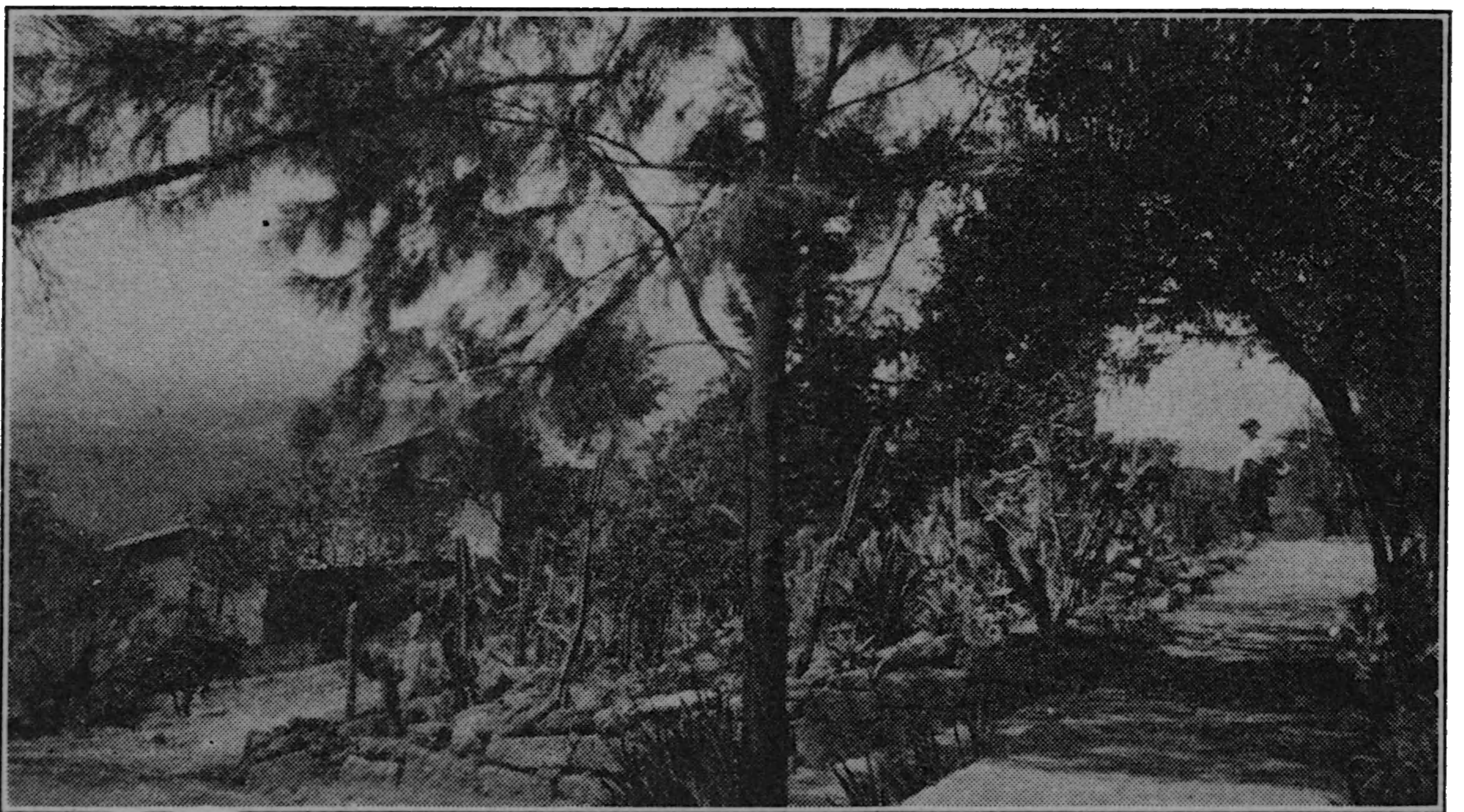


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

CHAPTER XLVII

REVIEW OF VERBS

Perag^o

Formation of Latin Verbs

English Words Derived from Latin Verbs

385. The tenses are generally used with greater exactness in Latin than in English and represent (1) the act of the verb as incomplete or as completed; and (2) the time of the act as present, past, or future. The exact meaning of each tense should be carefully noted, but the final translation from Latin into English should be expressed in idiomatic language.

386. Review the conjugation of regular verbs of the four conjugations in all the tenses of the indicative mood, active and passive, the infinitives, the participles, the supine, and the imperative. Review also the conjugation of *capio* and of the irregular verbs, *sum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*. For the complete tables of conjugation see sections 562–570.

Identify the person, number, tense, and voice of each finite verb, and the tense and voice of each infinitive. Note the agreement of each verb with its subject.

READING EXERCISE

387. 1. Nūntius Rōmānus bellum indicit. 2. Hōc modō bellum indicēbātur. 3. Nūntius ad finēs hostium vēnerat et caput vēlāverat. 4. Lēgātī bellum indicentis caput vēlātum erat. 5. Dixit sē esse pūblicum nūntium populī Rōmānī. 6. Verbīs nūntī pūblicī fidēs sit. 7. Peraget rēs quae repetuntur. 8. Sī nōn dēditae erunt rēs quās exposcit, bellum indicētur. 9. Cum diēs trēs et trīgintā

perāctī erunt, omnēs deōs testābitur hostēs iniūstōs esse. 10. Nūntius dīcet, “Audīte, omnēs diī, quī in caelō, quī in terrā habitātis. 11. Iuppiter audiet vōs semper fuisse, esse, et semper futūrōs esse hostēs.” 12. Nōlīte, Rōmānī, bellum iūstīs indicere. 13. Diī vōs vidēbunt, et vōbīs cum illīs erit bellum. 14. Dum licet fīte amīcī et āvertite irās. 15. Sī domum ieritis atque bonā cum pāce vīvētis, omnēs vestrī (gen.) erunt memorēs. 16. Melius est pācem facere quam imperiō potīrī.

NOTEBOOK WORK

- a. What tenses refer to the present? to the future? to the past?
- b. What tenses denote incomplete action? completed action?
- c. Write or recite the principal parts of typical verbs and give the synopsis in one or two persons in all tenses of the indicative, both active and passive, and the conjugation of the verbs in the tenses which occur in this exercise.
- d. Describe the form and the use of each infinitive.

URBS ATQUE AGER FİNĒSQUE CRĒSCUNT

388. Ancus, exercitū novō cōscripto, urbem Latīnōrum vī cēpit secūtusque mōrem priōrum rēgum multitūdinem Rōmam trādūxit. Mōns Aventīnus novae multitūdini datus est. Iāniculum quoque adiectum est, nōn inopiā locī sed nē quandō ea arx hostium esset (might be). Id nōn mūrō solum sed etiam ponte subliciō, tum primum in Tiberī factō, urbī est coniūctum. Cum in tantā multitūdine hominum facinora fierent (were done, committed), carcer ad terrōrem incrēscētis audāciae in mediā urbe imminēns forō aedificātur. Nec urbs tantum hōc rēge crēvit, sed etiam ager fīnēsque; usque ad mare imperium prōlātum (est), et in ōre Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita est.

- a. *Inopiā*, ablative denoting cause; *inopiā locī*, because of lack of room; *nē . . . esset*, that this might not be an enemy's citadel; *cum facinora fierent*, since crimes were committed; *in mediā urbe* (sec. 349), in the midst of the city; *hōc rēge*, ablative absolute, he (being) king,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(1) A root is the simplest element, generally monosyllabic, which appears in a word or in several related words, expressing the general or fundamental meaning. The same root frequently appears, often modified by phonetic laws, in different languages, thus showing that languages as well as words are related to each other.

Latin verbs formed directly from roots are some of the irregular verbs and some verbs of the third conjugation. In the examples given for illustration the Latin verb is followed in parentheses by the Latin form of the root and its general meaning; and one or more English words, not all direct derivatives, are given, in which the same root appears. The forms given are the present active indicative and the perfect passive participle, which show the different forms in which the root appears in the English derivatives.

cadō, cāsus, (cad-, fall), *cadence, case*.

caedō, caesus (cīd-, cut), *decide, decision*.

dīcō, dictus (dīc-, say), *diction, dictionary, edict, etc.*

dūcō, ductus (dūc-, lead), *duke, duct, produce, product, etc.*

lūdō, lūsus (lūd-, play), *elude, elusive*.

petō, petītus (pet-, fall upon, find), *impetus, petition*.

sum (es-, be), *essence*.

tangō, tāctus (tag-, touch), *tangent, tact*.

tegō, tēctus (teg-, cover), *tegument, protect*.

NOTE.—The study of the roots of words is one of the most technical and difficult branches of language study and belongs to the science of comparative etymology. At this point it is not essential to do more than study the examples given, which are introduced chiefly to show how the English derivatives preserve the form of the Latin root.

(2) Latin verbs denoting repeated or frequent action are formed from other verbs by the suffix **-tō** or **-itō**.

agitō (agō), *agitate*.

dictō (dīcō), *dictate*.

habitō (habeō), *habitat*.

(3) Many Latin verbs belonging to the first, second, and fourth conjugations have been formed from nouns and adjectives.

cūrō, cūrātus (cūra), *cure*.

duplicō, duplicātus (duplex), *duplicate*.

fīniō, fīnītus (fīnis), *fine, finish, finite*.

laudō, laudātus (laus), *laud*.

līberō, līberātus (līber), *liberate*.

(4) One of the most obvious ways by which Latin words have been multiplied and become a prolific source of English words is the formation of compound verbs by the use of prepositions and inseparable particles as prefixes. From many of these compounds have come not only verbs but nouns and adjectives, both in Latin and in English. The following list, for example, contains some of the most common compounds of the verb **ferō** and some of the most familiar English derivatives.

circum-ferō, *circumference*.

cōn-ferō, collatus, *confer, conference, collate*.

dē-ferō, *defer, deference*.

dif-ferō (dis-ferō), *differ, difference*.

ef-ferō, ē-lātus, *elate*.

īn-ferō, *infer, inference*.

of-ferō, (ob-ferō), *offer*.

prae-ferō, *prefer, preference*.

re-ferō, relātus, *refer, reference, relate*.

suf-ferō (sub-ferō), *suffer*.

trāns-ferō, trānslātus, *transfer, translate*.

a. Notice the phonetic changes in **col-lātus** for **con-lātus**, **of-ferō** for **ob-ferō**, and **suf-ferō** for **sub-ferō**. The final consonant of the preposition is *assimilated* by the following consonant.

b. The ending *-ence* in *circumference, conference, difference, inference, preference*, and *reference* represents the Latin **-tia** in nouns derived from present participles ending in **-ns** (gen., **-ntis**); as, **differentia**, *difference*, from **differēns**, **-ntis** (*differō*); **scientia**, *science*, from **sciēns**, **-ntis** (*sciō*), etc. Sometimes the Latin noun is lacking and the English noun is then traced directly to the Latin verb.

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN VERBS

390. English words derived from Latin verbs, including not only verbs but nouns and adjectives, are based sometimes on the root of the verb as it appears in the present stem, as *creed* from **crēdō**; sometimes on the present active participle, as *agent* from **agēns**, **agent-is** (**agō**); and particularly on the perfect passive participle, as *act* from **āct-us** (**agō**), *credit* from **crēdit-us** (**crēdō**), *fact* from **fact-us** (**faciō**), etc.

absens (ab-sum), *absent*.

ad-dō, *add*.

adrogāns, -ntis (ad-rogō), *arrogant*.

collēctus (colligō, con-legō), *collect*.

conceptus (concupiō), *concept*.

conciliātus (conciliō, concilium), *conciliate*.

concupiō (con-cupiō), *conceive*.

condemnō (con-damnō, damnum), *condemn*.

con-tendō, *contend*.

creātus (creō), *create*.

dē-fendō, *defend*.

datus (dō), *date*.

dōnātus (dōnō, dōnum), *donate*.

habeō, *have*.

habitātus (habitō, habeō), *habitat*.

habitus (habeō), *habit*.

importāns, -ntis (importō), *important*.

im-portō, *import*.

inhabitāns, -ntis (in-habitō), *inhabitant*.

labōrō (labor), *labor* (verb)

moveō, *move*.

occupāns, -ntis (occupō), *occupant*.

occupō (ob-cupiō), *occupy*.

patiēns, -ntis (patior), *patient*.

placeō, *please*.

pūniō (poena), *punish*.

regēns (regō), *regent*.

scrībō, *scribe*,

scrīptus (scrībō), *script*.

tendō, *tend*.

teneō, *tenet*.

tentus (tendō), *tent*.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find the Latin verbs from which the following English words have been derived. Also, try to find out something about the origin of the Latin verb itself.

adult

debit

debt

decay

except

exclude

inhabit

locate

obtain

occur

offer

persuade

predict

prohibit

subscribe

transmit



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Dīcit prōditiōnem vindicātam esse, vindicārī, vindicātum īrī, he says that the treason has been punished, is being punished, is about to be punished; dīxit sē īvisse, īre, itūrum esse, he said that he had gone, was going, was about to go (would go).

Amīcum vidēns nōmen vocat, seeing his friend he calls his name; virginēs raptae Rōmānōrum uxōrēs fiunt, the maidens having been (who have been) seized become the Romans' wives; mūrēs in urbem itūrī comitēs in viā fiunt, about to go to the city, the mice become companions on the way.

COMPOSITION

395. 1. Ancus enrolls a new army, with which he captures a city of his enemies. 2. To the multitude which had been transferred to Rome he gave Mount Aventine. 3. Ancus was following the custom of former kings. 4. Over the Tiber he made a bridge, by which the city was connected with (to) Janiculum. 5. That crimes may not be committed (*nē facinora fiant*), a prison is built near the forum. 6. While Ancus was king (Ancus king), the territory of the Romans was extended to the mouth of the Tiber. 7. Ancus founded the city of Ostia that (*ut*) this might be (*esset*) a harbor for the Romans (for a harbor to the Romans).

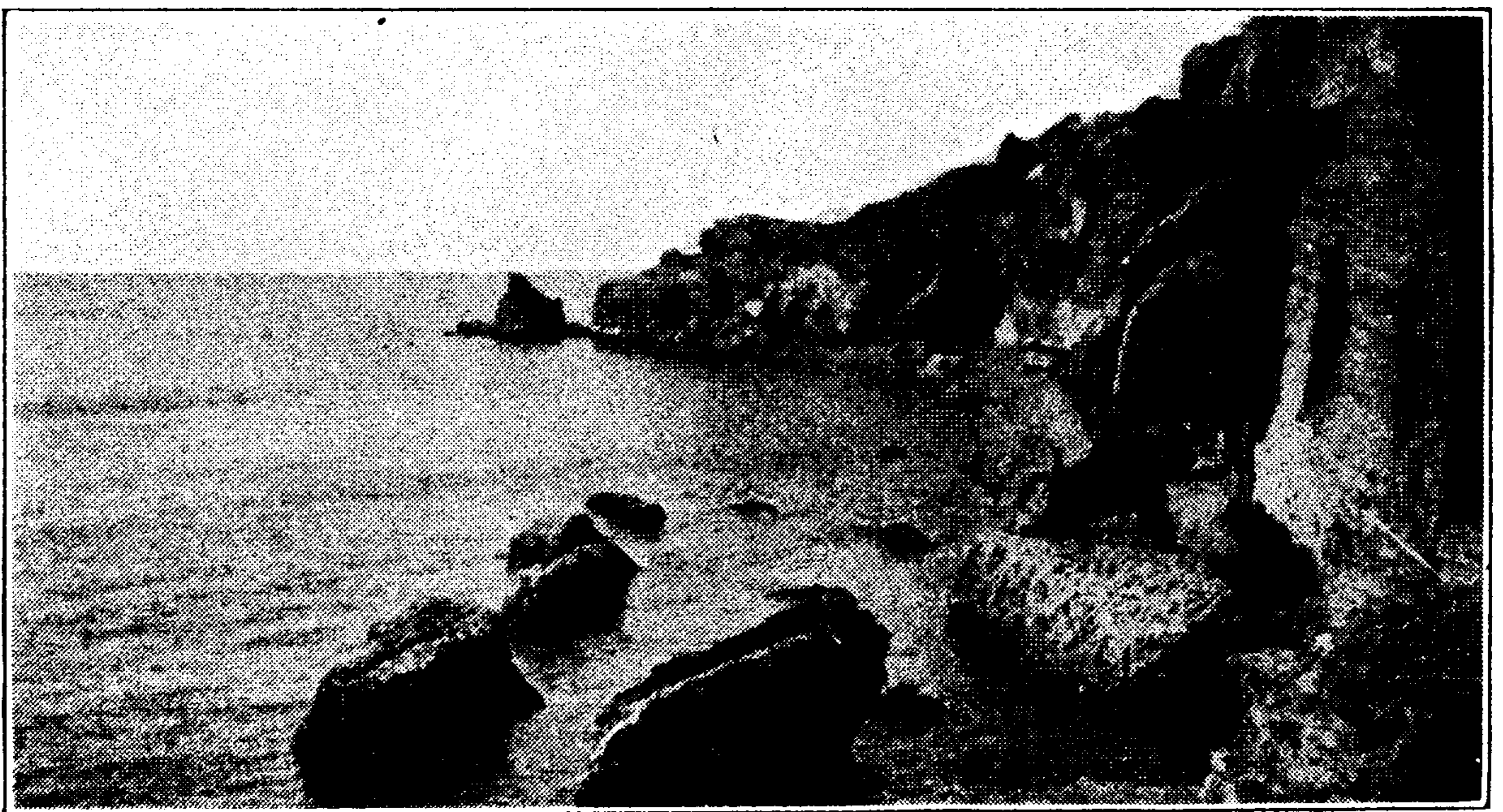


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

MARE ĪNFERUM NŌN LONGĒ AB ŌRE TIBERIS

CHAPTER XLVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

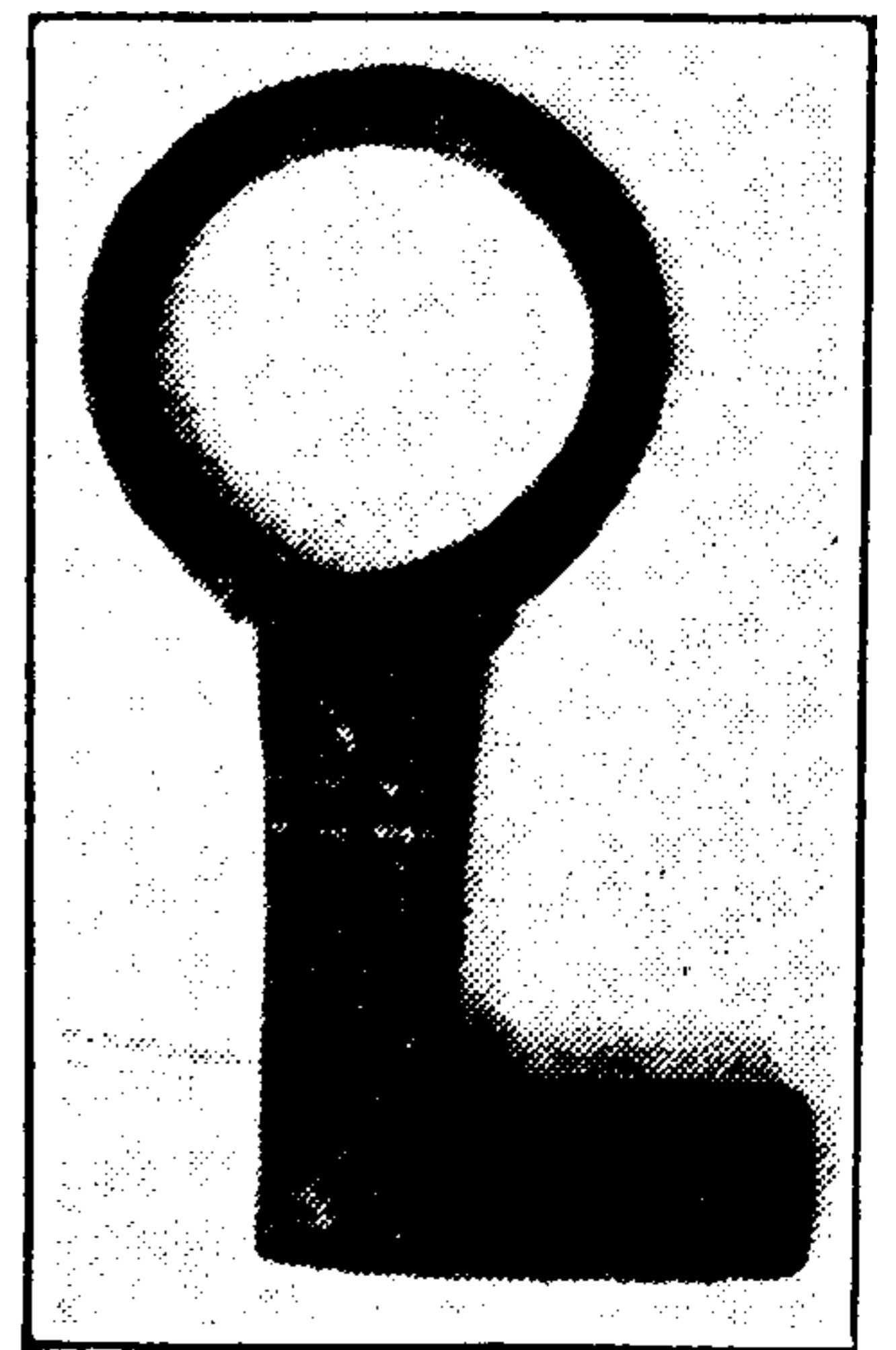
Present and Past Tenses

FINAL CLAUSES

396. In the preceding chapters the finite verbs, with few exceptions, are in the indicative mood and denote actual acts. Sometimes, however, a writer wishes not only to tell what has happened, is happening, or will happen, but also to indicate the feeling or attitude of the mind and to express certain relations between facts and ideas.

The attitude of the mind may be indicated by a definite statement; as, *volō Rōmam vidēre, I wish to see Rome; vērum dicere dēbeō, I ought to speak the truth; Remus sē dēfendere nōn poterat, Remus could not defend himself.* Such feelings of desire, obligation, possibility, etc., are expressed in language not only in plain statements, as in the examples just given, but by the special forms of verbs which belong to the subjunctive mood; as, *utinam Rōmam videam, that I may see Rome.*

Thus the feeling or attitude of the mind is implied or suggested by the form of the verb, and this suggestion of feeling is often more delicate and more expressive than the blunt statement of the fact. There is an obvious difference between *Volō meīs verbīs fidem esse, I want my words to have confidence,* and *Meīs verbīs fidēs sit, let my words have confidence.* In the first sentence, in which the indicative is



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

CLĀVIS AEREA

used, the wish is directly stated; in the second the wish is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

397. The subjunctive mood is often used in a subordinate clause to express some relation between the subordinate clause and the main clause upon which the subjunctive depends.

Cum frātribus rēgēs agunt ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicient ferrō, the kings arrange with the brothers that they (may) fight with the sword each for his own country.

Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbem liberis faceret, the father of Horatius entreated the people that they should not (not to) make him childless.

In these sentences the dependent clauses, **ut . . . dīmicient** and **nē . . . faceret**, are final clauses representing the purpose of the action denoted by the verbs **agunt** and **ōrābat** in the independent clauses.

THE FORM OF THE PRESENT AND PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

398. The present and past tenses of the subjunctive mood contain the present stem. The present tense is characterized by the mood vowel **e** in verbs of the first conjugation, and by the vowel **a** in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations. In regular verbs of all conjugations the past tense of the subjunctive is characterized by the letters **-re-**, which appear between the present stem and the personal endings. In the irregular verbs, **sum, eō, ferō**, etc., the forms of the present and past tenses of the subjunctive are exceptional. (See sections 562, 568, 569.)

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dīmlicant
habet
petunt
veniunt
est

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dīmicient
habeat
petant
veniant
sit



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

nidus erat. 4. Minimē pavida gallīna ōvīs īnsidēbat dum aqua īnfūsa ignem exstīnxit. 5. Tandem pullī exclūsī nidum relinquunt.

6. Plērumque gallīnae pennīs fōvent, ōva nē frīgore laedantur; 7. haec tegēbat ōva ut ab iīs arcēret calōrem.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. In what mood and tense is *laedantur*, sentence 6? *arcēret*, sentence 7?

b. What relation is expressed by the clauses containing the subjunctive?

READING EXERCISE

✕
402. 1. Amūlius frātrem pellit ut sōlus rēgnet. 2. Ut sōlus rēgnāret, Amūlius frātrem pepulit. 3. Rōmulus et Remus Amūlium obtruncant ut Numitor sit rēx. 4. Frātrēs Amūlium obtruncāvērunt nē diūtius esset rēx. 5. Rōmulus suum frātrem interficit nē moenia iterum trānsiliat. 6. Rōmulus frātrem interfēcit nē moenia iterum trānsiliret. 7. Rōmulus asylum aperit ut nova urbs incolās habeat. 8. Rōmulus asylum aperuit ut nova urbs incolās habēret. 9. Lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mittit quī cōnūbium petant. 10. Lēgātōs mīsit quī cōnūbium peterent. 11. Circā vicinās gentēs, lēgātī, mittiminī ut societātem petātis. 12. Missī estis ut societātem peterētis. 13. Mittimur ut petāmus; mittēbāmur ut peterēmus.

14. Lūdī parantur ut finitimī cum liberīs ad spectāculum veniant. 15. Lūdī parātī sunt ut finitimī venīrent. 16. Tarpēia ita arbitrābātūr: “Sabīnōs in arcem dūcam ut mūnus habeam.” 17. “Sabīnōs dūxī ut mūnus habērem.” 18. Num in arcem, Tarpēia, hostēs dūcēs ut mūnus habeās? 19. In arcem eōs dūxistī ut mūnus habērēs. 20. Mulierēs inter tēla volantia veniunt nē viduae sint. 21. Inter tēla vērunt nē viduae essent. 22. Inter tēla veniēmus nē viduae sīmus. 23. Inter tēla venimus nē viduae essēmus. 24. Cum frātribus rēgēs agunt ut prō suā quisque patriā

imicent ferrō. 25. Albānus exercitū inclāmat Cūriātiis
t opem frātrī ferant. 26. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat
ē sē orbū liberis faceret.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. What verbs are in the subjunctive present? the past subjunctive?

b. What is the relation between the clause containing the subjunctive in each sentence and the main clause?

c. What connecting word, conjunction or pronoun, is used with each subjunctive verb?

d. What tenses are found in the main clause when the present subjunctive is used in the dependent clause? when the past subjunctive is used?

READING EXERCISE

403. 1. Ancus novum exercitum cōscripsit ut urbem Latinōrum caperet. 2. Ut mōrem priōrum rēgum sequeretur multitudinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit. 3. Mōns Aventīnus novae multitudinī datur quō sēdēs habeant. 4. Iāniculum urbī adiectum est nē quandō ea arx hostium esset. 5. Pōns publicius in Tiberī factus est ut Iāniculum urbī coniungeretur. 6. Cum (since) facinora clandestīna fierent, carcer aedificātus est quī incrēscēntem audāciam terreret. 7. Carcer aedificātus est nē audacia incrēsceret. 8. Urbs Ōstia in ōre Tiberis condita est quae Rōmānis portuī esset.

NOTEBOOK WORK

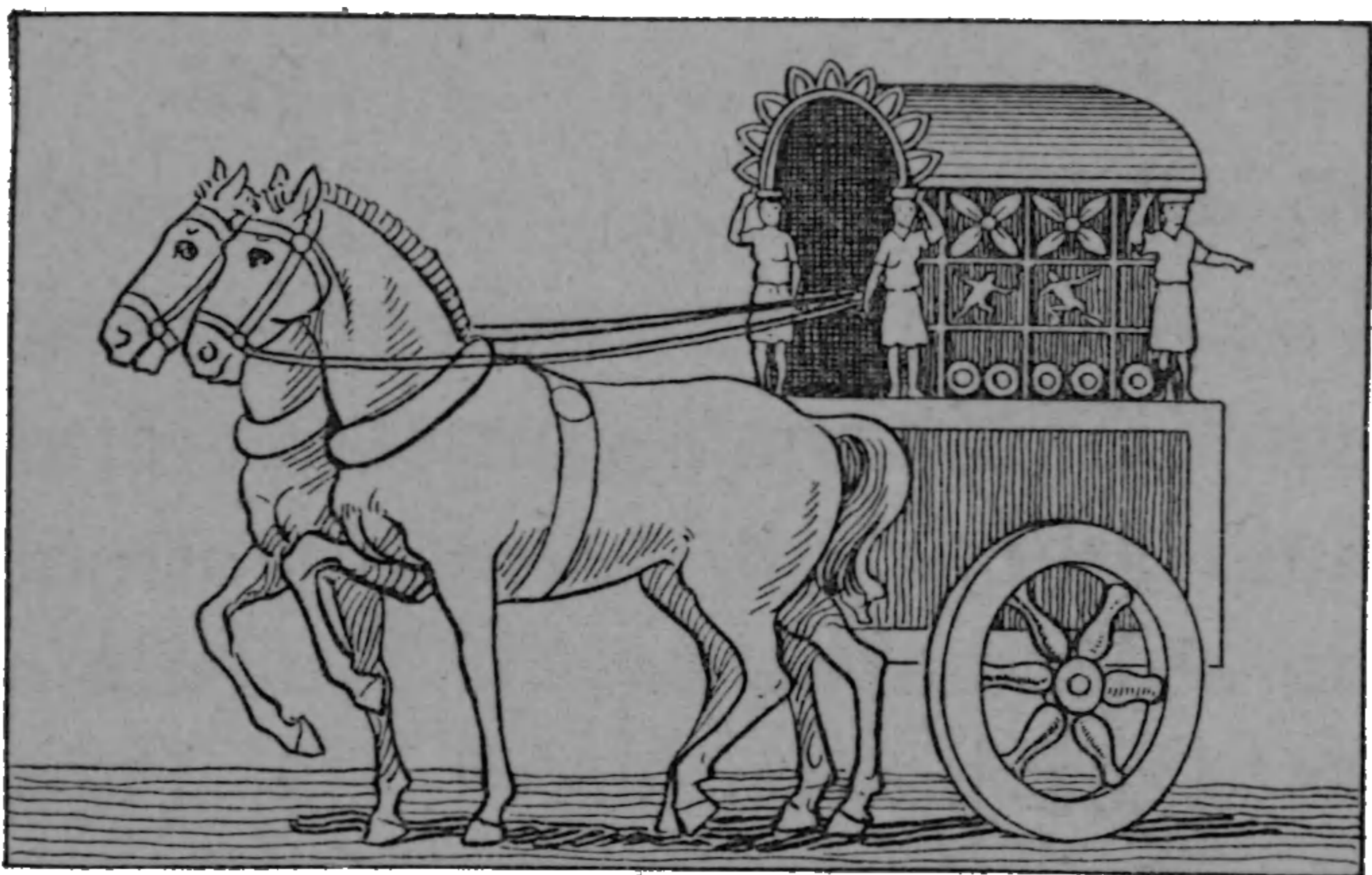
a. Write in the present and past tenses of the subjunctive the conjugation of **sum** (**sim, essem**), **rēgnō** (**rēgnem, rēgnārem**), **terreō** (**terream, terrērem**), **condō** (**condam, conderem**), **veniō** (**veniam, venīrem**).

b. Write the conjugation of **sequor** (**sequar, sequerer**) in the present and past tenses of the subjunctive passive.

c. What stem is found in the present and imperfect tenses? What is the characteristic of the subjunctive mood in the present tense of the first conjugation? in the present tense of the second, third, and fourth conjugations? What is the sign of the past tense of the subjunctive in all the conjugations? What are the personal endings of the active voice? of the passive?

TARQUINIUS RŌMAM COMMIGRAT

404. Ancō rēgnante Tarquinius, vīr impiger āc dīvitiīs potēns, ex Etrūriae urbe Rōmam commigrāvit cupīdine maximē āc spē magnī honōris. Ad Iāniculum forte vēnerat. Ibi eī in carpentō sedentī cum uxōre aquila lēniter dēmissa pilleum aufert, superque carpentum cum magnō clangōre volitāns rūrsus capitī aptē repōnit, inde sublīmis abit. Tanaquil coniūnx, perīta caelestium prōdigiōrum, alta spērāre virum iubet. Hās spēs cogitātiōnēsque sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī sunt.



CARPENTUM

Domiciliō ibi comparātō in rēgiam quoque dē Tarquiniō fāma perlāta est. Postrēmō tūtor liberōrum rēgis testāmentō institūtus est.

a. **Ancō rēgnante**, abl. abs., *in the reign of Ancus*; **dīvitiīs**, abl. of specification; **dīvitiīs potēns**, *abounding in riches*; **cupīdine**, **spē**, abl. of cause; **honōris**, objective

gen. (sec. 269); **cupīdine . . . honōris**, *chiefly because of his desire and hope of great honor*; **eī**, dative denoting separation (sec. 205); **capitī**, indirect object of **repōnit**; **prōdigiōrum**, objective gen. with **perīta** (sec. 269); **perīta . . . prōdigiōrum**, *skilled in heavenly portents*; **alta**, adj. used as noun (268); **tūtor**, pred. nom.; **testāmentō**, abl. of means.

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *carpenter, cogitation, Cupid, domicile, fame, honor, institute, prodigy, sublime, testament, tutor.*

CONJUGATION

405. For the conjugation of **amō**, **videō**, **mittō**, **audiō**, and **capiō** in the present and past tenses of the subjunctive, active and passive, and the conjugation of the irregular verbs **sum**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **eō**, **ferō**, and **fiō** in the subjunctive present and past, see sections 562-569. Observe carefully the formation of these tenses, noting particularly the tense-signs. . .



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

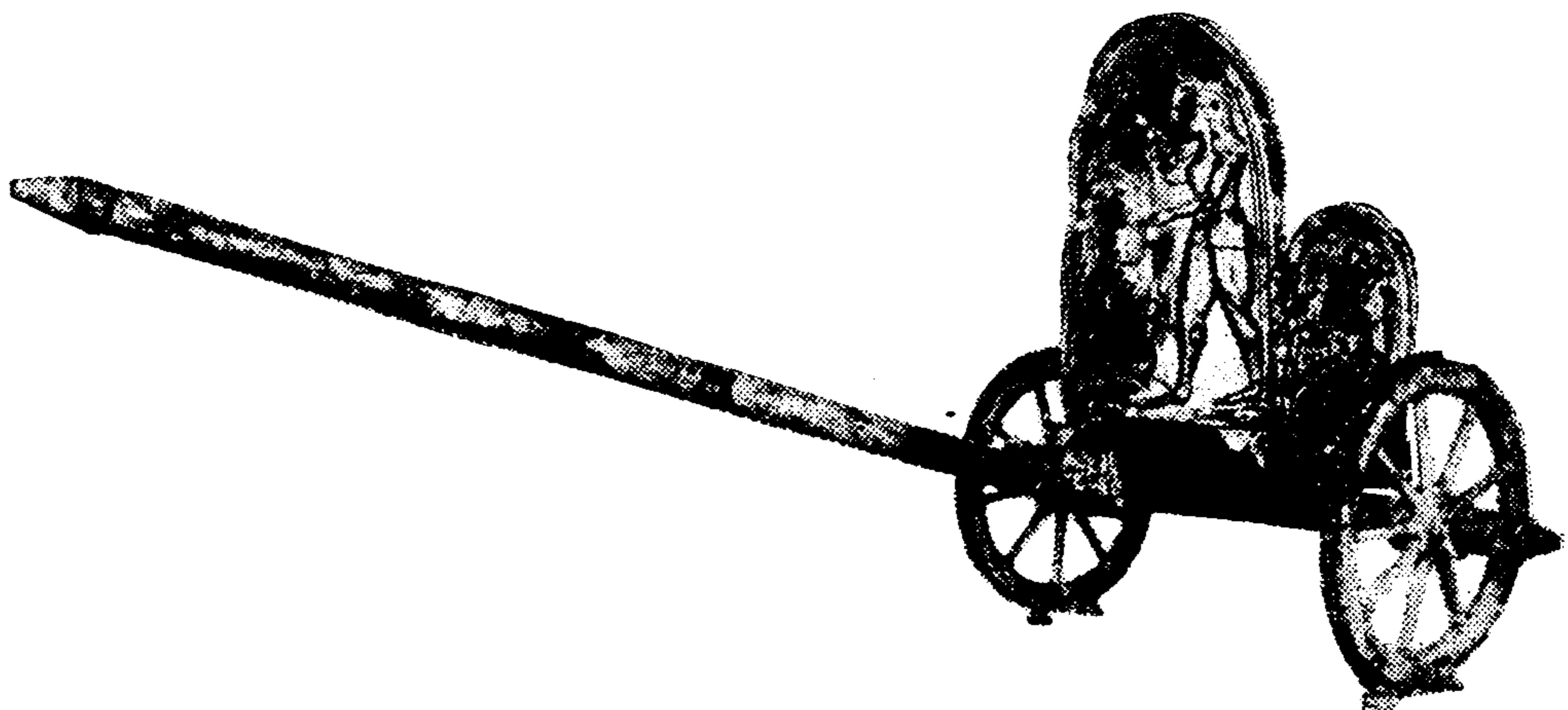
Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

came so that we might have high hopes (hope high things). 9. You come to Rome, Tarquin, that you may there (quō) prepare a dwelling. 10. You (pl.) came to Rome that you might prepare a dwelling there. 11. The king arranges with Tarquin that he may be the guardian of his children. 12. The king arranged with him that he might be the guardian. 13. Tarquin prepares a dwelling in the city so that a report concerning him may go (pres. subj. of eō) to the palace. 14. He prepared a dwelling so that a report might go. 15. Tarquin arranges with the Romans that the son of Ancus may not be king.

16. He begs me to hope high things, to have great riches, to rule (regō) the city, to come to the palace. 17. I beg you (sing.) not to hope high things, not to seek great riches, not to fear the powerful king, not to obtain the kingdom. 18. Tanaquil begged her husband to remove to Rome, not to fear the heavenly portent, to follow her bidding (mandāta), to enter the city, to carry high hopes, to be king in the city.

NOTE.—It will be profitable to spend as much time as may be necessary on this introductory chapter on the subjunctive mood and on the following chapters. Here, as elsewhere, better results will be secured by thorough study and many repetitions than by hasty or superficial work.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

CURRUS ETRŪSCUS

CHAPTER XLIX

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

409. The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate use to denote the consequence or the result of the action the verb in the main clause.

Vicīnae gentēs novam urbem ita timēbant ut benignē legātiōnem audirent, *the neighboring tribes so feared the new city that they did hear the embassy kindly.*

The present subjunctive in a dependent clause generally follows a tense in the main clause denoting present or future time, and the past tense of the subjunctive generally follows a tense denoting past time.

410. Read again the introductory statements in sections 6–399, and review the conjugation of the present and past tenses of the subjunctive mood.

In the following exercises study the verbs which are in the subjunctive mood and determine the relation between the dependent clause and the main clause. Distinguish carefully between a clause which denotes purpose and one which denotes consequence or result. Observe what tenses of the indicative are followed by the present subjunctive and what tenses are followed by the past subjunctive. Notice what conjunctions are used to introduce dependent clauses denoting consequence or result.

VULPĒS ET LEŌ

411. Vulpēs quae numquam leōnem viderat eī forte occurrit atque ita exterrita est ut paene morerētur formidine. Tandem cōspicāta iterum, timuit quidem, sed nēquāquam (as) anteā. Tertiō illi obviam facta (having met him), leō impavida fuit ut auderet accēdere propius et cum eō colloqui.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. In what mood and tense are *morerētur* and *audēret*; What relation do they express? By what conjunctions are they connected with the verbs in the clauses upon which they depend?

READING EXERCISE

412. 1. Amūlius fīliōs Silviae timet; itaque Silviam in vincula dat et puerōs in Tiberim mittit. 2. Amūlius fīliōs Silviae adeō timet ut Silviam in vincula det et puerōs in Tiberim mittat. 3. Amūlius fīliōs Silviae adeō timēbat ut Silviam in vincula daret et puerōs in Tiberim mitteret. 4. In hīs adultīs sunt magnae vīrēs; apud pāstōrēs sunt ducēs. 5. In hīs adultīs sunt tantae vīrēs ut apud pāstōrēs sint ducēs. 6. In hīs adultīs erant tantae vīrēs ut apud pāstōrēs essent ducēs. 7. Vallum novae urbis est angustum; Remus id inrīdet et trānsilit. 8. Vallum novae urbis est tam angustum ut Remus id inrīdeat et trānsiliat. 9. Vallum erat tam angustum ut Remus id inrīdēret et trānsiliret. 10. Adeō irātus erat Rōmulus ut frātrem obtruncāret. 11. Lēgātī circā vicīnās gentēs missī sunt quī societātem peterent. 12. Sed nova urbs ita timēbātur ut benignē lēgātiō nōn audīrētur.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. What verbs are in the subjunctive mood? What tenses in the main clause are followed by the present subjunctive? What tenses are followed by the past subjunctive? Is the action denoted by the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive represented as completed or as incomplete at the time of the action of the main verb? What is the relation between the clause containing the subjunctive in each sentence and the clause upon which the subjunctive depends? Does *peterent*, sentence 11, express the same relation as the other subjunctives in this exercise?

READING EXERCISE

413. 1. Rōma est urbs clāra; eam vidēre volō. 2. Rōma est urbs tam clāra ut eam vidēre velim. 3. Quis est



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Quō mortuō Tarquinius instābat ut quam primum comitia rēgī creandō fierent. Fīliōs Ancī, quī iam prope adultī erant, sub tempus vēnātum mīsit ut ipse rēgnum peteret. Ōrātiōnem dīcitur habuisse ita



Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

MAGISTRATUS RŌMĀNUS

em dīcitur habuisse ita compositam ut plēbis animōs conciliāret: sē Rōmam cum coniuge ac fortūnīs omnibus commigrāsse; maiōrem partem aetātis eius quā cīvīlibus officiīs fungantur hominēs, Rōmae sē quam in vetere patriā vixisse. Tam multa dē sē haud falsa memorāvit ut ingentī cōnsensū populus Rōmānus eum rēgnāre iubēret.

a. Cuilibet, dat, from quilibet, to any one whatever, emphatic; -que, connects bellī and pācis; et . . . et, both . . . and, connecting artibus and glōriā; bellī . . . par, equal both in the arts of peace and the glory of war; quō mortuō, abl. abs, on whose death, or, and on his death; quam primum, as soon as possible; rēgī cre-

andō, for electing a king (sec. 464); sub tempus, at the approach of the time, as the time approached; vēnātum, supine (sec. 365, 369); ōrātiōnem dīcitur habuisse, he is said to have delivered a speech; sē commigrāsse, sē vixisse, used as objects of the verb of saying implied in ōrātiōnem habuisse (sec. 250); commigrāsse, for commigrāvissē; officiīs, abl. with fungantur (sec. 377); fungantur, present subjunctive, translated

the English indicative; *partem*, acc. of time (sec. 278); *maiōrem* . . . *quam*, a greater part than.

b. Find examples of the subjunctive used as in sections 401 and 411.

c. Notice the arrangement of the words in the expression, *belli pacisque et artibus et glōriā par*. *Belli* belongs with *glōriā*, and *pācis* with *artibus*. Such an arrangement, although somewhat artificial, is thought to add to the excellence of the literary form. The variety in the use of the conjunctions is also noticeable. The commonplace arrangement would be, *glōriā belli et artibus pācis*.

d. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *art*, *civil*, *conciliate*, *consensus*, *false*, *major*, *office*, *omnibus*, *quart*, *superior*.

SYNTAX

The Subjunctive of Result

416. The subjunctive with *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quī*, and *quīn* is used in consecutive clauses to denote consequence or result. (80)

Vulpēs ita exterrita est ut paene morerētur formīdine, the fox was so terrified that she almost died of fright; *nova urbs ita timēbātur ut benignē lēgātiō nōn audīrētur*, the new city was so feared that the embassy was not heard kindly; *quis est quī urbem Rōmam vidēre nōlit?* who is there who does not wish to see the city of Rome? *numquam de Rōmānīs tam multa audiēmus quīn plūra libenter audiāmus*, we shall never hear so many things about the Romans that we shall not gladly hear more.

a. When the subjunctive of result is used with the relative *quī*, the relative is generally equivalent to *ut* is. *Quis est quī nōlit* means, who is there so disposed that he does not wish? The antecedent is often indefinite and the clause with the subjunctive describes some quality or characteristic of the antecedent.

b. *Quīn*, who not, that not, that, is often used after expressions of doubt. *Nōn est dubium quīn Rōma sit clāra*, there is no doubt that Rome is famous.

c. Verbs of hindering, preventing, etc., when a negative is expressed or implied, are followed by *quīn* and the subjunctive. *Carcer scelerātōs nōn dēterrēbat quīn scelera facerent*, the prison did not keep the wicked from committing crimes.

COMPOSITION

417. 1. Ancus was equal to the former kings both in the arts of peace and the glory of war. 2. No one of the former kings had greater renown in war (of war) and peace than Ancus. 3. After the death of Ancus, Tarquin urged that the new king should be elected as soon as possible. 4. The sons of Ancus were now almost grown to manhood. 5. Just before (sub.) the time Tarquin sent the boys to hunt (supine). 6. He sent the sons of Ancus to hunt so that he might be elected king himself. 7. Tarquin's speech was so arranged that he himself was elected king. 8. He had come to Rome with all his fortunes, and had lived there a large part of his life. 9. A large part of that age in which men perform public duties Tarquin lived in Rome. 10. He said so many true (not false) things about himself that he obtained the kingdom (potior with abl.). 11. The sons of Ancus did not prevent the people from electing Tarquin king. 12. There was no doubt that Tarquin wished to have the kingdom himself (Tarquin himself wished).



Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

VĪCUS IN ĪTALIĀ HODIERNĀ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

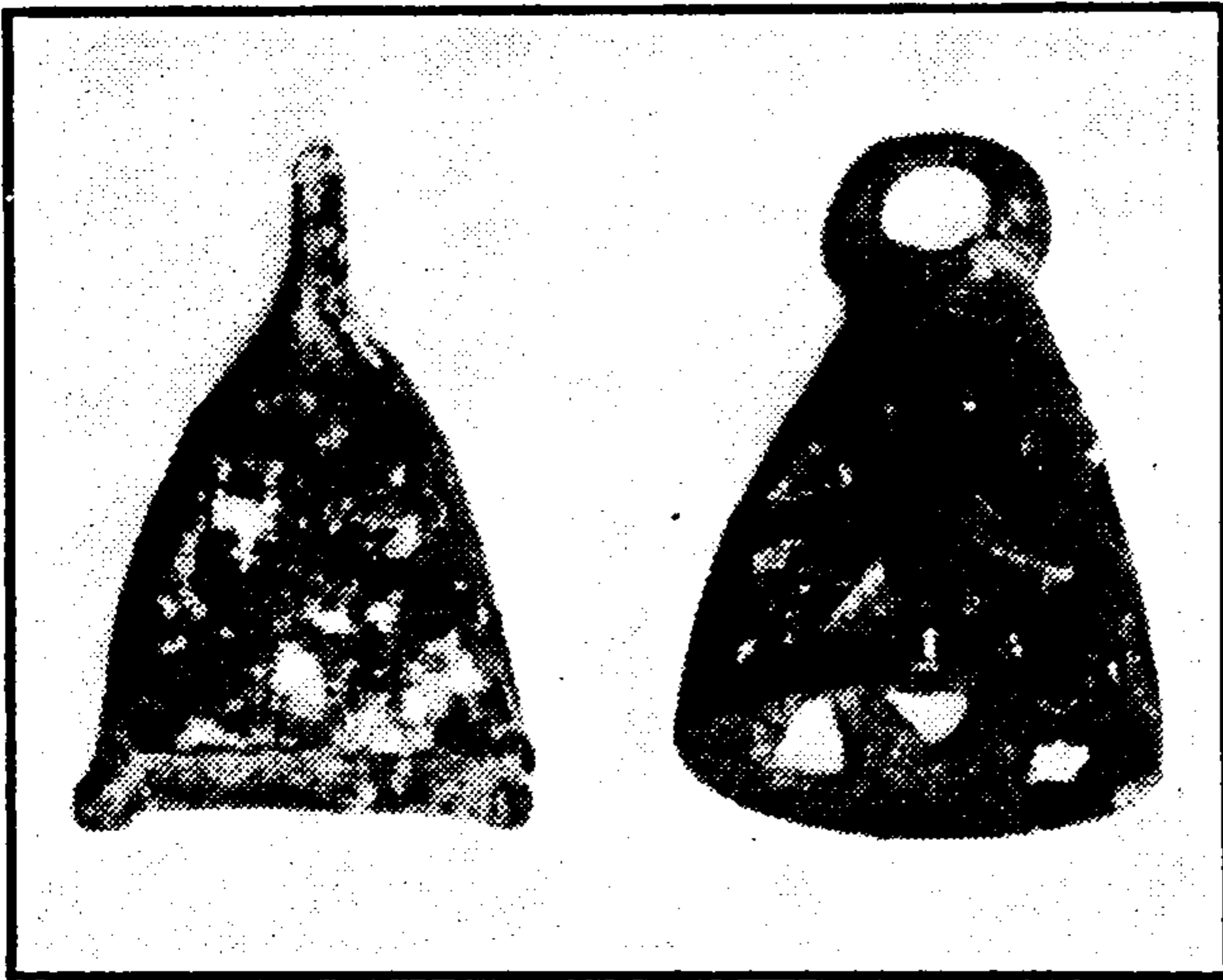
Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sic enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs

quaererētur quī tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācīs, sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

TINTINNĀBULA

the clauses which contain the subjunctive? What clauses are indirect questions? Do any of the clauses denote purpose? result? Is any other relation expressed by a clause with the subjunctive?

b. What is generally used as the subject of a verb? as the object? What is the subject of *placuit*; of *quaererētur*? If *habuērunt cōsilium* were translated by the single verb *planned*, what would be the object?

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. What verbs are in the subjunctive mood? What conjunctions or other connectives are used to introduce

MAGISTER CUM DISCIPULŌ LOQUITUR

422. 1. *Magister.* Dīc mihi, sī vīs, quot annōs Ancus rēgnāverit.

2. *Discipulus.* Annōs quattuor et vīgintī Ancus rēgnāvit.

3. *M.* Scīsne num superiōribus rēgibus bellī glōriā Ancus fuerit par?

4. *D.* Cuilibet superiōrum rēgum fuit par.

5. *M.* Intellegisne cūr Tarquinius comitia statim fierī voluerit?

6. *D.* Ancō mortuō ūnum ex filiīs illius rēgem esse nempe volēbat.

7. *M.* Num oblītus es quālis vir Tarquinius fuerit et quantae spēs ab eō Rōmam portātae sint?

8. *D.* In memoriā habeō quae herī lēgerim. Lēgī quās rēs Tanaquil virum spērāre iussisset. Iam intellegō quōdāmodo quōd Tarquinius filiōs rēgis vēnātum miserit; ipse rēgnō potiri volēbat.

9. *M.* Num Tarquiniō incertum erat quō modō plēbis animōs conciliāret?

10. *D.* Minimē. Ōrātiōnem habuit ita compositam ut populus eum rēgnāre iubēret.

11. *M.* Fuitne Rōma Tarquinī patria?

12. *D.* Nōn semper sed magnam partem aetātis Rōmae vixerat.

13. *M.* Dixitne Rōmānis quantam partem aetātis Rōmae vixisset?

14. *D.* Maiōrem partem aetātis eius quā civīlibus officiīs funguntur hominēs ille Rōmae quam in vetere patriā vixerat.

15. *M.* Fuitne Tarquinius bonus rēx?

16. *D.* Nesciō. Crās fortasse fuerit necne bonus experiam.

17. *M.* Mihi memorā quae sint facta bonī rēgis.

18. *D.* Bona facta rēgis sunt ea quae populō prōsint.

19. *M.* Num Tarquinius intellēxit quae facta essent bona?

20. *D.* Quae ā priōribus rēgibus facta essent scīvit atque multa quae laudārī possent ipse fēcit.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the verbs which are in the subjunctive mood, arranging them by tenses. Complete the conjugation of *lēgerim*, *iussisset*, *portatae sint*, and *facta essent*.

b. What subjunctives in this exercise are used in clauses of the same kind as *quō modō . . . cavērent* and *quī . . . adnecteret* in section 421?

c. What clause is used as the subject of a verb? What clauses are used as objects of verbs? What kind of connectives are *quot*, *num*, *quantae*, *necne*, etc.?

d. Compare **prōsint**, sentence 18, and **possent**, sentence 20, with the verbs in section 413.

TARQUINIUS NOVĀCULĀ CŌTEM SECAT

423. Tarquinius rēx multa ēgregia fēcit. Bellum primum cum Latīnīs gessit et oppidum eōrum vī cēpit praedamque magnam reportāvit. Circō quī Maximus dīcitur locus dēsignātus est. Mūrō lapideō circumdare urbem parābat, cum Sabīnum bellum intervēnit. Equitem suīs deesse cōpiīs ratus, ad Ramnēs, Titiēnsēs, Lucerēs, quās centuriās Rōmulus scripserat, addere aliās cōstituit suōque nōmine nōmina iīs dare.

Attus Navius, inclitus eō tempore augur, “Nōmina,” inquit, “mūtārī nōn possunt nisi avēs addīxerint.” Īrātus rēx ēlūdēnsque artem auguris, “Inaugurā,” inquit, “fierīne possit quod ego mente concipiō.” Attus, in auguriō expertus, fierī posse rēpondit. “Atque hoc,” inquit rēx, “agitābam, num cōtem illam secāre novāculā possem.” “Potes ergō,” inquit augur, et rēx secuisse dīcitur. Auguriīs tantus honor accessit, ut nihil bellī domīque postea nisi auspiciātō gererētur. ✓

a. Cōpiīs, dat. with **dē** in **deesse**, denoting separation (sec. 205); **suō nōmine**, from *his own name* (sec. 229); **eō tempore**, abl. denoting time (sec. 105); **addīxerint**, future perfect; **inaugurā**, imperative; **fierīne possit quod**, *whether that can be done which*, etc.; **posse**, the subject is the accusative of the pronoun **id** not expressed, but suggested by **quod**; **fieri . . . rēpondit**, *he replied that it could be done*; **num secāre possem**, *whether I could cut*; **secuisse**, the object is the pronoun **eam**, not expressed, referring to **cōtem illam**; **bellī, domī**, locative case.

b. Find two verbs in the subjunctive which are used like **cavērent** and **adnecteret** in section 421.

c. Find one verb in the subjunctive mood expressing consequence or result (sec. 416).

d. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *agitate*, *circus*, *conceive*, *designate*, *elude*, *expert*, *intervene*, *irate*, *report*, *respond*, *response*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

refer to time which is relatively past; *i. e.*, past with reference to the time of the verb in the main clause. (82)

✓

Scīsne num superiōribus rēgibus Ancus fuerit par? *Do you know whether Ancus was equal to the former kings?* **Tarquinius scīvit quae a priōribus rēgibus essent facta,** *Tarquinius knew what had been done by the former kings.*

Sequence of Tenses

427. When the subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses, the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive are generally found in connection with a primary tense in the main clause; and the past and past perfect tenses of the subjunctive are generally found in connection with a secondary tense. (83)

For examples see section 425, *a*.

Substantive Clauses

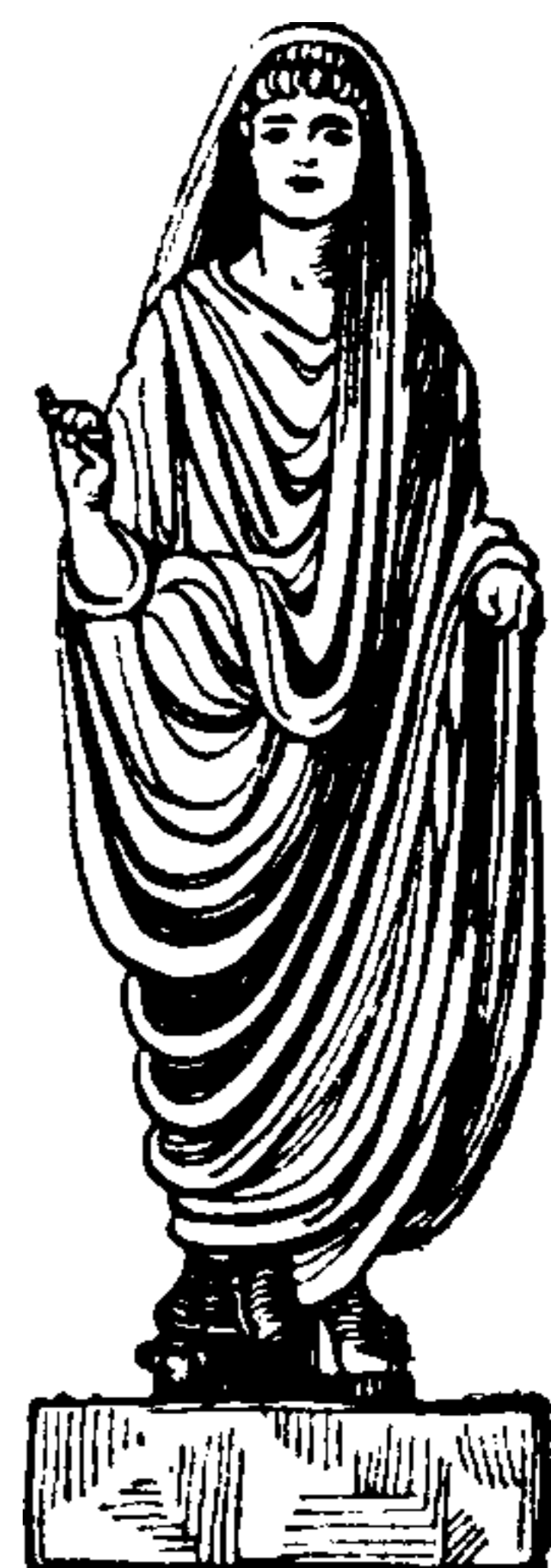
428. A clause may be used as the subject or the object of a verb, or as the equivalent of a noun in any construction. Such a clause is a substantive clause. (84)

The indirect questions in sections 421, 422, and 423 are substantive clauses. Clauses of purpose and result may also be substantive clauses.

COMPOSITION

429. 1. The master asked whether Tarquin had done many excellent things. 2. I know what war he waged, what city he took, and how great booty he brought back. 3. Do you know what place was designated for the circus? 4. The king was surrounding the city with a stone wall when a war interrupted. 5. Cavalry was wanting to the king's forces. 6. Romulus had enrolled three centuries of knights. 7. Tarquin resolved to give his own name to other centuries. 8. Attus, the famous augur, said, "The names can not be

hanged unless the omens (birds) are (shall have been) propitious." 9. The king mocking asked whether a whetstone could be cut with razor. 10. Attus replied that it could be one (to be able to be done). 11. The king said to have cut the whetstone. 12. It is said that the king (acc.) cut the whetstone. 13. Attus was so renowned that great honor was added to augury. 14. Nothing was done in war or (and) at home except by augury.



AUGUR

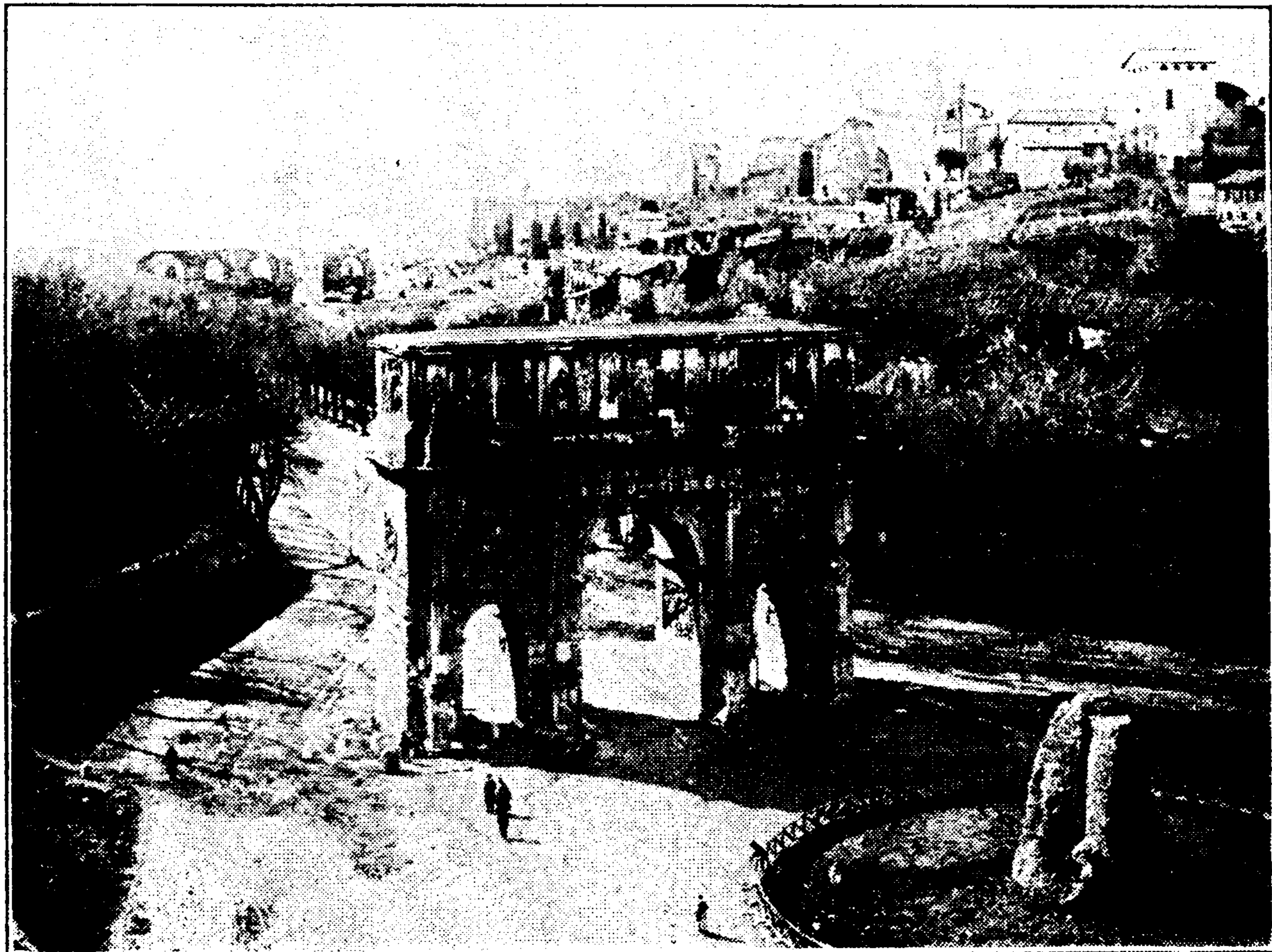
*Photo from Keystone View Co., N. Y.*

TEMPLUM APOLLINIS, POMPEII

CHAPTER LI

CLAUSES WITH *CUM*

430. The conjunction **cum**, *when*, *since*, or *although*, is used in clauses denoting time, cause, or concession. Which



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ ET MŌNS PALĀTĪNUS

of the three meanings it has in any given sentence can be determined partly by the mood and tense of the verb, and partly by the context; that is, by the meaning of the rest of the sentence.

431. Observe carefully the mood and tense used in the dependent clauses introduced by the conjunction **cum**. Consider the three possible meanings of **cum** when used as a conjunction and try to determine its meaning in each sentence in which it is found.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

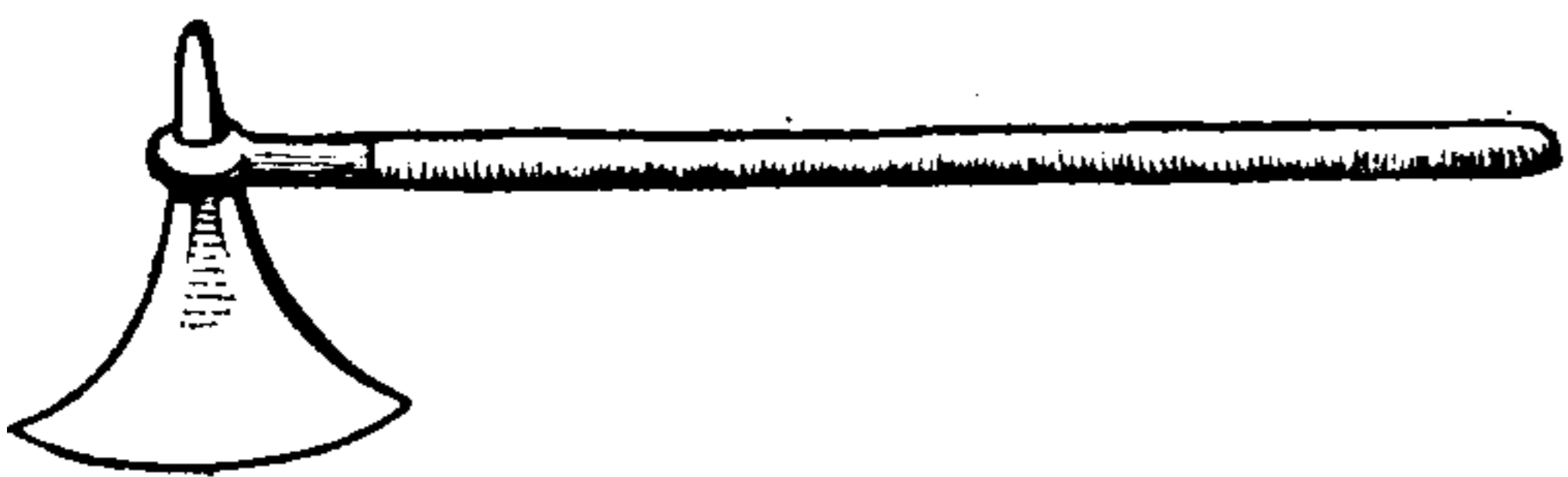
Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

b. In what mood and tense is each verb which is found with *cum* in a clause denoting time? in a clause denoting cause or reason? in a clause denoting concession?

ANCI FĪLIĪ RĒGĪ ĪNSIDIĀS PARANT

434. Supererant duo Ancī filiī, quī, cum paternō rēgnō fraudātī essent, rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt. Ex pāstōribus duo ferōcissimī ad facinūs dēlēctī sunt. Iī simulātā rīxā in vēstibulō rēgiae tumultuantur. Quōrum clāmōr cum



SECŪRĒS

penitus in rēgiam pervēnisset, vōcātī sunt ad rēgem. Primō uterque vociferārī coepit et certātīm alter alterī obstrepere. Cum vērō iussī essent in vicem dīcere, ūnus ex compositō rem ōrdītur; dumque intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam secūrim in eius caput

dēiēcit, et relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambo forās sē prōripiunt.

a. Rēgnō, abl. of separation (sec. 336); ex pāstōribus, *from or of the shepherds*; simulātā rīxā, abl. abs.; quōrum clāmōr, *and when their shouting* (a relative at the beginning of a sentence is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative); alterī, dat. with ob in obstrepere; alter alterī, *one the other, each other*.

b. Find one casual and two temporal clauses.

c. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *avert*, *composite*, *intend*, *intent*, *paternal*, *simulate*, *vestibule*, *vociferate*.

SYNTAX

Temporal Clauses with *Cum*—Indicative

435. In temporal clauses with *cum* the indicative is used if the dependent clause simply defines the time of the action of the main verb, or if the thought expressed by the temporal clause is an essential addition to the sentence. (85)

Mūrō lapideō circumdare urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum intervēnit, *he was preparing to surround the city with a stone wall when a war with the Sabines interrupted*. (In this sentence the clause with *cum* is an essential addition to the thought.)

Temporal Clauses with *Cum*—Subjunctive

436. In temporal clauses with **cum** which describe the circumstances under which the action of the main clause took place the subjunctive mood is used. The tense is always past or past perfect. (86)

Cum senex mortem sibi appropinquāre sentiret, filiōs vocāvit, *when an old man perceived that death was approaching, he called his sons;* **cum bellum gessisset, praedam reportāvit,** *when he had waged war, he brought back the booty.*

Causal and Concessive Clauses with *Cum*

437. In causal and concessive clauses with **cum** the verbs are always in the subjunctive. Any tense may be used, the present and the perfect with primary tenses in the main clause, and the past and the past perfect with secondary tenses. (87)

Cum avēs nōn addixerint, nōmina mūtārī nōn possunt, *since the omens have not been propitious, the names can not be changed;* **cum filiōs Ancī rēgnō fraude pepulisset, multa tamen Tarquinius ēgregia fecit,** *although he had driven the sons of Ancus from the kingdom by fraud, nevertheless Tarquin did many excellent things.*

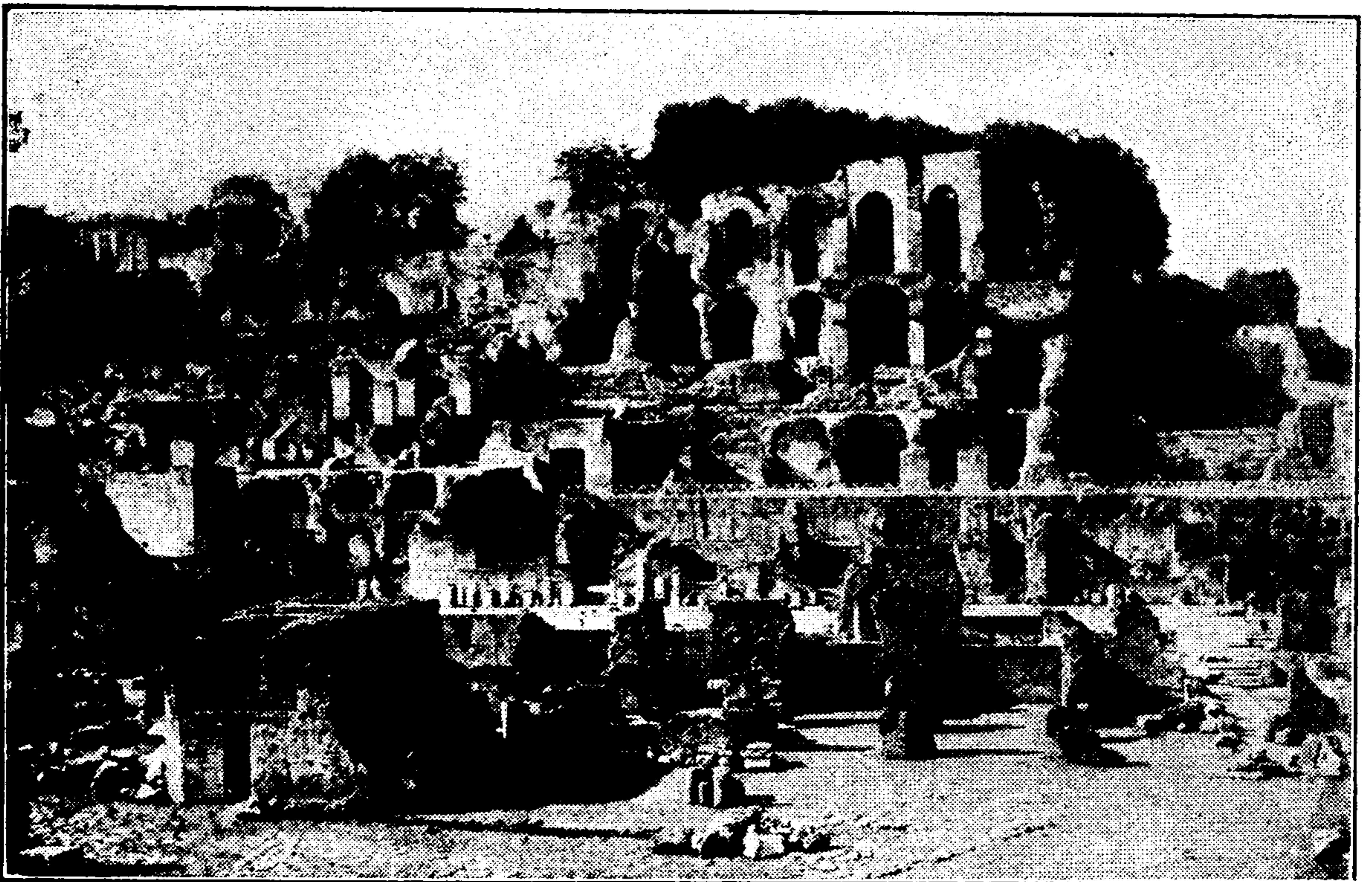
COMPOSITION

438. 1. Although Tarquin was the guardian of the king's sons, nevertheless he defrauded them of their father's kingdom. 2. Since the sons of Ancus had been defrauded of their father's kingdom, they arranged a plot against the king. 3. They chose two fierce shepherds for the deed. 4. The shepherds made a disturbance in the entrance of the palace. 5. When their shouts had come into the palace, the shepherds were called to the king. 6. At first they cried out against each other (one against the other). 7. They had been ordered to speak in turn, when one of the shepherds threw an axe at the king's head. 8. When this had been done, both fled out of doors.

CHAPTER LII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

439. The subjunctive is used chiefly in dependent clauses; but it is also used in independent clauses for the expression of such ideas as *will, desire, or possibility*; as,
Meis verbis fidēs sit, let my words have confidence.



RĒGIA CAESARUM IMPERĀTŌRUM

In independent clauses the subjunctive may be *volitive*, expressing the will of the speaker in commands, exhortations, etc.; *optative*, expressing desire; or *potential*, expressing possibility. The English auxiliaries *let, may, can, might, could*, etc., are often used in translating.

440. In the following exercises determine whether the subjunctive in the independent clauses is volitive, optative, or potential.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

b. Of the three verbs which are used with **utinam**, which represents the fulfillment of the wish as possible? Which represents the wish as contrary to a present fact? Which represents the wish as contrary to a past fact? What tense of the subjunctive is used in each of these instances?

c. What is the meaning of **cum** in the clause **cum sciāmus**?

SYNTAX

The Volitive Subjunctive

443. The volitive subjunctive expresses commands or exhortations. The negative is **nē**. (88)

Praedam dividāmus, *let us divide the prey*; **nē fueris infestus**, *do not be hostile*.

a. The perfect subjunctive is used in negative commands. A more polite form of prohibition is **nōlī** with an infinitive. **Nōlī praedam tollere**, (*please*) *do not carry off the prey*.

The Optative Subjunctive

444. The optative subjunctive expresses wishes or desires. The present and perfect tenses refer to the future and suggest the possibility of the fulfillment of the wish; the past tense expresses a wish contrary to a present fact; and the past perfect expresses a wish contrary to a past fact. **Utinam**, *O that*, is generally found with the past and past perfect, and may be used with other tenses. The negative adverb is generally **nē**. (89)

Utinam ipsae praedam habeāmus, *O that we ourselves may have the prey*; **utinam partem praedae habērēmus**, *O that we (now) had part of the prey*; **utinam societātem nē fēcissēmus**, *O that we had not made the alliance*.

The Potential Subjunctive

445. The potential subjunctive expresses possibility. The present and the perfect refer to the future; the past and the past perfect refer to the past. A negative is often implied. (90)

Quid faciāmus? *What can we do?* (Nothing.) Quid facerent
 becillae bēstiae? *What could the poor beasts do?* (Nothing.) Quae
 ibi leōnem infestum habēre vellet? *Who could wish to have the lion
 ostile to her?* (No one.)

COMPOSITION

446. 1. Let us
 make (join) an
 alliance. 2. Let us
 not divide the prey.
 3. Let the first part
 be mine. 4. Do not
 take my part of the
 prey. 5. O that I
 may have a part.
 6. O that the lion
 were not an enemy
 to me. 7. O that
 the prey had been
 divided. 8. If the
 lion is her enemy
 what can a weak
 sheep do? 9. When
 the lion had taken
 (sec.435) the whole,
 what weak beast
 could wish to claim
 part of the prey?
 10. What could the
 poor beasts have
 done?



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

IMĀGŌ AĒNA PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ

CHAPTER LIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

447. Conditional sentences are complex sentences in which the subordinate or dependent clauses are introduced by the conjunction **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *if not, unless*. A conditional sentence contains two clauses: the condition, and the conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause and the conclusion is the independent clause.

Nōmina mūtārī nōn possunt nisi avēs addīxerint, *the names can not be changed unless the omens are (shall have been) propitious.*

Sī imbecillae bēstiae partem praedae sibi adrogent, leōnem inimicum sibi habeant, *if the poor beasts should claim the prey for themselves, they would have the lion as their enemy.*

In conditional sentences in which actual facts are represented or assumed the indicative mood is used with its ordinary signification; but the subjunctive mood is frequently used, and the tenses of the subjunctive in conditional sentences have the same force as in sentences expressing wishes or desires (sec. 444).

448. Study the sentences which contain the conditional conjunction **sī** or **nisi**. Notice whether the subjunctive mood is used in the conditional clause only or in both clauses of the conditional sentences. Translate the tenses of the indicative literally and the tenses of the subjunctive so as to express the apparent meaning most clearly.

LUPUS SCELERĀTUS

(Adapted and translated from the *Youth's Companion*.)

449. 1. Lupus quī apud hominēs ā parvō vīxerat tam mītis fuit ut fīlius agricolae eum prō cane habēret et cum eō cotīdiē lūderet. 2. Sed cum grandior factus esset, ferōx



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

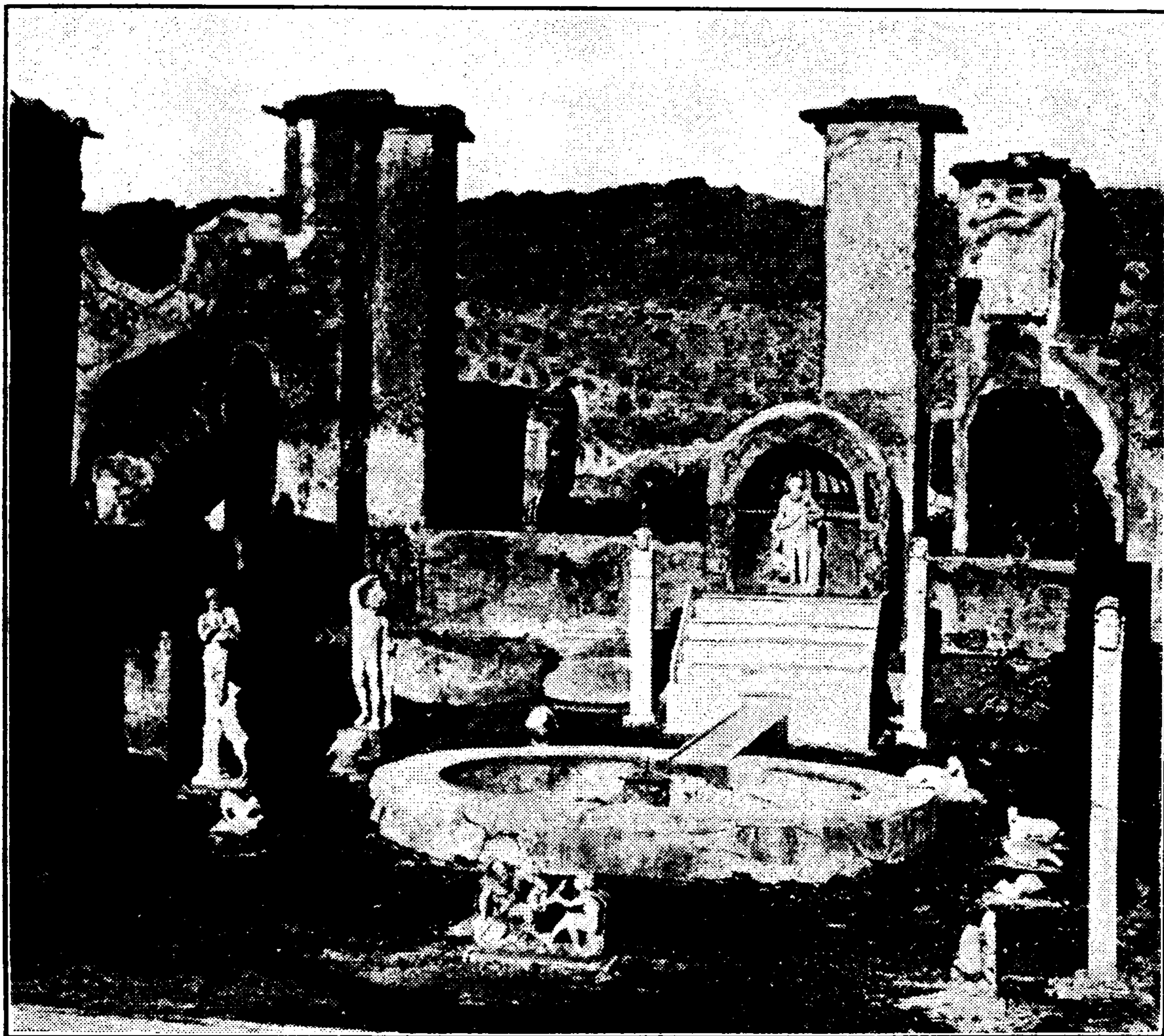
Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

vocāret. 7. Ūnus ex compositō rem ōrditur; alter secūrī rēgem vulnerat. 8. Nisi pāstōrēs in rēgiam vocāvisset, rēx ab iīs nōn vulnerātus esset.



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

DOMUS MĀRCĪ LUCRĒTĪ IN URBE POMPĒIĪS

NOTEBOOK WORK †

a. Make a list of the verbs in each of these conditional sentences, indicating the condition and the conclusion; as, *sī fraudātī sunt, parābunt.*

b. What mood and tense are found in each clause of the conditional sentences? What time is referred to by the tense of each verb in the conditional sentences? Does the present subjunctive represent future time more vividly or less vividly than the future and the future perfect indicative? What kind of a condition is denoted by the past tense of the subjunctive? by the past perfect tense?

SERVIUS TULLIUS RĒGNAT

451. Servius Tullius ā Tarquiniō gener adsūptus erat, et cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil, Tarquiniī uxor, mortem eius cēlāvit, populumque ex superioriōre parte aedium adlocūta, ait rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle



IMPLUVIUM—INTERIOR PARS AEDIUM

vulnus accēpisse, eumque petere ut interim Serviō Tulliō parērent. “Tuum est,” inquit Serviō, “si vir es, rēgnum, nōn eōrum quī scelerātis manibus pessimum facinus fēcēre.” Sic Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed rēctē imperium administrāvit. Sabīnōs subēgit; montēs trēs, Quirinālem, Viminālem, Esquilīnum urbī adiūnxit; fossās circā mūrum dūxit. Īdem (he also) cēnsū ōrdināvit, et populum in classēs et centuriās distribuit.

a. Cum . . . occīsus esset, *temporal*; rēgem, subject of accēpisse; eum, subject of petere.

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *adjunct*, *administer*, *assume*, *census*, *class*, *interim*, *pessimist*.

SYNTAX

Conditional Sentences

First Class

452. In conditional sentences of the first class any tense of the indicative may be used with its ordinary signification. Either the supposition is assumed to be true or nothing is implied about the fact. Future time is vividly represented by the future or the future perfect tense. (91)

Sī rēgnō fraudātī sunt, insidiās parābunt, if they have been defrauded of the kingdom (as they have) they will (surely) prepare a plot; sī ad rēgem vocātī erunt, alter alterī obstrepet, if they are called (shall have been called) before the king, they will abuse each other (one will abuse the other).

Second Class

453. In conditional sentences of the second class the present or the perfect subjunctive is used, and the possibility of fulfillment is suggested. Future time is denoted, but less vividly than by the future tenses of the indicative. (92)

Sī clāmor in rēgiam perveniat, pāstōrēs ad rēgem vocentur, if the shouting should penetrate into the palace (as it may), the shepherds would be called before the king.

Third Class

454. In conditional sentences of the third class the past tense of the subjunctive is used in a condition or a conclusion which is contrary to a present fact, and the past perfect subjunctive is used in a condition or a conclusion which is contrary to a past fact. Both the condition and the conclusion are represented as contrary to fact, but the time need not be the same in both. (93)

Sī rēx insidiās timēret, pāstōrēs ad sē nōn vocāret, if the king feared (now) a plot, he would not (now) call the shepherds before him; (but he does not fear and calls); nisi pāstōrēs in rēgiam vocātī essent,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER LIV

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE, THE GERUNDIVE, AND THE GERUND

457. The future passive participle is formed by adding to the present stem of the verb the letters, **-nd-** and the case-endings of the first and second declensions. The long vowel of the present stem is shortened.

Ama-nd-us, -a, -um, about to be loved, to be loved.

When the future passive participle is used to express the main idea in the phrase, it is called the gerundive and is then best translated by a verbal noun. In this sense the future passive participle, or the gerundive, is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. It always agrees with a noun or a pronoun in case, number, and gender.

Comitia rēgī creandō facta sunt, an assembly was held for electing a king (for a king to be elected).

The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. In form the gerund is like the neuter singular of the gerundive in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. The gerund has the constructions of a noun but it may be followed by a direct object in the accusative case or by any other construction which the verb permits.

In suādendō plūrimī sunt audācēs, very many are bold in advising.

458. Find the future passive participles, the gerundives, and the gerunds in the following exercises, and distinguish between them. Note the agreement of the participle and the gerundive, and the verbal use of the gerund.

TUBICEN

459. Tubicen ab hostibus captus, "Nē mē," inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam." At hostēs, "Propter hoc ipsum," inquit, "tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī sīs imperitus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs."

Fābula docet nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs, sed etiam eōs quī aliōs ad male faciendum irītent.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find one gerundive and two gerunds. With what does the gerundive agree in case, number, and gender? In what case is each of the gerunds? What is the reason for the case?

b. What kind of a clause is *cum . . . sīs* (sec. 437)? quī . . . irītent (sec. 416, *a*)?



TUBAE

READING EXERCISE

460. 1. Faustulus pāstor puerōs parvōs inventōs uxōrī dedit ēducandōs. 2. Adultī silvās vēnandō peragrābant. 3. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus in hīs locīs ubi ēducātī erant urbem condidērunt. 4. Sed ortum est inter eōs certāmen uter novae urbī nōmen daret. 5. Rōmulus auguriō victor, cum urbem suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvisset, frātre interceptō, ut ipse populusque uxōrēs habērent lēgātōs ad vicinās gentēs dē societāte faciendā misit. 6. Sabīnōrum filiās, quae convēnerant studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, Rōmānī raptās uxōrēs habuērunt.

7. Tarquiniō in suā patriā honōris adipiscendī facultās nōn fuerat. 8. Itaque cōnsilium migrandī cēpit. 9. Rēgandī cupiditāte Tarquinius Rōmam vēnit. 10. Ancō

mortuō Tarquinius ōrātiōnem habuit ad conciliandōs plēbis animōs compositam. 11. Cum rēgnum adeptus esset, imperī suī firmandī atque augendae rei pūblicae memor erat. 12. Ancī filiū, cum paternō rēgnō fraudātī essent, rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt. 13. Duo pāstōrēs ad rēgem occīdendū dēlectī sunt. 14. Tarquiniō vulnerātō Tanaquil ea quae cūrāndō vulnerī opus erant sēdulō parābat. 15. Cum Tanaquil ingenium aptum ad simulandum habēret, dīxit rēgem petere ut Servius Tullius imperium administrāret. 16. Servius, rēgnō suō firmātō, tandem finem simulandō fēcit palamque rēgnāvit.

NOTEBOOK WORK

- a. Make a list of all the gerundives with the nouns which they modify, and tell the case, number, and gender of each.
- b. Make a list of all the gerunds, and determine the case and construction (use) of each.
- c. Explain the use of each verb which is in the subjunctive mood.

VICUS SCELERATUS

461. Initium turbandī omnia ā fēmīnā ortum est. Servius Tullius filiā alteram ferōcem, mītem alteram habēns, cum Tarquiniū filiōs parī esse animō vidēret, ferōcem mīti, mītem ferōcī in mātrimōnium dedit, nē duo violenta ingenia mātrimōniō iungerentur. Sed mītēs seu forte seu fraude periērunt; ferōcēs mōrum similitūdō coniūnxit. Statim Tarquinius ā Tulliā incitātus rēgnī repetendī cōnsilium cēpit. Ut iam agenda rei tempus vīsum est, senātū advocātō, cum dē sē ingentia pollicendō tum rēgem crīminandō animōs patrum in sē convertit. Quā rē audītā Servius ā vēstibulō cūriae magnā voce, “Quid hoc,” inquit, “Tarquini, rei est? Quā tū audāciā mē vivō vocāre ausus es patrēs aut in sēde cōnsidere meā?” Cum ille ferōciter sē patris suī tenēre sēdem dīxisset, Servium per gradūs dēiēcit. Inde domum refugiēns rēx interfectus est. Tullia carpentō



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

a. **Pari animō**, of like mind, like-minded; **forte, fraude**, abl. of cause (sec. 229); **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also; **magnā vōce**, abl. of manner (sec. 312); **reī**, gen. of the whole (sec. 270); **quid reī**, what affair; **quā audāciā**, abl. of cause (sec. 229); **mē vivō**, abl. abs. (sec. 295); **prīma appellāvit**, first called, was the first to call.

b. Notice the order of the words in the expressions **alteram ferōcem, mītem alteram** and **ferōcem mītī, mītem ferōcī**. When the order is reversed in the second of two parallel expressions, the arrangement is called the chiasitic (crossed) order. Such embellishment of style is quite common in the Latin writings and was thought to be artistic.

c. Find two gerundives and three gerunds. With what nouns do the gerundives agree? What is the case and the construction of each gerund?

d. (Notebook.) Explain the derivation of *advocate, convert, dome, evoke, fraud, grade, incite, perish, senate, similitude, violent*.

TYPICAL VERBS

The Future Passive Participle

(The Gerundive.)

462.

amandus, -a, -um, to be loved.
videndus, -a, -un, to be seen.
mittendus, -a, -um, to be sent.
audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard.
capiendus, -a, um, to be taken.

a. The future passive participle is formed by joining to the present stem of the verb the letters **-nd-** and the case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declensions. **Ama-nd-us**.

b. The gerundive has the forms of the future passive participle in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases.

463.

The Gerund

<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	videndī	mittendī	audiendī	capiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō	capiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	videndum	mittendum	audiendum	capiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō	capiendō

a. The gerund is the same as the neuter singular of the gerundive.

SYNTAX

The Use of the Gerundive

464. The gerundive agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender; but it expresses the main idea of the phrase and is almost equivalent to a verbal noun. (95)

Gen. **Convēnerunt studiō videndae urbis**, *they came with the desire of seeing the city (of the city to be seen).*

Dat. **Comitia rēgī creandō facta sunt**, *the assembly was held for electing a king (for a king to be elected).*

Acc. **Ōrātiōnem ad conciliandōs plēbis animōs compositam**, *speech designed to win over the minds of the common people (for the minds to be won).*

Abl. **Dē societāte faciendā**, *concerning the making of an alliance (an alliance to be made).*

The Use of the Gerund

465. The gerund is a verbal noun whose four cases are used like the same cases of other nouns. (96)

Gen. **Initium turbandī omnia**, *a beginning of disturbing all things; pugnantī imperitus*, *ignorant of fighting.*

Dat. **Finem simulandō fēcit**, *he made an end of (to) feigning.*

Acc. **Ingenium aptum ad simulandum**, *a nature adapted to feigning; quī aliōs ad male faciendum iritant*, *who arouse others to wrong doing.*

Abl. **Silvās vēnandō peragrant**, *they roam through the woods in hunting; dē sē ingentia pollicendō*, *by promising great things concerning himself.*

a. It should be remembered that the gerundive agrees with its noun like an adjective; while the gerund is a verbal noun and governs the same case as the verb from which it is formed.

COMPOSITION

466. 1. Tullia makes a beginning of disturbing everything. 2. One daughter was fierce, the other gentle. 3. The two sons of Tarquin were of like disposition (with like mind). 4. The gentle daughter was given in (into) marriage to the fierce son. 5. Either by chance or (aut . . . aut) by

treachery the gentle children perished. 6. The children of like disposition were united. 7. Tarquin was aroused by the desire of recovering the kingdom. 8. It seemed now the time for (of) doing the thing. 9. He won over the senate by promising many things. 10. By accusing the king he turned the minds of the fathers to himself. 11. The senate was called to make (for making) Tarquin king. 12. Tullia summoned her husband from the senate-house to salute (for saluting) him as king. 13. Tullia was the first to salute (first saluted) Tarquin as king.



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

MEDIA ROTAE PARS CUM CAPITE MEDŪSAE



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

READING EXERCISE

469. 1. Servius Tullius duās filiās, alteram ferōcem alteram mītem, habuit, quās filiīs Tarquinī in mātrimōnium datūrus erat. 2. Hoc sēcum putāvit: “Ferōx mulier virō mītī, mītis ferōcī in mātrimōnium mihi danda est. 3. Duo violenta ingenia nōn sunt iunganda.” 4. Fēmina omnia turbātūra erat. 5. Nam mītēs seu forte seu fraude periērunt et ferōcēs coniūctī sunt. 6. Atque Tullia Tarquinius ita incitāvit: 7. “Rēgnum tibi repetendum est. 8. Senātus advocandus est et animī patrum in tē convertendī sunt.” 9. Hōc factō Servius rēx magnā vōce, “Quid,” inquit, “Tarquinī, factūrus es? 10. Num in meā sēde cōsessūrus es?” 11. Tum ille, “Patris meī,” respondit, “sēdem tentūrus sum,” et Servium per gradūs dēiēcit. 12. Tullia virō ē cūriā ēvocātō, “Sī tū,” inquit, “es vir, rēx es futūrus.”

NOTEBOOK WORK

- a. What verbs belong to the active periphrastic conjugation?
- b. What verbs belong to the passive periphrastic conjugation?
- c. What datives are used to denote the agent?
- d. Write the synopsis of *datūrus sum* and *repetendus sum* in the first person singular of all the tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive.

TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS RĒGNUM OCCUPAT

470. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadragintā. Is tam bonus et tam mītis erat ut difficilis esset aemulātiō atque, ut quīdam feruūt, imperium ipse dēpositūrus esset. Sed L. Tarquinius rēgnum occupāvit, cui Superbō cognōmen datum est quod neque populī iussū neque auctōribus patribus rēgnāvit. Eī in cāritāte cīvium nihil speī repōnentī metū rēgnum tūtandum erat. Multī ob divitiās et prūdentiam ab eō occīsī sunt. Tarquinius Superbus suis cōsiliīs per sē sōlus rem pūblicam administrāvit; bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse quibuscum voluit iniussū populī ac senātūs fēcit dirēmitque.

a. *Ut . . . esset, dēpositūrus esset*, clauses of result; *ut quīdam ferunt, as some say*; *Superbō*, dat., attracted into the case of *cui* although the form *Superbus* would be expected; *cui . . . est*, *to whom the name Superbus was given*; *iussū, cōsiliīs, iniussū*, abl. of cause denoting accordance; *auctōribus patribus*, abl. abs.; *eī*, dat. of agent, *by him*; *speī*, gen. of the whole modifying *nihil*; *nihil speī*, *nothing of hope, no hope*; *repōnentī*, dat., agreeing with *eī*; *metū*, abl. denoting means; *populī, senātūs*, subjective genitive.

b. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *author, charity, deposit, emulation, occupant, occupy, prudence, republic, society*.

CONJUGATION

471. Learn the synopsis and the conjugation of typical verbs in the active and passive periphrastic conjugations, section 566.

SYNTAX

The Active Periphrastic Conjugation

472. The active periphrastic conjugation is used to represent action as future or intended, with reference to a time in the past, present, or future. (97)

Quid factūrus es? What do you intend to do? quid factūrus erās? what did you intend to do? rogō quid factūrus sīs? I ask what you intend to do.

The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

473. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes necessity or obligation. (98)

Senātus advocandus est, the senate must be summoned.

The Dative of the Agent

474. With the passive periphrastic conjugation the agent is denoted by the dative case. (99)

Tarquiniō rēgnum metū tūtandum erat, by Tarquin royal power had to be maintained by fear, or, Tarquin had to maintain royal power by fear.

The Subjective Genitive

475. The genitive of the subject may be used with nouns denoting action. (100)

Iussū populī, by the order of the people.

COMPOSITION

476. 1. Servius Tullius was about to lose the kingdom. 2. Royal power had to be laid down by him (dat.). 3. The reign of Servius Tullius was so gentle that imitation was difficult. 4. Lucius Tarquin was about to seize the kingdom. 5. The name Superbus was given to Tarquin because he administered the affairs of the state without the consent of the people or (and) senate. 6. He placed no hope (nothing of hope) in the affection of the citizens. 7. He (dat.) had to strengthen his rule by fear. 8. He made peace and war on his own authority (by his own plans). 9. Alone by himself he made and broke off treaties. 10. Tarquin the Proud was not (about) to reign long.

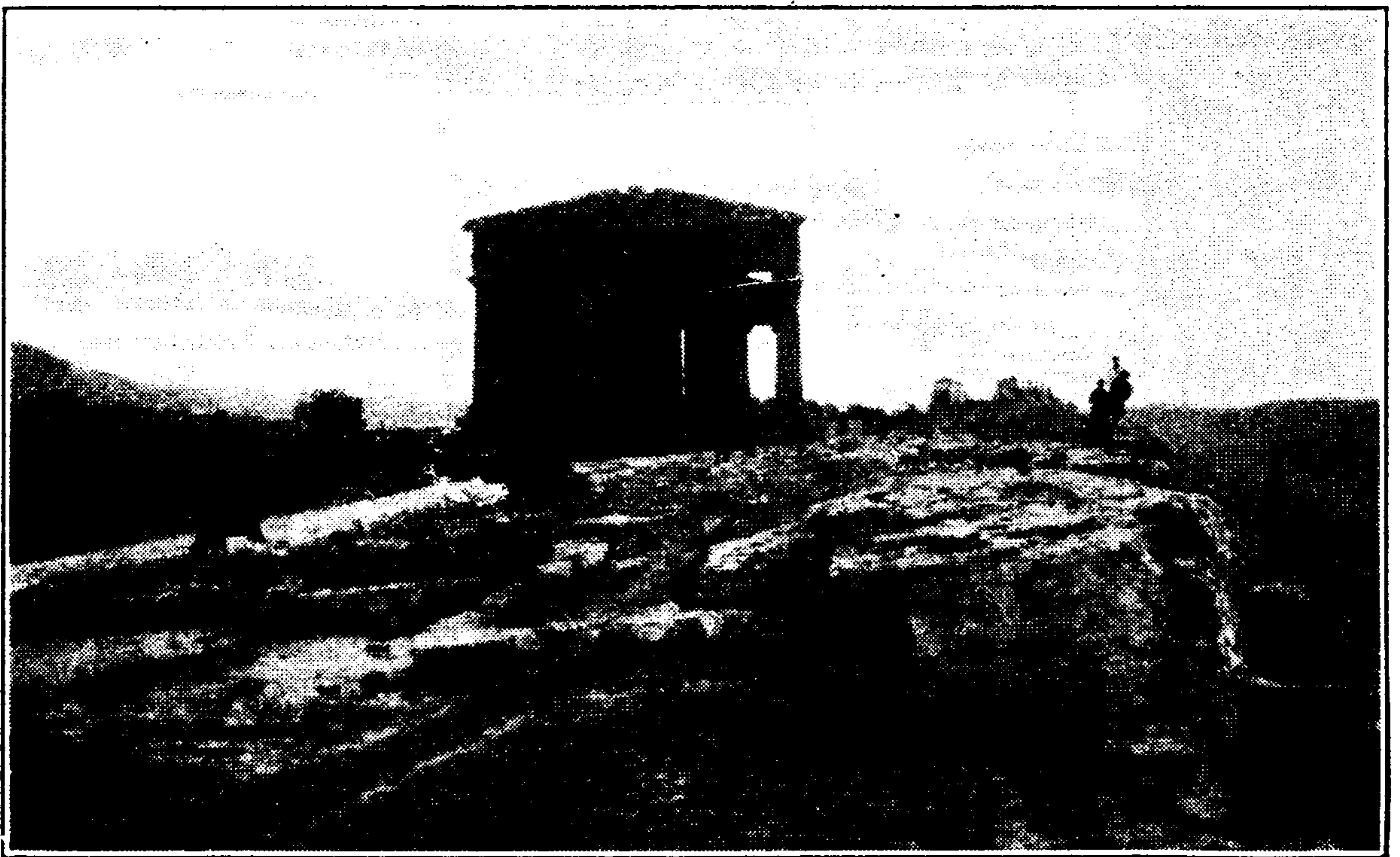


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

TEMPLUM CONCORDIAE IN SICILIĀ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

societātēs per sē ipse sōlus fēcit dīrēmitque. 9. Sī quis (if anyone) eadem quae Tarquinius faciat, eī Superbō cognōmen dāndum sit.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the pronouns used above, and tell the case, number, and gender of each. What pronouns are indefinite? What is the exact meaning of each indefinite pronoun?

b. Write out the complete declension of *īdem*.

RĒGE EXPULSŌ CŌNSULĒS SUNT CREĀTĪ

480. Iūnius Brūtus, sorōre Tarquiniī Superbī nātus, eandem fortūnam timēbat in quam aliī inciderant. Is deōs obtestāns, “L. Tarquinium Superbum,” inquit, “cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī, quācumque vī poterō, exsequar, nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae patiar.” Omnēs ab metū versī in īram Brūtum sequuntur ducem. Prō sē quisque scelus rēgis āc vim queruntur. Ferōcissimus quisque iuvenum cum armīs adest. Inde custōdibus datīs, nē quis eum mōtum rēgī nūntiāret, Rōmam vērunt. Ibi Brūtus orātiōne factā multitudinī persuāsit ut imperium rēgī abrogāret exsulēsque esse iubēret L. Tarquinium cum coniuge āc liberis.



JŪNIUS BRŪTUS,
CŌNSUL

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vīgintī. Rēgnātum est Rōmae ab urbe conditā ad libertātem annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor. Duo cōsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātīnus.

a. Sorōre Tarquiniī nātus, *born of Tarquin's sister, the son of Tarquin's sister*; ferrō, ignī, vī, *abl. of means (sec. 21)*; prō sē quisque, *each on his own account*; ferōcissimus quisque, *each most daring, all the most daring*; nē quis, *so that (in order that) no one*; rēgnātum est, *impersonal (sec. 311), it was ruled (by kings), kings ruled*; Rōmae, *locative (sec. 32)*; ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city (from*

the city founded); **L. Iūnius Brūtus, Tarquinius Collātīnus**, in apposition with **cōsulēs** (sec. 64).

b. Make a list of all the indefinite pronouns. Determine the case, number, and gender, and the exact meaning of each.

c. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *abrogate, fortune, liberty, oration, patient, persuade*.

DECLENSION

481. For the declension of **īdem**, see section 558. For the declension of **aliquis, quisque, quīdam**, and **quisquam**, see section 561.

Quisquam and **quisque** are declined like **quis** (sec. 325); but **quisquam** is found in the singular only and the masculine and the feminine are alike.

SYNTAX

The Use of Indefinite Pronouns

482. Indefinite pronouns do not refer to definite antecedents. (101)

Quis, *any one*; **quī**, *any*; **aliquis**, *some one, some*; **quīdam**, *a certain one, certain*; **quisquam**, *any one at all*; **quīvīs**, *any one whatever*; **quisque**, *each one, each*; **quicumque**, *whoever, whatever*.

a. **Quis** and **quī** are often used after **sī, nisi, nē**, or **num**. **Sī quis**, *if any one*; **nē quis**, *that no one*.

b. **Quisquam** is used in negative expressions or where a negative is implied. **Nēmō quidquam certum habet**, *no one has anything certain*; **nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgem esse patiar**, *neither him nor any one else will I permit to be king*.

c. Indefinite pronouns may be used as substantives or as adjectives; as, **Tarquinius quācumque vī poterō exsequar**, *I will pursue Tarquin with whatever force I can*.

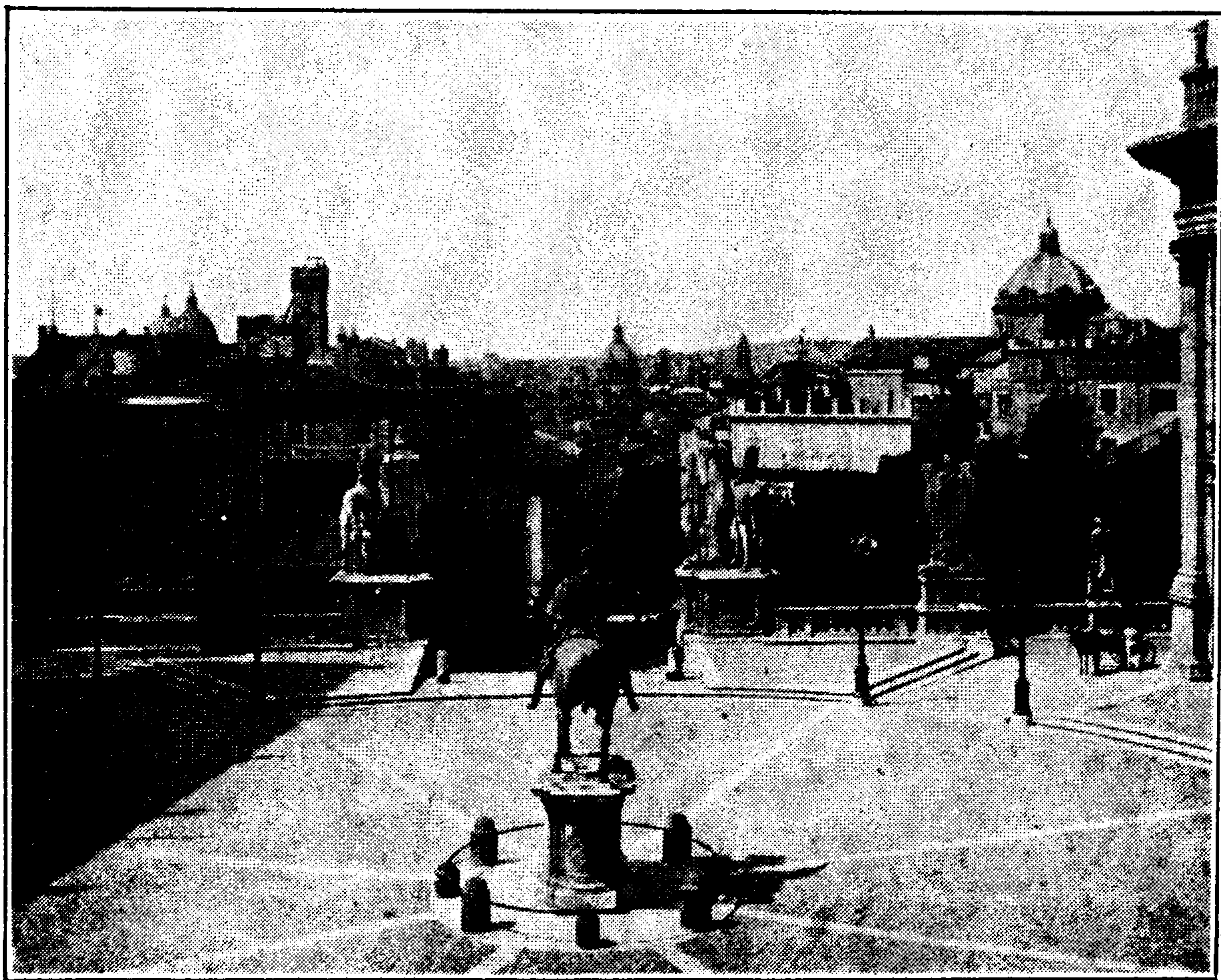
The Ablative of Origin

483. Origin or parentage is generally expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (102)

Sorōre Tarquinī nātus, *born of Tarquin's sister, the son of Tarquin's sister*.

COMPOSITION

484. 1. The citizens, each for himself, feared Tarquin the Proud. 2. Brutus wished neither Tarquin nor any one else to reign at Rome. 3. Certain (men) followed Brutus as leader because they feared the same fortune into which others had fallen. 4. All of the most daring (each most daring) came to Rome with Brutus. 5. Calling upon the gods, they pursue the king with fire and sword. 6. They came to Rome with arms that they might pursue the king. 7. All complained of Tarquin's wickedness and violence. 8. Unless (nisi) guards should be appointed (given), some one would report the movement to the king. 9. If any one (sī quis) fears Tarquin, let him come (subj.) to Rome with arms.



PLATĒA MONTIS CAPITŌLINĪ ET STATUA MĀRCĪ AURĒLĪ



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

READING EXERCISE

487. 1. Iūnius Brūtus eandem fortūnam timet in quam aliī incidērunt. 2. Brūtus dīcit sē eandem fortūnem timēre in quam aliī inciderint. 3. Brūtus dīxit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī incidissent. 4. L. Tarquinius cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī, quācumque vī poterō, exsequar. 5. Brūtus dīcit sē L. Tarquinius cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī quācumque vī possit, exsecūtūrum esse. 6. Dīxit sē Tarquinius quācumque vī posset exsecūtūrum esse. 7. Nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae patiar. 8. Dīcit (dīxit) sē nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum (esse). 9. Livius est auctor omnēs ab metū versōs in iram Brūtum secūtōs esse ducem; 10. atque ferōcissimum quemque iuvenum cum armīs Rōmam vēnisse. 11. Audīvī Brūtum multitudinī persuāsisse ut Tarquinius exsulem esse iubēret. 12. In librō scriptōris lēgī Tarquinius Superbum rēgnāvisse annōs quīnque et vīgintī; 13. atque inde cōsulēs creatōs esse, L. Iūnium Brūtum et L. Tarquinius Collātīnum. 14. Dictum est Tarquinius Superbum ab omnibus timērī; 15. atque prō sē quemque scelus eius ac vim querī.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the infinitives with their subjects. What verb or expression of saying or thinking does each infinitive follow?

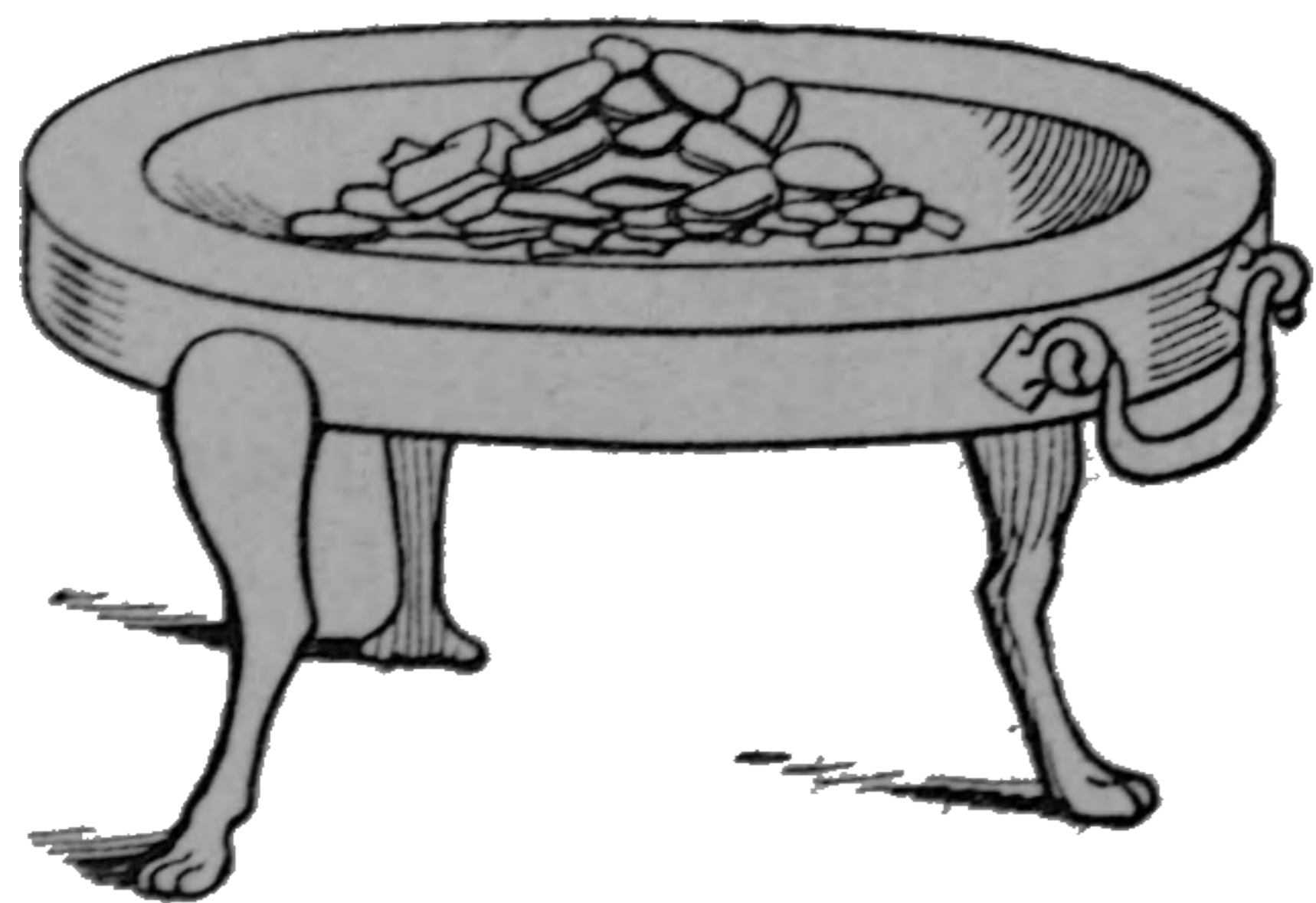
b. What verbs are in dependent clauses? In what mood are they? What tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses? secondary tenses?

c. If the subjunctive is required in a dependent clause of the direct discourse, it is retained in the indirect discourse; as, *ut . . . iubēret*, sentence 11.

LIBRĪ SIBYLLĪNĪ

488. Quondam anus incognita ad Tarquinius Superbum rēgem adiit librōs ferēns, quōs esse dīcēbat dīvīna ōrācula; eōs sē velle vēndere. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est;

mulier nimium atque immēsum poposcit. Rēx, quasi anus aetāte dēsiperet, dērīsīt. Tum illa foculum cum ignī appōnit et trēs librōs ex novem deūrit; et ecquid reliquōs sex eōdem pretiō emere vellet rēgem interrogāvit. Sed Tarquinius id multō rīsīt magis, dīxitque anum iam procul dubiō dēlīrāre. Mulier statim trēs aliōs librōs exussit; atque id ipsum dēnuō placidē rogat, ut trēs reliquōs eōdem illō pretiō emat. Tarquinius ōre iam seriō atque attentiōre animō fit; eam cōstantiam cōfidentiamque nōn neglegendam esse intellegit. Librōs trēs reliquōs mercātur nihilō minōre pretiō quam quod erat petītum prō omnibus. Sed eam mulierem tunc ā Tarquiniō dīgressam postea nusquam vīsam (esse) fertur (it is said). Librī trēs in sacrāriō conditī sunt Sibyllīnique appellātī (sunt). Ad eōs quasi ad ōrāculum quīndecemvirī adeunt cum diī immortālēs pūblicē cōsulendī sunt.



FOCULUS



Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

SIBYLLA

a. **Eōs sē velle vēndere:** sē is the subject of velle and eōs the object of vēndere; nimium and immēsum modify pretium, which is to be supplied as the object of poposcit; aetāte, abl. of cause, ecquid . . . vellet, *whether he wished*, object of interrogāvit; eōdem pretiō, *at the same price*; procul dubiō, *without doubt*; ut . . . emat, a clause of purpose (sec. 406); ōre seriō fit, *becomes of serious countenance*; neglegendam esse, periphrastic infinitive (sec. 473); nihilō minōre

pretiō, at a price no less; *quod*, with *id* to be supplied, *that which*; *vīsam* (*esse*), infinitive in the indirect discourse with *fertur*.

b. (*Notebook.*) Make a list of all the infinitives which depend upon verbs of saying or thinking. What is the accusative subject of each infinitive?

c. Notice the indirect question, *ecquid . . . vellet*. What mood is found in an indirect question?

d. (*Notebook.*) Explain the derivation of *confidence*, *constancy*, *deride*, *immense*, *immortal*, *intellect*, *interrogatē*, *oracle*, *price*, *vend*.

SYNTAX

Main Verbs in the Indirect Discourse

489. After verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, etc., the main verbs, if declarative, are in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative case. (103)

Direct.—*Brūtus timet*, *Brutus fears*.

Indirect.—*Brūtus dicit sē timēre*, *Brutus says that he fears*; *Brūtus dixit sē timēre*, *Brutus said that he feared*.

Direct.—*Ferōcissimus quisque Rōmam vēnit*, *all the most daring came to Rome*.

Indirect.—*Fertur ferōcissimum quemque Rōmam vēnisse*, *it is said that all the most daring came to Rome*; *dictum est ferōcissimōs vēnisse*, *it was said that the most daring came (had come)*.

Direct.—*Rēgem exsequar*, *I will pursue the king*.

Indirect.—*Dicit sē rēgem exsecūtūrum esse*, *he says that he will pursue the king*; *dixit sē rēgem exsecūtūrum esse*, *he said that he would pursue the king*.

Dependent Verbs in Indirect Discourse

490. In the dependent clauses of the indirect discourse the verbs are in the subjunctive mood. The tense is determined by the usual law of sequence (sec. 427). (104)

Direct.—*Brūtus eandem fortūnam timet in quam aliī incidērunt*, *Brutus fears the same misfortune into which others have fallen*.

Indirect.—*Brūtus dicit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī inciderint*, *Brutus says that he fears the same misfortune into which*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

to sell them for a large price. 3. Tarquin replied that he did not wish to buy (*sē emere nōlle*) the books at that price. 4. When the woman had burned (*cum* with subj.) three books, she wished to sell the others at the same price. 5. Tarquin thought that the woman was crazy. 6. Immediately she burned three others. 7. Tarquin then said that he would buy the three remaining books at no less price than (that) which had been asked (subj.) for all. 8. It was said (*dictum est*) that the three books which Tarquin had bought (subj.) were placed in a sacred place and were called the Sibylline books. 9. Writers say that the priests go to the Sibylline books when they wish (subj.) to consult the immortal gods. 10. I do not know whether this story is true.



From the painting by Eihu Vedder

SIBYLLA CŪMAEA CUM LIBRĪS SIBYLLĪNĪS

CHAPTER LVIII

READING AND TRANSLATION

Review of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

495. All of the commonly used forms of Latin words, the ordinary principles of syntax, and a vocabulary containing a considerable number of words have been presented in the preceding chapters; and the way has now been prepared for the intelligent reading and translation of Latin selections somewhat more varied in style and construction. It remains for the student, by continually recalling the words, forms, and idioms with which he has become familiar, to increase his confidence and power by the same process in which he has already been trained.

The following chapters contain material for practice in reading and translation, a review of the inflections and syntax, learning some of the Latin idioms, the continued study of the formation and the derivation of words, and tests to impress upon the memory the comparatively small number of words which should now be a part of the pupil's working vocabulary.

496. Read the Latin selections aloud; recall the meaning of familiar words, and notice the case, number, and gender of all nouns, adjectives, and pronouns. In reading observe the relation of words to each other as indicated by the punctuation, the endings, the prepositions, and the conjunctions. Try to get the meaning of each group of connected words, and place the pauses and the emphasis so as to express the sense^{*} as clearly and as forcibly as possible.

An especial effort should be made to understand the meaning

of the Latin words as they are read in the Latin order, without first making the transposition which is necessary in translating into English. Constant practice of this kind will develop a feeling for the Latin arrangement which will be an invaluable aid in all subsequent study of the Latin language and literature.

Review the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

Apply the principles of syntax in the explanation of the cases. Carefully determine the true construction if it seems unusual or obscure.

After the meaning of the sentence, or better, of the entire selection has become clear, make a translation, either orally or in writing, into English. Correct and revise the translation until the thought of the text is fully and accurately represented.

SENEX ET MORS

497. Senex in silvā ligna ceciderat iisque sublātis domum redire coepit. Cum aliquantum viae prōgressus esset, et onere et viā dēfatigātus fascem dēposuit et sēcum aetātis et inopiae mala contemplātus mortem clārā vōce invocāvit, quae ipsum ab omnibus hīs malīs liberāret. Tum Mors senis precibus audītis subitō adstitit et quid vellet percontātur. At senex quem iam vōtōrum suōrum paenitēbat, “Nihil,” inquit, “sed requirō quī onus paululum adlevet dum ego rūsus subeō.”

a. For the declension of **senex** and **domus** see section 548; **iisque sublātis**, abl. abs. (sec. 295), *having taken them up*; **viae**, gen. of the whole (sec. 270); **onere**, **viā**, abl. of cause (sec. 229); **clārā vōce**, abl. of manner (sec. 312); **quae . . . liberāret**, clause of purpose (sec. 406); **quid vellet**, indirect question (sec. 425); **paenitēbat**, impersonal; **quem vōtōrum paenitēbat**, *who repented of his prayers*; **quī . . . adlevet**, purpose (sec. 406).

REVIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS

498. Review the declension of typical nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, referring to sections 543–561 for the tabulated forms.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(1) Adjectives denoting *tendency* are formed by adding the suffix **-āx** (stem ending, **-āci-**) to roots or stems of verbs. The corresponding English ending is *-acious*.

audāx, audācis (audeō), *audacious*.
 loquāx, loquācis (loquor), *loquacious*.
 rapāx, rapācis (rapiō), *rapacious*.

(2) Adjectives denoting *quality* are formed by the suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis**. The English endings are *-ile* and *-ble*.

facilis (faciō), *facile*.
 crēdibilis (crēdō), *credible*.
 stabilis (stō), *stable*.

(3) Adjectives denoting *condition* are formed by the suffix **-idus**. The English ending is *-id*.

candidus (candeō), *candid*.
 placidus (placeō), *placid*.
 rapidus (rapiō), *rapid*.
 validus (valeō), *valid*.

(4) Adjectives denoting *belonging to* are formed from nouns by the use of the suffixes **-ticus**, **-īvus**, **-ānus**, **-ālis**, **īlis**, and **-āris**. The English endings are similar but abbreviated.

rūsticus (rūs), *rustic*.
 captīvus (captus), *captive*.
 urbānus (urbs), *urban*.
 mortālis (mors), *mortal*.
 cīvīlis (cīvis), *civil*.
 mīlitāris (mīles), *military*.

(5) Adjectives denoting *fullness* are formed by the suffix **-ōsus**. The corresponding English adjective ends in *-ose* or *-ous*.

bellicōsus (bellum), *bellicose*.
 iniūriōsus (iniūria), *injurious*.
 laboriōsus (labor), *laborious*.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES

502. In the following list find illustrations of the formation of Latin adjectives according to the types given in section 501.

adōrābilis (ad-ōrō), *adorable*.

aequālis (aequus), *equal*.

atrōx, *atrocious*.

brevis, *brief*.

ferōx (ferus), *ferocious*.

fragilis (frangō), *fragile, frail*.

frigidus (frigeō), *frigid*.

habilis (habeō), *able*.

hostilis (hostis), *hostile*.

liberālis (liber), *liberal*.

memorābilis (memor), *memorable*.

miserābilis (miser), *miserable*.

nōbilis (nōscō), *noble*.

officiōsus (officium), *officious*.

periculōsus (periculum), *perilous*.

ponderōsus (pondus), *ponderous*.

populāris (populus), *popular*.

pūblicus (populus), *public*.

rēgālis (rēx), *regal*.

religiōsus (religiō), *religious*.

similis, *similar*.

sublīmis, *sublime*.

terribilis (terreō), *terrible*.

vītālis (vīta), *vital*.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find the Latin adjective from which each of the following English adjectives has been derived, and explain its formation.

arid

humble

timid

audible

immortal

victorious

human

tenacious

virile

SYNTAX

The Genitive with Verbs of Feeling

503. With *paenitet* and a few other impersonal verbs the accusative is used to denote the person, and the genitive to denote the object of the feeling. (108)

Senem suōrum vōtōrum paenitēbat, the old man repented of his own prayers.

COMPOSITION

504. An old man was returning home with pieces of wood which he had cut in the forest. When, weary with his journey, he had laid down his load, he called upon Death to (which should) release him from old age and poverty. But when Death had suddenly asked, "What do you want?" the old man replied that he repented of his prayers and wished to take up his load again.

CHAPTER LIX

READING AND TRANSLATION

Review of Verbs

WORD FORMATION

505. Review the forms of the verbs and study the conjugation of the typical verbs in all tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive, sections 562–570.

Review the subjunctive mood in clauses of purpose (sec. 406); clauses of result (sec. 416); indirect questions (sec. 425); temporal clauses with **cum** (sec. 435, 436); causal and concessive clauses (sec. 437); the volitive, optative, and potential subjunctive (sec. 443, 444, 445); conditional sentences (sec. 452, 453, 454); dependent clauses in the indirect discourse (sec. 490).

LĀRS PORSENA RŌMAM INFESTŌ EXERCITŪ VENIT

506. Iam Tarquiniī ad Lārtem Porsenam Clūsīnum rēgem perfūgerant. Eum ōrābant nē sē exsulēs esse patērētur; monēbant nē iniūriam suī pellendī inultam (esse) sineret. (Dīcunt) nisi rēgna rēgēs dēfendant, adesse finem rēgnīs. Porsena, cum rēgem esse Rōmae vellet, Rōmam infestō exercitū vēnit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror senātum invāsīt; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Nec hostēs modo timēbant, sed suōs cīvēs, nē Rōmāna plēbs metū percūsa, receptīs in urbem rēgibus, vel cum servitūte pācem acciperet. Cum hostēs adessent, prō sē quisque in urbem ex agrīs dēmigrant. Urbs ipsa, aliā ex parte mūrīs (objectīs), aliā Tiberī obiectō, vidēbātur tūta. Pōns sublicius iter hostibus dedisset nī ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Cocles, quem prō mūnimentō illō diē fortūna urbis Rōmānae habuit.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

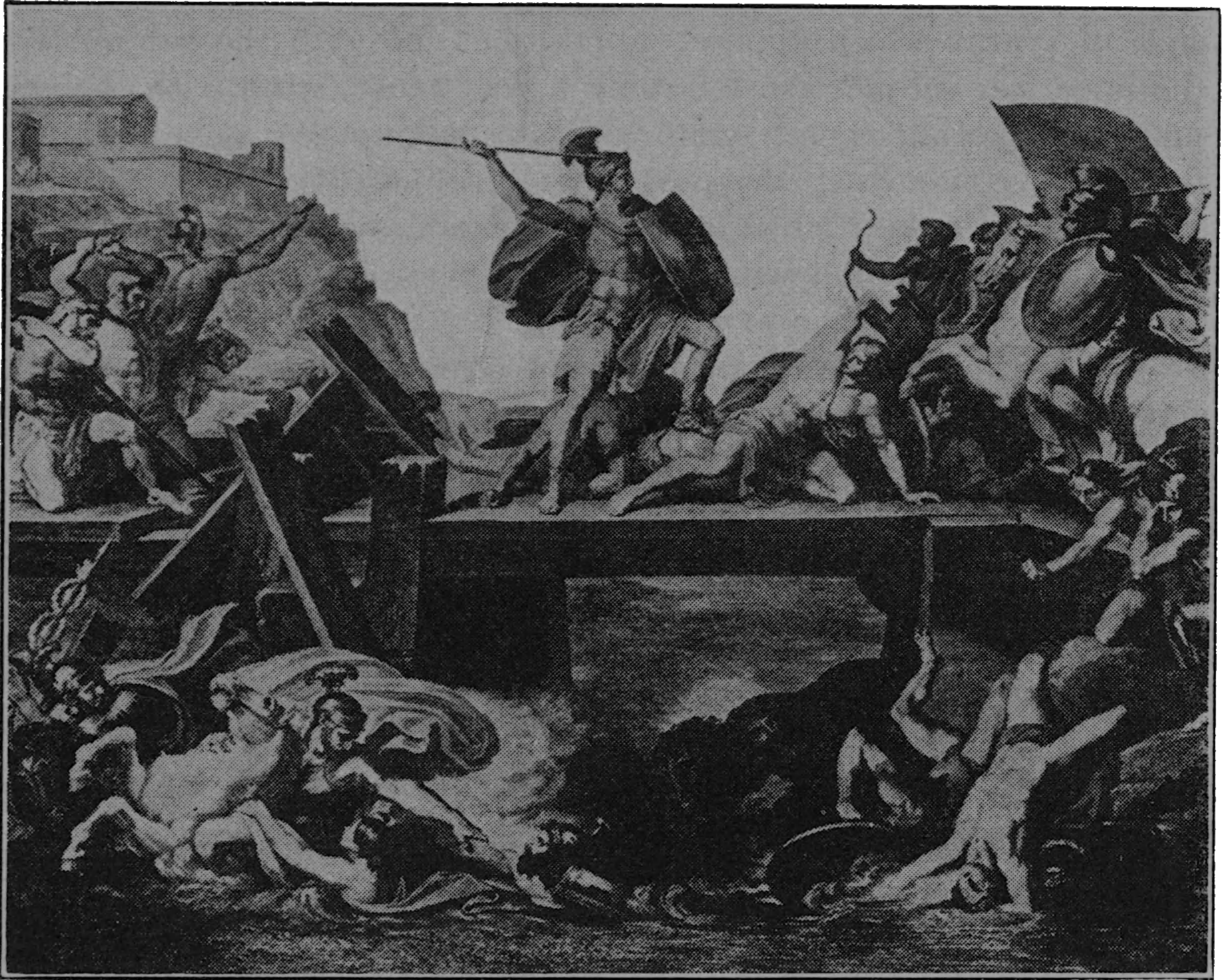
Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

a. **Captum (esse) Iāniculum, dēcurrere hostēs, suōs relinquere,** objects of **vīdisset**; **suōs**, *his friends* (sec. 268); **monuit ut**, *he advised that*; **quācumque vī possint**, *by whatever force they could*; **timēbat ut**, *he feared that . . . not*; **tē precor . . . accipiās**, *I pray that you receive, I pray you to receive*; **sīc armātus**, *thus armed, armed as he was*; **tantum . . . quantum**, *as much . . . as*.



From the painting by Vincenzo Camuccini

HORĀTIUS PONTEM DĒFENDIT

b. **Possint** and **interrumpant** are in the present tense of the subjunctive although they follow a secondary tense, **monuit**. This gives vividness to the description.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Determine what principles of syntax apply to the following: **cum . . . vīdisset**; **ut . . . interrumpant**; **cum . . . audīvisset**; **cap- tum (esse)**; **dēcurrere**; **relinquere, sustentūrum (esse)**; **cēdere**; **Iāniculum**; **hostēs**; **suōs**; **sē**; **eōs**; **impetū**; **ferrō, ignī, vī**; **ponte relictō, parte relictā, clāmōre sublātō**; **pater**; **cīvitātī**; **agrī**; **eī**; **diē**; **circumarāre**.

b. What conjunction would most naturally be supplied with *accipiās*?

c. Explain the derivation of *impetus*, *interrupt*, *order* (noun), *station*, *statue*.

MODELS FOR PARSING VERBS

508. In parsing verbs in full these items should be specified: (1) Regular or irregular verb. (2) If regular, what conjugation. (3) Principal parts. (4) Person, number, tense, mood, voice. (5) If finite, agreement with subject. (6) If subjunctive, explanation of use. (7) If infinitive, explanation of use and naming of subject. (8) If participle, agreement with noun or pronoun. The following examples are taken from section 507.

Monuit: A regular verb of the second conjugation; *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus*; third, singular, perfect, indicative, active; agrees with *is* as subject (sec. 70).

Audīvisset: A regular verb of the fourth conjugation; *audiō* *audire*, *audivī*, *auditus*; third, singular, past perfect, subjunctive, active; agrees with a pronoun understood referring to *ille*; the subjunctive is used in a temporal clause with *cum* to describe the circumstances of the act denoted by *inquit* (sec. 436).

Dēcurrere: A regular verb of the third conjugation; *dēcurrō*, *dēcurrere*, *dēcurrī*, *dēcursus*; the present infinitive active; the subject is *hostēs*; the infinitive *dēcurrere* with its subject in the accusative case is used as the object of the verb *vīdisset* (sec. 188).

Relicta: A regular verb of the third conjugation; *relinquō*, *relinquere*, *reliquī*, *relictus*; the perfect passive participle; ablative, singular, feminine, in agreement with *parte* (sec. 295).

Ordinarily the form of parsing may be abbreviated; but occasionally a form essentially like the examples given above should be used.

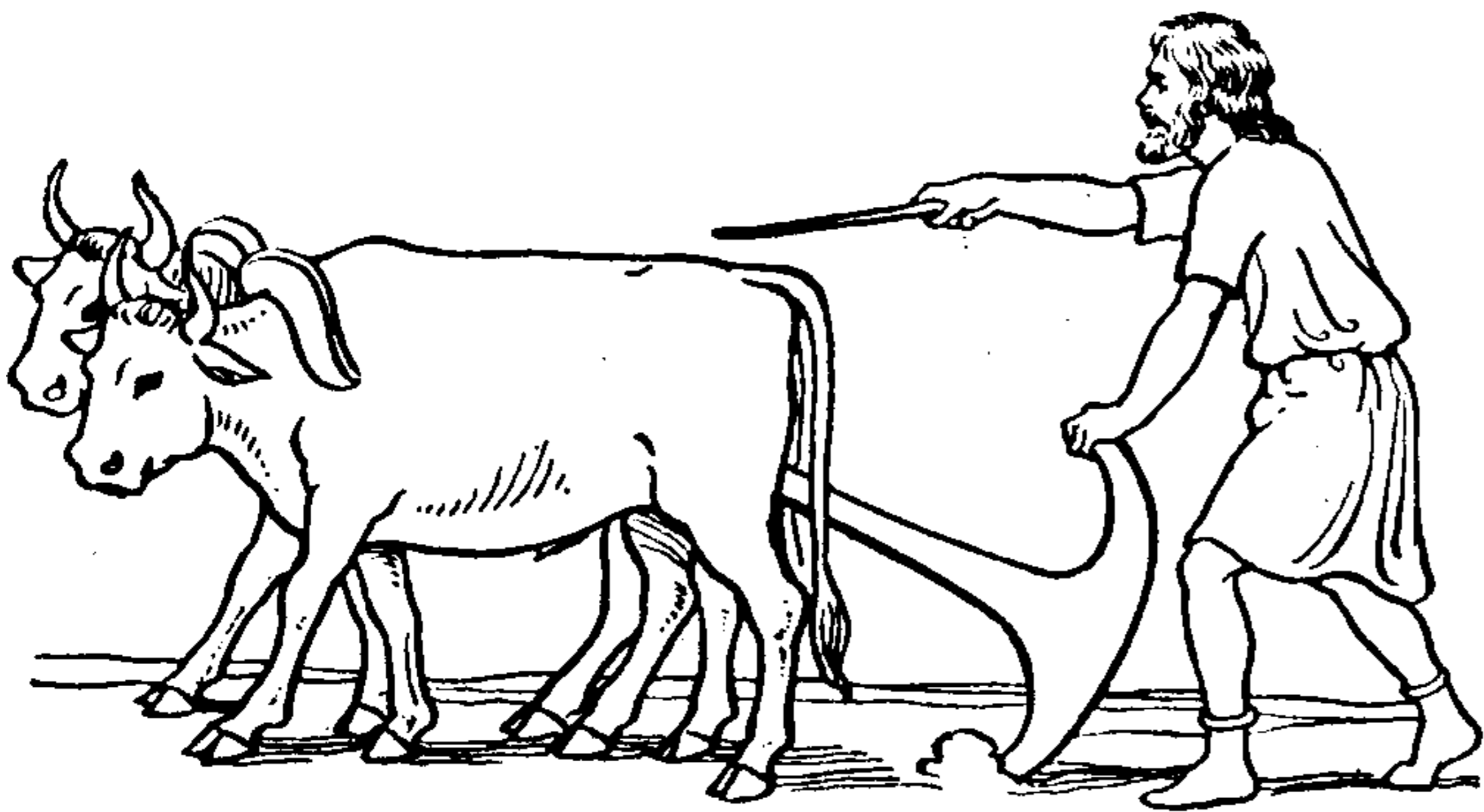
NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Following the model above, parse in full several typical verbs selected from sections 506 and 507.

LATIN WORD-FORMATION AND ENGLISH DERIVATION

509. Some of the ways in which Latin nouns, verbs, and adjectives have been formed have been presented in

sections 257, 258; 389, 390; and 501, 502. A comparison of the lists given for illustration shows that several Latin words, including nouns, verbs, and adjectives, have sometimes been formed from a single original word by the use of certain characteristic prefixes and suffixes, and that corresponding English words have been derived from many of the Latin words thus formed. For example, from the adjective **līber**, *free*, have come the noun **lībertyās**, section 258, the verb **lībertyō**, section 389, (3), and the adjective **lībertyālis**, section 502.



AGRICOLA ET ARĀTRUM

Again, from the verb **lībertyō** the nouns **lībertyātiō** and **lībertyātor** have been formed; and from the adjective **lībertyālis**, the noun **lībertyālityās**. The English derivatives from these Latin words are as follows: **lībertyās**, *liberty*;

lībertyō, *liberate*; **lībertyālis**, *liberal*; **lībertyātiō**, *liberation*; **lībertyātor**, *liberator*; **lībertyālityās**, *liberality*.

The additional illustrations in section 510, based on a few of the most familiar Latin originals, are sufficient to show how extensive is this process of word-formation in Latin and why some knowledge of it is necessary in order that one may understand the multiplication and the significance of English words.

EXAMPLES OF WORD-FORMATION

510. The following examples illustrate the formation of several series of Latin words and the derivation of the corresponding English equivalents. The list is composed chiefly of Latin words taken from sections 488, 506, and 507, and is limited to those which seem best adapted to illustrate the process of word-formation. Almost any paragraph in Latin or in English will furnish similar material.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- refrāctiō, -ōnis, *refraction*.
 suffrāgium, *suffrage*.
 gradior, gressus (to step, to go).
 gradus, *grade*.
 aggressiō, -ōnis, *aggression*.
 aggressor, *aggressor*.
 congressus, *congress*.
 prōgressus, *progress*.
 trānsgradior, trānsgressus,
transgress.
 trānsgressiō, -ōnis, *transgression*.
 liber (free).
 libertās, *liberty*.
 liberālis, *liberal*.
 liberālitās, *liberality*.
 liberō, liberātus, *liberate*.
 liberātor, *liberator*.
 liberātiō, -ōnis, *liberation*.
 mittō, missus (to send).
 missilis, *missile*.
 missiō, -ōnis, *mission*.
 admittō, *admit*.
 admissiō, -ōnis, *admission*.
 dīmittō, dīmissus, *dismiss*.
 intermittō, *intermittent*.
 prōmittō, prōmissus, *promise*.
 remittō, *remit*.
 trāsmittō, *transmit*.
 ōs, ōris (mouth).
 ōrō, ōrātus, *orate*.
 ōrātor, *orator*.
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, *oration*.
 ōrāculum, *oracle*.
 adōrō, *adore*.
 adōrātiō, -ōnis, *adoration*.
 adōrābilis, *adorable*.
 quaerō, quaesītus (to seek), *quest*.
 quaestiō, -ōnis, *question*.
 acquirō, *acquire*.
 requirō, requisītus, *require, re-*
quest.
 requisītio, -ōnis, *requisition*.
 stō, statūrus (to stand).
 statiō, -ōnis, *station*.
 statua, *statue*.
 statūra, *stature*.
 status, *state*.
 stabilis, *stable* (adjective).
 stabilitās, *stability*.
 stabulum, *stable* (noun).
 cōnstō, *constant*.
 cōstantia, *constancy*.
 distō, *distant*.
 distantia, *distance*.
 substantia, *substance*.
 arma and stō, *armistice*.
 solstitium, *solstice*.
 ūtor, ūsus (to use), use (verb).
 ūsus, -ūs, use (noun).
 ūtēnsilis, *utensile*.
 ūtilitās, *utility*.
 abūtor, abūsus, *abuse*.
 veniō, ventus (to come).
 adveniō, *avenue*.
 adventus, *advent*.
 conveniēns, *convenient*.
 conveniō, *convene*.
 ēventus, *event*.
 inveniō, inventus, *invent*.
 inventor, *inventor*.
 inventiō, -ōnis, *invention*.
 interveniō, *intervene*.
 interventiō, -ōnis, *intervention*.
 praeveniō, praeventus, *prevent*.
 praeventiō, -ōnis, *prevention*.
 videō, vīsus (to see), *view*.
 ēvidēns, *evident*.
 prōvideō, provide, provident.
 prōvidentia, *providence*.
 prūdēns, *prudent*.
 prūdētia, *prudence*.
 super and videō, *survey*.

vincō, victus (to conquer), *vanquish*.
victor, victor.
victōria, victory.

victōriōsus, victorious.
convincō, convictus, convince, convict.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find the Latin word from which each of the following English words is derived and trace the Latin words, if derivatives, to their original Latin sources.

abstain	dome	inquire	penitence
ambitious	domestic	intercession	recipient
audible	domicile	levity	senate
auditor	excursion	military	senator
declaration	ignite	mortal	tenacious
digression	injury	officious	terrible

b. Using section 510 as a model, make lists including from five to ten Latin words formed from each of the following, and add the corresponding English derivatives.

agō dīcō habeō iūs moveō portō

Note.—Sufficient material for this study will be found in the list of Latin words and English derivatives, in section 572, page 365. Since many Latin words are formed by the use of prefixes, some of the required words will be found under the letters with which the prefixes begin; e. g., **prae-dīcō, predict; re-moveō, remove.**

PREFIXES

511. In the formation of Latin words the use of prepositions and inseparable particles as prefixes is very important, and the same prefixes appear in many English derivatives.

The most common prefixes which occur in this book are shown in the following list. The Latin words chosen as examples are words from which English words have been derived.

The form of the prefix is sometimes modified by the first letter of the word with which it is combined; as, **ac-cipiō** for **ad-capiō**, **im-portō** for **in-portō**, **oc-currō** for **ob-currō**, etc. This is called assimilation.

ā or ab , <i>from</i> .	ab-sum (to be away from), <i>absent</i> .
ad , <i>to</i> .	ac-cipiō (to take to), <i>accept</i> .
con- , <i>with</i> .	cōn-ferō (to bring together), <i>confer</i> .
dē , <i>down from, from</i> .	dē-tineō (to hold from), <i>detain</i> .
dis- , <i>apart</i> .	dis-trahō (to draw apart), <i>distract</i> .
ē or ex , <i>from, out</i> .	ex-clūdō (to shut out), <i>exclude</i> .
in , <i>into, to</i> .	im-portō (to carry into), <i>import</i> .
in- , <i>not</i> .	im-mortālis (not mortal), <i>immortal</i> .
inter , <i>among, between</i> .	inter-veniō (to come between), <i>intervene</i> .
ob , <i>against</i> .	oc-currō (to run against), <i>occur</i> .
per , <i>through</i> .	per-eō (to go through), <i>perish</i> .
prae , <i>before</i> .	prae-dīcō (to say before), <i>predict</i> .
prō , <i>forth</i> .	prō-vidēō (to look forth), <i>provide</i> .
re- , <i>again, back</i> .	re-quirō (to seek again), <i>require</i> .
sē- , <i>apart</i> .	sē-cēdō (to go apart), <i>secede</i> .
sub , <i>under</i> .	sub-scribō (to write under), <i>subscribe</i> .
trāns , <i>across</i> .	trāns-mittō (to send across), <i>transmit</i> .

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Find the Latin word from which each of the following English words has been derived, separate the prefix, and give the exact meaning of the Latin compound, making a list similar to that above.

abuse	contract	enemy	perfect	report
acquire	decide	intercede	prevent	succeed
avert	emigrate	object	produce	transfer

SYNTAX

Nē and *Ut* with Verbs of Fearing

512. According to the Latin idiom, after a verb of fearing **nē** is translated *that*, and **ut** *that not*. (109)

Timēbant nē plēbs servitūtem acciperet, *they feared that the common people would accept servitude*; **timēbat ut urbs esset tūta**, *he feared that the city would not be safe*.

The Omission of *Ut*

513. The conjunction **ut** is sometimes omitted. (110)

Tē precor accipiās, *I pray that you receive, I pray you to receive*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER LX

REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Compound Words

516. Review sections 489 and 490.

Study the expressions which are in the indirect discourse following verbs of saying and thinking. Point out the infinitives used in the principal clauses, and the subjunctive, if there is any, used in the dependent clauses. Find the accusative subject of each infinitive in the indirect discourse.

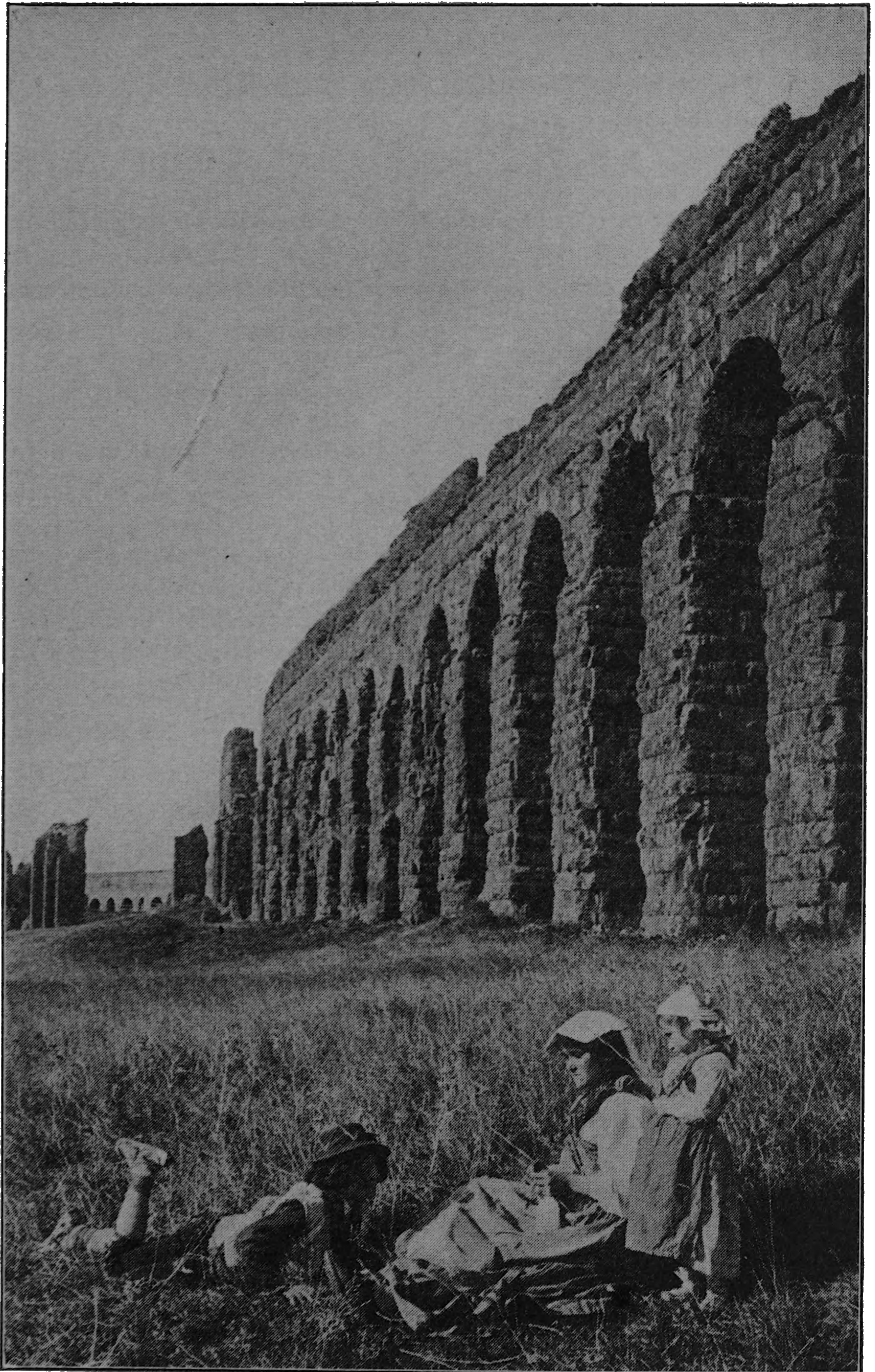
Study the declension of the compound noun **iūs iūrandum**.

MĀRCUS RĒGULUS REDIT CARTHĀGINEM

517. Post multōs annōs cum Poenī adversus Rōmānōs bellum gererent, Mārcus Rēgulus, quī prīmus Rōmānōrum ducum in Āfricam missus erat, ipse captus in carcerem coniectus est. Inde Rōmam dē permūtandīs captīvīs missus est datō iūreiūrandō ut, sī nōn impetrāset (impetrāvisset), rediret ipse Carthāginem. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset inductus in senātum mandāta exposuit. Sententiam autem dīcere recūsāvit. Dixit quamdiū iūreiūrando hostium tenērētur, sē nōn esse senātōrem. Iussus tamen sententiam dīcere, negāvit esse ūtile captīvōs Poenōs reddī; illōs enim adulēscētēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē iam cōfectum senectūte. Cuius cum valuisset auctōritās, captīvī retentī sunt; ipse, cum retinērētur ā propinquīs et amicīs, tamen Carthāginem redit. Neque vērō tunc ignōrābat sē ad crūdēlissimum hostem proficīscī; sed iūsiūrandum cōservandum (esse) putāvit.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Make a list of all the infinitives with their accusative subjects which are in the indirect discourse following verbs of saying or thinking.



© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS

b. What verb in a dependent clause of the indirect discourse is in the subjunctive mood?

c. In what kind of a clause is *rediret*? *vēnisset*? *valuisset*? *retinērētur*?

d. By what verb in the subjunctive is *impetrāisset* attracted into the subjunctive?

e. What form of the verb is *permūtandis*? *cōservandum esse*? (See sections 464, 473.)

f. Decline *iūs-iūrandum*.

g. (*Notebook*.) Explain the derivation of *authority*, *captive*, *conserve*, *cruel*, *ignorant*, *mandate*, *sentence*, *value*.

RĒGULUS

518. Read the following stanzas in Latin, accenting the words as they are marked. Do not sound the letters in parentheses. Compare a literal translation with that given more freely in *a* below.

Fertur' pudī'cae con'iugis ōs'culum'
parvōs'que nā'tōs ut' capitis' minor'
ab sē' remō'viss(e) et' virī'lem
tor'vus humī' posuis'se vol'tum;

donec' laban'tīs cōn'siliō' patrēs'
firmā'ret auc'tor num'qu(am) aliās' datō'
inter'que mae'rentīs' amī'cōs
ē'gregius' properā'ret ex'sul.

—*Horatius*.

a. They say that he refused the kiss of his faithful wife and put away his little children as though his manhood had been forfeited, and sternly fixed his sturdy gaze upon the ground; until, by counsel never given before, his advice convinced the hesitating fathers, and he hastened forth amid the lamentations of his friends, a noble exile.

b. **Fertur**, (literally) *he* (Regulus) *is said*; **remōvisse** and **posuisse** depend upon **fertur**; **capitis minor**, an idiom applied to a person who had been deprived of the privileges of citizenship, including family rights; **humī**, locative; **firmāret**, **properāret**, in the subjunctive with **donec** to represent the expectation of Regulus rather than an actual fact.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

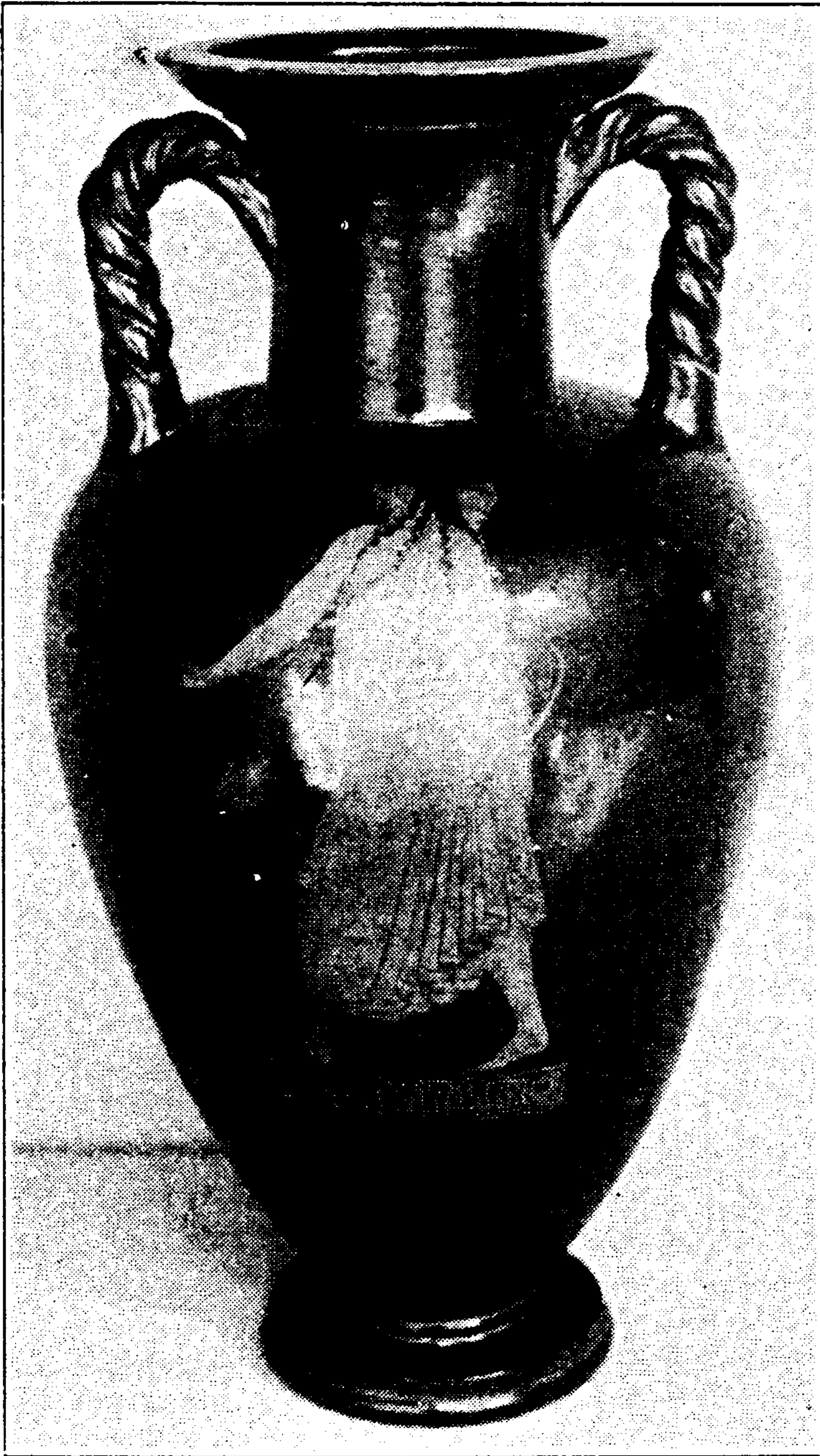
Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

COMPOSITION

520. 1. When the Romans were carrying on war with the Carthaginians, Regulus was sent to Africa as a leader.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

AMPHORA CUM IMĀGINE HĒRCULIS

2. He himself was captured and was sent (having been captured was sent) to Rome concerning an exchange of prisoners. 3. "If I do not accomplish it (fut. perf.)," said he, "I will return to Carthage myself." 4. When he had set forth in the senate the things commanded, he said that it was not (negāvit esse) expedient that the captives be exchanged. 5. "They are young men and good leaders," said he; "I am already exhausted by old age." 6. His influence prevailed; and although he knew that he was going to a cruel enemy, he returned to Carthage. 7. His friends tried to detain (were detaining) him, but he thought that he ought to keep his oath (his oath ought to be kept).

CHAPTER LXI

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

521. Review the matter relating to the formation and use of participles in sections 200, 203, 288, 293, 294, 295, 363, 367, 462, 464.

Point out all the participles in the following selection, identify the form, and note the agreement.

SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS HANNIBALEM VINCIT

522. Multōs annōs inter Rōmānōs et Carthāginiēnsēs erat bellum. Hannibal, superātis Pŷrēnaeis montibus atque Alpium iugīs, magnō cum exercitū in Ītaliā vēnit.

Adversus eum clārissimī ducēs missī sunt sed Hannibalem ipsum vincere nōn poterant. Postrēmō Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō in Āfricā profectus est bellum in Āfricā ipsam trānslātūrus. Deinde Hannibal ex Ītaliā ad tuendam patriam

revocātus Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ā Carthāgine abest, et nūntium ad

Scīpiōnem mīsit ut colloquendī sēcum potestātem faceret. Ab Scīpiōne diēs locusque cōstituitur. Itaque congressī sunt duo clārissimī suae aetātis ducēs. Stetērunt aliquamdiū tacitī mūtuāque admirātiōne dēfixī. Cum vērō de condiōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn

convēnisset, ad suōs sē recēpērunt, renūntiantēs armīs



SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS



HANNIBAL

dēcernendum esse. Commissō deinde proeliō Hannibal victus est. Carthāginiēnsēs metū perculsī ad petendam pācem ōrātōrēs mittunt trīgintā cīvitātis prīncipēs. Victīs lēgēs imposuit Scīpiō. Ita pāce terrā marīque factā, Scīpiō exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rōmam revertit. Quī adveniēns prīmus nōmine gentis ā sē victae nōbilitātus Āfricānus appellātus est.



HANNIBAL EXERCITUM TRĀNS ALPĒS DŪCIT

a. Quīque diērum iter, a five days' journey; ut . . . faceret, that he would grant an opportunity for conferring with him; diēs locusque cōstituitur, time and place are appointed, the two nouns forming a single subject; cum . . . nōn convēnisset, when no agreement had been made; convēnisset, impersonal; renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse, reporting that there must be a decision with arms; dēcernendum esse, impersonal; pāce . . . factā, abl. abs.; qui prīmus nōbilitātus, etc., who, the first to be distinguished, etc. Notice three ways of denoting purpose: by trānslātūrus (sec. 367, a), ut . . . faceret (sec. 406), ad petendam pācem (sec. 464, a).



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

dōnātus (dōnō), *donate*.

effectus (efficiō), *effect* (noun and verb).

factus (faciō), *fact*.

intellēctus (intellegō), *intellect*.

(4) A few English words have been derived from the Latin gerundive or future passive participle.

dīvidendus (dīvidō), *dividend*.

legendus (legō), *legend*.

For other examples of English words derived from Latin participles see sections 390 and 510.

NOTEBOOK WORK

a. Trace the following English words to the Latin participles from which they have been derived:

accident	dictate	important	patience
audience	diligent	inaugurate	permanent
confidence	eloquent	inhabitant	precept
crescent	emigrate	neglect	sentence
defendant	future	omnipotent	tract

NOTE.—English nouns and adjectives derived from Latin nouns and participles formed from verbs of the first conjugation have the endings *-ance* and *-ant*; those derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations generally end in *-ence* and *-ent*; those derived from verbs of the fourth conjugation and from verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation end in *-ience* and *-ient*. There are a few exceptions to this rule; e. g., *defendant* from *dēfendēns* (dēfendō).

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

524. In section 522 find illustrations of the following: the accusative of time; accusative of extent in space; the subjunctive denoting purpose; the subjunctive in a temporal clause with **cum**; the genitive of the whole with a superlative; the infinitive following a verb of saying; verbs used impersonally; the ablative of means, cause, and place; an adjective or a participle used substantively; an adjective with the force of an adverb; the accusative without a preposition denoting the place to which; the gerundive; the genitive of the gerund; the dative with a verb

compounded with a preposition; the future active participle denoting purpose; the ablative absolute; the gerundive with **ad** denoting purpose.

COMPOSITION

525. 1. Hannibal crossed the Alps with a large army, intending to (about to) carry on war with the Romans in Italy. 2. Famous consuls sent as leaders against him could not conquer Hannibal himself. 3. But when Publius Scipio had transferred the war to Africa, Hannibal, recalled to protect his country, was defeated by the Roman general. 4. Peace having been made on land and sea, the Roman army came to Rome. 5. Scipio on his arrival (arriving) the citizens called Africanus from the name of the nation conquered by him (ab eō).



MĪLITĒS PUGNANTĒS
IMĀGINĒS IN ARCŪ CŌNSTANTĪNĪ FICTAE

CHAPTER LXII

GENERAL REVIEW

526. This chapter should be made an occasion for a general review of forms, syntax, word-formation, and derivation, with emphasis on the points which need strengthening. For this purpose a small portion of the following selections may be assigned each day for intensive study.

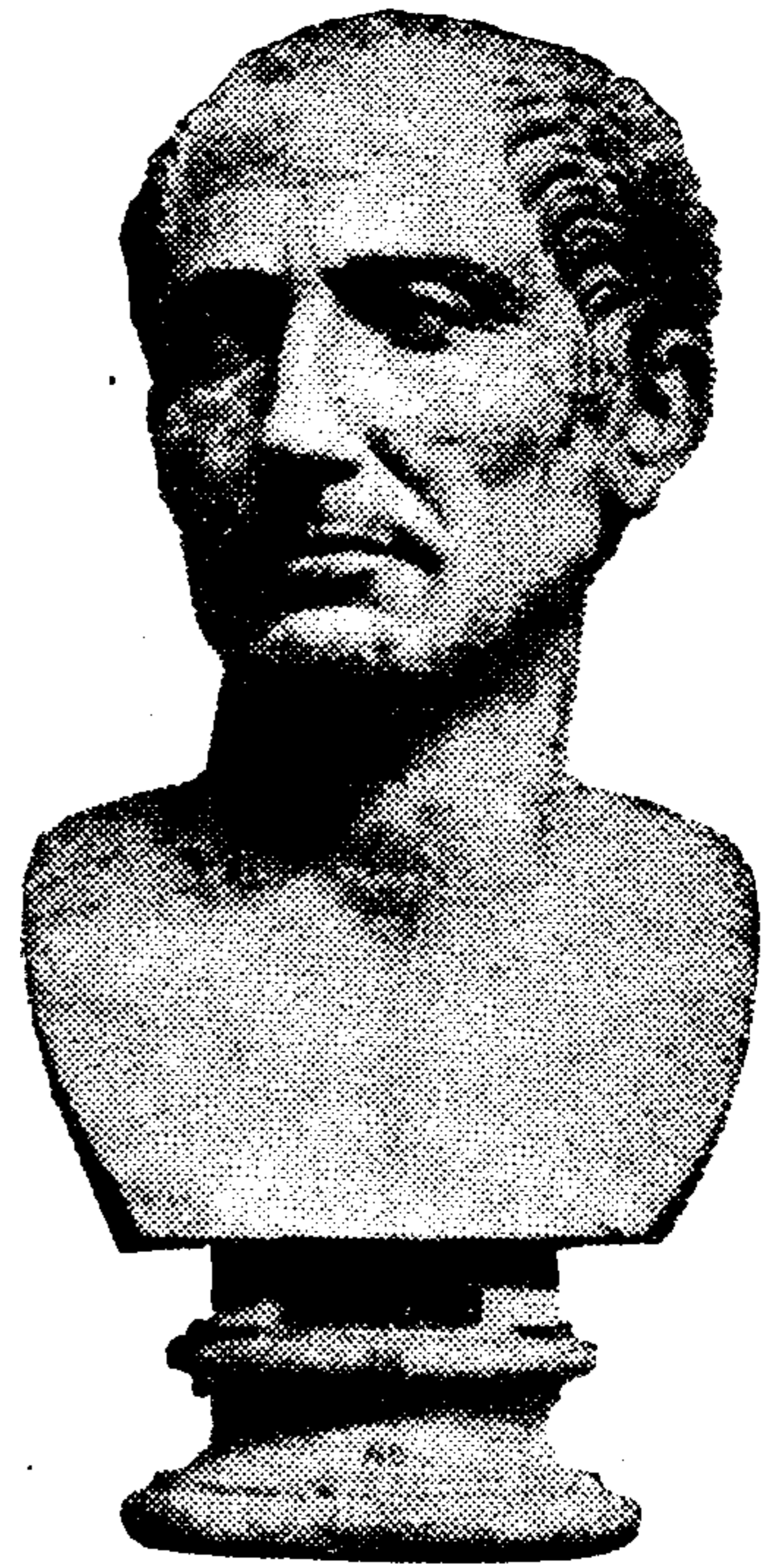


GNAEUS POMPEIUS

GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

527. C. Iūlius Caesar, maximus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum, cōsul creātus societātem cum Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. Fūctus cōsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte factō aggressus maximīs adfēcit clādibus; aggressus est Britannōs, ignōtōs antea, superātisque eīs pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Haec in librīs de Bellō Gallicō ipse Caesar scripsit.

a. Quid, indefinite (sec. 482, *a*); nē quid agerētur, *that nothing should be done*; displicuisset, attracted by agerētur (sec. 514); ūllī, dative (sec. 455); fūctus, participle from fungor; cōsulātū, ablative with fūctus (sec. 377).



C. IULIUS CAESAR



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

alterum cōsulātum petere, ā senātū suādentibus Pompēiō eiusque amicis negātum eī est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicātūrus in Ītaliā redit et cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae finis erat, trānsiit plūrimisque urbibus occupātis Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōfūgerant. Quī cum inde in Epīrum trāi-
ēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit.

a. Interfectō Crassō, dēfūctā Iūliā, abl. abs.; filiā, abl., in apposition with Iūliā; Pompēiō, dat., *by Pompey*; Caesarī gravis, *grievous to Caesar*; hic . . . ille, *the latter (Caesar) . . . the former (Pompey)*; ferēbat, *would endure*; dētinērētur, postulāset, temporal clauses (sec. 436); licēret, purpose (sec. 406); absentī, dat., agreeing with sibi; negātum est, impersonal; eī, indirect object; vindicātūrus, *intending to avenge* (sec. 367); Brundisium, place to which (sec. 96); quī cum, *and when they*.

b. From what Latin words have the following Latin words been formed?

aemulātiō
concordia

dētimeō
dignitās

iniūria
Pompēiānus

c. From what Latin words have the following English words been derived?

absent	negative	superior
defunct	nuptial	suspect
grave	sequence	vindicate



MĀRCUS
BRŪTUS,
CŌNSPĪRĀTOR

529. Caesar bellō cīvilī cōfectō dictātor in perpetuum creātus agere insolentius coepit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis diadēma, insigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque (est) eum Īdibus Mārtilis in senātū cōfodere. Atque cum Caesar

eō diē in senātum vēnisset, ā coniūrātis cōfossus est. Caesare mortuō Antōnius dē eō ōrātiōnem in forō habuit.

a. **Sedentis**, present participle, genitive case, agreeing with **eius**; **coniūrātum est**, impersonal (sec. 311); **ā sexāgintā amplius virīs**, *by more than sixty men*; **dēcrētum est**, from **dēcernō**; **cōfodere**, subject of **dēcrētum est**; **Īdibus Mārtiis**, **eō diē**, ablative denoting time (sec. 105).

b. From what Latin words have the following Latin words been formed?

cīvilis

coniūrō

dictātor

senātor

c. To what Latin words may the following English words be traced and what, therefore, was the exact original meaning?

actor

conjure

dictator

repel

civil

decree

insolent

repulse

DEFECTIVE VERBS

530. Verbs whose conjugation is incomplete are called defective verbs. Some of the common defective verbs which lack many forms are **aiō**, *I say*; **inquam**, *I say* (used chiefly in direct quotations); **meminī**, *I remember*; **coepī**, *I began*; **licet**, *it is permitted*.

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

531. Review the forms of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs and the rules of syntax in accordance with the following outline, which is based on material found in sections 527, 528, and 529.

(1) Make lists of the nouns, classifying them according to declensions, and in the third declension according to the letters in which the stems end. Write or recite the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of each noun. Decline typical nouns in full. Apply the rules for gender (sec. 256).

(2) Make a list of adjectives, arranging them by declensions, and in the third declension according to the number of forms in the nominative singular. What is unusual in the declension of

ūllus (sec. 214, *b*)? What other adjectives are similar to **ūllus**? Find adjectives in each degree of comparison. Decline an adjective in the comparative degree.

(3) Make a classified list of pronouns. Write or recite their declension. What kind of a pronoun is **quid** in the clause **nē quid agerētur**, section 527?

(4) Write or recite the principal parts of all the regular verbs, arranged according to the conjugations to which they belong.



From the painting by J. Court.

ANTŌNIUS ŌRĀTIŌNEM DĒ CAESARE MORTUŌ HABET

Conjugate typical verbs in all the moods and tenses, active and passive. Write or recite the conjugation of the irregular and defective verbs with special attention to the tenses in which the irregular verbs are peculiar.

(5) Determine the reason for the case of each noun and other words and expressions used as substantives, and refer by number (section 571) to the rule of syntax which applies.

(6) Find the antecedent of each pronoun and note the agreement.

(7) With what noun does each adjective agree?



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

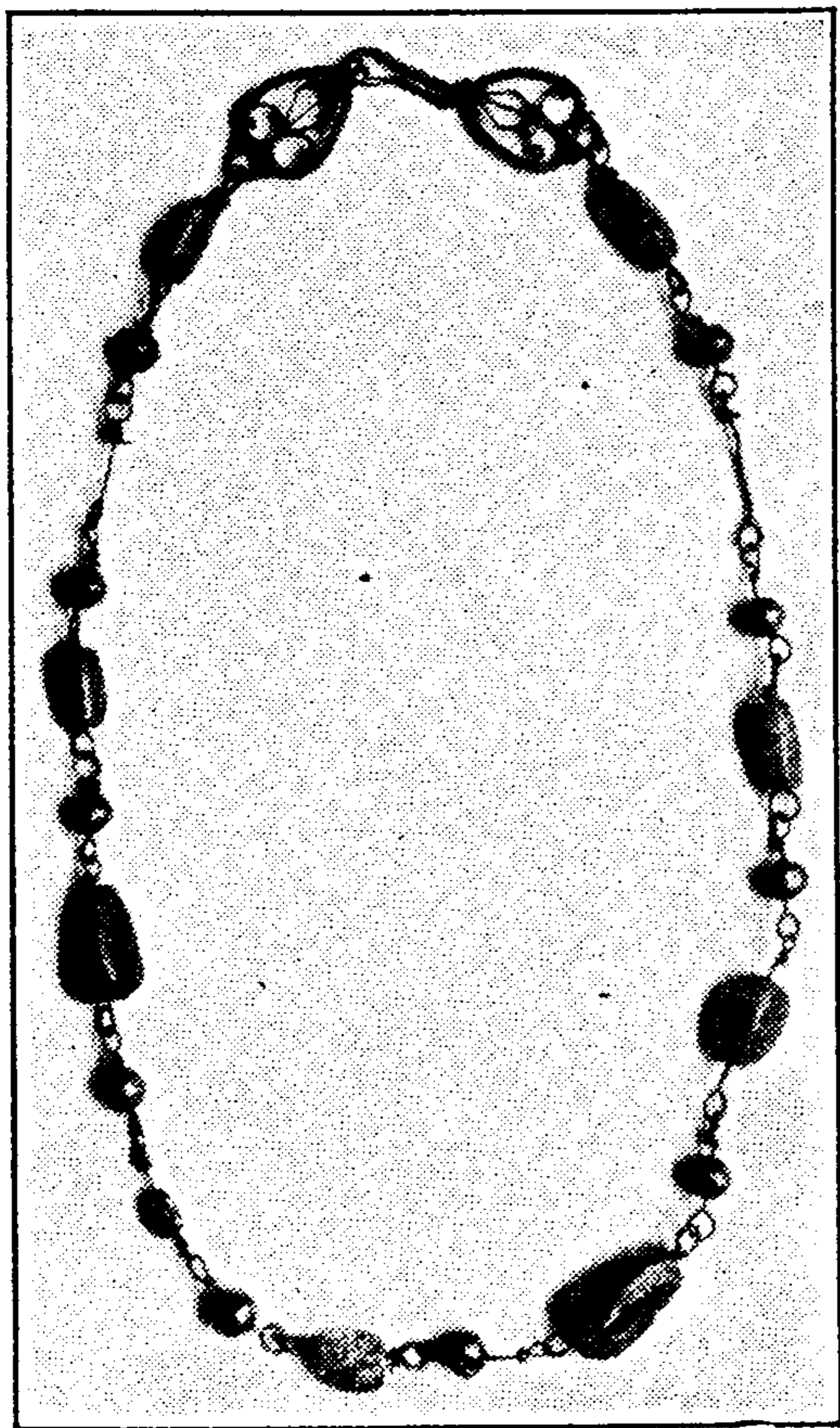
Review the examples of Latin word-formation and English derivation given in sections 509 and 510, and find other illustrations in sections 527, 528, and 529. Give attention to the characteristic endings of English derivatives, particularly of nouns and adjectives.

The alphabetical list in section 572 may be used for a general review.

Latin words are not generally to be translated by their English derivatives since nouns, verbs, and adjectives are not always transferred as such from one language to the other, and since the present meanings of many English words do not correspond with their original significance. For example, the Latin *praeveniō* means *to go before*, while the English *prevent* has lost the original sense and now means *to hinder*.

COMPOSITION

533. 1. When Caesar had served his consulship, he received Gaul as his province. 2. Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus made an agreement that no one (*nē quis*) of the three should do that which would be displeasing to the others. 3. But when Crassus had been killed (*abl. abs.*) and when Julia, Caesar's daughter, had died, the friendship between Caesar and Pompey was broken off. 4. Pompey having been defeated in a civil war, Caesar was made dictator for life. 5. When he had begun to act arrogantly, a conspiracy was made against him and he was assassinated in the senate on the Ides of March.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

MONĪLE EX AURŌ ET
AMETHYSTĪS

CHAPTER LXIII

METRICAL READING

534. In Latin poetry the rhythmical effect is produced by different combinations of long and short syllables and by the regular recurrence of accented syllables. This is called metre, which is employed in great variety by the Latin poets. Rhyme, which is so prominent in English poetry, is not found in Latin.

In the following selection from the *Aeneid* of Vergil each line is composed of six divisions or feet, each foot consisting of two long syllables (a spondee), or a long syllable followed by two short syllables (a dactyl). The poetic accent is placed on the first syllable of each foot. This metre is called the dactylic hexameter, and in the first line below, it may be represented as follows:

Ex'cū/dent' a-li-/ī' spī-/ran'ti-a/ mol'li-us/ ae'ra.

ARTĒS RŌMĀNAE

535. In reading the Latin verses place the accent on the marked syllables, and do not sound the vowels in parentheses. Make a slight pause at the sign //. A suggestive translation, but not the only possible rendering, is given in *a* below.

Ex'cūdent' aliī' // spīran'tia mol'lius ae'ra,
crē'd(ō) equidem', vīvōs' // dūcent' dē mar'more vol'tūs
ō'rābunt' causās' // melius', caelī'que meā'tūs
dē'scribent' radi(ō) et' // surgen'tia sī'dera dī'cent;
tū' reger(e) im'periō' // populōs', Rōmā'ne, memen'tō;
hae' tib(i) erunt' artēs': // pācis'qu(e) impō'nere mō'rem,
par'cere sub'iectis', // et dē'bellā're super'bōs.

—*Vergilius.*

a. Others with greater art, I readily believe, will produce statues in bronze that seem to breathe and will represent more life-like features in marble, plead cases at law with greater eloquence, mark with a rod the pathways in the sky, and call by name the rising constellations; but thou, O Roman, remember to bring the nations under thy dominion; these shall be thy arts: to dictate terms of peace, to spare the vanquished, and to subdue the mighty.

b. How does Vergil's characterization of the Roman ideal compare with the Roman character as represented in the stories from Roman history which have been read in this book?



FŌNS TRIUM VIĀRUM

VIĀTŌRĒS EX URBE EXITŪRĪ NUMMUM IN HUNC FONTEM MITTUNT ET EX AQUĀ BIBUNT UT INTERUM RŌMAM VENIANT. NŌNNE TŪ, HŌC LIBRŌ RELICTŌ, NUMMUM IN FONTEM MITTĒS ET EX AQUĀ BIBĒS?



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

b before **s** and **t** has the sound of *p*; **urbs** like **urps**.

c and **ch** are always hard like *k*; as *c* in *come*.

g is always hard like *g* in *get*.

i when used as a consonant, *i. e.*, between two vowels or at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel, has the sound of *y* in *yet*.

r is trilled more than the English *r*.

s is always like *s* in *so* (not like *s* in *rose*).

t is always like *t* in *time* (not like *t* in *nation*).

v is like *w* in *we*; **u** in such words, as **quis**, **lingua**, **suādeō**, etc., has the same sound as the Latin **v**.

Syllables

540. 1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

2. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second. **Rō-ma**, **La-tī-na**.

3. In combinations of two or more consonants the last consonant is generally pronounced with the following vowel. **An-tī-qua**.

A mute followed by a liquid, and the combinations **gu** and **qu** are pronounced with the following vowel. **Pa-tri-a**, **li-brō**, **lin-gua**, **se-quor**. Compound words are divided in pronunciation so as to show the separate words. **Ab-est**.

Quantity of Syllables and Vowels

541. 1. A syllable is long or short in quantity according to the time required in its pronunciation.

2. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. **Rō-ma**, **cae-lō**, **hōc**.

3. A syllable is long if its vowel, although short, is followed by two or more consonants, except a mute preceding **l** or **r**, or by a double consonant. The first syllable of **lin-gua**, **ur-be**, and **stel-la** is long although the vowel is short. In **pa-tri-a** and **li-brō** the first syllable is short since the vowel is followed by **tr** or **br**.

4. A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate **h**. The first syllable is short in **pu-el-la**, **po-ē-ta**, and **vi-ae**. In this position the vowel as well as the syllable is short.

5. The quantity of vowels can best be learned by observation. A vowel is always long if it is the result of contraction, or if it is followed by **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, or **nct**. **Nīl** (for **nihil**), **īn-frā**, **cōn-sul**, **coniūnx**, **coniūnctum**.

A vowel is generally short if it is followed by another vowel or **h**. **Ītalia**, **nihil**.

NOTE.—The mistake should not be made of giving a vowel the long sound in a long syllable when the vowel itself is short. The syllable **est**, for example, is long, but the vowel **e** is short.

Accent

542. 1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first. **Rō'ma**.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last syllable) if it is long in quantity; if the penult is short, the antepenult is accented. **An-tī'qua**, **Ī-ta'li-a**.

TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION

Nouns

543. THE FIRST DECLENSION

Stella, star.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	stella	stellae
<i>Gen.</i>	stellae	stellārum
<i>Dat.</i>	stellae	stellīs
<i>Acc.</i>	stellam	stellās
<i>Voc.</i>	stella	stellae
<i>Abl.</i>	stellā	stellīs

a. Dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, in the dative and ablative plural have the forms deābus and filiābus.

544. THE SECOND DECLENSION

Amicus, friend; puer, boy; liber, book; vir, man; dōnum, gift.

	SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	amicus	puer	liber	vir	dōnum
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	dōnī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō	puerō	librō	virō	dōnō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum	puerum	librum	virum	dōnum
<i>Voc.</i>	amice	puer	liber	vir	dōnum
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō	puerō	librō	virō	dōnō
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	dōna
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	virōrum	dōnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	dōnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	librōs	virōs	dōna
<i>Voc.</i>	amicī	puerī	librī	virī	dōna
<i>Abl.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	dōnīs

a. For the declension of nouns ending in -ius and -ium see sections 41, b, and 47, b.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Stems in n

Leō, *lion*; imāgō, *image*; flūmen, *river*.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	leō	imāgō	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnis	imāginis	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnī	imāginī	flūminī
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnem	imāginem	flūmen
<i>Voc.</i>	leō	imāgō	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	leōne	imāgine	flūmine

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnum	imāginum	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
<i>Voc.</i>	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus

Stems in s

Flōs, *flower*; tempus, *time*; genus, *kind*.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	flōs	tempus	genus
<i>Gen.</i>	flōris	temporis	generis
<i>Dat.</i>	flōrī	temporī	generī
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrem	tempus	genus
<i>Voc.</i>	flōs	tempus	genus
<i>Abl.</i>	flōre	tempore	genere

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Gen.</i>	flōrum	temporum	generum
<i>Dat.</i>	flōribus	temporibus	generibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Voc.</i>	flōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Abl.</i>	flōribus	temporibus	generibus

Stems in i

Urbs, *city*; hostis, *enemy*; nāvis, *ship*; mare, *sea*.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	hostis	nāvis	maris
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	hostī	nāvī	marī
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	hostem	nāvem	mare
<i>Voc.</i>	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	hoste	nāve (-ī)	marī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
<i>Gen.</i>	urbium	hostium	nāvium	(marium)
<i>Dat.</i>	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbīs (-ēs)	hostīs (-ēs)	nāvis (-ēs)	maria
<i>Voc.</i>	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
<i>Abl.</i>	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus

546. THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Portus, *harbor*; cornū, *horn*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	portus	portūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	portūs	portuum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	portuī	portibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portum	portūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	portus	portūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	portū	portibus	cornū	cornibus

547. THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Diēs, *day*; rēs, *thing*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

548. SPECIAL NOUNS

Domus, house; senex, old man; vīs, strength; iter, route.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	domus	senex	vīs	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (-ī)	senis	(vīs)	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī (-ō)	senī	(vī)	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	senem	vim	iter
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	senex	vīs	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	domō (-ū)	sene	vī	itinere

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	domūs	senēs	vīrēs	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	domuum (-ōrum)	senum	vīrium	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	domibus	senibus	vīribus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	domōs (-ūs)	senēs	vīrīs (-ēs)	itinerā
<i>Voc.</i>	domūs	senēs	vīrēs	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	domibus	senibus	vīribus	itineribus

Aenēās, Aeneas; Iuppiter, Jupiter; deus, god.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aenēās	Iuppiter	deus	deī (diī), dī
<i>Gen.</i>	Aenēae	Iovis	deī	deōrum, deūm
<i>Dat.</i>	Aenēae	Iovī	deō	deīs (diīs), dīs
<i>Acc.</i>	Aenēān (-am)	Iovem	deum	deōs
<i>Voc.</i>	Aenēā	Iuppiter	deus	deī (diī), dī
<i>Abl.</i>	Aenēā	Iove	deō	deīs (diīs), dīs

Adjectives

549. THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Bonus, good.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

550.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Ūnus, *one*; alter, *other*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. In the plural these adjectives are declined like *bonus*.

b. The genitive ending *-īus* is sometimes shortened to *-ius*, especially in *alterīus* (*alterius*).

551. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Audāx, *daring*; omnis, *all*.

SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	omnis	omnis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	omnem	omne
<i>Voc.</i>	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācis (-ēs)	audācia	omnis (-ēs)	omnia
<i>Voc.</i>	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus

Ācer, *spirited*.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Amāns, *loving.*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

a. Adjectives in **-ns** have the ending **-ī** in the ablative singular; participles, used as such, have the ending **-e**.

552.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
ferōx	ferōcior, -ius	ferōcissimus, -a, -um
trīstis	trīstior, -ius	trīstissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus	— plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī	plūres, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
superus	superior, superius	suprēmus, -a, -um summus, -a, -um
īferus	īferior, īferius prior, prius	īfimus, -a, -um prīmus, -a, -um

553. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

Altior, *higher*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs (-īs)	altiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

554. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

ADJECTIVE	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altē	altius	altissimē
audāx	audācter	audācius	audācissimē
celer	celeriter	celerius	celerrimē
facilis	facile	facilius	facillimē
miser	miserē	miserius	miserrimē
bonus	bene	melius	optimē
magnus	magnopere	magis	maximē
malus	male	peius	pessimē
multus	multum	plūs	plūrimum
parvus	parum	minus	minimē
	diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
	saepe	saepius	saepissimē

555.

NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	ROMAN
1.	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2.	duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus, -a, -um, <i>second</i>	II
3.	trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, -a, -um, <i>third</i>	III



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

556. DECLENSION*Duo, two; trēs, three; mīlia, thousands.*

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs (īs)	tria	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

a. In the singular **mīlle** is indeclinable.

b. For the declension of **ūnus** see section 550.

Pronouns**557. PERSONAL***Ego, I; tū, you; suī, of himself (of themselves).*

	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	S. & P.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi (mī)	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	tū	vōs	—
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

558. DEMONSTRATIVE*Hic, this.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	hacc
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Ille, that.

<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. **iste** is declined like **ille**; **ipse** has **ipsum** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

Is, this, that.

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

Idem, the same.

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem(iīdem)	eadem	eadem
				eīdem		
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem(iīsdem)	īsdem,etc.	īsdem,etc.
				eīsdem		
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem(iīsdem)	īsdem,etc.	īsdem,etc.
				eīsdem		

559.**RELATIVE***Quī, who, which.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

560.**INTERROGATIVE***Quis, who? what?*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod*, is declined like the relative *quī*.

561.

INDEFINITE

Aliquis, some one, something.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. The indefinite adjective **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, some**, is declined like the relative **quī** except that the indefinite has the form **aliqua** where the relative has **quae**.

Quisque, each.

	<i>Substantive</i>		<i>Adjective</i>		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

Quīdam, a certain one, a certain.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. In the neuter singular the substantive has the form **quiddam** and the adjective **quoddam**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*Future Perfect*fuerō, *I shall have been*fueris, *you will have been*fuerit, *he will have been*fuerimus, *we shall have been*fueritis, *you will have been*fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR

PLURAL

sim

simus

sis

sitis

sit

sint

Past (Imperfect)

SINGULAR

PLURAL

essem

essēmus

essēs

essētis

esset

essent

Perfect

fuerim

fuerimus

fueris

fueritis

fuerit

fuerint

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

fuissem

fuissēmus

fuissēs

fuissētis

fuisset

fuisissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. es, *be (thou)*este, *be (ye)**Fut.* estō, *you shall be*estōtē, *you shall be*estō, *he shall be*suntō, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be**Perf.* fuisse, *to have been**Fut.* futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

563.

REGULAR VERBS

amō, *I love*; videō, *I see*; mittō, *I send*; audiō, *I hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

CONJ.	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PART.
I.	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
II.	videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsus
III.	mittō	mittere	misī	missus
IV.	audiō	audire	audīvī	auditus

564.

Active Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

amō	videō	mittō	audiō
amās	vidēs	mittis	audīs
amat	videt	mittit	audit
amāmus	vidēmus	mittimus	audīmus
amātis	vidētis	mittitis	audītis
amant	vident >	mittunt	audiunt

Past (Imperfect)

amābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
amābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
amābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat
*			
amābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
amābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

Future

amābō	vidēbō	mittam	audiam
amābis	vidēbis	mittēs	audiēs
amābit	vidēbit	mittet	audiet
amābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis	audiētis
amābunt >	vidēbunt	mittent >	audient

Perfect

amāvī	vīdī	mīsī	audīvī
amāvistī	vīdistī	mīsistī	audīvistī
amāvit	vīdit	mīsīt	audīvit
amāvimus	vīdimus	mīsīmus	audīvimus
amāvistis	vīdistis	mīsistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)	vīdērunt (-ēre)	mīsērunt (-ēre)	audīvērunt (-ēre)

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

amāveram	vīderam	mīseram	audīveram
amāverās	vīderās	mīserās	audīverās
amāverat	vīderat	mīserat	audīverat
amāverāmus	vīderāmus	mīserāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	vīderātis	mīserātis	audīverātis
amāverant	vīderant	mīserant	audīverant

Future Perfect

amāverō	vīderō	mīserō	audīverō
amāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit
amāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amem	videam	mittam	audiam
amēs	videās	mittās	audiās
amet	videat	mittat	audiat
amēmus	videāmus	mittāmus	audiāmus
amētis	videātis	mittātis	audiātis
ament	videant	mittant	audiant

Past (Imperfect)

amārem	vidērem	mitterem	audīrem
amārēs	vidērēs	mitterēs	audīrēs
amāret	vidēret	mitteret	audīret
amārēmus	vidērēmus	mitterēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	vidērētis	mitterētis	audīrētis
amārent	vidērent	mitterent	audīrent

Perfect

amāverim	vīderim	mīserim	audīverim
amāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit
amāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

565.

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

amor	videor	mittor	audior
amāris (-re)	vidēris (-re)	mitteris (-re)	audīris (-re)
amātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur
amāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī
amantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur ✓

Past (Imperfect)

amābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
amābāris (-re)	vidēbāris (-re)	mittēbāris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)
amābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur
amābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

Future

amābor	vidēbor	mittar	audiar
amāberis (-re)	vidēberis (-re)	mittēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
amābitur	vidēbitur	mittētur	audiētur
amābimur	vidēbimur	mittēmur	audiēmur
amābiminī	vidēbiminī	mittēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	vidēbuntur	mittentur	audientur

Perfect

amātus sum	vīsus sum	missus sum	audītus sum
amātus es	vīsus es	missus es	audītus es
amātus est	vīsus est	missus est	audītus est
amātī sumus	vīsī sumus	missī sumus	audītī sumus
amātī estis	vīsī estis	missī estis	audītī estis
amātī sunt	vīsī sunt	missī sunt	audītī sunt

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

amātus eram	vīsus eram	missus eram	audītus eram
amātus erās	vīsus erās	missus erās	audītus erās
amātus erat	vīsus erat	missus erat	audītus erat'
amātī erāmus	vīsi erāmus	missī erāmus	audītī erāmus
amātī erātis	vīsi erātis	missī erātis	audītī erātis
amātī erant	vīsi erant	missī erant	audītī erant

Future Perfect

amātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō	audītus erō
amātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris	audītus eris
amātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit	audītus erit
amātī erimus	vīsi erimus	missī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	vīsi eritis	missī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	vīsi erunt	missī erunt	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amer	videar	mittar	audiar
amēris (-re)	videāris (-re)	mittāris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
amētur	videātur	mittātur	audiātur
amēmur	videāmur	mittāmur	audiāmur
amēmini	videāmini	mittāmini	audiāmini
amentur	videantur	mittantur	audiantur

Past (Imperfect)

amārer	vidērer	mitterer	audīrer
amārēris (-re)	vidērēris (-re)	mitterēris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
amārētur	vidērētur	mitterētur	audīrētur
amārēmur	vidērēmur	mitterēmur	audīrēmur
amārēmini	vidērēmini	mitterēmini	audīrēmini
amārentur	vidērentur	mitterentur	audīrentur

Perfect

amātus sim	vīsus sim	missus sim	audītus sim
amātus sis	vīsus sis	missus sis	audītus sis
amātus sit	vīsus sit	missus sit	audītus sit
amātī simus	vīsi simus	missī simus	audītī simus
amātī sitis	vīsi sitis	missī sitis	audītī sitis
amātī sint	vīsi sint	missī sint	audītī sint

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

amātus essem	vīsus essem	missus essem	audītus essem
amātus essēs	vīsus essēs	missus essēs	audītus essēs
amātus esset	vīsus esset	missus esset	audītus esset
amātī essēmus	vīsī essēmus	missī essēmus	audītī essēmus
amātī essētis	vīsī essētis	missī essētis	audītī essētis
amātī essent	vīsī essent	missī essent	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>Sing.</i>	amāre	vidēre	mittere	audire
<i>Pl.</i>	amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audiminī

Future

<i>Sing.</i>	amātor	vidētor	mittitor	audītor
	amātor	vidētor	mittitor	audītor
<i>Pl.</i>	amantor	videntor	mittuntor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amārī	vidērī	mittī	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus esse	vīsus esse	missus esse	audītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	amātum irī	vīsum irī	missum irī	audītum irī

PARTICIPLE

<i>Fut.</i>	amandus	videndus	mittendus	audiendus
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus	vīsus	missus	audītus

566. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

Active

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum, es, est, etc.	amātūrus sim, sis, sit, etc.
<i>Past</i>	amātūrus eram, erās, etc.	amātūrus essem, essēs, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō, eris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui, fuisti, etc.	amātūrus fuerim, fueris, etc.
<i>Past Perf.</i> (<i>Plup.</i>)	amātūrus fueram, fuerās, etc.	amātūrus fuissem, fuissēs, etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerō, fueris, etc.	

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus esse
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisse



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus
---------	-----------	-------------	--------------

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus
--------	-----------	------------	--------------

a. The perfect, past perfect (pluperfect), and the future perfect tenses are conjugated like the same tenses of all other verbs. **Cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc., captus sum, captus es, captus est, etc.**

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Present

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Past (Imperfect)

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus	captus sim	captī simus
---------	-----------	------------	-------------

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

cēpisssem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
-----------	------------	--------------	---------------

IMPERATIVE

Present

cape	capite	capere	capimini
------	--------	--------	----------

Future

capitō	capitōte	capitor	
capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum ir

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	capiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	captus
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	capiendus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	capiendī	
<i>Dat.</i>	capiendō	
<i>Acc.</i>	capiendum	captum
<i>Abl.</i>	capiendō	captū

IRREGULAR VERBS

568. . *Possum, I am able, I can.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum

posse

potuī

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
<i>Past</i>	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus		
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
<i>Past Perf.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse . *Perf.* potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns (used as adj.)

a. The other compounds of *sum* are conjugated like *sum*; but *prōsum* has *d* before the forms of *sum* which begin with a vowel; as, *prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt*, etc.

569. *Volō, I wish; nōlō, I do not wish; mālō, I prefer; eō, I go; ferō, I bear; fiō, I become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES.	INFIN.	PERF.	PART.
✓ volō	velle	voluī	
✓ nōlō	nōlle	nōluī	
✓ mālō	mālle	māluī	
✓ eō	īre	ī	(fut.) itūrus
✓ ferō	ferre	tulī	lātus
✓ fiō	fieri	factus sum	

INDICATIVE

Present

volō	nōlō	mālō	eō	ferō	fiō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs	fers	fīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult	it	fert	fit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	īmus	ferimus	(fīmus)
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis	fertis	(fītis)
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt ✓	ferunt	fiunt

Past (Imperfect)

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam	ferēbam	fīēbam
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Future

volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō	feram	fīam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībīs	ferēs	fīēs
volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit	feret	fīet
volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus	ferēmus	fīēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībitis	ferētis	fīētis
volent	nolent	mālent	ībunt	ferent	fīent

Perfect

voluī	nōluī	māluī	īī (īvī)	tulī	factus sum
etc.	etc.	etc.	īstī (īistī)	etc.	etc.
			īit (īt)		
			īimus		
			īstis (īistis)		
			īērunt (īēre)		



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle	īre	ferre	ferī
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	isse (iisse)	tulisse	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>				itūrus esse	latūrus esse	factum īri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns		iēns (Gen., euntis)	ferēns	
<i>Fut. Act.</i>				itūrus	latūrus	
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>				eundum		faciendus
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>						factus

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	eundī	ferendī
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	ferendō
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum	ferendum
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō	ferendō

The Passive of *ferō*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

feror	ferimur	ferar	ferāmur
ferris (-re)	feriminī	ferāris (-re)	ferāminī
fertur	feruntur	ferātur	ferantur

Past (Imperfect)

ferēbar	ferēbāmur	ferrer	ferrēmur
ferēbāris (-re)	ferēbāminī	ferrēris (-re)	ferrēminī
ferēbātur	ferēbantur	ferrētur	ferrentur

Future

ferar	ferēmur
etc.	etc.

Perfect

lātus sum	lātī sumus	lātus sim	lātī sīmus
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

lātus eram	lātī erāmus	lātus essem	lātī essēmus
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Future Perfect

lātus erō
etc. lātī erimus
etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres. ferre feriminī
Fut. fertor
 fertor feruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. ferrī
Perf. lātus esse

PARTICIPLE

Fut. ferendus *Perf.* lātus

570.**DEPONENT VERBS**

CONJ.	PRES.	INFIN.	PERF.
I.	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum <i>attempt</i>
II.	polliceor	pollecērī	pollicitus sum <i>promise</i>
III.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum <i>follow</i>
IV.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum <i>obtain</i>
III-ior.	patior	patī	passus sum <i>suffer</i>

a. Deponent verbs have the form of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. They have also the active participles, the future active infinitive, the gerund, and the supine. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with the passive meaning.

b. Deponent verbs are conjugated like regular verbs in the passive voice.

c. A few verbs are deponent in the perfect system only. These are called semi-deponents.

audeō, audēre, ausus, sum, *dare*.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, *rejoice*.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*.

REFERENCES TO RULES OF SYNTAX

571. The principles of syntax which have been developed in the text are here collected by titles. For convenience in review they are arranged in the same order in which they are first introduced. The numbers following the titles refer to the sections where complete statements with illustrations may be found.

For the full treatment of any subject, *e. g.*, the uses of the ablative case, consult the index.

1. The subject of a finite verb. 12.
2. The direct object of a transitive verb. 13.
3. The person addressed. 14.
4. The genitive qualifying another noun. 19.
5. The indirect object. 20.
6. The ablative of means or instrument. 21.
7. Predicate noun or adjective. 31.
8. The locative case. 32.
9. Agreement of adjectives. 55.
10. The dative with adjectives. 56.
11. Apposition. 64.
12. Agreement of verb. 70.
13. The use of the present indicative. 80.
14. The agent with passive verbs. 88.
15. The place to which. 96.
16. The place in which. 97.
17. The place from which. 98.
18. The ablative of time. 105.
19. The ablative of accompaniment. 106.
20. Two accusatives. 113.
21. The use of the past tense. 123.
22. Voice. 130.
23. Transitive and intransitive verbs. 131.
24. The genitive of quality. 138.
25. The use of the future tense. 157.
26. The dative with certain compound verbs. 164.
27. Conjunctions. 170.
28. Coördinate conjunctions. 171.
29. Subordinate conjunctions. 172.
30. The complementary infinitive. 186.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

72. The use of the supine.—The accusative. 369, (1).
73. The ablative of the supine. 369, (2).
74. The ablative with deponent verbs. 377.
75. Negative commands. 383.
76. Classification of the tenses. 391.
77. The tenses of the infinitive and the participle. 394.
78. The subjunctive of purpose. 406.
79. The use of the present and past subjunctive. 407.
80. The subjunctive of result. 416.
81. Indirect questions. 425.
82. The use of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive. 426.
83. Sequence of tenses. 427.
84. Substantive clauses. 428.
85. Temporal clauses with **cum**.—The indicative. 435.
86. The subjunctive in temporal clauses with **cum**. 436.
87. Causal and concessive clauses with **cum**. 437.
88. The volitive subjunctive. 443.
89. The optative subjunctive. 444.
90. The potential subjunctive. 445.
91. Conditional sentences.—First class. 452.
92. Conditional sentences.—Second class. 453.
93. Conditional sentences.—Third class. 454.
94. The dative with special verbs. 455.
95. The use of the gerundive. 464.
96. The use of the gerund. 465.
97. The active periphrastic conjugation. 472.
98. The passive periphrastic conjugation. 473.
99. The dative of the agent. 474.
100. The subjective genitive. 475.
101. The use of indefinite pronouns. 482.
102. The ablative of origin. 483.
103. Main verbs in indirect discourse. 489.
104. Dependent verbs in indirect discourse. 490.
105. Questions in indirect discourse. 491.
106. The ablative of price. 492.
107. The ablative of quality or description. 493.
108. The genitive with verbs of feeling. 503.
109. **Nē** and **ut** with verbs of fearing. 512.
110. The omission of **ut**. 513.
111. The subjunctive by attraction. 514.

DERIVATION

List of Latin Words with English Derivatives

572. The following list contains the words used in the text to illustrate the formation of Latin words and the derivation of English words. Latin words in parentheses are those from which the words immediately preceding have been formed. The figures refer to the sections of the text where the words occur or where explanatory matter may be found.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>abrogātus (ab-rogō), <i>abrogate</i>. 480, c.</p> <p>absēns (ab-sum), <i>absent</i>. 390; 511; 528, c.</p> <p>absolūtus (ab-solvō), <i>absolute</i>. 331, b.</p> <p>ab-solvō, <i>absolve</i>. 331, b.</p> <p>abstineō (abs-teneō), <i>abstain</i>. 510, a.</p> <p>ab-sum, <i>absent</i>, 511.</p> <p>abūsus (ab-ūtor), <i>abuse</i>. 510, 511, a.</p> <p>ac-cēdō, <i>accede</i>. 331, b; 510.</p> <p>acceptus (accipiō, ad-capiō), <i>accept</i>. 242, b; 510; 527, b.</p> <p>accessus, -ūs (accēdō), <i>access</i>. 510.</p> <p>accidēns (accidō, ad-cadō), <i>accident</i>. 523, a.</p> <p>accipio (ad-capiō), <i>accept</i>, 510; 511; 527 c.</p> <p>accūsō (ad-causa), <i>accuse</i>. 111, b.</p> <p>acquirō (ad-quaerō), <i>acquire</i>. 510; 511, a.</p> <p>āctiō (agō), <i>action</i>. 510, b.</p> <p>āctor (agō), <i>actor</i>. 510, b; 529, c.</p> <p>āctus (agō), <i>act</i>. 390; 510, b; 523, (3).</p> <p>ad-dō, <i>add</i>. 341, b; 390.</p> | <p>adiūctus (ad-iungō), <i>adjunct</i>. 451, b.</p> <p>ad-ministrō, <i>administer</i>. 451, b.</p> <p>admīrātiō (ad-mīror), <i>admiration</i>. 331, b; 522, c.</p> <p>admissiō (ad-mittō), <i>admission</i>. 510.</p> <p>ad-mittō, <i>admit</i>. 510.</p> <p>adōrābilis (ad-ōrō), <i>adorable</i>. 502, 510.</p> <p>adōrātiō (ad-ōrō), <i>adoration</i>. 510.</p> <p>ad-ōrō, <i>adore</i>, 510.</p> <p>adrogāns (ad-rogō), <i>arrogant</i>. 390.</p> <p>ad-sūmō, <i>assume</i>. 451, b.</p> <p>adultus (ad-olēscō), <i>adult</i>. 94, a; 390, a.</p> <p>ad-veniō, <i>avenue</i>. 510.</p> <p>adventus, -ūs (ad-veniō), <i>advent</i>. 510.</p> <p>advocātus (ad-vocō), <i>advocate</i>. 461, d.</p> <p>aedificō (aedēs-faciō), <i>edify</i>. 388, b.</p> <p>aemulātiō (aemulor), <i>emulation</i>. 470, b; 528, b.</p> <p>aequālis (aequus), <i>equal</i>. 502.</p> <p>aequitās (aequus), <i>equity</i>. 361, b.</p> <p>affectus (afficiō, ad-faciō), <i>affect</i>. 510.</p> |
|--|--|

- agēns** (agō), *agent*. 390; 423' *d*;
523, (3).
- aggressiō** (aggredior, ad-gradior),
aggression. 510.
- aggressor** (aggressor, ad-gradior),
aggressor. 510.
- agitātiō** (agitō), *agitation*. 510, *b*.
- agitātus** (agitō, agō), *agitate*. 389,
(2); 423, *d*; 510, *b*.
- agricultūra** (agēr-cultūra), *agricul-
ture*. 62, 258.
- ambitiō** (ambi-eō), *ambition*. 510.
- ambitiōsus** (ambitiō), *ambitious*.
510, *a*.
- animal** (anima), *animal*. 151.
- antīquitās** (antīquus), *antiquity*.
62, *a*.
- antīquus**, *antique*. 62.
- aptus**, *apt*. 361, *b*.
- aquaeductus** (aqua-dūcō), *aque-
duct*. 519, *a*.
- arēna**, *arena*. 258, *a*.
- aridus** (areō), *arid*. 502, *a*.
- arma**, *arms*. 103, *b*; 258.
- arma** and **stō**, *armistice*. 510;
519, *a*.
- armō** (arma), *arm* (verb). 103, *b*.
- ars**, *art*. 151, *a*; 415, *d*.
- asylum**, *asylum*. 136, *a*.
- atrōx**, *atrocious*. 317, *b*; 502.
- auctor** (augeō), *author*. 470, *b*.
- auctōritās** (auctor, augeō), *author-
ity*. 517, *g*.
- audāx** (audeō), *audacious*. 501,
(1).
- audībilis** (audiō), *audible*. 502, *a*;
510, *a*.
- audientia** (audiēns, audiō), *audi-
ence*. 523, *a*.
- audītor** (audiō), *auditor*. 257, (1);
510, *a*.
- augurium** (augur), *augury*. 128,
b; 258.
- auto** and **mobilis** (moveō), *auto-
mobile*. 519, *c*.
- ā-vertō**, *avert*. 434, *c*; 511, *a*.
- avis**, *aviation*. 258.
- bellicōsus** (bellum), *bellicose*. 341,
b; 501, (5).
- brevis**, *brief*. 502.
- cadēns** (cadō, cad-), *cadence*. 389,
(1).
- caedō** (cīd-), *de-cide*. 389, (1).
- campus**, *camp*. 242, *b*; 258, *a*.
- candidus** (candeō), *candid*. 501,
(3).
- capācitās** (capāx), *capacity*. 510.
- capāx** (capiō), *capacious*. 510.
- capitōlium** (caput), *capitol*. 162,
b; 258, *a*.
- captiō** (capiō), *caption*. 510.
- captīvitās** (captīvus), *captivity*.
510.
- captīvus** (capiō), *captive*. 501, (4);
510; 517, *g*.
- captor** (capiō), *captor*. 258, 510.
- captūra** (capiō), *capture*. 510.
- cāritās** (cārus), *charity*. 151, *a*;
470, *b*.
- carpentum**, *carpenter*. 404, *b*.
- cāsus**, -ūs (cadō, cad-), *case*.
307, *b*; 389, (1).
- causa**, *cause*. 258.
- cēdō**, *cede*. 510.
- cēnsus** (cēnseō), *census*. 451, *b*.
- centum**, *cent*. 223, *b*.
- centuria** (centum), *century*. 223, *b*.
- cessātiō** (cessō), *cessation*. 510.
- cessō** (cēdō), *cease*. 510.
- circumferentia** (circumferēns, cir-
cum-ferō), *circumference*. 389,
(4).



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- cūrō (cūra), *cure* (verb), 86, *b*;
389, (3).
- currēns (currō), *current*. 510;
- currentia (currēns, currō), *currency*. 510.
- curriculum (currō), *curriculum*.
510.
- cursus, -ūs (currō), *course*. 317,
b; 510.
- custōdia (cūstōs), *custody*. 86, *b*;
257, (4).
- dēbitus (dēbeō, dē-habeō), *debit*,
debt. 390, *a*.
- dēcidō (dē-cadō), *decay*. 390, *a*.
- dēcīdō (dē-caedō), *decide*. 389,
(1); 511, *a*.
- dēcīsiō (dēcīdō), *decision*. 389, (1).
- dēclārātiō (dē-clārō, clārus), *dec-*
laration. 510, *a*.
- dēcrētus (dē-cernō), *decree*. 529, *c*.
- dēfectus (dēficiō, dē-faciō), *defect*.
510; 523, (3).
- dēfendēns (dē-fendō), *defendant*.
523, *a*., Note.
- dē-fendō, *defend*. 103, *b*; 390;
506, *c*.
- dēferēns (dē-ferō), *deference*. 389,
(4).
- dē-ferō, *defer*. 389, (4).
- dēficiēns (dēficiō, dē-faciō), *de-*
ficiant. 510.
- dēfūctus (dē-fungor), *defunct*.
528, *c*.
- dēligēns (dē-ligō), *diligent*. 523, *a*.
- dēnsus, *dense*. 242, *b*.
- dēpositus (dē-pōnō), *deposit*. 470,
b.
- dē-rīdeō, *deride*. 488, *d*.
- dē-scribō, *describe*. 275, *c*.
- dēsīgnātus (dē-signō), *designate*.
423, *d*.
- dētineō (dē-teneō), *detain*. 528,
b; 511.
- dīcō (dīc-), *diction*. 389, (1).
- dictātor (dictō), *dictator*. 510, *b*;
529, *b*; 529, *c*.
- dictātus (dictō), *dictate*. 389, (2);
510, *b*; 523, *a*.
- dictiō (dīcō), *diction*. 389, (1);
510, *b*.
- dictionārium (dictiō), *dictionary*.
510, *b*.
- differentia (differēns, differō), *dif-*
ference. 389, (4), *b*.
- differō (dis-ferō), *differ*. 389, (4).
- digitus, *digit*. 258, *a*.
- dignitās (dignus), *dignity*. 528, *b*.
- dīgressiō (dīgredior, dī-gradior),
digression. 510, *a*.
- dīmissus (dī-mittō), *dismiss*. 510.
- disciplīna (discipulus), *discipline*.
62, *a*.
- discipulus, *disciple*. 62.
- discordia (dis-cors), *discord*. 62.
- discursus, -ūs (dis-currō), *dis-*
course. 510.
- dis-similis, *dissimilar*. 283, *b*.
- distāns (di-stō), *distant*. 510.
- distāntia (distāns, di-stō), *dis-*
tance. 510.
- distractus (dis-trahō), *distract*.
307, *b*.
- dis-trahō, *distract*. 511.
- distribūtus (dis-tribuō), *distribute*.
283, *b*.
- dīvidendus (dīvidō), *dividend*. 523,
(4).
- dīvīnus (dīvus), *divine*. 275, *c*.
- doctrina (doctor, doceō), *doctrine*.
62.
- domesticus (domus), *domestic*.
510, *a*.

- domicilium** (domus), *domicile*.
 404, b; 510, a.
domus, *dome*. 461, d.
dōnātus (dōnō, dōnum), *donate*.
 390.
dūcō (dūc-), *duke*. 389, (1).
ductus (dūcō, dūc-), *duct*. 389,
 (1).
duplicātus (duplicō, duplex), *dup-
 licate*. 341, b; 389, (3).
dux (dūcō, dūc-), *duke*. 258; 389,
 (1).
ēdictus (ē-dīcō), *edict*. 389, (1);
 510, b.
effectus (efficiō, ex-faciō), *effect*.
 510; 523, (3).
efficiēns (efficiō, ex-faciō), *efficient*.
 510.
ēlātus (efferō, ex-ferō), *elate*. 389,
 (4).
ēloquēns (ē-loquor), *eloquent*. 523,
 a.
ē-lūdō (lūd-), *elude*. 389, (1);
 423, d.
ēlūsus (ē-lūdō, lūd-), *elusive*. 389,
 (1).
ēmigrāns (ē-migrō), *emigrant*. 523,
 (1).
ēmigrātus (ē-migrō), *emigrate*. 523,
 a; 511, a.
essentia (sum, es-), *essence*. 389,
 (1).
ēventus, -ūs (ē-veniō), *event*. 510.
ēvidēns (ē-vidēō), *evident*. 510.
ē-vocō, *evoke*, 461, d.
exceptus (excipiō, ex-capiō), *ex-
 cept*. 390, a.
exclūdō (ex-claudō), *exclude*. 390,
 a; 511.
excursiō (ex-currō), *excursion*.
 510, a.
exāctus (exigō, ex-agō), *exact*.
 510, b.
exhibitus (exhibeō, ex-habeō), *ex-
 hibit*. 510, b.
exitus, -ūs (ex-eō), *exit*. 510.
expertus (expérior), *expert*. 423, d.
ex-portō, *export*. 510, b.
ex-spīrō, *expire*. 307, b.
extrā, *extra*. 162, b.
fabricātus (fabricor), *fabricate*.
 527, c.
facilis (faciō), *facile*. 501, (2); 510.
factiō, (faciō) *faction*. 510.
factor, (faciō), *factor*. 510.
factus (faciō), *fact*. 510; 523, (3).
falsus, *false*. 415, d.
fāma (for, fārī), *fame*. 404, b.
ferōx (ferus), *ferocious*. 283, b;
 502.
fīniō (fīnis), *finish*. 291, b; 389,
 (3).
fīnis, *fine* (noun). 374, b.
fīnitus (fīniō), *fine* (verb), *finite*.
 389, (3).
flōs, *flower, florist*. 151, a; 258, a.
folium, *foliage*. 62.
fōrma, *form*. 527, c.
fortūna (fors), *fortune*. 480, c.
forum, *forum*, 183, b.
frāctiō (frangō), *fraction*. 510.
frāctūra (frangō), *fracture*. 510.
fragilis (frangō), *fragile, frail*.
 502, 510.
fragilitās (fragilis), *fragility*. 510.
frāgmentum (frangō), *fragment*.
 510.
frāternitās (frāter), *fraternity*. 151,
 a.
fraus, *fraud*. 461, d.
frigidus (frigeō), *frigid*. 502.
 a.

- futūrus** (sum), *future*. 523, *a*.
glōria, *glory*. 258, *a*; 283, *b*.
gradus, -ūs (gradior), *grade*. 461, *d*; 510.
gravis, *grave* (adj.). 242, *b*; 528, *c*.
habeō, *have*. 390; 510, *b*.
habilis (habeō), *able*. 502.
habitātiō (habitō), *habitation*. 510, *b*.
habitō (habeō), *habitat*. 389, (2); 390; 510, *b*.
habitus (habeō), *habit*. 361, *b*; 390; 510, *b*.
homō and **caedō**, *homicide*. 519, *a*.
honor, *honor*. 404, *b*.
horror (horreō), *horror*. 300, *b*.
hortus and **cultūra** (colō), *horticulture*. 258, *a*; 519, *a*.
hostīlis (hostis), *hostile*. 502.
hostilitās (hostīlis), *hostility*. 151.
hostis, *host*. 151.
hūmānitās (hūmānus), *humanity*. 151; 258 *a*.
hūmānus (homō), *human*. 242, *b*; 502, *a*.
humilis (humus), *humble*. 502, *a*.
ignītus (igniō, ignis), *ignite*. 510, *a*.
ignōrāns (ignōrō), *ignorant*. 517, *g*; 523, (1).
ignōrantia (ignōrāns, ignōrō), *ignorance*. 523, (2).
imāgō, *image*. 136, *a*; 151, *a*.
immātūrus (in-mātūrus), *immature*. 324, *b*.
immēnsus (in-mēnsus, metior), *immense*. 488, *d*.
imminēns (im-mineō), *imminent*. 388, *b*.
immortālis (in-mortālis, mors), *immortal*. 488, *d*; 502, *a*; 511.
imperātor (imperō), *emperor*. 151; 258; 527, *b*; 527, *c*.
imperium (imperō), *empire*. 257, (2); 291, *b*.
impetus, -ūs (im-petō, pet-), *impetus*. 307, *b*; 389, (1); 507, *d*.
importāns (im-portō), *important*. 390; 510, *b*; 523, *a*.
importō (in-porto), *import*. 511.
inaugurātus (in-augurō), *inaugurate*. 523, *a*.
incidēns (incidō, in-cadō), *incident*. 523, (1).
incipiēns (incipiō, in-capiō), *incipient*. 510.
in-citō, *incite*. 461, *d*.
in-currō, *incur*. 510.
incursiō (in-currō), *incursion*. 361, *b*; 510.
index (in-dīcō), *index*. 275, *c*.
īferēns (in-ferō), *inference*. 389, (4).
īn-ferō, *infer*. 389, (4).
īnfīnitās (in-fīnis), *infinity*. 151.
inhabitāns (in-habito), *inhabitant*. 390; 523, *a*; 510, *b*.
in-habitō (in-habeō), *inhabit*. 390, *a*; 510, *b*.
inimicus (in-amīcus), *enemy*. 519, *a*; 511, *a*.
iniūria (in-iūs), *injury*. 361, *b*; 506, *c*; 510, *a*; 510, *b*; 528, *b*.
iniūriōsus (iniūria), *injurious*. 501, (5); 510, *b*.
in-iūstus, *unjust*. 374, *b*; 510, *b*.
inquīrō (in-quaero), *inquire*. 510, *a*.
īnsolēns (in-soleō), *insolent*. 529, *c*.
īnstitūtus (īnstituō), *institute*. 404, *b*.
īnsula, *isle*. 62.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- militāris** (miles), *military*. 501, (4); 510, *a*.
militia (mīles), *militia*. 258, *a*; 341, *b*.
miser, *miser*. 62.
miserābilis (miser), *miserable*. 502.
missilis (mittō), *missile*. 510.
missiō (mittō), *mission*. 510.
mōbilis (moveō), *mobile, mob.* 510, *b*.
modus, *mode, mood*. 374, *b*.
mōmentum (moveō), *moment*. 510, *b*.
mōns, *mount*. 151; 210, *b*.
mortālis (mors), *mortal*. 501, (4); 510, *a*.
mōtiō (moveō), *motion*. 510, *b*.
mōtīvus (moveō), *motive*. 510, *b*.
mōtor (moveō), *motor*. 258, *a*; 510, *b*.
moveō, *move*. 223, *c*; 390; 510, *b*.
multitūdō (multus), *multitude*. 136, *a*; 257, (4); 388, *b*.
nāvigātiō (nāvis-agō), *navigation*. 151, *a*.
nāvis, *nave, navy*. 151.
necessitās (necesse), *necessity*. 103, *b*; 151.
negātīvus (negō), *negative*. 528, *c*.
neglēctus (neglegō, nec-legō), *neglect*. 523, *a*.
neglegentia (neglegō), *negligence*. 523, (2).
neuter (ne-uter), *neuter*. 300, *b*.
nōbilis (nōscō), *noble*. 502.
nōminātus (nōminō, nōmen), *nominated*. 223, *b*.
numerus, *number*. 62; 341, *b*.
nūptiālis (nūbō), *nuptial*. 528, *c*.
obiectus (obiciō, ob-iaciō), *object*. 506, *c*; 511, *a*.
obtimeō (ob-teneō), *obtain*. 390, *a*.
occupāns (occupō), *occupant*. 390; 470, *b*; 510.
occupatiō (occupō), *occupation*. 510.
occupō (ob-capiō), *occupy*. 390; 470, *b*; 510.
occurrēns (occurrō), *occurrence*. 510.
occurrō (ob-currō), *occur*. 390, *a*; 510; 511.
oculus, *oculist*. 162, *b*.
offerō (ob-ferō), *offer*. 389, (4); 390, *a*.
officiōsus (officium), *officious*. 502; 510, *a*.
officium (opus-faciō), *office*. 415, *d*; 510.
omnipotēns (omnis-potēns), *omnipotent*. 523, *a*.
omnis, *omnibus*. 415, *d*.
opera (opus), *opera*. 341, *b*.
optimus, *optimist*. 197, *c*.
optiō (optō), *option*. 162, *b*; 258, *a*.
ōrāculum (ōrō), *oracle*. 488, *d*; 510.
ōrātiō (ōrō), *oration*. 257, (2); 480, *c*; 510.
ōrātor (ōrō), *orator*. 510; 521, *d*.
ōrātus (ōrō, ōs), *orate*. 510.
orbis, *orb, orbit*. 151.
ōrdō, *order*. 507, *c*.
oriēns (orior), *orient*. 523, (1).
pācificō (pāx-faciō), *pacify*. 519.
pācificus (pāx-faciō), *pacific*. 519.
paenīnsula (paene-īnsula), *peninsula*. 62, *a*.
paenitentia (paeniteō), *penitence*. 510, *a*.
par, *par*. 317, *b*.

- parēns** (pariō), *parent*. 210, *b*.
pars, *part*. 150.
passiō (patior), *passion*. 510.
passivus (patior), *passive*. 510.
pāstor (pāscor), *pastor*. 103, *b*;
 150.
paternus (pater), *paternal*. 434, *c*.
patiēns (patior), *patient*. 390;
 480, *c*; 523, (1).
patientia (patior), *patience*. 523, *a*.
pāx, *peace*. 151.
per-eō, *perish*. 461, *d*; 510; 511.
perfectus (perficiō, per-faciō), *perfect*. 510; 511, *a*.
periculōsus (periculum), *perilous*.
 502.
periculum, *peril*. 300, *b*.
permanēns (per-maneō), *permanent*. 523, *a*.
per-suādeō, *persuade*. 390, *a*;
 480, *c*.
petitiō (petō, pet-), *petition*. 389,
 (1).
pessimus, *pessimist*. 451, *b*.
pestilentia, *pestilence*. 341, *b*.
placeō, *please*. 291, *b*; 390.
placidus (placeō), *placid*. 501, (3).
poēta, *poet*. 62.
Pompēiānus (Pompēius), *Pompeian*. 528, *b*.
ponderōsus (pondus), *ponderous*.
 502.
pondus (pendō), *ponder*. 168, *a*.
populāris (populus), *popular*. 502.
populus, *people, populace*. 62;
 62, *a*.
portātor (portō), *porter*. 510, *b*.
portō and folium, *portfolio*. 510, *b*.
praeceptus (praecipio, prae-capio),
precept. 523, *a*.
praeda (prehendō), *prey*. 283, *b*.
prae-dicō, *predict*, 390, *a*; 511.
praedictus (prae-dicō), *predict*.
 390, *a*; 510, *b*.
prae-ferō, *prefer*. 389, (4).
praemium, *premium*. 62.
praeventiō (prae-veniō), *preven-*
tion. 510.
praeventus (prae-veniō), *prevent*.
 510; 511, *a*.
pretium, *price*. 488, *d*.
prīmus, *prime, primer*. 62; 62, *a*;
 527, *c*.
prīnceps (prīmus-capio), *prince*.
 94, *a*; 510.
prīncipium (prīnceps), *principle*.
 128, *b*; 259, *a*.
prō-cēdō, *proceed*. 183, *b*.
prōdigium (prō-dicō), *prodigy*.
 404, *b*.
prō-dūcō (dūc-), *produce*. 389,
 (1); 511, *a*.
prōductus (prō-dūcō, dūc-), *pro-*
duct. 389, (1).
prōgressus, -ūs (prōgredior, prō-
 gradior), *progress*. 510.
prohibitiō (prohibeō, pro-habeō),
prohibition. 510, *b*.
prohibitus (prohibeō, pro-habeō),
prohibit. 390, *a*; 510, *b*.
prōmissus (prō-mittō), *promise*.
 510.
prōmōtiō (prō-moveō), *promotion*.
 510, *b*.
prōmōtus (prō-moveō), *promote*.
 510, *b*.
prōtectus (pro-tegō, teg-), *protect*.
 389, (1).
prōvidentia (pro-vidēō), *providence*.
 510, 523, (2).
prōvidēns (prō-vidēō), *provident*.
 510; 523, (1).

- prō-vidēō, *provide*. 510, 511.
 prōvincia, *province*. 527, c.
 prōvisiō (prō-vidēō), *provision*.
 510.
 prō-vocō, *provoke*. 331, b.
 prūdēns (prōvidēns), *prudent*. 510.
 prūdēntia (prūdēns), *prudence*.
 470, b; 510.
 pūblicus (populus), *public*. 374,
 b; 502.
 pūniō (poena), *punish*. 390.
 quaesītus (quaerō), *quest*. 510.
 quaestiō (quaerō), *question*. 510.
 quārtus (quattuor), *quart*. 415, d.
 quiēs, *quiet*. 341, b.
 rapāx (rapiō), *rapacious*. 501,
 (1).
 rapidus (rapiō), *rapid*. 501, (3).
 rapīna (rapiō), *rapine*. 94, a.
 recipiēns (recipiō, re-capiō), *re-*
cipient. 510, a.
 recipiō (re-capiō), *receive*. 510.
 referēns (re-ferō), *reference*. 389,
 (4).
 re-ferō, *refer*. 389, (4).
 refrāctiō (refrango), *refraction*.
 510.
 refrāctus (refringō, re-frangō), *re-*
fract. 510.
 rēgālis (rēx), *regal*. 502.
 regēns (regō), *regent*. 390.
 rēgnō (rēgnum), *reign* (verb). 77,
 b.
 rēgnum (rēx), *reign* (noun). 77,
 b; 258.
 relātus (re-ferō), *relate*. 389, (4).
 religiō, *religion*. 258; 275, c.
 religiōsus (religiō), *religious*. 502.
 re-mittō, *remit*. 510.
 remōtus (re-moveō), *remote*. 510,
 b.
 re-moveō, *remove*. 510, b.
 re-pellō, *repel*. 529, c.
 re-petō, *repeat*. 374, b.
 re-portō, *report*. 423, d; 510, b;
 511, a.
 repulsus (re-pellō), *repulse*. 529, c.
 requirō (re-quaerō), *require*. 510,
 511.
 requisitiō (requirō), *requisition*.
 510.
 requisītus (requirō), *request*. 510.
 re-sistō, *resist*. 197, c.
 re-spondeō, *respond*. 423, d.
 respōnsus (re-spondeō), *response*.
 423, d.
 rēs-pūblica, *republic*. 470, b;
 519, a.
 re-vocō, *revoke*. 522, c.
 ruīna (ruō), *ruin*. 341, b.
 rūsticus (rūs), *rustic*. 501, (4).
 salūtō (salūs), *salute*. 111, b.
 scientia (sciēns, sciō), *science*.
 389, (4), b; 523, (2).
 scrībō, *scribe*. 341, b; 390; 527, c.
 scrīptūra (scrībō), *scripture*. 62,
 a; 257, (2).
 scrīptus (scrībō), *script*. 62; 341,
 b; 390; 527, c.
 sē-cēdō, *secede*. 511.
 secundus (sequor), *second*. 307, b.
 sēditiō (sed-itiō, eō) *sedition*. 510.
 sēditiōsus (sēditiō), *seditionous*. 510.
 senātor (senex), *senator*. 223, b;
 510, a; 529, b.
 senātus (senex), *senate*. 461, d;
 510, a.
 sententia (sentiēns, sentiō), *sen-*
tence. 523, a; 517, g.
 sequentia (sequēns, sequor), *se-*
quence. 528, c.
 sermō (serō), *sermon*. 258.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- testāmentum** (testor), *testament*.
 404, b.
timidus (timeō), *timid*. 502, a.
tractus (trahō), *tract*. 523, a.
trānsāctus (trānsigō, trāns-agō),
transact. 510, b.
trāns-ferō, *transfer*. 389, (4); 511, a.
trānsfīxus (trāns-fīgō), *transfix*.
 324, b.
trānsgressiō (trānsgridior), *trans-*
gression. 510.
trānsgressus (transgridior, trans-
 gradior), *transgress*. 510.
trānsiēns (trāns-eō), *transient*. 510.
trānsitīvus (trāns-eō), *transitive*.
 510.
trānsitus, -ūs (trāns-eō), *transit*.
 510.
trānslātus (trāns-ferō), *translate*.
 389, (4); 522, c.
trāns-mittō, *transmit*. 390, a;
 510, 511.
trānsportātiō (trāns-portō), *trans-*
portation. 510, b.
trāns-portō, *transport*. 510, b.
tūtor (tueor), *tutor*. 404, b.
umerus, *humerus*. 77, b.
ūniversus (ūnus-versus, vertō),
universe. 242, b.
urbānus (urbs), *urban*. 501,
 (4).
ūsus (ūtor), *use* (verb). 510.
ūsus, -ūs (ūtor), *use* (noun). 510.
ūtilitās (ūtilis), *utility*. 510.
ūtēnsilis (ūtor), *utensil*. 510.
valeō, *value*. 517, g.
validus (valcō), *valid*. 62; 501,
 (3); 506, c.
vallēs, *vale, valley*. 210, b.
vāllum, *wall*. 128, b.
velōx and **pēs**, *velocipede*. 519, a.
vēndō (vēnum-do), *vend*. 488, d.
verbum, *verb*. 258; 324, b.
vēre and **dictus** (vērus and dīcō),
verdict. 510, b.
vēstibulum, *vestibule*. 434, c.
via and **ductus** (dūcō), *viaduct*.
 519, a.
victor (vincō), *victor*. 128, b;
 151, a; 510.
victōria (victor), *victory*. 258;
 291, b; 510.
victōriōsus (victōria), *victorious*.
 502, a; 510.
videō, *view*. 510.
vincō, *vanquish*. 183, b; 510.
vindicātus (vindicō), *vindicate*.
 528, c.
violentus (vīs), *violent*. 461, d.
virgō, *virgin*. 162, b; 258.
virīlis (vir), *virile*. 502, a.
virtūs (vir), *virtue*. 150; 151, a;
 331, b.
vīs, *vim*. 275, c.
vītālis (vīta), *vital*. 502.
vōciferātus (vōciferor), *vociferate*.
 434.
vōx (vocō), *voice*. 210, b; 258.
vultur, *vulture*. 128, c.

VOCABULARY DRILL

573. The following lists selected from the reading matter of this book contain words suitable for use in drill on the vocabulary. The groups correspond to the chapters covered by the review lessons, and in each group after the first the words are generally arranged in the order of their first appearance. Thus the vocabulary drill may be carried on either in connection with the reviews or with the daily lessons.

Ordinarily only one definition is given here for each Latin word; but it should be understood that in translating a Latin sentence the most appropriate English words should always be employed.

Group I may be used for convenience as a special vocabulary to sections 1-65.

GROUP I

Special Vocabulary

Sections 1-65

NOTE.—This group contains all the Latin words used in sections 1-65, and includes such forms as will be needed in translating the exercises; for example, *Rōmānōrum*, of the Romans, section 3; *vident*, they see, section 18.

<i>ā, ab,</i>	<i>from, by.</i>	<i>amat,</i>	<i>he (she) loves, likes.</i>
<i>aberant,</i>	<i>they were distant.</i>	<i>amātur,</i>	<i>he (she, it) is loved.</i>
<i>aberat,</i>	<i>he (she, it) was distant.</i>	<i>amicus,</i>	<i>friend.</i>
<i>abest,</i>	<i>he (she, it) is distant.</i>	<i>angustae,</i>	<i>narrow.</i>
<i>absunt,</i>	<i>they are distant.</i>	<i>annus,</i>	<i>year.</i>
<i>ad,</i>	<i>to, towards.</i>	<i>antīqua,</i>	<i>ancient.</i>
<i>adultus,</i>	<i>grown to manhood.</i>	<i>antīquīs,</i>	<i>ancient.</i>
<i>Aenēās,</i>	<i>Aeneas.</i>	<i>antīquus,</i>	<i>ancient.</i>
<i>ager,</i>	<i>field.</i>	<i>Āpūlia,</i>	<i>Apulia.</i>
<i>agricola,</i>	<i>farmer.</i>	<i>aqua,</i>	<i>water.</i>
<i>agricolae,</i>	<i>of or to the farmer.</i>	<i>āra,</i>	<i>altar.</i>
<i>agricultūra,</i>	<i>agriculture.</i>	<i>arant,</i>	<i>they plow.</i>
<i>amābat,</i>	<i>he (she) loved.</i>	<i>arat,</i>	<i>he plows.</i>
<i>amant,</i>	<i>they love.</i>	<i>argentum,</i>	<i>silver.</i>
<i>amantur,</i>	<i>they are loved.</i>	<i>Āsia,</i>	<i>Asia.</i>

Athēnae,	Athens.	erant,	they were.
aurum,	gold.	erantne,	were they?
bonus,	good.	erat,	he (she, it) was.
caelō,	sky.	erit,	he (she, it) will be.
caelum,	sky.	es,	you (sing.) are.
Cassius,	Cassius.	est,	he (she, it) is.
Castor,	Castor.	estis,	you (pl.) are.
clāra,	bright.	estne,	is he (she, it)?
clārissimus,	most famous.	et,	and.
clārus,	bright.	et . . . et,	both . . . and.
columba,	dove.	ex,	from.
cōpia,	plenty.	factum,	deed.
corōna,	wreath.	fessus,	tired.
cuius,	whose.	filia,	daughter.
cum,	with.	filius,	son.
cūrābat,	he (she) cared for.	Flaccus,	Flaccus.
dant,	they give.	fluit,	it flows.
dat,	he (she) gives.	flūmen,	river.
datur,	he (she, it) is given.	flūmine,	river.
dē,	concerning, from.	folium,	leaf.
dea,	goddess.	frūmentum,	grain.
decem,	ten.	Graecia,	Greece.
dēlectant,	they please.	grāta,	acceptable.
dēlectat,	he (she, it) pleases.	grātiaē,	thanks.
dēlectantur,	they are pleased.	grātus,	acceptable.
dēlectātur,	he (she) is pleased.	habēbat,	he (she, it) had.
dēlēta,	destroyed.	habent,	they have.
dēnique,	finally.	habet,	he (she, it) has.
Diāna,	Diana.	hās,	these.
discipulus,	pupil.	haec,	this.
discit,	he learns.	hic,	this.
discordia,	dissension.	hoc, hōc,	this.
dīvitiae,	riches.	hominēs,	people.
doctōrēs,	teachers.	Horātī,	of Horace.
doctrīna,	teaching.	Horātius,	Horace.
dominus,	master.	hortus,	garden.
domum,	homeward, home.	ibi,	there.
domus,	home.	illa,	that.
dōnum,	gift.	ille,	that.
dūcēbat,	he led, used to lead.	illud,	that.
ego,	I.	illūstrat,	it illumines, lights up.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

pecūnia,	<i>wealth.</i>	servus,	<i>slave, servant.</i>
per,	<i>through.</i>	sic,	<i>thus.</i>
petunt,	<i>they seek.</i>	silva,	<i>forest.</i>
plēna,	<i>full.</i>	sit,	<i>he (she, it) is.</i>
plēnus,	<i>full.</i>	statua,	<i>statue.</i>
poēta,	<i>poet.</i>	stella,	<i>star.</i>
Pollūx,	<i>Pollux.</i>	stellārum,	<i>of the stars.</i>
populus,	<i>people.</i>	sum,	<i>I am.</i>
portant,	<i>they carry.</i>	sumus,	<i>we are.</i>
portātur,	<i>he (she, it) is carried.</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>
postea,	<i>afterwards.</i>	suntne,	<i>are they?</i>
praemium,	<i>reward.</i>	super,	<i>above.</i>
primus,	<i>first.</i>	templum,	<i>temple.</i>
propter,	<i>on account of.</i>	terra,	<i>earth, ground.</i>
puella,	<i>girl.</i>	tēxērunt,	<i>they covered.</i>
puellae,	<i>girls.</i>	Tiberī,	<i>the Tiber.</i>
puer,	<i>boy, child.</i>	Tiberis,	<i>the Tiber.</i>
puerī,	<i>boys, children.</i>	Trōia,	<i>Troy.</i>
pugna,	<i>battle.</i>	tū,	<i>you (sing.)</i>
pulcher,	<i>beautiful.</i>	tuus,	<i>your.</i>
pulcherrimus,	<i>most beautiful.</i>	ubi,	<i>where?</i>
pulchra,	<i>beautiful.</i>	unde,	<i>whence?</i>
pulchrae,	<i>beautiful.</i>	urbe,	<i>city.</i>
-que,	<i>and.</i>	urbem,	<i>city.</i>
quid,	<i>what.</i>	urbibus,	<i>cities.</i>
quod,	<i>because.</i>	urbs,	<i>city.</i>
quondam,	<i>once.</i>	validus,	<i>strong, well.</i>
quoque,	<i>also.</i>	venit,	<i>he (she, it) comes.</i>
rēgina,	<i>queen.</i>	vēnit,	<i>he (she, it) came.</i>
rēx,	<i>king.</i>	veniunt,	<i>they come.</i>
Rōma,	<i>Rome.</i>	Venus,	<i>Venus.</i>
Rōmam,	<i>Rome.</i>	vērus,	<i>true.</i>
Rōmānōrum,	<i>of the Romans.</i>	via,	<i>street, way.</i>
Rōmānus,	<i>Roman.</i>	viae,	<i>streets.</i>
rosa,	<i>rose.</i>	viīs,	<i>streets.</i>
saepe,	<i>often.</i>	vidēbat,	<i>he saw.</i>
sapientia,	<i>wisdom.</i>	vident,	<i>they see.</i>
sciunt,	<i>they know.</i>	videntur,	<i>they are seen.</i>
scrīpta,	<i>written.</i>	videt,	<i>he (she) sees.</i>
sed,	<i>but.</i>	villa,	<i>a countryhouse.</i>
semper,	<i>always.</i>	vir,	<i>man.</i>

GROUP II

Sections 66-153

sum,	<i>be.</i>	eques,	<i>horseman, knight.</i>
dō,	<i>give.</i>	fortis,	<i>strong, brave.</i>
amō,	<i>love.</i>	gladius,	<i>sword.</i>
animus,	<i>mind.</i>	mīles,	<i>soldier.</i>
atque,	<i>and, and also.</i>	pedes,	<i>foot-soldier.</i>
audiō,	<i>hear.</i>	virtūs,	<i>valor, manliness.</i>
memoria,	<i>memory.</i>	aetās,	<i>time, life.</i>
mittō,	<i>send.</i>	apud,	<i>among.</i>
scribō,	<i>write.</i>	coniūnx,	<i>husband, wife.</i>
semper,	<i>always.</i>	inveniō,	<i>find.</i>
timeō,	<i>fear.</i>	pāstor,	<i>shepherd.</i>
veniō,	<i>come.</i>	portō,	<i>carry.</i>
ventus,	<i>wind.</i>	prīnceps,	<i>chief.</i>
videō,	<i>see.</i>	prohibeō,	<i>prevent.</i>
aedificō,	<i>build.</i>	sōl,	<i>sun.</i>
dūcō,	<i>lead.</i>	aestās,	<i>summer.</i>
habeō,	<i>have.</i>	cōnsul,	<i>consul.</i>
locus,	<i>place.</i>	frāter,	<i>brother.</i>
rēgnum,	<i>kingdom.</i>	māter,	<i>mother.</i>
socius,	<i>companion.</i>	pater,	<i>father.</i>
impediō,	<i>hinder.</i>	soror,	<i>sister.</i>
nūntius,	<i>messenger.</i>	pugnō,	<i>fight.</i>
quō,	<i>where, whither.</i>	arma,	<i>arms.</i>
unde,	<i>whence.</i>	dēfendō,	<i>defend.</i>
appellō,	<i>call, name.</i>	dicō,	<i>say.</i>
clāmō,	<i>call out.</i>	tum,	<i>then.</i>
nihil,	<i>nothing.</i>	flūmen,	<i>river.</i>
reliquus,	<i>remaining.</i>	homō,	<i>man.</i>
spectō,	<i>behold, see.</i>	leō,	<i>lion.</i>
cūrō,	<i>care for.</i>	libertās,	<i>freedom.</i>
cūstōdia,	<i>watch, guard.</i>	at,	<i>but.</i>
occupō,	<i>seize.</i>	liberō,	<i>set free.</i>
rīpa,	<i>bank.</i>	nam,	<i>for.</i>
rēx,	<i>king.</i>	paene,	<i>almost.</i>
bellum,	<i>war.</i>	similis,	<i>like.</i>
caput,	<i>head.</i>	terreō,	<i>frighten.</i>
castra,	<i>camp.</i>	fortiter,	<i>bravely.</i>
dux, ducis,	<i>leader.</i>	imāgō,	<i>image.</i>

ita,	<i>thus, so.</i>	fīnis,	<i>limit, end.</i>
supplicium,	<i>punishment.</i>	hostis,	<i>enemy.</i>
beātus,	<i>happy.</i>	lupa,	<i>she-wolf.</i>
labor,	<i>labor.</i>	mare,	<i>sea.</i>
labōrō,	<i>work.</i>	mōns,	<i>mountain.</i>
laudō,	<i>praise.</i>	nāvis,	<i>ship.</i>
lūdō,	<i>play.</i>	parō,	<i>prepare.</i>
adhibeō,	<i>employ.</i>	pars,	<i>part.</i>
certāmen,	<i>contest.</i>	urbs,	<i>city.</i>
condō,	<i>found.</i>	absum,	<i>be away.</i>
cōstituō,	<i>determine.</i>	conevniō,	<i>come together.</i>
deinde,	<i>then.</i>	cūr,	<i>why.</i>
inter,	<i>between, among.</i>	fēmina,	<i>woman.</i>
itaque,	<i>therefore.</i>	finitimus,	<i>neighboring.</i>
nōmen,	<i>name.</i>	gēns,	<i>race, tribe.</i>
posteā,	<i>afterwards.</i>	indicō,	<i>declare.</i>
prior,	<i>former.</i>	iubeō,	<i>order.</i>
propterea,	<i>on account of this.</i>	lēgātiō,	<i>embassy.</i>
rēgnō,	<i>reign.</i>	lēgātus,	<i>ambassador.</i>
vāllum,	<i>rampart.</i>	rogō,	<i>ask.</i>
victor,	<i>victor.</i>	societās,	<i>alliance.</i>
vocō,	<i>call.</i>	undique,	<i>from everywhere.</i>
barbarus,	<i>uncivilized.</i>	uxor,	<i>wife.</i>
dēsum,	<i>be wanting.</i>	agmen,	<i>army.</i>
flōs,	<i>flower.</i>	arx,	<i>citadel.</i>
genus,	<i>kind.</i>	cōsuetūdō,	<i>custom.</i>
iungō,	<i>join.</i>	forum,	<i>forum.</i>
lēx,	<i>law.</i>	glōria,	<i>glory.</i>
magnitūdō,	<i>magnitude.</i>	imperātor,	<i>commander.</i>
mōs,	<i>custom, manner.</i>	nunc,	<i>now.</i>
multitūdō,	<i>multitude.</i>	orbis,	<i>circle.</i>
tempus,	<i>time.</i>	orbis ter-	
animal,	<i>animal.</i>	rārum,	<i>the world.</i>
cīvis,	<i>citizen.</i>	pōns,	<i>bridge.</i>
collis,	<i>hill.</i>	vīs,	<i>force.</i>

GROUP III

Sections 154-260

crās,	<i>to-morrow.</i>	hodiē,	<i>to-day.</i>
diligenter,	<i>carefully.</i>	iterum,	<i>again.</i>
herī,	<i>yesterday.</i>	libenter,	<i>willingly.</i>



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

<i>ira,</i>	<i>wrath.</i>	<i>oppidānus,</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>legō,</i>	<i>gather, read.</i>	<i>periculum,</i>	<i>danger.</i>
<i>medius,</i>	<i>middle.</i>	<i>vītō,</i>	<i>avoid.</i>
<i>mulier,</i>	<i>woman.</i>	<i>dēnsus,</i>	<i>thick.</i>
<i>proelium,</i>	<i>battle.</i>	<i>gravis,</i>	<i>severe.</i>
<i>tēlum,</i>	<i>weapon.</i>	<i>hūmānus,</i>	<i>human.</i>
<i>vertō,</i>	<i>turn.</i>	<i>interficiō,</i>	<i>kill.</i>
<i>vīvō,</i>	<i>live.</i>	<i>maximē,</i>	<i>most.</i>
<i>vulnus,</i>	<i>wound.</i>	<i>post,</i>	<i>after.</i>
<i>comes,</i>	<i>companion.</i>	<i>salveō,</i>	<i>welcome.</i>
<i>relinquō,</i>	<i>leave.</i>	<i>tempestās,</i>	<i>weather.</i>
<i>vincō,</i>	<i>conquer.</i>	<i>discō,</i>	<i>learn.</i>
<i>agō,</i>	<i>drive, do.</i>	<i>nārrō,</i>	<i>tell about.</i>
<i>ante,</i>	<i>before.</i>	<i>plūrimus,</i>	<i>most.</i>
<i>cārus,</i>	<i>dear.</i>	<i>respondeō,</i>	<i>reply.</i>
<i>cīvitās,</i>	<i>state.</i>	<i>suspiciō,</i>	<i>look up to.</i>
<i>distribuō,</i>	<i>distribute.</i>	<i>diū,</i>	<i>a long time.</i>
<i>ēligō,</i>	<i>choose.</i>	<i>frīgus,</i>	<i>cold.</i>
<i>foedus,</i>	<i>treaty.</i>	<i>hīc,</i>	<i>here.</i>
<i>modo,</i>	<i>only.</i>	<i>maneō,</i>	<i>remain.</i>
<i>moveō,</i>	<i>move.</i>	<i>nāvigātiō,</i>	<i>voyage.</i>
<i>senātor,</i>	<i>senator.</i>	<i>pōnō,</i>	<i>place.</i>
<i>trīstis,</i>	<i>sad.</i>	<i>valeō,</i>	<i>be well.</i>
<i>mēnsis,</i>	<i>month.</i>	<i>vehō,</i>	<i>carry.</i>
<i>ōrō,</i>	<i>beg, entreat.</i>	<i>voluptās,</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>
<i>senex,</i>	<i>old man.</i>	<i>iūstitia,</i>	<i>justice.</i>
<i>dēns,</i>	<i>tooth.</i>	<i>legiō,</i>	<i>legion.</i>
<i>moneō,</i>	<i>advise.</i>	<i>ōrātiō,</i>	<i>speech.</i>

GROUP IV

Sections 261-390

<i>ego,</i>	<i>I.</i>	<i>suus,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>
<i>meus,</i>	<i>my.</i>	<i>cūra,</i>	<i>care.</i>
<i>nōs,</i>	<i>we.</i>	<i>fortūna,</i>	<i>fortune.</i>
<i>noster,</i>	<i>our.</i>	<i>inopia,</i>	<i>want.</i>
<i>tū,</i>	<i>you (sing.).</i>	<i>saepe,</i>	<i>often.</i>
<i>tuus,</i>	<i>your (sing.).</i>	<i>secundus,</i>	<i>favorable.</i>
<i>vōs,</i>	<i>you (pl.).</i>	<i>ars,</i>	<i>art.</i>
<i>vester,</i>	<i>your (pl.),</i>	<i>enim,</i>	<i>for.</i>
<i>suī,</i>	<i>of himself, of them-</i>	<i>hic,</i>	<i>this.</i>
	<i>selves.</i>	<i>iste,</i>	<i>that (of yours).</i>

ille,	<i>that (yonder).</i>	cāsus,	<i>fall.</i>
ipse,	<i>self.</i>	impetus,	<i>attack.</i>
āc,	<i>and.</i>	quia,	<i>because.</i>
claudō,	<i>shut.</i>	spatium,	<i>distance.</i>
habitō,	<i> dwell in.</i>	vulnerō,	<i>wound.</i>
iūs,	<i>right.</i>	aciēs,	<i>line of battle.</i>
creō,	<i>bring forth, make.</i>	diēs,	<i>day.</i>
dissimilis,	<i>different.</i>	dīvidō,	<i>divide.</i>
igitur,	<i>therefore.</i>	hiems,	<i>winter.</i>
is,	<i>this, that.</i>	hōra,	<i>hour.</i>
quī,	<i>who, which.</i>	nox,	<i>night.</i>
mors,	<i>death.</i>	occāsus,	<i>falling, setting.</i>
quaerō,	<i>seek for, ask.</i>	orior,	<i>arise.</i>
sōlum,	<i>only.</i>	regō,	<i>rule.</i>
armō,	<i>arm.</i>	accipiō,	<i>receive.</i>
ferrum,	<i>iron, sword.</i>	atrōx,	<i>fierce, cruel.</i>
finiō,	<i>limit, end.</i>	clāmor,	<i>shouting.</i>
imperium,	<i>government.</i>	cōnficiō,	<i>complete, destroy.</i>
imperō,	<i>command.</i>	nec,	<i>and not.</i>
paucī,	<i>few.</i>	nec . . . nec,	<i>neither . . . nor.</i>
placeō,	<i>please.</i>	spēs,	<i>hope.</i>
prō,	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>	sustineō,	<i>keep back, withstand.</i>
victōria,	<i>victory.</i>	ōrātor,	<i>orator.</i>
adventus,	<i>approach.</i>	quis,	<i>who, what?</i>
cōnspectus,	<i>sight.</i>	fleō,	<i>weep.</i>
cornū,	<i>horn, wing.</i>	pūblicus,	<i>public.</i>
exercitus,	<i>army.</i>	admīrātiō,	<i>admiration.</i>
gaudeō,	<i>rejoice.</i>	altus,	<i>high, deep.</i>
manus,	<i>hand, force.</i>	facinus,	<i>crime.</i>
mox,	<i>soon.</i>	iūdex,	<i>judge.</i>
ōs,	<i>mouth.</i>	lacrima,	<i>tear.</i>
passus,	<i>pace.</i>	difficilis,	<i>difficult.</i>
mille		facilis,	<i>easy.</i>
passūs,	<i>a mile.</i>	crēdō,	<i>believe.</i>
portus,	<i>harbor.</i>	crēscō,	<i>grow.</i>
scientia,	<i>knowledge.</i>	domus,	<i>home.</i>
ūsus,	<i>use.</i>	quiēs,	<i>rest.</i>
concurrō,	<i>run together.</i>	rēs,	<i>affair, thing.</i>
spiritus,	<i>spirit.</i>	dīves,	<i>rich.</i>
praeda,	<i>booty.</i>	maximus,	<i>greatest.</i>
caedō,	<i>cut down, to kill.</i>	summus,	<i>highest.</i>

superior,	<i>higher.</i>	neque . . .	
bene,	<i>well.</i>	neque,	<i>neither . . . nor.</i>
dēlectō,	<i>please.</i>	brevis,	<i>short.</i>
dīmittō,	<i>send away.</i>	canis,	<i>dog.</i>
magis,	<i>more.</i>	currō,	<i>run.</i>
maximē,	<i>most.</i>	eō,	<i>go.</i>
minimē,	<i>least.</i>	ferō,	<i>bear.</i>
num,	<i>whether.</i>	fīō,	<i>become.</i>
optimē,	<i>best.</i>	mālō,	<i>prefer.</i>
quam,	<i>than.</i>	nōlō,	<i>be unwilling.</i>
teneō,	<i>hold.</i>	volo,	<i>wish.</i>
facile,	<i>easily.</i>	officium,	<i>duty, office.</i>
incrēdibilis,	<i>incredible.</i>	per,	<i>through.</i>
ingenium,	<i>nature, character.</i>	rūs,	<i>country.</i>
tamen,	<i>yet.</i>	rūsticus,	<i>belonging to the coun- try.</i>
arbitror,	<i>think.</i>	tangō,	<i>touch.</i>
cōnor,	<i>try.</i>	urbānus,	<i>belonging to the city, city (adj.), urban.</i>
elementum,	<i>element, principle.</i>	āvertō,	<i>turn away.</i>
fidēs,	<i>trust.</i>	audācia,	<i>daring.</i>
loquor,	<i>speak.</i>	carcer,	<i>prison.</i>
morior,	<i>die.</i>	sequor,	<i>follow.</i>
patior,	<i>suffer.</i>	agitō,	<i>drive about, disturb.</i>
potior,	<i>obtain.</i>		
ūtor,	<i>use.</i>		
neque,	<i>neither.</i>		

GROUP V

Sections 391-535

ut,	<i>that, in order that.</i>	ingēns,	<i>great.</i>
nē,	<i>that not, lest.</i>	īnstō,	<i>urge.</i>
tegō,	<i>cover.</i>	prope,	<i>near, almost.</i>
pellō,	<i>drive away.</i>	doceō,	<i>teach.</i>
domicilium,	<i>residence.</i>	cōnsilium,	<i>counsel, plan.</i>
fāma,	<i>report.</i>	iam,	<i>now, already.</i>
perītus,	<i>experienced.</i>	mūrus,	<i>wall.</i>
sedeō,	<i>sit, remain.</i>	nisi,	<i>unless.</i>
dubius,	<i>doubtful.</i>	quālis,	<i>such as, of what kind.</i>
nēmō,	<i>no one.</i>	quantus,	<i>as great, how great.</i>
quīn,	<i>but that, that.</i>	sciō,	<i>know.</i>
cīvilis,	<i>belonging to a citizen, civil.</i>	cum,	<i>when, since, although.</i>
		concordia,	<i>union.</i>



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

574. This vocabulary contains all the Latin words used in the reading matter of the text, but does not include words illustrating word-formation and derivation unless they are found in the text also. These words are included in the list on page 365.

It should be understood that a Latin word is not always translated by the same word in English, the exact meaning being determined by the context. In a vocabulary like this the number of definitions is necessarily limited, but the student need not hesitate to use other English equivalents provided that they seem to express the sense more clearly or more forcibly.

Certain words which are introduced in the reading exercises before their grammatical explanation is given will be found in the vocabulary in the forms used in the text; *e. g.*, **manibus**, section 168; **eaedem**, section 316; **faceret**, section 331.

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *by, from, on the side of.*

abeō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), -itus, *to go away.*

abī, imper of **abeō**, *go away, be-gone.*

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to annul, take away.*

absēns, -ntis, part. of **absum**, *absent.*

absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, *to set free, release, acquit.*

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *to be away, be distant.*

āc, conj., *and, and also.*

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia*, the wife of Faustulus.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to come near, approach, happen, befall, be added to.*

acceptus, -a, -um, part. of **accipiō**, *welcome, acceptable, pleasing.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to receive, welcome, catch, accept.*

accurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run to, run up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to accuse, blame.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, active, spirited, violent.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *edge, line, line of battle.*

√ **acinus, -ī, m.**, *a berry, grape.* √

acus, -ūs, f., *pin.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, according to, for.*

addicō, -ēre, -dixī, -dictus, *to give assent to, be propitious, be favorable.*

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to add to, annex, join.*

adeō, -īre, -iū (-ivī), -itus, *to go to, approach.*

adeō, adv., *to such a degree, so.*

adeptus, -a, -um, part. of **adipīscor**.

- adferō, see afferō.
- adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to affect, inflict upon.*
- adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to employ, use.*
- adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to place near, add to.*
- adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum, *to obtain, acquire, attain.*
- aditus, -ūs, m., *approach; entrance.*
- adiungō, -ere, -iūnxi, -iūnctus, *to join to, unite, annex.*
- adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, assist, support.*
- adlevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to lift up, raise.*
- administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to manage, guide, administer.*
- admīrātiō, -ōnis, f., *admiration, wonder.*
- admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to remind, warn, admonish.*
- adnectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *to tie to, bind to, annex.*
- adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, adultus, *to grow to manhood.*
- adrogō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *to claim, appropriate.*
- adstō, -āre, -stitī, *to stand by or near.*
- adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *to be near, be present.*
- adsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, *to receive, accept, adopt, take.*
- adolēscēns, -ntis, m., *youth, young man.*
- adultus, -a, -um, part. of adolēscō, *grown to manhood, mature.*
- adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come to, arrive.*
- adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, coming.*
- adversus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable, adverse.*
- adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*
- advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call to, summon.*
- aedēs, -is, f., *temple; pl., dwelling, house.*
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build, erect.*
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick.*
- aegritūdō, -inis, f., *sickness, grief; aegritūdō animī, disappointment.*
- aemulātiō, -ōnis, f., *rivalry, emulation, imitation.*
- Aenēās, Aenēae, m., *Aeneas, legendary ancestor of the Romans.*
- aēneus, -a, -um, adj., *of bronze.*
- aequālis, -e, adj., *equal.*
- aequitās, -ātis, f., *fairness, justice, equity, equality.*
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make equal, become equal.*
- aereus, -a, -um, adj., *of copper, bronze.*
- aes, aeris, n., *bronze; pl., aera, statues in bronze.*
- aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*
- aetās, -ātis, f., *age, life, time of life.*
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *to bring to, produce, report.*
- Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa.*
- Āfricānus, -ī, m., *Africanus, a surname of Scipio.*
- ager, agrī, m., *field, land, territory, country.*
- aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go to, approach.*
- agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to drive; disturb, revolve in mind, consider.*
- agmen, -inis, n., *army (on the march).*

- agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to recognize.*
- agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *to lead, drive, do, conduct, agree, arrange, pass (time); quid agis, what are you doing? how are you? grātiās agere, to give thanks, thank.*
- agricola, -ae, m., *farmer.*
- agricultura, -ae, f., *cultivation of the land, agriculture.*
- aiō, defective verb, *I say, assert; ait, he says; aiunt, they say.* √
- Alba Longa, Albae Longae, f., *Alba Longa, an ancient Latin town.*
- Albānī, -ōrum, m., *the Albans.*
- Albānus, -a, -um, adj., *Alban, of the Albans.*
- albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.*
- aliās, adv., *at another time.*
- alibī, adv., *elsewhere.*
- aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time, a little while.*
- aliquandō, adv., *at some time, once, finally, at last.*
- aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., *considerable, somewhat.*
- aliquid, nom. and acc. sing. neut. of aliquis, *something.*
- aliquis, aliquid, indef. pro., *some one, something.*
- aliquot, indecl. adj., *some, several.*
- aliud, nom. and acc. sing. n., of alius, *other; aliud . . . aliud, one thing . . . another thing.*
- alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.*
- alloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *to speak to, address.*
- Alpēs, ium, f., *the Alps mountains.*
- alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two), either, another, a second; alter . . . alter, one . . . the other.*
- altissimus, -a-um, adj., super. of altus, *highest, very high.*
- altior, altius, gen. -ōris, adj., comp. of altus, *deeper, higher.*
- altus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high.*
- amātor, -ōris, m., *lover.*
- ambo, ambae, ambo, adj., *both.*
- ambulāns, -ntis, part. of ambulō, *walking.*
- ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to walk about, journey.*
- amethystus, -ī, f., *amethyst.*
- amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship.*
- amicus, -ī, m., *friend.*
- amittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send away, lose.*
- amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to love, like.*
- amor, pass. of amō, *I am loved.*
- amor, -ōris, m., *love.*
- amphitheātrum, -ī, n., *amphitheater.*
- amphora, -ar., f., *a bottle, flask, pitcher.*
- amplius, adv., *more, more than.*
- ampulla, -ae, f., *a bottle, flask.*
- Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius, a king of Alba Longa.*
- Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus, a king of Rome.*
- angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*
- animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*
- animus, -ī, m., *mind, courage, spirit, disposition.*
- annus, -ī, m., *year.*
- ante, prep. with acc., *before; adv., before.*
- anteā, adv., *before.*
- antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

audācter, adv., *boldly*.

audāx, -ācis, adj., *daring, bold, brave*.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *to dare*.

audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *to hear*.

audīre, pres. inf. of audiō, *to hear*.

audīrī, pres. inf. pass. of audiō, *to be heard*.

auditū, abl. supine of audiō, *to hear*.

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus, *to take away, take off, carry off, remove*.

aufert, see auferō.

aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to flee away from, flee away*.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, strengthen, enlarge, advance*.

augur, -uris, m., *augur, soothsayer* ✓

augurium, -ī, n., *divination, augury*.

Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus, the first Roman emperor; the month of August*.

Aurēlius, -ī, m., *Aurelius, Marcus Aurelius, a Roman emperor*.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden*.

aurum, -ī, *gold*.

auspicātō, adv., *after taking the auspices, by augury*.

auspicium, -ī, n., *divination, augury*.

auster, -trī, m., *the south wind*.

aut, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or*.

autem, conj., *but, however, moreover*.

Aventīnus, -ī, m., *Mount Aventinus at Rome*.

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to turn away*.

avis, -is, f., *bird*.

avītus, -a, -um, adj., *of a grandfather, ancestral*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

B

balneum, -ī, n.; pl., **balneae**, -ārum, f., *a bath, a place for bathing*.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *uncivilized, barbarian*.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, fortunate*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike*.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bene, adv., *well*.

beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness, favor*.

benignē, adv., *kindly*.

benignus, -a, -um, adj., *kind*.

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast, animal*.

bibō, -ere, bibī, *to drink*.

blandus, -a, -um, adj., *persuasive, coaxing, alluring*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good; pl., bonī, good men; bona, good things, goods*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *Britons, inhabitants of Britain*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brundisium, -ī, n., *Brundisium, an ancient town in Italy*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*. 1. The first Roman consul. 2. One of the conspirators against Caesar.

C

C, abbreviation for Gāius, *Caius*.

cado, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *to fall, fall down, fall dead, die*.

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, murder*.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, to cut, cut down, strike, kill.

caelestis, -e, adj., of heaven, heavenly, celestial.

Caelius, -ī, m., the Caelian hill at Rome.

caelum, -ī, n., sky.

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar.

caestus, -ūs, m., a strap loaded with metal balls and wound around the hands for boxing; boxing-glove.

caesus, -a, -um, part., see caedō.

calor, -ōris, m., heat.

campus, -ī, m., field, campus, the Campus Martius at Rome.

candeō, -ēre, -uī, to shine, glitter.

canis, -is, m., dog.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, to sing.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, to take, take captive, make prisoner, capture.

Capitōlium, -ī, n., the Capitol at Rome.

Capitolīnus, -ī, m., the Capitoline hill at Rome.

Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the Capitol, Capitoline.

capra, -ae, f., a she-goat.

captivus, -ī, m., captive, prisoner.

captus, -a, -um, part. of capiō, captured, taken prisoner.

caput, -itis, n., head, capital; minor capitis, deprived of citizenship.

Caracalla, -ae., m., Caracalla, a Roman emperor.

carcer, -eris, m., prison, jail.

cārrior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp. of cārus, dearer, more dear.

cāritās, -ātis, f., affection, esteem, love.

carmen, -inis, n., song.

carpentum, -ī, n., carriage, cart.

Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m., the Carthaginians.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear.

casa, -ae, f., hut, house.

Cassius, -ī, m., Cassius.

Castor, -ōris, m., Castor, the brother of Pollux, with whom as the constellation Gemini, he guides sailors.

castra, -ōrum, n., pl., camp.

cāsus, -ūs, m., fall, accident, chance.

catapulta, -ae, f., a catapult, an engine of war for throwing arrows, stones etc.

Catilīna, -ae, m., Catiline.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, cause or case (in a law suit); causā, (abl.) with gen., for the sake of.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, to guard against, avoid, take care, look out.

cavum, -ī, n., hollow, hole.

cecidērunt, perf., see cadō.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, to go, withdraw, retire.

celer, -ris, -re, adj., swift.

celeriter, adv., quickly.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to keep secret, hide, conceal.

cēna, -ae, f., dinner.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., census.

centum, incl. num. adj., one hundred. ●

centuria, -ae, f., a century, a division consisting of one hundred; a hundred, a division of the Roman people.

- Cerēs**, -eris, f., *Ceres*, the goddess of agriculture.
- certāmen**, -inis, n., *strife, conflict, contest*.
- certātīm**, adv., *earnestly, eagerly, violently*.
- certē**, adv., *certainly, surely, yes indeed*.
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *certain determined*.
- cēterī**, -ae, -a, adj., pl., *the rest, the others*.
- cibus**, -ī, m., *food*.
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, a famous Roman orator.
- circā**, adv., *around, round about, throughout*; prep. with acc., *around*.
- circiter**, adv., *about*.
- circum**, prep. with acc., *about*.
- circumarō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to plow around*.
- circumdō**, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *to build around, surround*.
- circumstō**, -āre, -stetī, *to stand around, surround*.
- circus**, -ī, m., *circle, circus, the Circus Maximus at Rome*.
- cista**, -ae, f., *box*.
- cīvilis**, -e, adj., *belonging to a citizen, of a citizen, civil*.
- cīvis**, -is, m. and f., *citizen*.
- cīvitās**, -ātis, f., *state*.
- clādēs**, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, defeat*.
- clāmitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to shout, call out*.
- clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call, cry out*.
- clāmor**, -ōris, m., *shout*.
- clandestīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *secret, hidden*.
- clangor**, -ōris, m., *noise*.
- clārīor**, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj. comp. of **clārus**, *brighter, more famous*.
- clārīssimus**, -a, -um, adj., super. of **clārus**, *brightest, most famous*.
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, famous; clāra vōx, a loud voice*.
- classis**, -is, f., *class, fleet*.
- Claudiānus**, -a, -um., adj., *of Claudius*.
- claudō**, -ere, clausī, clausus, *to shut, close*.
- clausus**, -a, -um, part. of **claudō**, *closed*.
- clāvis**, -is, f., *key*.
- Clūsīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Clusium, an ancient town in Etruria*.
- Cocles**, -itis, m., *Cocles, Horatius Cocles*.
- coēgī**, -istī, -it, etc., perf, see **cōgō**.
- coepī**, coepisse, coeptum, defective verb, *to begin*.
- cogitātiō**, -ōnis, f., *deliberation, thought, opinion*.
- cognōmen**, -inis, n., *name, the surname, family name*.
- cōgō**, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, *to urge, compel*.
- Collātīnus**, -ī, m., *Collatinus*.
- collis**, -is, m., *hill*.
- colloquor**, -ī, -locūtus sum, *to talk with, converse*.
- color**, -ōris, m., *color*.
- Colossēum**, -ī, n., *the Colosseum at Rome*.
- columba**, -ae, f., *dove*.
- columna**, -ae, f., *column*.
- comes**, -itis, m., *companion*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- cōnserō**, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, *to join, bring together; manūs cōnserere, to join battle.*
- cōnservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to preserve, keep, observe.*
- cōnsidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *to take a position, be seated, sit, encamp, settle.*
- cōnsilium**, -ī, n., *counsel, advice, plan, authority.*
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to see, perceive, behold.*
- cōnspirātor**, ōris, m., *conspirator.*
- cōnstantia**, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy, perseverance.*
- Cōnstantinus**, ī, m., *Constantine, a Roman emperor.*
- cōnsternātus**, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsternō**, *alarmed, in alarm, panic-stricken.*
- cōnstituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to appoint, create, determine, agree, resolve.*
- cōnstō**, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, *to stand together, agree; impersonal, it is certain, evident, agreed.*
- cōnsul**, -ulis, m., *consul.*
- cōnsulātus**, -ūs, m., *consulship, the office of consul.*
- cōnsulō**, -ere, -uī, -tus, *to consider, consult.*
- cōnsultissimus**, -a, -um, adj., *super. of consultus, most learned, experienced.*
- cōnsultus**, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsulō**, *learned, experienced.*
- contemplor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to observe, consider.*
- contendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to hasten.*
- continenter**, adv., *continually.*
- cōntiō**, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting.*
- cōnūbium**, -ī, n., *marriage, the right of intermarriage.*
- conveniō**, -irē, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come together, assemble; impersonal, it is agreed.*
- conversus**, -ā, -um, part. of **convertō**, *turned, turned towards.*
- convertō**, ere, -tī, -sus, *to turn, direct to.*
- convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to call together, summon.*
- cōpia**, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance; pl., forces.*
- Cornēlia**, -ae, f., *Cornelia.*
- Cornēlius**, -ī, m., *Cornelius.*
- cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn, wing (of an army).*
- corōna**, -ae, f., *wreath, garland.*
- corpus**, -oris, n., *body.*
- cōs**, cōtis, f., *whetstone.*
- cotidiē**, adv., *every day, daily.*
- crās**, adv., *to-morrow.*
- Crassus**, -ī, m., *Crassus.*
- creandō**, dat. and abl. gerundive of **creō**, *for or by electing.*
- creātus**, -ā, -um, part. of **creō**, *elected, appointed, having been elected.*
- crēdō**, -ere, **crēdidī**, **crēditus** *to trust, confide in, believe.*
- creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to bring forth, make, elect, appoint.*
- crēscō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētus**, *to be born, grow, increase, be enlarged.*
- crēvī**, perf., *see crēscō.*
- crīminor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to accuse, complain of.*
- crīnis**, -is, m., *hair.*
- crūdēlis**, -e, adj., *cruel.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly*.
crūstulum, -ī, n., *confectionery, sweetmeats, candy*.
cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitus, *to lie asleep, lie*.
cui, dat. sing., see **quī**, **quis**.
cuilibet, dat. sing., see **quīlibet**.
cuiusdam, gen. sing., see **quīdam**.
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to blame, complain of*.
cum, prep. with abl., *with*.
cum, conj., *when, since, although*.
cum . . . tum, conj., *not only . . . but also, both . . . and*.
Cūmaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Cumaean, of Cumae, a town in Campania, the home of the Sibyl*.
cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to delay, hesitate*.
cupīditās, -ātis, f., *desire, avarice*.
cupīdō, -inis, f., *desire, wish*.
cūr, adv., *why*.
cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety*.
Curēs, -ium, m., *Cures, the capital of the Sabines*.
cūria, -ae, f., *curia, one of the divisions of the Roman people, the senate-house, the senate*.
Cūriātius, -ī, m., *Curiatius; pl., the Curiatii*.
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to care for*.
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *to run, hasten*.
currū, abl. sing. of **currus**.
currus, -ūs, m., *a chariot, car*.
cursus, -ūs, m., *a running, passage, way*.
Curtius, -ī, m., *Curtius*.
custōdia, -ae, f., *custody, watch*.
custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard*.
Cybele, -ae, f., *Cybele, a goddess*

worshipped by the Romans as the Great Mother of the gods.

D

dabam, **dabās**, **dabat**, etc., past of **dō**, *I was giving, you were giving, he was giving, etc.*
dabō, future of **dō**, *I shall give*.
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to condemn*.
daps, **dapis**, f., *feast, banquet, meal*.
dare, inf. of **dō**, *to give*.
datum irī, fut. pass. inf. of **dō**, *to be about to be given*.
dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from, concerning*.
dea, -ae, f., *goddess*.
dēbellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to conquer, subdue*.
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to owe, one ought, must, etc.*
decem, incl. num. adj., *ten*.
December, -bris, m., *the month of December*.
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *to decide, determine*.
decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth*.
dēcrētus, -a, -um, part. of **dēcernō**.
dēcurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursus, *to run down, charge, advance rapidly*.
dedī, **dedistī**, **dedit**, etc., perf. of **dō**, *I have given, you have given, he has given, etc.*
dēdō, -ere, **dēdidī**, **dēditus**, *to give up, surrender, deliver, yield*.
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead down, escort, conduct*.
dēfatīgātus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied*.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend*.

- dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *exhausted, weary.*
- dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *to fix, fasten, strike.*
- dēfixus, -a, -um, part. of dēfigō, *fixed, astonished; admiratiōne dēfixus, filled with admiration.*
- dēfūctus, -a, -um, part. of dēfungor.
- dēfungor, -ī, -fūctus sum, *to perform, finish, die.*
- dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus, *to throw down, hurl down, throw.*
- deinceps, adv., *in turn, successively.*
- deinde, adv., *then, thereupon.*
- dēlapsus, -a, -um, part. of dēlabor, *descending.*
- dēlectāns, -ntis, adj., *pleasing, entertaining.*
- dēlectantissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of delectāns, *most (very) entertaining.*
- dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to please, delight, entertain.*
- dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to destroy.*
- dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to choose, select.*
- dēlirō, -āre, *to be crazy, deranged, out of one's wits.*
- dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to move away, remove, depart.*
- dēmīssus, -a, -um, part. of dēmīttō, *sent down, having descended,*
- dēmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send down; pass., to descend.*
- dēmō, -ere, dēmīpsī, dēmīptum, *to take away.*
- dēnique, adv., *finally.* √
- dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick, dense.*
- dēnuō, adv., *anew, again.*
- dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place down, lay down.*
- dērideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -sus, *to laugh at, deride.*
- dēscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *to define, mark off, divide.*
- dēserō, -ere, -ruī, -rtus, *to leave, forsake, abandon.*
- dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to mark out, designate, describe.*
- dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus, *to leap down, dismount.*
- dēsipiō, -ere, *to be silly, be foolish.*
- dēspōnsus, -a, -um, part. of dēspōndeō, *promised, pledged, betrothed.*
- dēsum, deesse, dēfui, *to be wanting, be lacking.*
- dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to prevent, hinder.*
- dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to detain, hinder.*
- deūm, gen. pl., *see deus.*
- deūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *to burn up, destroy.*
- deus, -i, m., *god.* (For declension see sec. 548.)
- dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to devour.*
- dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*
- dextra, -ae, f., *the right hand.*
- diadēma, -atis, n., *diadem, crown.*
- Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana, goddess of the forest and the chase.*
- dīc, imper. of dīcō, *say, tell.*
- dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *to tell, say, declare.*
- dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

edly; *nōn est dubium, there is no doubt.*
ducentī, -ae, -a, adj., two hundred.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead, draw, produce, conduct.
ductūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of dūcō, about to lead.
dum, conj., until, while, as long as.
duo, duae, duo, adj., two.
duodecim, incl. num. adj., twelve.
duodecimus, -a, -um, adj., twelfth.
duodēvigintī, incl. num. adj., eighteen.
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to double, enlarge, increase.
dux, ducis, m., leader.

E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., from, out of.
eā, abl. sing. f., see is.
eadem, nom. pl. f., see idem.
eadem, nom. and acc. pl. n., see idem.
eam, acc. sing. f., see is.
eārum, gen. pl. f., see is.
eat, pres. subj. of eō, let him (her) go, may he go.
eburneus, -a, -um, adj., of ivory.
ecquid, interrog. adv., whether.
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bring up, rear, educate.
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, to bring out, publish, raise, exalt.
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugiturus, to flee away, escape.
egēns, -ntis, adj., poor, needy.
ego, meī, per. pro., I.
ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., excellent, illustrious.
eius, gen. sing., see is.

ēlātus, -a, -um, part. of efferō, raised.
elementum, -ī, n., element, rudiment, principle.
ēligō, -ere, lēgī, -lēctus, to choose, select.
ēlūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, to delude, deceive, make sport of, mock.
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to send forth, throw, hurl.
ēmō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, to buy, purchase.
enim, conj., for.
eō, ire, ivī or iī, itus, to go.
eō, abl. sing. m. and n., see is.
eō, adv., to this place, thither.
eōrum, gen. pl. m. and n., see is.
eōs, acc. pl. m., see is.
Epīrus, -ī, f., Epirus, a province in the northwest of Greece.
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.
eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight; pl., cavalry.
equidem, adv., verily, truly, indeed.
equus, -ī, m., horse.
eram, erās, erat, etc., past of sum, I was, you were, he was, etc.
ergō, adv., therefore, then.
erō, eris, erit, etc., fut. of sum, I shall be, you will be, he will be, etc.
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to break forth, rush forth.
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., eruption, a breaking forth.
Esquilīnus, -a, -um, adj., Esquiline, the Esquiline hill in Rome.
esse, inf. of sum, to be.
esset, past subj. of sum, he (she, it) might be.
et, conj., and; after comparatives

- sometimes, *than*; *et . . . et*,
both . . . and.
- etiam*, adv., *even*.
- Etrūria*, -ae, f., *Etruria*, a country
in Italy.
- Etrūscī*, -ōrum, m., *the Etruscans*,
an ancient people of Italy.
- etsī*, conj., *even if, although*.
- eum*, acc. sing. m., see *is*.
- eundem*, acc. sing. m., see *īdem*.
- ēvocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out*,
call away, summon.
- ex*, prep. with abl., *from, out of*.
- exclūdō*, -ere, -sī, -sus, *to shut out*,
remove, hatch.
- excūdō*, -ere, -dī, -sus, *to forge*,
mold.
- exemplum*, -ī, n., *example, prece-*
dent. †
- exeō*, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go forth, go out*.
- exercitus*, -ūs, m., *army*.
- exiguus*, -a, -um, adj., *small, little*.
- existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to think*,
suppose, believe.
- expellō*, -ere, -pulī, -plusus, *to*
drive out, banish.
- expers*, -tis, adj., *having no part*
in, free from, without.
- expertus*, -a, -um, part. of *ex-*
perior, *having made trial, having*
put to the test.
- expleō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to fill*,
complete, finish.
- explōro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ex-*
amine, explore.
- √ *expōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to*
set forth, explain.
- exposcō*, -ere, -poposcī, *to ask*,
request, demand.
- expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to cap-*
ture, take by storm.
- expulsus*, -a, -um, part. of *expellō*,
driven out, banished.
- exsequor*, -ī, -secūtus sum, *to pur-*
sue, follow.
- expirō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to breathe*
out, expire.
- extinguō*, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus,
to put out, quench, extinguish.
- exsul*, -ulis, m. and f., *an exile*.
- exultāns*, -ntis, part. of *exultō*,
exulting, rejoicing.
- exterreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to*
frighten.
- extrā*, prep. with acc., *outside of*.
- extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj., *most re-*
mote, most distant.
- exūrō*, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *to burn*
up, destroy.
- F
- fābula*, -ae, f., *story*.
- fabricor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to frame*,
construct, build.
- faceret*, past subj. of *faciō*, *should*
make; nē . . . faceret, not to
make.
- faciendum*, acc. gerund of *faciō*,
doing.
- facile*, adv., *easily*.
- facilis*, -e, adj., *easy*.
- facinus*, -oris, n., *deed, action, mis-*
deed, crime.
- faciō*, -ere, fēcī, factus, *to make, do*.
- factum*, -ī, n., *deed, action*.
- factus*, -a, -um, part. of *faciō*,
made, done, accomplished.
- facultās*, -ātis, f., *means, oppor-*
tunity.
- falsus*, -a, -um, adj., *false, untrue*.
- fāma*, -ae, f., *report, fame*.
- fascis*, -is, m., *a bundle, bundle of*
rods, sticks of wood.

- fastidium, -ī, n., *aversion, distaste, fastidiousness.*
- Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus, a shepherd.*
- Februārius, -ī, m., *the month of February.*
- fēlēs, -is, f., *cat.*
- fēliciter, adv., *fortunately, luckily.*
- fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
- fera, -ae, f., *wild beast.*
- ferant, pres. subj. of ferō, *they should bring, carry.*
- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, endure, bring, carry, report, say.*
- ferōcior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp. of ferōx, *more fierce.*
- ferōciter, adv., *fiercely, cruelly.*
- ferōx, -ōcis, adj., *fierce, savage, cruel, warlike.*
- ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword, weapon, arms.*
- fert, pres. indic. of ferō, *he (she, it) brings.*
- fertur, pres. indic. pass. of ferō, *he (she, it) is said, reported.*
- fessus, -a, -um, *wearied, tired, weak.*
- fiat, fiant, pres. subj. of fiō, *may become, be done or committed.*
- fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, faith, confidence, belief.*
- fidus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful.*
- fierī, pres. inf. of fiō, *to be done.*
- fierent, past subj. of fiō, *they might be or were done, committed.*
- fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
- fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*
- fingō, -ere, finxī, fictus, *to form, fashion, mould, make up.*
- finiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, *to finish, end.*
- fīnis, -is, m., *limit, end; pl., territory.*
- fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., *neighbors.*
- fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*
- fīnxisse, perf. inf. act. of fingō, *to have invented, made up.*
- fīō, fierī, factus sum, (pass. of faciō), *to be made, be done, become.*
- fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to strengthen, encourage.*
- fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong.*
- fit, third per. of fīō, *he becomes.*
- fīte, imper. of fīō, *be made, become.*
- Flaccus, -ī, m., *Flaccus, the father of the poet Horace.*
- flamma, -ae, f., *flame, fire.*
- flāvus, -a, -um, adj., *yellow.*
- flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *to weep.*
- flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
- flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*
- fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus, *to flow.*
- foculus, -ī, m., *fire-pan, brazier.*
- foedus, -eris, n., *compact, treaty.*
- foedus, -a, -um, adj., *shameful, disgraceful.*
- folium, -ī, *leaf.*
- fōns, fontis, m., *fountain.*
- forās, adv., *out of doors, abroad.*
- forceps, -ipis, m. and f., *a pair of tongs.*
- fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape.*
- formidō, -inis, f., *fear, terror, dread.*
- fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*
- forte, adv., *by chance.*
- fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong.*
- fortissimē, adv., super. of fortiter, *most bravely, very bravely.*
- fortissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of fortis, *bravest, very brave.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

gestus, -a, -um, part. of gerō, *accomplished, done.*

gladiātor, -ōris, m., *a gladiator.*

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.*

Gnaeus, -ī, m., *Gnaeus.*

gradior, -ī, gressus sum, *to step, walk, go.*

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, stair, degree.*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

Graecius, -a, -um, adj., *of Greece, Greek.*

grandis, -e, adj., *large, big, full-grown.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor; pl., grātia, -ārum, thanks.*

grātissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of grātus, *most pleasing, very pleasing.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable, agreeable, welcome.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, great, eminent.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to have, hold, consider; orātiōnem habēre, to deliver a speech.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to have possession of, inhabit, dwell, reside, live.*

haec, nom. sing. f., nom. and acc. pl. n. of hic, *this, these.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

haud, adv., *not.*

Hērcules, -is, m., *Hercules.*

herī, adv., *yesterday.*

Herminius, -ī, m., *Herminius.*

hesternus, -a, -um, adj., *of yesterday, yesterday's.*

hic, haec, hoc, demonst. pro., *this, this of mine; ille . . . hic, the former . . . the latter.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather, tempest.*

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence; hinc . . . hinc, on this side . . . on the other side.*

hīs, dat. and abl. pl., see hic.

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

hoc, nom., and acc., sing. n. of hic, *this.*

hōc, abl. sing. m. and n. of hic, *this.*

hodiē, adv., *to-day.*

hodiernus, -a, -um, adj., *of to-day, to-day's.*

Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer, a famous poet of Greece.*

homō, -inis, m., *a human being, man; pl. people.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, office, preferment.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

Horātius, Horā'tī, m., *Horatius.*

1. pl., the Horatii, the three brothers who fought against the Curiatii. 2. Horatius Cocles, who defended the bridge across the Tiber. 3. the poet Horace.

horror, -ōris, m., *trembling, terror, dread, horror.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to urge, encourage.*

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*

hospes, -itis, m., *host, guest.*

Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Hostilius, Tullus Hostilius, a king of Rome.*

hostis, -is, m., *enemy.*

Hostius, -ī, m., *Hostius.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.*

huius, gen. sing., see *hic*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to man, human.*

humī, loc. of humus, *on the ground.*

humilis, -e, adj., *low, humble.*

humus, -ī, f., *the ground; loc., humī, on the ground.*

hunc, acc. sing. m., see *hic*.

I

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, *to lie, lie prostrate.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *to throw.*

iam, adv., *now, already.*

Īaniculum, -ī, n., *Mount Janiculum at Rome.*

Īanus, -ī, m., *Janus, the temple of Janus.*

Īanuārius, -ī, m., *the month of January.*

ībam, ības, ībat, etc., past of eō, *I was going, you were going, etc.*

ibi, adv., *there.*

ībō, ībis, ībit, etc., fut. of eō, *I shall go, you will go, etc.*

īcō, -ere, īcī, ictus, *to make or strike a treaty or league.*

id, nom. and acc. sing. n., see *is*.

īdem, eadem, idem, demonst. pro., *the same; idem . . . quī, the same . . . as.*

Īdūs, -uum, f., *the Ides, the fifteenth day of the month in March, May, July, and October; in other months the thirteenth.*

ierō, ieris, etc., fut. perf. of eō, *I shall have gone, etc.*

igitur, conj., *therefore, then, accordingly.*

ignifer, -era, -erum, adj., *fire-bearing, fire—.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *not to know, to be ignorant.*

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nōtus, *to pardon.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

īs, dat. and abl. pl., see *is*.

īsdem, dat. and abl. pl., see *īdem*.

ille, illa, illud, demonst. pro., *that; ille . . . hic, the former . . . the latter.*

illī, nom. pl. m., see *ille*.

illō, abl. sing. m. and n., see *ille*.

illud, nom. and acc. sing. n. of *ille, that.*

illūstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to make light, make clear, illumine, light up.*

imāgō, -inis, f., *likeness, image, statue, picture.*

imbecillus, -a, -um, adj., *weak, feeble.*

imbellis, -e, adj., *cowardly.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain.*

immātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *untimely, unreasonable.*

immemor, -oris, adj., *unmindful, negligent, forgetful.*

immēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, immense.*

imminēns, -ntis, part. of immineō, *near.*

immineō, -ēre, *to threaten, be near.*

immortālis, -e, adj., *immortal.*

impar, -ris, adj., *unequal, not a match for.*

impavidus, -a, -um, adj., *fearless.*

impediō, -irē, -ivī, -itus, *to hinder.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general, emperor.*

imperitus, -a, -um, adj., *ignorant, unskilled, inexperienced.*

imperium, -ī, n., *dominion, power, supremacy.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to rule over, command, demand.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to accomplish, get, obtain.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, violence, fury.*

impiē, adv., *wickedly, impiously.*

impiger, -gra, -grum, adj., *active, energetic, diligent.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, impious.*

impluvium, -i, n., *the impluvium, the basin in the interior of a Roman house to receive the rain-water.*

impōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positus, *to lay upon, impose.*

in, prep. with acc., *to, into, upon, against, among*; with abl., *in, on.*

inaugurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to practice augury, foretell, divine.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, *to set fire to, burn.*

incēnsus, -a, -um, part. of **incendō**, *set on fire, burning.*

incertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*

incidō, -ere, -cidī, *to fall into, fall upon, happen, coincide with.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to incite, arouse.*

inclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out, invoke.*

inclitus, -a, -um, *celebrated, famous, renowned.*

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, *to inhabit, dwell, live.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmmed.*

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to make a noise, clash, upbraid, blame.*

incrēscēns, -ntis, adj., *growing, increasing.*

incubō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to lie in or upon, to sit upon, brood over.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, invasion.*

inde, adv., *thence, from that place, thereafter, after that time.*

index, -dici, m., *index, sign, indication.*

indīcī, pres. pass. inf. of **indīcō**, *to be proclaimed.*

indīcō, -ere, -dixī, dictus, *to declare, publish, announce.*

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead into, bring into, introduce.*

inductus, -a, -um, part. see **indūcō**. ✓

inermis, -e, adj., *without arms, unarmed, defenseless.*

īnfernus, -a, -um, adj., *lower, belonging to the lower regions, infernal.*

īnferus, -a, -um, adj., *low, lower; Mare Īnferum, the Lower or Tyrrhenian Sea.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., *disturbed, hostile, dangerous.*

īnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, *to flow into.*

īnfrā, adv., *below, beneath.*

īnfūsus, -a, -um, part. of **īnfundō**, *poured over or upon.*

ingenium, -ī, n., *nature, temper, character.*

ingēns, -ntis, adj., *great.*

ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go in, enter, begin.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, to come upon, find.

invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call upon, appeal to, implore.

Iovī, dat., see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. pro., himself, herself, itself.

ipsī, ipsae, ipsa, nom. pl. of ipse, themselves.

īra -ae, f., wrath, anger, rage.

īrātus, -a, -um, adj., angered, in anger, angry.

is, ea, id, demonst. pro., this, he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, demonst. pro., that, that of yours.

istī, istae, ista, nom. pl. of iste, those.

ita, adv., thus, so, in this manner.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

itaque, conj., therefore, accordingly.

iter, itineris, n., route, way, passage, march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time, once more.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, -iussus, to order, command.

iucundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, entertaining, delightful.

iūdex, -icis, m., judge.

iugum, -ī, n., yoke, height, summit, ridge.

Iūlia, -ae, f., Julia.

Iūlius, -ī, m., Julius; the month of July.

iungo, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, to join, make (by joining).

Iūnius, -ī, m.; Junius, a Roman name; the month of June.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., Juno, the goddess Juno.

Iuppiter, Iovis, Iovī, etc., m., Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans.

iūs, iūris, n., right, obligation, a court of justice, trial.

iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandī, n., oath.

iussī, iussistī, iussit, etc., perf. indic., see iubeō.

iussus, -ūs, m., order, command.

iussus, -a, -um, part., see iubeō.

iūstē, adv., rightly, justly, duly.

iūstitia, -ae, f., justice.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., just, upright, righteous; iūstī, -ōrum, m., the just.

iuvenca, -ae, f., heifer ✓

iuvenis, -is, m., young man, youth.

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Kalends, the first day of the month.

L

L., abbreviation for Lucius.

labāns, -ntis, part. of labō, wavering, hesitating.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, labor.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to toil, labor, work.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to weep, weep for.

laedantur, pres. subj. of laedō, they may be injured.

laedō, -ere, -sī, -sus, to wound, injure, damage, hurt.

laetissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of laetus, most happy, very happy.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad, happy.

laeva, -ae, f., left hand.

- laevus, -a, -um, adj., *left, on the left hand.*
- lapideus, -a, -um, adj., *of stone.*
- lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
- laqueus, -ī, m., *noose, snare, fetters.*
- Larcius, -ī, m., *Larcius.*
- lārdum, -ī, n., *bacon, lard.* /
- Lārentia, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia, the wife of Faustulus.*
- Lārs, Lārtis, m., *Lars Porsena, a king of Clusium.*
- Latīnē, adv., *in Latin.*
- Latīnī, -ōrum, m., *the people of Latium, the Latins.*
- Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus, king of Latium.*
- Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Latin.*
- Latium, -ī, n., *Latium, the region of Italy in which Rome is situated.*
- latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*
- lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad.*
- laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to praise.*
- Lavinia, -ae, f., *Lavinia, daughter of Latinus and wife of Aeneas.*
- Lavinium, -ī, n., *Lavinium, a city of Latium founded by Aeneas.*
- lebēs, -ētis, m., *kettle, cauldron.*
- lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*
- lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
- lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
- lēgī, lēgistī, lēgit, etc., perf. of legō, *I have read, etc.*
- legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
- legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to gather, choose, read.*
- lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle.*
- lēniter, adv., *gently.*
- leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*
- lētālis, -e, adj., *deadly, fatal.*
- lēx, lēgis, f., *law, terms, conditions.*
- libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
- liber, librī, m., *book.*
- liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.*
- liberī, -ōrum, m., *children.*
- liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to set free, liberate, release.*
- libertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*
- licet, -ēre, licuit, impersonal, *it is permitted, one may.*
- lictor, -ōris, m., *lictor, an attendant to a magistrate.*
- lignum, -ī, n., *wood, fire-wood; pl., pieces of wood.*
- lingua, -ae, f., *language, tongue.*
- lītus, -oris, n., *shore, sea-shore.*
- Livius, -ī, m., *Livy, a Roman historian.*
- locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to put, place, arrange.*
- locuplēs, -ētis, adj., *rich, wealthy, well-supplied.*
- locus, -ī, m., *place; locī, -ōrum, topics; loca, -ōrum, n., places.*
- longē, adv., *far.*
- longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *long continued, lingering.*
- longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.*
- loquitur, *he speaks.*
- loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, say, express.*
- Lucerēs, -ium, m., *the Luceres, one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.*
- lucerna, -ae, f., *lamp.*
- Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*
- Lucretius, -ī, m., *Lucretius, a Roman name.*
- lūcus, -ī, m., *grove.*
- lūdēns, -ntis, part. of lūdō, *playing.*

lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, to play.

lūdus, -ī, m., play, sport, game.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, to mourn, lament.

lūna, -ae, f., moon.

lupa, -ae, f., a she-wolf.

lupus, -ī, m., a wolf.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.

M

māchina, -ae, f., an engine, machine.

Maecēnās, -atis, m., Maecenas, a friend of Augustus and Horace.

maerēns, -ntis, part. of maereō, sorrowing, mourning.

magis, adv., more, rather.

magister, -trī, m., master, teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, m., office, magistrature.

magnitūdō, -inis, f., greatness.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., large.

maior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp. of magnus, larger; maiōrēs, -um, m., forefathers, ancestors.

Maius, -ī, m., the month of May.

male, adv., badly, hardly.

maleficium, -ī, n., mischief, evil.

maleficus, -a, -um, adj., evil-doing, wicked.

mālō, mälle, māluī, to be more willing, to prefer.

malum, -ī, n., evil, mischief.

malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked.

mandātum, -ī, n., order, commission, command, bidding.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, to remain.

manibus, dat. and abl. pl., see manus.

manus, -ūs, f., hand, force, band (of soldiers).

manūs, manuum, nom. and gen. pl., see manus.

Mārcius, -ī, m., Marcius, Ancus 'Marcius, a king of Rome.

Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, a Roman name.

mare, maris, n., sea.

marmor, -oris, n., marble.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, the god of war; war, battle.

Mārtius, -ī, m., the month of March.

māter, -tris, f., mother.

māteria, -ae, f., material, occasion, cause, opportunity.

mātrimōnium, -ī, n., marriage.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to hasten.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, mature.

maximē, adv., super. of magis, most, very much, greatly, very.

maximus, -a, -um, adj., super. of magnus, largest, greatest.

Maximus, -ī, m., Maximus, a Roman name.

mē, acc. and abl., see ego.

meātus, -ūs, m., path, motion.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, middle of, in the midst, moderate; mediā aestāte, in midsummer.

Medūsa, -ae, f., Medusa, whose head turned anyone looking at it to stone.

melior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp. of bonus, better.

melius, adv., comp. of bene, better.

membrum, -ī, n., member.

mementō, imper. of meminī, remember.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move, affect, disturb.*

mox, adv., *soon.*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude.*

multō, abl. as adv., *much, by much.*

multum, adv., *much.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*; pl., *multī, many persons*; *multa, many things.*

mūnimentum, -ī, n., *defence, fortification, protection.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to fortify.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *gift, reward.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*

mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to move; change, exchange.*

mūtuus, -a, -um, adj., *mutual, of each other.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*

namque, conj., *for.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to tell about, tell, talk about.*

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *to be born.*

nātus, -ūs, m., *birth*; *maior nātū, elder*; *minor nātū, younger.*

nātus, -ī, m., *son, child.*

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*

nāvem, acc. of nāvis, *ship, boat.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *voyage.*

nāvis, -is, f., *ship, boat*; *nāvis longa, a war ship.*

Nāvius, -ī, m., *Attus Navius, a Roman augur.*

nē, adv., *not*; *nē . . . quidem, not even* (the included word being emphatic).

nē, conj., *that not, lest, in order*

that not, not to; after verbs of fearing, *that, lest.*

-ne, enclitic, sign of question, *whether.*

Neāpolis, -is, f., *Naples, a coast town of Italy near Rome.*

nec, see neque.

necessitās, -ātis, f., *necessity.*

necne, adv., *or not, whether or not.*

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *not to heed, to neglect.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to say no, deny, refuse.*

negōtium, -ī, n., *occupation, business.*

nēmō, -inis, n., *nobody, no one.*

nempe, adv., *doubtless, surely.*

nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

neque and nec, conj., *and not, nor*; *neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec), neither : . . . nor.*

Nerō, -ōnis, m., *Nero, a Roman emperor.*

nesciō, -īre, -īvī or iī, *not to know, to be ignorant.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two).*

nī, conj., *if not, unless.*

nidus, -ī, m., *nest.*

nihil, incl. noun, n., *nothing.*

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing*; *nihilō minus, no less.*

nimbus, -ī, m., *cloud, storm-cloud.*

nimis, adv., *too, too much.*

nimius, -a, -um, adj., *too much, too great, excessive.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nōbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to make known, render famous.*

nōbīs, dat. and abl. pl., see ego.
 noctū, adv., *by night*.
 nōlī, imper. of nōlō, *be unwilling, do not*.
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *not to be willing, to be unwilling, not to wish*.
 nōmen, -inis, n., *name*.
 nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to name, call*.
 nōn, adv., *not*.
 Nōnae, -ārum, f., *the Nones, the seventh day of the month in March, May, July, and October; in other months the fifth*.
 nōnne, *not?* sign of question expecting the answer *yes*.
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, (pl.) several*.
 nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth*.
 nōs, nom. and acc. pl., see ego.
 nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *to become acquainted with, know*.
 noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pro., *our*.
 nōtus, -a, -um, part. of nōscō, *known*.
 novācula, -ae, f., *razor*.
 novem, incl. num. adj., *nine*.
 November, -bris, m., *the month of November*.
 nōverat, past perf. of nōscō, *he had learned, knew*.
 novus, -a, -um, adj., *new*.
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.
 nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*.
 nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *to veil, be married to, wed, marry*.
 nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *no, not any*.
 num, sign of question expecting the answer *no*; in indirect questions, *whether*.

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius, a king of Rome*.
 numerus, -ī, m., *number*.
 Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor, a king of Alba Longa*.
 Numitōrī, dat., Numitōris, gen., see *Numitor*.
 nummus, -i, m., *a piece of money, a coin*.
 numquam, adv., *never*.
 nunc, adv., *now*.
 nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to announce, report*.
 nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger*.
 nūptus, -a, -um, part., see nūbō.
 nusquam, adv., *nowhere*.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
 obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to offer, present, expose*.
 obiectus, -a, -um, part. of obiciō, *offered, presented*.
 oblītus, -a, -um, part. of oblivīscor, *forgetful, unmindful*.
 oblivīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *to forget, be forgetful, be unmindful*.
 obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *to bury, cover*.
 obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, surety*.
 obstrepō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *to cry out against, abuse*.
 obtestor, -āri, -ātus sum, *to call upon*.
 obtruncō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to slay, kill*.
 obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet*; obviam factus, *having met*.
 obvius, -a, -um, adj., *in the way*; obvius esse, *to meet*.

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, going down, setting.*

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to strike down, kill.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to seize, lay hold of, take possession of.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run to meet, fall in with, oppose.*

octāvus, -a, -um, adj., *eighth.*

octō, indel. num. adj., *eight.*

Octōber, -bris, m., *the month of October.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

offēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *offensive.*

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblatuſ, *to bring to, present, produce.*

officiuſ, -ī, n., *duty, service, part, office.*

oleārius, -a, -um, adj., *of oil, for oil, oil—.*

olim, adv., *once, formerly, sometimes.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*

onus, oneris, n., *burden, load.*

opera, -ae, f., *work, attention.*

operiō, -īre, operuī, opertuſ, *to cover.*

operuisse, perf. act. inf. of **operiō**, *to have covered.*

oppidānuſ, -ī, m., *townsman, citizen.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attack.*

ops, opis, f., *aid, succor, assistance, support, power.*

optimē, adv., super. of **bene**, *very well.*

optimuſ, -a, -um, adj., super. of **bonus**, *best.*

optiō, -ōnis, f., *choice.*

opus, operis, n., *work, labor, need; opus est, there is need.*

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, sea-coast.*

ōrāculuſ, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*

ōrāns, -ntis, part., see **ōrō**.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration, discourse.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator, ambassador.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle; orbis terrārum, the world.*

orbuſ, -a, -um, adj., *bereft of parents or children, orphan, fatherless, childless.*

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to set in order, arrange, appoint.*

ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsuſ ſum, *to begin, undertake.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, line, rank, arrangement, class.*

oriēns, -ntis, part. of **orior**, *rising.*
orior, -īrī, ortuſ ſum, *to arise, rise, begin, take its origin.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to adorn, decorate.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to beg, entreat, plead.*

ortuſ, -a, -um, part., see **orior**.

ōſ, ōris, n., *mouth, face, countenance.*

ōſculuſ, -ī, n., *kiss.*

Ōſtia, -ae, f., *Ostia, a city at the mouth of the Tiber.*

ovāns, -ntis, adj., *rejoicing, exulting, triumphant.*

ovis, -is, f., *sheep.* ✓

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*

P

pacātuſ, -a, -um, part. of **pacō**, *pacified, peaceful.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to roam through, traverse.*
- percellō, -ere, -culī, -culsus, *to smite, cast down, strike with consternation.*
- percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to ask, inquire.*
- perculsus, -a, -um, part., see percellō.
- perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead through, conduct, lead.*
- perductus, -a, -um, part. of perducō, *conducted.*
- pereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to pass away, perish, die.*
- perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to carry through, bring through; pass., reach, arrive.*
- perfidus, -a, -um, adj., *treacherous, faithless.*
- perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to run away, flee for refuge.*
- periculum, -ī, n., *peril, danger.*
- peritus, -a, -um, adj., *experienced, acquainted with, skilled.*
- perlātus sum, perf. pass., see perferō.
- permūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to change, exchange.*
- perpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to urge, compel, prevail upon.*
- perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *continuous; in perpetuum, permanently, for life.*
- persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, *to discharge, pay, render, perform.*
- personō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to resound.*
- perstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *to bind together, seize.*
- persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *to persuade.*
- pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *to reach, extend.*
- pervenio, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come through, arrive.*
- pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
- pessimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of malus, *worst.*
- pestilentia, -ae, f., *plague, pestilence.*
- petitum, acc. supine of petō, *to seek, fetch.*
- petō, -ere, petivī (-iī), petitus, *to seek, ask for, fetch, go to get.*
- Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj., *at Pharsalus, a city in Thessaly where Caesar defeated Pompey.*
- piē, adv., *piously, dutifully.*
- pila, -ae, f., *ball.*
- pilleus, -ī, m., *cap.*
- Piraeus, -ī, m., *the Piraeus, the port of Athens.*
- placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to please, be agreeable, seem good, be determined.*
- placidē, adv., *calmly.*
- placidus, -a, -um, adj., *quiet, calm.*
- platea, -ae, f., *piazza, a public square.*
- plaustrum, -ī, n., *a wagon, cart.*
- plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people.*
- plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*
- plērūmque, adv., *generally.*
- plūrēs, plūra, adj., comp. of multī, *more.*
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of multus, *most, (pl.) very many.*
- plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus, *more.*
- plūs, adv., comp. of multum, *more.*
- pōculum, -ī, n., *cup, a drinking vessel.*
- poena, -ae, f., *punishment; in*

- poenam dare, *to punish*; poenam dare, *to suffer punishment*.
- Poenī, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians*.
- poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.
- pollicendō, abl. gerund of polliceor, *by promising*.
- polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, *to offer, promise*.
- Pollux, -ūcis, m., *Pollux, the brother of Castor, with whom, as the constellation Gemini, he guides sailors*.
- Pompēiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pompey, of Pompeii*.
- Pompēiī, -ōrum, m., *Pompeii, an ancient city of Italy destroyed by an eruption of Vesuvius*.
- Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey, a Roman general*.
- Pompilius, -ī, *Pompilius, Numa Pompilius, a king of Rome*.
- pondus, -eris, n., *weight*.
- pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *to place, set, fix upon, depend upon*.
- pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
- populus, -ī, m., *people*.
- porrēctus, -a, -um, part. of porrigō, *stretched out*.
- Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena, king of Clusium*.
- porta, -ae, f., *gate, a city-gate*.
- portāns, -ntis, part. of portō, *carrying*.
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to carry, bring*.
- portuī, dat. of portus, *for a harbor*.
- portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*.
- posco, -ere, poposci, *to beg, demand, request*.
- positus, -a, -um, part., see pōnō.
- possum, posse, potuī, *to be able*; possum, *I can*; poteram, *I could*.
- post, prep. with acc., *after*.
- posteā, adv., *afterwards*.
- posterus, -a, -um, adj., *following, next*.
- posthāc, adv., *after this*.
- postquam, conj., *after*.
- postrēmō, adv., *finally*.
- postulātum, -ī, n., *demand, request*.
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask for, demand, request*.
- potēns, -ntis, part. of possum, *able, strong, powerful*.
- potestās, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*.
- potior, -irī, potitus sum, *to become master of, acquire*.
- prae, prep. with acc., *before, in front of*.
- praeda, -ae, f., *plunder, booty*.
- praedātor, -ōris, m., *plunderer, robber*.
- praelambō, -ere, *to taste before or first*.
- praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize*.
- praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place before, prefer*.
- praesēns, -ntis, part. of praesum, *present, immediate*.
- praestantia, -ae, f., *superiority*.
- praesum, -esse, -fui, *to be in command of*.
- praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides*.
- precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to entreat, pray, beseech*.
- prehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, *to lay hold of, catch, seize*.
- pretium, -ī, n., *price, worth, value*.

prex, precis, f., (not often in sing.),
prayer.

pridem, adv., *long ago, long since,*
long before.

prīdiē, adv., *the day before.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

primum, adv., *first; quam primum,*
as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., super. of
prior, first.

prīnceps, -ipis, m., *chief, leader,*
the first or foremost.

prīncipiūm, -ī, n., *beginning.*

prior, -us, gen., **-ōris**, adj., comp.,
before, former, first.

prō, prep. with abl., *for, in behalf*
of, before.

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca*, a king of
the Albans.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessus, *to go forth,*
advance.

procul, adv., *far, far off, from a*
distance; procul dubiō, undoubt-
edly.

Proculus, -ī, m., *Proculus.*

prōdigium, -ī, n., *omen, portent,*
prodigy.

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treason, be-*
trayal.

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give*
forth, produce, betray.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

profectus, -a, -um, part., see **profi-**
ciscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to*
bring forth, extend, produce, make
known.

proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, *to*
set out, depart, go.

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go*
forward, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to pre-*
vent, hinder.

prōlātus, -a, -um, part., see **prō-**
ferō.

prope, adv., *near, near by, almost.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to*
hasten on.

propinquus, -ī, m., *relative, kins-*
man.

propius, adv., comp. of **prope**,
nearer.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to*
set forth, publish, propose.

propter, prep. with acc., *on account*
of.

proptereā, adv., *on account of this.*

prōripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus, *to*
snatch away; with sē, to rush
out, hasten.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *to be*
useful, benefit.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call*
out, make appeal to.

proximum, -ī, n., *vicinity.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj., super. of
propior, *nearest, next preceding*
or following, last, next.

prūdentia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill,*
prudence.

pūblicē, adv., *for the state, on behalf*
of the state.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *for the*
state, public; rēs pūblica, the
state.

Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius.*

pudicus, -a, -um, adj., *modest.*

pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, modesty.*

puella, -ae, f., *girl.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy, child.*

pugil, -ilis, m., *a boxer, pugilist.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

quīntus, -a, -um, adj., *fifth*;
quīntus decimus, *fifteenth*.

Quirīnālis, -e, adj., *of Quirinus, Quirinal*.

Quirīnus, -ī, m., *Quirinus*, a name of Romulus.

Quiritēs, -ium, m., *Quirites*, the Roman citizens.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pro., *who, what*; indef., *any one, any*.

quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), indef. pro., *any one, anything, any whatever*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pro., *each, every*.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), indef. pro., *any one you please, any whatever*.

quō, abl. sing. m. and n., see quī and quis.

quō, rel. and interrog. adv., *where, whither*.

quod, conj., *because*.

quod, nom. and acc. sing. n., see quī and quis.

quondam, adv., *once*.

quoque, conj., *also*.

quōs, acc. pl. m., see quī and quis.

quot, incl. adj., *how many*.

R

radius, -ī, m., *rod*, for marking or measuring.

Ramnēs, -ium, m., *the Ramnes*, one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough*.

rapīna, -ae, f., *plundering*.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, *to seize, hurry away*.

raptus, -a, -um, part. of rapiō, *seized*.

ratus, -a, -um, part. of reor, *thinking*.

rēbus, dat. and abl. pl., see rēs.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take back, receive again, accept*; sē recipere, *to draw back, return*.

rectē, adv., *rightly, well*.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to refuse, decline, be reluctant*.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give back, return, surrender*.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go back, return*.

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *to bring back, reduce*.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to renew*.

redit, see redeō.

refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to flee back, flee for safety*.

rēgī, dat. sing., see rēx.

rēgia, -ae, f., *palace, royal residence*.

rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *district, region*.

rēgis, gen. sing., see rēx.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., *royal, of the king*.

rēgnāvisse, perf. act. inf. of rēgnō, *to have reigned*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to reign, rule*.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom, royal power*.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *to guide, conduct, direct, rule, govern*.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus*, a Roman consul and general.

religiō, -ōnis, f., *piety, a sense of duty*.

relinquitur, *he (she, it) is left.*

relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, *to leave behind, abandon, give up, leave.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj., remaining.*

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to put away.*

Remus, -ī, *m., Remus, the brother of Romulus.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to report.*

reor, rērī, ratus sum, *to think, suppose, imagine.*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *to thrust back, reject.*

repente, *adv., suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj., sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *to find, find out, learn, discover.*

repetō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -ītus, *to seek again, ask, demand, recover.*

repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place back, replace, put, place, repose.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring back, get, obtain.*

repulsus, -a, -um, *part., see repellō.*

requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus, *to ask for, need, be in want of.*

rēs, rei, *f., thing, affair, property; rēs gestae, deeds; rēs pūblica, the state; rēs repetere, to demand satisfaction.*

resistō, -ere, -stitī, *to halt, stand, withstand, resist.*

respiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectus, *to look back, regard, be mindful.*

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply.*

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to hold back, detain, keep.*

revertisse, *perf. act. inf. of revertō, to have returned.*

revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to turn back, return.*

revertor, -ī, -versus sum, *to turn back, return.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, *m., king.*

Rhēa, -ae, *f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.*

Rhēnus, -ī, *m., the Rhine river.*

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *to laugh, smile, laugh at.*

rīpa, -ae, *f., bank (of a river).*

rīxa, -ae, *f., quarrel, dispute.*

robur, -oris, *n., oak, strength.* ✓

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask, inquire.*

Rōma, -ae, *f., Rome.*

Rōmānī, -ōrum, *m., the Romans.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj., Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, *Romulus, founder and first king of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, *f., rose.*

rota, -ae, *f., wheel.*

rotundus, -a, -um, *adj., round.*

Rubicō, -ōnis, *m., the Rubicon river.*

ruīna, -ae, *f., downfall, ruin.*

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to break, break in pieces, destroy.*

rūpēs, -is, *f., a rock, a cliff.*

ruptus, -a, -um, *part., see rumpō.*

rūrsus, *adv., again.*

rūs, rūris, *n., country; loc., rūrī, in the country.*

rūsticus, -a, -um, *adj., belonging to the country, rustic, rural, country.*

S

- Sabinae**, -ārum, f., *the Sabine women.*
- Sabinī**, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines.*
- Sabinus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sabines, Sabine.*
- sacer**, -cra, -crum, *consecrated, holy, sacred; pl., sacred things.*
- sacrārium**, -ī, n., *a sanctuary, shrine, sacred place.*
- saepe**, adv., *often.*
- saevus**, -a, -um, adj., *severe, angry, cruel.*
- saltem**, adv., *at least.*
- salūbris**, -e, adj., *healthful, wholesome, beneficial, healthy.*
- salūs**, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, greeting.*
- salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to salute.*
- salveō**, -ēre, *to welcome, hail; salvē, good-day, how do you do?*
- sapientia**, -ae, f., *wisdom, understanding.*
- satis**, adv., *sufficiently, enough.*
- Sāturnius**, -a, -um, adj., *of Saturn.*
- Sāturnus**, -ī, m., *Saturn, the most ancient king of Latium and the god of agriculture.*
- scelerātus**, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, vicious, accursed, guilty; Vīcus Scelerātus, the street where Tullia drove over her father's body.*
- scelus**, -eris, n., *wicked deed, crime.*
- scientia**, -ae, f., *knowledge, science.*
- sciō**, -īre, scīvī, scītus, *to know, understand.*
- Scīpiō**, -ōnis, m., *Scipio, a famous Roman general who conquered Hannibal.*
- scribō**, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, *to write, enroll.*
- scriptor**, -ōris, m., *writer, author.*
- scriptus**, -a, -um, part. of scribō, *written.*
- scūtum**, -ī, n., *shield.*
- sē**, acc. and abl., see suī.
- Sebastiānus**, -a, um, adj., *Sebastian, named for Sebastian, a Roman soldier and Christian martyr.*
- secō**, -āre, secuī, sectus, *to cut.*
- secundus**, -a, -um, adj., *following, second, favorable.*
- secūris**, -is, f., *axe.*
- secūtus**, -a, -um, part., see sequor.
- sed**, conj., *but.*
- sēdecim**, indcl. num. adj., *sixteen.*
- sedeō**, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *to sit, sit still, remain.*
- sēdēs**, -is, f., *seat, residence, dwelling-place.*
- sēdulō**, adv., *carefully.*
- sella**, -ae, f., *seat, chair.*
- sēmēsus**, -a, -um, adj., *half-eaten.* ✓
- semper**, adv., *always.*
- senātor**, -ōris, m., *senator.*
- senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate.*
- senectūs**, -ūtis, f., *old age.*
- senex**, senis, m., *an old man.*
- sententia**, -ae, f., *opinion, sentiment, meaning, sense.*
- sentiō**, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, know.*
- septem**, indcl. num. adj., *seven.*
- September**, bris, m., *the month of September.*
- septendecim**, indcl. num. adj., *seventeen.*
- septimus**, -a, -um, adj., *seventh.*
- sequor**, sequī, secūtus sum, *to follow.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīrāns, -ntis, part. of spīrō, *breathing, lifelike.*

spīritus, -ūs, m., *air, breath, spirit, courage.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to strip, strip off, rob, plunder, spoil.*

spolium, -ī, n., *spoil, plunder, booty.*

spōnsus, -ī, m., *a betrothed man.*

spurius, -ī, m., *spurious.*

stabulum, -ī, n., *stall, stable, barn.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *position, post, station.*

stator, -ōris, m., *stayer, supporter, defender.*

statua, -ae, f., *statue.*

stella, -ae, f., *star.*

stimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to stimulate, arouse.*

stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, *to stand.*

strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, din.*

strictus, -a, -um, part. of stringō, *drawn, unsheathed.*

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, *to draw, strip off, unsheath.*

studium, -ī, n., *zeal, study, pursuit, occupation.*

suādendō, abl., gerund of suādeō, *in advising.*

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *to advise, persuade, urge.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under, near, at the approach of, just before.*

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go under, approach, take upon one's self, take up.*

subiectus, -a, -um, part. of sub-
iciō, *placed under, subdued, con-
quered.*

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *to
overcome, conquer.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

subitus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden.*

sublātus, -a, -um, part., see tollō.

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., *resting
upon piles; pōns sublicius, the
pile bridge at Rome.*

sublīmis, -e, adj., *high, aloft, on
high.*

suī (gen.), dat., sibi, acc. and abl.,
sē or sēsē, reflexive pro., *of
himself, of herself, of itself, of
themselves.*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *to be.*

summa, -ae, f., *sum, total, amount.*

summus, -a, -um, adj., super. of
superus, *highest, the highest part
of.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *to
take up, begin, undertake.*

super, prep. with acc., *above, over;*
adv., *above.*

superātūrus (-a, -um) esse, fut.
inf. act. of superō, *to be about
to overcome.*

superbē, adv., *proudly, arrogantly,
insolently.*

Superbus, -ī, *Superbus, a name of
Tarquin.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud,
arrogant, discourteous.*

superior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj.,
comp. of superus, *higher, super-
ior, former, previous.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to go
over, overcome, remain, sur-
vive.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *to be over, remain, survive.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., *upper, higher, that is above.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment; supplicium dare, to suffer punishment.*

surgēns, -ntis, part. of surgō, *rising.*

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to look up to, mistrust, suspect.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to keep back, hold up, support, withstand.*

sustulerant, past. perf., see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pro., *his, her, its, their.*

T

T., abbreviation for *Titus.*

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., *silent, still.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv., *so, so much.*

tamen, adv., *still, nevertheless.*

tamquam, adv., *as if.*

Tanaquil, -ilis, f., *Tanaquil, the wife of Tarquin.*

tandem, adv., *at last.*

tangō, -ere, -tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*

tantum, adv., *so much, only.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much; tantus . . . quantus, as great . . . as, as much . . . as.*

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia, a Roman maiden.*

Tarpēius, -a, -um, adj., *Tarpeian, of Tarpeia.*

Tarquinius, -ī, *Tarquin, the name of a king of Rome and his descendants.*

Tatius, -ī, m., *Tatius, a king of the Sabines, and afterwards king of Rome with Romulus.*

tē, acc. and abl., see tū.

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover, protect.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm, weather.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, *to stretch, fill (sails), hasten.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *to hold, have possession, keep.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young.*

ternī, -ae, -a, adj., *three each, three on a side.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, ground, land.*

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *to frighten, scare.*

terrestris, -e, adj., *belonging to the earth, earthly, terrestrial.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, fear, terror.*

tertiō, adv., *for the third time.*

tertius, -a, -um, adj., *third; tertius decimus, thirteenth.*

testāmentum, -ī, n., *will, testament.*

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to declare, assert, call to witness.*

thermae, -ārum, f., *warm baths, baths, places for bathing.*

Thēsēus, -a, -um, adj., *of Theseus.*

Tiberim, acc., see Tiberis.

Tiberīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tiber; pater Tiberīnus, father Tiber.*

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber.*

- Tiberius**, -ī, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.
tibi, dat., see **tū**.
timeō, -ēre, **timuī**, to fear, be alarmed.
timidus, -a, -um, adj., fearful, afraid, timid, cowardly.
timor, -ōris, m., fear.
timuisse, perf. act. inf. of **timeō**, to have feared.
tinctus, -a, -um, part. of **tingō**, dyed, colored.
tintinnābulum, ī, n., bell.
Titiēnsēs, -ium, m., the *Titienses*, one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.
Titus, -ī, m., *Titus*, a Roman name; *Titus Vespasianus Augustus*, a Roman emperor.
tollēns, -ntis, part. of **tollō**, raising.
tollō, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, to lift up, arouse, take away, carry off.
tonitribus, dat. and abl. pl., see **tonitrus**.
tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder*.
torvus, -a, -um, adj., stern, grim; as adv., sternly.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, entire, all.
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead across, transfer, remove, bring to, bring across.
trahō, -ere, **trāxī**, **tractus**, to draw, drag.
Trāiānus, -a, -um, adj., of *Trajan*.
traiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to cause to cross over, transfer, pass over.
trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to swim across.
trāns, prep. with acc., across.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, to go across, go over.
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to bring over, transfer.
trānsfigō, -efe, -fixī, -īxus, to pierce through, transfix.
trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, to leap over. ✓
trānslātūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of **trānsferō**, about to transfer.
trecentī, -ae, -a, adj., three hundred.
tredecim, incl. num. adj., thirteen.
trepidus, -a, -um, adj., trembling, fearful, timid.
trēs, **tria**, adj., three.
trigeminī, -ōrum, m., three brothers (born at the same time).
trīgintā, incl. num. adj., thirty.
trīstis, -e, adj., sad, mournful, unhappy.
triumphālis, -e, adj., triumphal.
Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a city in Asia Minor.
tū, **tuī**, per. pro., you.
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.
tubicen, -inis, m., trumpeter.
tuendus, -a, -um, fut. pass. part. of **tueor**, to be defended.
tueor, -ērī, **tūtus sum**, to watch, look to, defend, protect.
tulit, perf. of **ferō**, he bore, endured, proposed.
Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*.
Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius*, *Servius Tullius*, a king of Rome.
Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*, *Tullus Hostilius*, a king of Rome.
tum, adv., then, at that time.
tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to make a disturbance, raise a tumult.
tunc, adv., then, at that time.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come, go.*

vēnisse, perf. inf. act. of veniō, *to have come.*

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to hunt.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

Venus, Veneris, f., *Venus, the goddess of love and beauty.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

Vergilius, Vergi'li, m., *Virgil, a famous Roman poet.*

vērō, adv., *indeed, truly.*

versus, -a, -um, part., see vertō.

versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *to turn.*

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real.*

vēscor, -ī, *to take food, eat.*

vesper, -eris, m., *the evening;*

vesperī, as adv., *in the evening.*

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta, the Roman goddess of the home.*

vestālis, -e, adj., of Vesta, *vestal.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pro., *your, yours.*

vēstibulum, -ī, n., *entrance.*

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *step, footstep.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing, vesture, covering.*

Vesuvius, -ī, m., *Vesuvius, a mountain and volcano in Italy.*

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to forbid, prohibit, prevent.*

vetus, veteris, adj., *old, veteran.*

via, -ae, f., *street, way, road.*

viātor, -ōris, *traveler.*

vicem, in vicem, adv., *by turns, one after the other.*

vicīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*

victor, -ōris, m., *victor.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

victus, -a, -um, part. of vincō.

vīcus, -ī, m., *street, quarter, village.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see; pass., to be seen, to seem.*

vidētur, *he (she, it) is seen, seems.*

vīdī, vīdistī, vīdit, etc., perf.

indic. act. of videō, *I have seen, you have seen, etc.*

vīdisse, perf. inf. act. of videō, *to have seen.*

vidua, -ae, f., *widow.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watching, a watch (the fourth part of the night).*

vīgintī, incl. num. adj., *twenty.*

villa, -ae, f., *villa, a country house.*

Vīminālis, -e, adj., with collis or mōns, *the Viminal hill at Rome.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *to conquer, overcome, defeat.*

vinculum, -ī, n., *bond, fetter, prison.*

vindicātus (-a, -um) esse, perf. inf. pass. of vindicō, *to have been punished.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to punish, avenge, claim.*

violentus, -a, -um, adj., *violent, impetuous.*

vir, virī, m., *hero, man, husband.*

vīrēs, vīrium, pl. of vīs, *strength.*

virga, -ae, f., *branch, rod.*

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden.*

virgula, -ae, f., *a little branch, small rod.*

virīlis, -e, adj., *manly.*

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manhood, valor, virtue.*

vīs, vis, f., *force, power, strength, violence.*

vīs, pres. indic. of volō, *you wish.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life.*

- vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to avoid, escape.*
- vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctus, *to live, dwell.*
- vīvus, -a, -um, adj.; *living, lifelike; mē vīvō, while I am living.*
- vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly.*
- vōbīs, dat. and abl. pl. of tū.
- vōciferor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to call out, cry out.*
- vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call.*
- volāns, -ntis, part. of volō, *flying.*
- volēbat, past of volō, *he wished.*
- volitō, -āre, -āvī, *to fly about, hasten.*
- volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fly.*
- volō, velle, voluī, *to wish, desire, will.*
- voltus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks.*
- voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure, delight, enjoyment.*
- vōs, vestrum (vestrī), pl. of tū.
- vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, promise, prayer.*
- voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *to vow, promise.*
- vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, speech.*
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wound.*
- vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*
- vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*
- vult, pres. indic. of volō, *he wishes.*
- vultur, -uris, m., *vulture.*

Z

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama, a town in Africa.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

575. This vocabulary contains the words which are needed in translating the composition exercises into Latin. Additional definitions of the Latin words and the principal parts of the verbs are given in the Latin-English vocabulary, section 574.

A

- a, an,** *omitted in Latin.*
able (to be), possum, posse.
about, *dē with abl.*
above, *adv., super; prep., super with acc; ante with acc.*
acceptable, grātus, -a, -um; acceptus, -a, -um.
accomplish, impetrō, -āre.
accordance (in accordance with), *abl. case.*
according to, *abl. case.*
account (on account of), *abl. case; ob with acc.; propter with acc.; on account of this, propterea.*
accuse, accūsō, -āre; *(of crime)* crīminor, -ārī.
acquit, absolvō, -ere.
Acropolis, arx, arcis, f.
across, trāns *with acc.*
act, factum, -ī, n.; **wicked act,** facinus, -oris, n.
act, agō, -ere.
add to, addō, -ere; **be added to,** accēdō, -ere.
address, adloquor, -ī.
administer, administrō, -āre.
adorn, ōrnō, -āre; **is adorned,** ōrnātur; **are adorned,** ōrnantur.
advance, (increase) augeō; -ēre; *(go forth)* prōcēdō, -ere.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
advise, moneō, -ēre.
Aeneas, Aenēās, -ae, m.
affair, rēs, reī, f.; **affairs of state,** rēs pūblica.
affection, cāritās, -ātis, f.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.
Africanus, Āfricānus, -ī, m.
after, post *with acc.;* **after this,** posthāc.
afterwards, postea.
again, rūrsus, iterum.
against, adverus *with acc.;* in *with acc.;* dat. case.
age (old age), senectūs, -ūtis, f.; *(life-time)* aetās, -ātis, f.
agreement, foedus, -eris, n.; societas, -ātis, f.
Alba Longa, Alba Lōnga, -ae, f.
Albans, Albānī, -ōrum, m.
all, omnis, -e; quisque *with superlative.*
alliance, societās, -ātis, f.
almost, prope.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f.
already, iam.
also, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, f.
although, cum *with subj.*
always, semper.
am, sum, esse.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

believe, *crēdō*, -ere.
 bereft, *orbis*, -a, -um.
 best, *optimus*, -a, -um.
 betrothed, *spōnsus*, -ī, m.
 better, *adj.*, *melior*, -ius, *adv.*,
melius.
 between, *inter* *with acc.*
 bid (*order*), *iubeō*, -ēre; *mandō*,
 -āre.
 bidding, *mandātum*, -ī, n.
 bird, *avis*, -is, f.
 bit (*morsel*), *frūstum*, -ī, n.
 blame, *culpō*, -āre.
 body, *corpus*, -oris, n.
 book, *liber*, *librī*, m.
 booty, *praeda*, -ae, f.
 both, *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo*; **both**
 . . . **and**, *et* . . . *et*.
 boundaries, *finēs*, -ium, m.
 boy, *puer*, -erī, m.
 bracelet, *armilla*, -ae, f.
 branch, *rāmus*, -ī, m.
 brave, *fortis*, -e.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 break off, *dīrimō*, -ere; *abrumpō*,
 -ere; **break down**, *interrumpō*,
 -ere.
 breath, *spīritus*, -ūs, m.
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, m.
 bright, *clārus*, -a, -um.
 bring, *portō*, -āre; **brings**, *portat*;
they bring, *portant*; (*bear*) *ferō*,
ferre; **bring back**, *reportō*, -āre;
bring through, *perferō*, -ferre;
bring across, *trādūcō*, -ere;
bring up, *ēducō*, -āre.
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, m.
 Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, m.
 build, *aedificō*, -āre; **build around**,
circumdō, -are.

burn up, *deūrō*, -ere.
 bury, *obruō*, -ere.
 but, *sed*.
 buy, *emō*, -ere.
 by, *ā* or *ab* *with abl.*; *per* *with*
acc.

C

Caelian Hill, *Caelius*, -ī, m.
 Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, m.
 call, *vocō*, -āre; (*name*) *appellō*,
 -āre; *nōmino*, -āre; **call upon**,
invocō, -āre; **call to witness**,
testor, -ārī; *obtestor*, -ārī; **call**
out, *clāmō*, -āre; (*summon*)
advocō, -āre.
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, n.
 can (*be able*), *possum*, *posse*.
 cap, *pilleus*, -ī, m.
 capital, *caput*, -itis, n.
 capitol, *capitōlium*, -ī, n.; *Capi-*
tōlinus, -ī, m.
 captive, *captīvus*, -ī, m.
 capture, *capiō*, -ere.
 car, *currus*, -ūs, m.
 care, *cūra*, -ae, f.
 care for, *cūrō*, -āre, (*like*) *amō*,
 -āre.
 carry, *portō*, -āre; **carry on**, *gerō*,
 -ere.
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*, -inis, f.
 Carthaginians, *Carthāginiēnsēs*,
 -ium, m.
 Cassius, *Cassius*, -ī, m.
 catch, *accipiō*, -ere.
 cause, *causa*, -ae, f.
 cavalry, *eques*, -itis (*generally in*
pl.).
 celebrated, *inclitus*, -a, -um;
clārus, -a, -um.
 century, *centuria*, -ae, f.

- certain**, quidam, quaedam, quid-
dam (quoddam).
chance, by chance, forte.
change, mūtō, -āre.
chief, prīnceps, -īpis, m.
childless, orbus liberis.
children, liberī, -ōrum.
choice, optiō, -ōnis, f.
choose, dēligō, -ere; legō, -ere.
circus, circus, -ī, m.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, cīvis, -is, m. and f.
city, urbs, urbis, f.; **in the city**,
in urbe; (*objective*) urbem.
city (belonging to the city), urbānus,
-a, -um.
civil, cīvilis, -e.
claim, vindicō, -āre, adrogō, -āre.
clash, increpō, -āre.
class, classis, -is, f.
clear, clārus, -a, -um.
cloak, paludāmentum, -ī, n.
close, claudō, -ere.
closed, clausus, -a, -um.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.; **storm-cloud**,
nimbus, -ī, m.
Clusium, of, belonging to, Clūs-
īnus, -a, -um.
cold, frīgus, -oris, n.
cold, gelidus, -a, -um.
Colosseum, Colossēum, -ī, n.
come, veniō, -īre; **he came**, vēnit.
command, mandātum, -ī, n.
command, imperō, -āre; iubeō,
-ēre; **be in command of**, prae-
sum, -esse *with dat.*
commanded, iussus, -a, -um.
committed, be (of crime), fiō,
fierī.
common, commūnis, -e.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, f.
- companion**, socius, -ī, m.; comes,
-itis, m.
complain of, culpō, -āre; queror, -ī.
conceal, cēlō, -āre; (*disguise*)
dissimulō, -āre.
concerning, dē *with abl.*
condemn, condemnō, -āre.
condition, (*lot*) sors, sortis, f.;
(*terms*) condiciō, -ōnis, f.; lēx,
lēgis, f.
conduct (escort), dēdūcō, -ere;
(*carry on*) gerō, -ere.
connect, coniūngō, -ere; adiūngō,
-ere.
conquer, vincō, -ere.
conquered, victus, -a, -um.
consent, without the consent of,
iniussū.
considerable, aliquantum, -ī, n.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.
consul, cōsul, -ulis, m.
consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, m.
consult, cōsulō, -ere.
conversation, sermō, -ōnis, m.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
could (was able), poteram, poterās,
etc., past of possum.
country (native land), patria, -ae,
f.; (*contrasted with city*) rūs,
rūris, n.; agrī, -ōrum, m.
country (adj.) agrestis, -e.
cover, operiō, -īre; vėlō, -āre.
cowardly, imbellis, -e.
Crassus, Crassus, -ī, m.
crazy, be, dēlirō, -āre.
crime, facinus, -oris, n.
criminal, scelerātus, -ī, m.
cross over, [†]superō, -āre.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e; atrōx, -ōcis.
cry out, vōciferor, -ārī; **cry out**
against, obstrepō, -ere.

Cures, Curēs, -ium, m.
 Curiatius, Cūriātius, -ī, m.
 Curtius, Curtius, -ī, m.
 custody, custōdia, -ae, f.
 custom, mōs, mōris, m.
 cut, secō, -āre; down, caedō, -ere.
 Cybele, Cybela, -ae, f.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, n.
 daring, audāx, -ācis; ferōx,
 -ōcis.
 daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.
 dawn, prīma lūx.
 day, diēs, diēī, m. and f.
 day, good-day, salvē, salvēte, *from*
 salveō.
 daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.
 dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
 dear, cārus, -a, -um; dearer,
 cārīor, -ōris.
 death, mors, mortis, f.
 declare, indicō, -ere.
 decorate, ōrnō, -āre; it is deco-
 rated, ōrnātur; they are deco-
 rated, ōrnantur.
 deed, factum, -ī, n.; wicked deed,
 facinus, -oris, n.
 defeat, superō, -āre; vincō, -ere,
 fundō, -ere.
 defend, dēfendō, -ere.
 defraud, fraudō, -āre.
 delight, dēlectō, -āre; (*he, she*)
 is delighted, dēlectātur.
 demand, exposco, -ere.
 depend upon, *pass. of* pōnō,
 -ere.
 descend, *pass. of* dēmittō, -ere.
 descending, dēlapsus, -a, -um.
 designate, dēsignō, -āre.
 desire, cupīdō, -inis, f.

destroy, dēleō, -ēre; (*break up*)
 interrumpō, -ere.
 destroyed, dēlētus, -a, -um.
 detain, retineō, -ēre.
 Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.
 dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.
 die, morior, morī; dēfungor, -ī.
 different, dissimilis, -e; alius, alia,
 aliud.
 difficult, difficilis, -e.
 difficulty, with, vix.
 dinner, cēna, -ae, f.
 disappointment, aegritūdō animī.
 discharge (*pay*), persolvō, -ere.
 discord, discordia, -ae, f.
 disguise, dissimulō, -āre.
 disease, morbus, -ī, m.
 dishevelled, passus, -a, -um.
 displeasing, be, displiceō, -ēre.
 disposition, animus, -ī, m.
 distance, spatium, -ī, n.
 distant, extrēmus, -a, -um.
 distribute, distribuō, -ere.
 disturb, turbō, -āre.
 disturbance, make, tumultuor,
 -ārī.
 divide, dīvidō, -ere.
 divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um.
 do, faciō, -ere; agō, -ere; how do
 you do? quid agis? do not, nōlī
 with *infin.*
 dog, canis, -is, m.
 doors, out of, forās.
 doubtful, dubius, -a, -um; there is
 no doubt, nōn est dubium.
 down from, dē with *abl.*
 dreadful, foedus, -a, -um.
 drive off, pellō, -ere.
 duty, officium, -ī, n.
 dwell, habitō, -āre.
 dwelling, domicilium, -ī, n.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

flash, micō, -āre.
 flee, fugiō, -ere.
 flight, fuga, -ae, f.
 flow, fluō, -ere.
 flow into, influō, -ere.
 flower, flōs, flōris, m.
 follow, sequor, -ī.
 food, cibus, -ī, m., daps, dapis, f.
 foot, pēs, pedis, m.
 foot-step, vēstīgium, -ī, n.
 for, *ad with acc.*; *prō with abl.*;
 dē with abl.; *dat. case*; (*conj.*),
 nam, namque.
 force (*strength*), vīs, vīs, f.
 forces (*troops*), cōpiae, -ārum, f.
 forest, silva, -ae, f.
 forget, oblivīscor, -ī.
 forgetful, immemor., -oris.
 form, fingō, -ere.
 former, superior, -ōris; **the former**
 . . . **the latter**, ille . . . hic.
 forth, go forth, exeō, -īre.
 fortify, mūniō, -īre.
 fortunate, beātus, -a, -um.
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
 forty, quadrāgintā;
 forty-three, quadrāgintā trēs.
 forum, forum, -ī, n.
 found, condō, -ere.
 founder, conditor, -ōris, m.
 four, quattuor.
 free, liber, -era, -erum; **free from**,
 expers, -tis.
 free (*set free*), liberō, -āre.
 freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
 freeman, liber, liberī, m.
 friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
 friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
 frighten, terreō, -ēre.
 frightened, pavidus, -a, -um.
 from, ā or ab *with abl.*; (*out of*)

ex with abl.; **down from**, *dē with*
abl.

from being, quīn *with subj.*

Fufetius, Fūfetius, -ī, m.

full, plēnus, -a, -um.

fury, impetus, -ūs, m.

G

game, lūdus, -ī, m.

garden, hortus, -ī, m.

garland, corōna, -ae, f.

gate, porta, -ae, f.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.

general, imperātor, -ōris, m.

gentle, mītis, -e.

gift, dōnum, -ī, n.

girl, puella, -ae, f.

give, dō, dare; (*he*) gives, *dat.*;

(*they*) give, dant.

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

gladly, libenter.

gleam, fulgeō, -ēre.

glory, glōria, -ae, f.

go, eō, -īre; veniō, -īre; proficīscor, -ī;

go forth, exeō, -īre; go

to, adeō, -īre; go to fetch, petō,

-ere.

god, deus, -ī, m.

goddess, dea, -ae, f.

gold, aurum, -ī, n.

golden, aureus, -a, -um.

good, bonus, -a, -um; **good men**,

bonī, -ōrum, m.; **good things**,

bona, -ōrum, n.

good-day, salvē, salvēte.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.

grandfather, avus, -ī, m.

grandfather's, avītus, -a, -um.

grandson, nepōs, -ōtis, m.

great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater**,

maior, -ius; **greatest**, maximus,

-a, -um; so great, tantus, -a, -um.

greeting, salūs, -ūtis, f.

grief, aegritūdō, -inis, f.

grow (*increase*), crēscō, -ere; grow to manhood, adolēscō, -ere.

grown to manhood, adultus, -a, -um.

guard, custōs, -ōdis, m.

guardian, tūtor, -ōris, m.

H

hail, salveō, -ēre.

hair, crīnis, -is, m.

hand, manus, -ūs, f.; right hand, dextra, -ae, f.; left hand, laeva, -ae, f.; sinistra, -ae, f.

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.

happy, beātus, -a, -um; laetus, -a, -um.

harbor, portus, -ūs, m.

hard, difficilis, -e.

have, habeō, -ēre; (*he*) has, habet; (*they*) have, habent; (*he*) had, habēbat.

he, is, hic, ille.

head, caput, -itis, n.

healthy, salūbris, -e.

hear, audiō, -īre.

heat, calor, -ōris, m.

heavenly, caelestis, -e.

her, (*obj.*) eam; (*poss.*) eius, *from* is; (*reflex.*) suus; -a, -um.

herself, ipsa; (*reflex.*) suī.

high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um; higher, altior, altius; highest, altissimus, -a, -um.

hill, collis, -is, m.

him, eum, *from* is.

himself, ipse; (*reflex.*) suī.

hinder, impediō, -īre.

his, eius, *from* is; (*reflex.*) suus, -a, -um.

hold, habeō, -ēre; hold up, sustineō, -ēre.

hole, cavum, -ī, n.

home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī; homeward, domum; from home, domō.

honor, honor, -ōris, m.

hope, spēs, speī, f.

hope, spērō, -āre.

Horace, Horātius, -ī, m.

Horatius, Horātius, -ī, m.

horse, equus, -ī, m.

host, hospes, -itis, m.

hostile, infestus, -a, -um.

Hostilius, Hostīlius, -ī, m.

Hostius, Hostius, -i, m.

house, *pl. of* aedēs, -is, f; domus, ūs, f.

how, quid, quam; how great, how much, quantus, -a, -um; how many, quot.

human, hūmānus, -a, -um.

humble, pauper, -eris; humilis, -e.

hundred, centum.

hunt, vēnor, -ārī.

hurry away, rapiō, -ere.

husband, vir, virī, m.

I, ego, meī.

Ides, Idūs, -uum, f.

if, sī; even if, etsī.

image, imāgō, -inis, f.

imitation, aemulātiō, -ōnis, f.

immediately, statim.

immortal, immortālis, -e.

in, in *with* abl.; locative case of names of towns.

increase, crēscō, -ere.

infantry, eques, -itis, m.
 influence, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
 inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. and f.
 injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
 interrupt, intervēniō, -īre.
 into, in *with acc.*
 invade, incursiōnem faciō, -ere.
 invasion, incursiō, -ōnis, f.
 is, est; **is not**, nōne est? **is**
 away, ab-est.
 island, īnsula, -ae, f.
 it, is, ea, id.
 Italy, Ītalia, -ae, f.
 its, suus, -a, -um.

J

Janiculum, Iāniculum, -ī, n.
 Janus (*temple of Janus*), Iānus, -ī,
 m.
 join, cōnserō, -ere; iungō, -ere;
 coniungō, -ere.
 journey, iter, itineris, n.
 joy, gaudium, -ī, n.
 judge, iudex, -icis, m.
 Julia, Iūlia, -ae, f.
 Julius, Iūlius, -ī, m.
 July, Iūlius, -ī, m.
 Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
 justice, aequitās, -ātis, f.; iūs,
 iūris, n.; iūstitia, -ae, f.

K

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, f.
 keep, teneō, -ēre; habeō, -ēre;
 cōnservō, -āre; **keep away**, arceō,
 -ēre.
 kill, caedō, -ere; interficiō, -ere.
 kind, genus, -eris, n.
 kind (*what kind of*), quālis, -e.
 kindly, benignē.
 kindness, beneficium, -ī, n.

king, rēx, rēgis, m.
 kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.
 knight, eques, -itis, m.
 know, sciō, -īre; intellegō, -ere;
 not to know, nesciō, -īre.

L

lamentation, complōrātiō, -ōnis, f.
 land, terra, -ae, f.
 language, lingua, -ae, f.
 Larentia, Lārentia, -ae, f.
 large, magnus, -a, -um.
 larger, maior, mains.
 largest, maximus, -a, -um.
 Lars, Lārs, Lārtis, m.
 last, proximus, -a, -um.
 Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um; **in Latin**,
 Latīnē.
 Latinus, Latīnus, -ī, m.
 latter, hic, haec, hoc; **the former**
 . . . **the latter**, ille . . . hic.
 laugh at, inrīdeō, -ēre.
 Lavinia, Lavinia, -ae, f.
 law, lēx, lēgis, f.; iūs, iūris, n.
 lay down, dēpōnō, -ere.
 lead, dūcō, -ere.
 leader, dux, ducis, m.
 leap down, dēsiliō, -īre.
 learn, discō, -ere.
 learned, cōsultus, -a, -um; **very**
 learned; cōsultissimus, -a, -um.
 learner, discipulus, -ī, m.
 leave, relinquō, -ere.
 left, laevus, -a, -um; sinister, -tra,
 -trum.
 left hand, laeva, -ae, f.; sinistra,
 -ae, f.
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
 less, minor, minus.
 let, *subj. mood.*
 letter, epistula, -ae, f.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

much, multum; **by much**, multō;
very much, maximē; **too much**,
 nimis; **how much**, quantus, -a,
 -um.

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.

murder, caedēs, -is, f.

murder, obtruncō, -āre; interficiō,
 -ere; (*assassinate*) cōnfodiō, -ere.

my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.

name, (*call*) vocō, -āre; appellō,
 -āre.

narrow, angustus, -a, -um.

nation, gēns, gentis, f.

native country, or **city**, patria,
 -ae, f.

nature, (*disposition*) ingenium, -ī, n.

near, imminēns, -ntis.

near, be, adsum, -esse.

neighboring, vicīnus, -a, -um;
 fīnitimus; -a, -um.

neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m.

neither, neuter, -tra, -trum;
neither side, neutri, -trae, -tra;
neither . . . nor, neque . . .
 neque, nec . . . nec.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

next, proximus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, f.; **at night**,
 noctū.

no, nūllus, -a, -um; **no less**, nihilō
 minus.

no one, nēmō, -inis, m.

nor, neque, nec.

not, nōn, haud; (*with imper. and
 subj. of desire*) nē; (*in questions*)
 nōnne.

not to wish, nōlō, nōlle.

nothing, nihil; nihilum, -ī, n.

now, (*at this time*) nunc; (*already*)
 iam.

Numa, Numa, -ae, m.

number, numerus, -ī, m.

Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, m.

O

O that, utinam.

oath, iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandī,
 n.

obey, pareō, -ēre.

obligation, iūs, iūris, n.

obtain, petō, -ere; potior, -īrī.

occasion, māteria, -ae, f.

of, *gen. case*; *ex with abl.*

often, saepe.

old, vetus, -eris.

old age, senectūs, -ūtis, f.

old man, senex, senis, m.

omen (*bird*), avis, -is, f.

on, *in with abl.*; (*of time*) *abl. case*;
on this side . . . on that, hinc
 . . . hinc.

once, quondam, olim; **at once**,
 statim.

one, ūnus, -a, -um; (*of two*) alter,
 -era, -erum; **one . . . the
 other**, alter . . . alter; **one . . .
 another**, alius . . . alius; **on one
 side . . . on the other**, hinc
 . . . hinc.

open, aperiō, -īre.

open, apertus, -a, -um.

or, aut; **either . . . or**, aut . . .
 aut.

oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, n.

order, iubeō, -ēre.

orphan, orbus, -a, -um.

Ostia, Ōstia, -ae, f.

other, alius, alia, aliud; (*of two*)

alter, -era, -erum; (*remaining*)
 reliquus, -a, -um.
 ought, dēbeō, -ēre.
 our, noster, -tra, -trum.
 out of, ex *with abl.*
 outside, extrā *with acc.*
 over, super *with acc.*
 own (*his, her, its*), suus, -a, -um.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.
 palace, rēgia, -ae, f.
 Palatine, Palātium, -ī, n.
 panic-stricken, consternātus, -a,
 -um.
 parent, parēns, -ntis, m.
 part, pars, partis, f.
 pass, (*time*) agō, -ere.
 peace, pāx, pācis, f.
 people, populus, -ī, m.; hominēs,
 -um, m.; common people, plēbs,
 plēbis, f.
 perform, fungor, -ī.
 perish, pereō, -īre.
 permit, sinō, -ere; patior, -ī.
 persuade, persuādeō, -ēre.
 pestilence, pestilentia, -ae, f.
 pieces, (*of wood*) ligna, -ōrum, n.
 piety, religiō, -ōnis, f.
 place, locus, -ī, m.; *pl.*, loca,
 -ōrum, n.
 place, condō, -ere; pōnō, -ere;
 repōnō, -ere; place before,
 praepōnō, -ere.
 plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
 plan, cōsulō, -ere.
 play, lūdus, -ī, m.
 play, lūdō, -ere.
 pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.
 please, dēlectō, -āre; be pleasing,

placeō, -ēre; if you please, sī
 vīs.
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
 plot, insidiae, -ārum, f.
 poet, poēta, -ae, m.
 Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, m.
 Pompilius, Pompilius, -ī, m.
 Porsena, Porsena, -ae, m.
 portent, prōdigium, -ī, n.
 possible, as, *quam with superlative.*
 poverty, inopia, -ae, f.
 power, ops, opis, f.; royal power,
 rēgnum, -ī, n.; supreme power
 imperium, -ī, n.
 powerful, potēns, -ntis.
 praise, laudō, -āre; (*he, she*)
 praises, laudat; (*they*) praise,
 laudant; (*he, she, it*) is praised,
 laudātur; (*they*) are praised,
 laudantur.
 prayer, prex, precis, f.; vōtum, -ī,
 n.
 prefer, mālō, mälle.
 prepare, parō, -āre.
 present, be, praesum, -esse; ad-
 sum, -esse.
 present, praesēns, -ntis.
 preserve, cōservō, -āre.
 prevail, valeō, -ēre.
 prevent, prohibeō, -ēre; dēterreō,
 -ēre.
 prey, praeda, -ae, f.
 price, pretium, -ī, n.
 priests, quīndecemvirī, -ōrum, m.
 prison, carcer, -eris, m.
 prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.
 Proca, Proca, -ae, m.
 proclaim, indicō, -ere.
 Proculus, Proculus, -ī, m.
 promise, polliceor, -ērī.
 propitious, be, addicō, -ere.

prostrate, iacēns, -ntis.
 protect, tueor, -ērī.
 proud, superbus, -a, -um.
 province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
 public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
 Publius, Pūblius, -ī, m.
 punishment, supplicium, -ī, n.
 pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
 pursue, exsequor, -ī.
 put, dō, dare; put away, dīrimō,
 -ere.

Q

quarrel, discordia, -ae, f.
 queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
 questions, *introduced by* -ne, nōnne,
 num.
 quickly, celeriter; very quickly,
 celerrimē.
 quiet, placidus, -a, -um.

R

race, gēns, gentis, f.
 rain, imber, imbris, m.
 raise, tollō, -ere.
 rampart, vāllum -ī, n.
 rather . . . than, magis . . . quam.
 razor, novācula, -ae, f.
 read, legō, -ere.
 reason, causa, -ae, f.
 recall, revocō, -āre.
 receive, accipiō, -ere.
 recognize, agnōscō, -ere.
 recover, repetō, -ere.
 Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
 reign, rēgnum, -ī, n.
 reign, rēgnō, -āre.
 rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre.
 release, liberō, -āre.
 religion, sacra, -ōrum, n.; religiō,
 -ōnis, f.

remain, inaneō, -ēre; remain over,
 supersum, -esse.
 remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
 remember, meminī, meminisse;
 (*be mindful of*) memor sum, esse.
 remove, (*go*) commigrō, -āre;
 (*take off*) auferō, -ferre.
 Remus, Remus, -ī, m.
 renew, redintegrō, -āre.
 renown, glōria, -ae, f.
 renowned, inclitus, -a, -um; clā-
 rus, -a, -um.
 repent, paeniteō, -ēre.
 reply, respondeō, -ēre.
 report, fāma, -ae, f.
 report, nūntiō, -āre.
 resist, resistō, -ere.
 resolve, cōstituō, -ere.
 respect, in respect to, *abl. case*.
 rest, quiēs, -ētis, f.
 retreat, fuga, -ae, f.
 return, redeō, -īre; revertō, -ere;
 revertor, -ī.
 reward, pretium, -ī, n.; mūnus,
 -eris, n.
 Rhea, Rhēa, -ae, f.
 rich, dīves, -itis; locuplēs, -ētis.
 riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, f.
 right, iūs, iūris, n.
 right hand, dextra, -ae, f.
 ring, anulus, -ī, m.
 river, flūmen, -inis, n.
 robber, praedātor, -ōris, m.
 rock, rūpēs, -is, f.
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
 Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, m.
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
 Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
 rose, rosa, -ae, f.
 royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.
 ruin, ruīna, -ae, f.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

slay, caedō, -ere; obtruncō, -āre;
interficiō, -ere.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, tam, ita; so that, ut; so great,
tantus, -a, -um.

soldier, miles, -itis, m.

some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī;
some . . . the others, alterī
. . . alterī.

some one, something, aliquis, ali-
quid (aliquod).

sometimes, interdum.

somewhat, aliquantus, -a, -um.

son, filius, -ī, m.

song, carmen, -inis, n.

soon, mox; as soon as possible,
quam primum.

space, spatium, -ī, n.

speak, dicō, -ere; loquor, -ī.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

spectacle, spectāculum, -ī, n.

spectators, spectantēs, -ium, m.

speech, orātiō, -ōnis, f.; (voice)
vōx, vōcis, f.

spirit, animus, -ī, m.

spoil, spoliū, -ī, n.

sport, lūdus, -ī, m.

star, stella, -ae, f.

state, civitās, -ātis, f.; affairs of
state, rēs pūblica.

statue, statua, -ae, f.

stone (of stone); lapideus, -a, -um.

stop, sistō, -ere.

story, fābula, -ae, f.

strait, fretum, -i, n.

street, via, viae, f.

strength, vīs, vīs, f.

strengthen, firmō, -āre; tūtor,
-ārī.

stricken, panic stricken, cōnster-
natus, -a, -um.

strike, icō, -ere.

strip, spoliō, -āre.

strong, validus, -a, -um.

sudden, subitus, -a, -um.

suddenly, subitō.

suffer, patior, -ī; (permit) sinō,
-ere.

suitable, aptus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, f.

summon, ēvocō, -āre.

sun, sōl, sōlis, m; sunset, occāsus
sōlis.

Superbus, Superbus, -ī, m.

supremacy, imperium, -ī, n.

surround, circumdō, -are.

survive, supersum, -esse.

swim across, trānō, -āre.

sword, gladius, -ī, m; ferrum,
-ī, n.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.

take, capiō, -ere; sūmō, -ere; take
away, dēmō, -ere; take place,
accidō, -ere; take up, subeō,
-īre.

talk about, nārrō, -āre.

Tanaquil, Tanaquil, -ilis, f.

Tarpeia, Tarpēia, -ae, f.

Tarpeian, Tarpēius, -a, -um.

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, m.

Tatius, Tatius, -ī, m.

teacher, magister, -trī, m.

tear, lacrima, -ae, f.

tell, dicō, -ere; nārrō, -āre; mem-
orō, -āre; (order) iubeō, -ēre.

tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f.

temple, templum, -ī, n.

ten, decem.

terms, lēx, lēgis, f.; condiciō,
-ōnis, f.

territory, finēs, -ium, m.; ager, agri, m.

than, quam; *abl. case.*

that, is, ea, id; that of yours, iste, ista, istud; that yonder, ille, illa, illud.

that, ut; (*with verbs of fearing*) nē.

that not, nē; (*with verbs of fearing*) ut.

that, O that, utinam.

the, omitted in Latin.

their, eōrum; suus, -a, -um.

them, m., eōs, illōs; f., eās, illās; n., ea, illa.

themselves, of, suī.

then, tum.

there, ibi, eō.

therefore, itaque.

these, *pl. of* hic, haec, hoc.

Theseus, of, Thēsēus, -a, -um.

they, m., iī, illī; f., eae, illae; n., ea, illa.

thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.

thing, rēs, rei, f.

think, arbitror, -ārī; existimō, -āre; putō, -āre; reor, rērī.

thirty, trīgintā; thirty-one, trīgintā ūnus; thirty-two, trīgintā duo; thirty-seven, septem et trīgintā, trīgintā septem.

this, hic, haec, hoc; on this side . . . on that, hinc . . . hinc.

those, m., iī, illī; f., eae, illae; n., ea, illa.

thou, tū, tuī.

thousand, mille; thousands, milia, -ium, n.

three, trēs, tria; three brothers, trigeminī, -ōrum, m.; three on a side, ternī, -ae, -a.

through, per *with acc.*

throw, mittō, -ere; iaciō, -ere; (*hurl*) dēiciō, -ere.

thus, sic.

thy, tuus, -a, -um.

Tiber, Tiberis, -is, m.

time, tempus, -oris, n.; long time, diū.

to, ad *with acc.*; *dat. case*; (*denoting purpose*) ut *with subj.*; *acc. of supine.*

to-day, hodiē.

to-morrow, erās

too, expressed by the comparative degree.

too much, nimis.

top of, summus, -a, -um.

touch, tangō, -ere.

towards, ad or in *with acc.*

town, oppidum, -ī, n.

transfer, trānsferō, -ferre; trādūcō, -ere.

treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.

treachery, fraus, fraudis, f.

treaty, foedus, -eris, n; societās, -ātis, f.

tree, arbor, -oris, f.

trial (*in law*), iūs, iūris, n.

tribe, gēns, gentis, f.

troop, turma, -ae, f.

Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.

true, vērus, -a, -um; haud falsus, -a, -um.

try, cōnor, -ārī.

Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.

Tullius, Tullius, -ī, m.

Tullus, Tullus, -ī, m.

turn, convertō, -ere.

turn, in turn, in vicem.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vīgintī.

twin sons, geminī, -ōrum, m.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

undertake, sūmō, -ere.
unequal, impar, -paris.
unfaithful, perfidus, -a, -um.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unharmed, intāctus, -a, -um;
incolumis, -e.
uninjured, integer, -gra, -grum.
unite, coniungō, -ere.
unjust, iniūstus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
upbraid, increpō, -āre.
upon, in *with acc.*
upper, superior, -ius.
urge, instō, -āre.
us, *see we.*
use, ūtor, -ī.
useful, ūtilis, -e.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
Vergil, Vergilius, -ī, m.
very, *expressed by the superlative;*
very far, longissimē; very differ-
ent, longē aliud.
vicinity, proximum, -ī, n.
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
violence, vīs, vīs, f.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.
vow, vōtum, -ī, n.
vow, voveō, -ēre.
voyage, nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f.
vulture, vulture, -uris, m.

W

wage (*war*), gerō, -ere.
wall, mūrus, -ī, m.

want, volō, velle.
wanting, be, dēsum, -esse.
war, bellum, -ī, n.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um; ferōx,
-ōcis.
was, *past and perf. of sum.*
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way, via, -ae, f; (*manner*) modus,
-ī, m.
we, nōs, nostrum (nostrī).
weak, fessus, -a, -um; imbecillus,
-a, -um.
wealth, pecūnia, -ae, f; divitiae,
-ārum, f.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
weary, fessus, -a, -um; dēfatīgā-
tus, -a, -um.
weep, fleō, -ēre; lacrimō, -āre.
welcome, accipiō, -ere.
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
well, validus, -a, -um.
well, bene, rectē.
what, quis (quī), quae, quid
(quod).
when, ubi, cum.
whence, unde.
where, ubi, quō.
whether, num.
whetstone, cōs, cōtis, f.
which, *see who.*
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
who, which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod;
acc. sing., quem, quam, quod;
nom. pl., quī, quae, quae; *acc.*
pl., quōs, quās, quae.
who (*interrog.*), quis (quī), quae,
quid (quod).
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
whose, (*sing.*) cuius, (*pl.*) quorum.
see quī.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

INDEX

ā or **ab** with ablative denoting agent, 88.

Ablative case, 16; absolute, 288, 295; accompaniment, 106; agent, 88; cause, 229; comparatives, 334; degree of difference, 335; deponent verbs, 377; manner, 312; means or instrument, 21; origin, 483; place in which, 97; place from which, 98; price, 492; quality, 493; separation, 336; specification, 319; supine, 369, (2); time, 105.

-**ābus**, ending of **dea** and **fīlia** in dative and ablative plural, 16; 30, *b*.

Accent, 6, 542; genitive of nouns ending in **-ium**; genitive and vocative of nouns ending in **-ius**, 41, *b*.

Accompaniment denoted by the ablative with **cum**, 106.

Accusative case, 8; direct object, 13; duration of time, 278; extent in space, 215; place to which, 96; subject of infinitive, 190; indirect discourse, 489; supine, 369; two accusatives, 113.

ācer, declension, 199, 551.

Active voice, 130; personal endings, 66.

Ad Certāmen utrimque Prōcēdunt, 183.

Adjectives, agreement, 55; as nouns, 268; comparison, 328–350; declension: first and sec-

ond declensions, 49–57, 549; irregular, genitive in **-ius**, 207, 214; third declension, 192, 198, 551; denoting a part, 349; English derivatives, 502; formation, 501; position, 28; with dative, 56.

Adverbs, 351–357; comparison, 351, 355, 554; formation, 351, 354, 554; use, 356.

Aenēās, declension, 548.

Aenēās in Ītaliām Venit, 77.

Agent denoted by ablative with passive verbs, 88; denoted by dative with passive periphrastic conjugation, 474.

Agreement, adjectives, 55; appositives, 64; demonstrative pronouns, 277; predicate nouns and adjectives, 31; relative pronouns, 286; verbs, 70.

Agricola et Fīliū, 432.

aliquis (aliquī), declension, 561; meaning, 477.

alius, 207; declension, 214; **alius . . . alius, aliū . . . aliū**, 207.

Alphabet, 1, 536.

altē, formation and comparison, 355, 554.

alter, declension, 214, 550; **alter . . . alter, alterī . . . alterī**, 207.

altior, declension, 333, 553.

altus, comparison, 332, 552.

amāns, declension, 200, 551.

ambo, declension, 212, *a*.

amicus, declension, 41, 544.

- amō, conjugation, 563–566.
 Ancī Filiū Rēgī Īnsidiās Parant,
 434.
 Ancus Mārcius Rēx Creātur, 361.
 Answers to questions, 326, *b*.
 antīquus, comparison, 332.
 Apposition, 64.
 Article, lacking, 2.
 Arrangement of words, 28.
 Artēs Rōmānae, 535.
 Attraction, verb in clause depend-
 ing upon a subjunctive, 514.
 audācter, formation and compari-
 son, 355, 554.
 audāx, declension, 198, 551.
 audeō, semi-deponent, 375, *b*.
 audiō, conjugation, 563–565.
- Base and stem, 30, *a*.
 bene, formation and comparison,
 355, 554.
 bonus, comparison, 348, 552;
 declension, 52, 549.
- capiō, conjugation, 567.
 caput, declension, 95, 545.
 Cardinal numerals, 207, 555.
 Case, 8; names and description:
 nominative, accusative, and voc-
 ative, 8; genitive, dative, and
 ablative, 16; locative, 24.
 Case-endings, first declension, 30;
 second, 41, 47; third, 95; fourth,
 301, fifth, 318.
 Causal clauses with **cum**, 437.
 Cause denoted by the ablative,
 229.
 celeriter, formation and compari-
 son, 355, 554.
 clārus, comparison, 332, 552.
 commands, expressed by the im-
 perative, 204; by the subjunc-
 tive, 443; negative commands,
 383.
 Comparative, ablative with, 334;
 declension, 333; meaning *too* or
rather, 343; **quam** with the
 comparative, 328, 334, *a*.
 Comparison of adjectives, 328–
 350, 552; regular, 332; irregu-
 lar, 345–350; **magis** and **max-
 imē**, 332, *a*; superlatives in
 -limus and -rimus, 338, 342.
 Comparison of adverbs, 351, 355,
 554.
 Completed action, tenses denoting,
 217; 391, (2).
 Compound words, formation, 519.
 Concessive clauses with **cum**, 437.
 Conditional sentences, 447–456;
 definition, 447; first class, 452;
 second class, 453; third class,
 454.
 Conjugation, characteristics of the
 four conjugations, 72; regular
 verbs, 563–565; irregular verbs,
 569; **capiō**, 567; **sum**, 562;
possum, 568; deponents, 570.
 See also the names of the tenses.
 Conjunctions, 170; coördinate,
 171; subordinate, 172.
 cōnor, deponent verb, 570.
 Consecutive clauses with the sub-
 junctive, 409–417.
 Consonants, sounds of, 539.
 Coördinate conjunctions, 171.
 cōnsul, declension, 104, 545.
 cornū, declension, 301, 546.
cum, conjunction, 430; causal and
 concessive clauses, 437; tem-
 poral clauses, 435, 436.
cum, preposition with ablative,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Duration of time denoted by the accusative, 278.
- ego*, declension, 264, 557; use in genitive, 265, *a*; when omitted, 66.
- Enclitics, 171, *b*; *cum*, 264, *c*; 284, *b*; *-que*, 171, *a*.
- English-Latin vocabulary, 575.
- English words derived from Latin, see Derivation.
- eō*, 382; conjugation, 569.
- Extent in space denoted by the accusative, 215.
- fac*, imperative of *faciō*, 201, *b*.
- facile*, formation and comparison, 355, 554.
- facilis*, comparison of, 342, 552.
- faciō*, *a* weakened to *i* in compounds, 177, *b*; *fiō* as passive, 382, *a*, 3.
- Fearing, meaning of *nē* and *ut* with verbs of, 512.
- fer*, imperative of *ferō*, 201, *b*.
- ferō*, 382; conjugation, 569.
- ferōx*, comparison of, 332, 552.
- Fifth declension, 314–320, 547.
- filia*, ending *-ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, 16; 30, *b*.
- Fīlia Salūtem Dicit Mātrī Cornēliae*, 255.
- fīlius*, ending in genitive and vocative singular, 34, 41, *b*.
- Final clauses with the subjunctive, 406, *a*; 396–408.
- fiō*, 382; conjugation, 569; passive of *faciō*, 382, *a*, 3.
- First conjugation, characteristic of, 72. See also *amō*, *dō*, and the names of the tenses.
- First declension, nouns, 8–33, 543; nominative, accusative, and vocative cases, 8–15; genitive, dative, and ablative, 16–22; locative, 30, *c*; gender, 27, 256, (1); typical noun, 30; *dea* and *fīlia*, 30, *b*; adjectives of the first and second declensions, 49–57.
- flōs*, declension, 137, 545.
- flūmen*, declension, 112, 545.
- Fourth conjugation, characteristic of, 72. See also *audiō* and the names of the tenses.
- Fourth declension, 297–303, 546.
- fruor*, ablative with, 377.
- fungor*, ablative with, 377.
- Future indicative, 153–173; four conjugations, active, 159–165; passive, 166–173; *sum* and *dō*, 153–158; tense-sign, 153; 156, *a*; 159; use, 157.
- Future infinitive, active, 358, 362; passive, 358, 366; time denoted, 368.
- Future participle, active, 363; use, 367; passive, 457, 462; use, 464.
- Future perfect, active, 239, 243; passive, 304, 310; use, 244.
- Gāius Iūlius Caesar*, 527–529.
- Gallīna Impavida*, 401.
- gaudeō*, semi-deponent, 375, *b*.
- Gender of nouns, 253, 256; first declension, 27; 256, (1); second declension, 40; 256, (2); third declension, 256, (3); fourth declension, 301, *b*; fifth declension, 318, *b*.
- Genitive case, 16; objective, 269;

- partitive, 270, *a*; possession, 16, *a*; qualifying a noun, 19; quality, 138; subjective, 475; whole, 270; with impersonal verbs of feeling, 503.
- genus**, declension, 137, 545.
- gerund**, definition, 457; form. 463; use, 465.
- gerundive**, definition, 457; form. 462; use, 464.
- gracilis**, comparison, 342, 552.
- hic**, declension, 276, 558; meaning, 272; *ille . . . hic*, 277, *a*.
- Historical present, 80; as a secondary tense, 391, *a*.
- Historical tenses, 391, (4).
- Horātius apud Iūdicēs Condemnātus Est**, 331.
- Horātius Cocles Pontem Dēfendit**, 507.
- hostis**, declension, 144, 545.
- humilis**, comparison, 342, 552.
- i*-stems in the third declension, 140–145.
- idem**, 477; declension, 558.
- Idioms, 376.
- ille*, declension, 276, 558; meaning, 272; *ille . . . hic*, 277, *a*.
- imāgō**, declension, 112, 545.
- Imperative, present active, 194; conjugation, 201; use of the imperative, 204.
- Imperfect tense, see Past tense.
- Impersonal verbs, 311; genitive with, 503.
- Incolae Urbis Novae Deerant**, 136.
- Incomplete action, tenses denoting, 391, (1).
- Indefinite pronouns, 477–484; declension, 561; list, 477; use, 482; *quis* and *quī* after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, 482, *a*.
- Independent clauses with the subjunctive, 439.
- Indirect discourse, 485–494; definition, 485; main verbs, 489; questions, 491; verbs in dependent clauses, 490.
- Indirect object, 20; with special verbs meaning believe, help, please, etc., 455.
- Indirect questions, definition, 419; examples, 425, *a*; subjunctive in, 425.
- īferus**, comparison, 348, 552.
- Infinitive, present active and passive, 179; time denoted, 189; perfect active, 246–252; perfect passive, 362; time denoted, 251; future active, 364; future passive, 366; time denoted by tenses, 394; accusative as subject of infinitive, 190; complementary infinitive, 186; infinitive as object, 188; as subject, 187; following verbs of saying, 250; main verbs in indirect discourse, 489.
- Instrument and means denoted by the ablative, 21.
- Intensive pronoun, 272.
- Inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs Bellum**, 291.
- Interrogative pronouns, 321–327, 560.
- Interrogative words, 326.
- Intransitive and transitive verbs, 131.
- iō* verbs of the third conjugation, 174–178.

- ipse, declension, 276; meaning, 272; use, 277.
- Irregular adjectives with -ius in the genitive singular, 207, 211, 214.
- Irregular comparison of adjectives, 345, 348.
- Irregular verbs, 379–384; conjugation, 569.
- is, 280–287; declension, 284, 558; use, 285.
- iste, declension, 276, *a*; meaning, 272; use, 277.
- iter, declension, 548.
- Iuppiter, declension, 548.
- Iuppiter Rōmānis terrōrem Dēmit, 197.
- Lārs Porsena Rōmam Īnfestō Exercitū Venit, 506.
- Latin-English vocabulary, 574.
- Latinis Bellum Est Indictum, 374.
- Leō, 441.
- leō, declension, 112, 545.
- liber, declension, 41, 544.
- Libri Sibyllinī, 488.
- limus, ending of the superlative, 338, 342.
- Locative case, 24; 30, *c*; use, 32.
- Lūdus Quī “Spectō” Appellātur, 85.
- Lupus Scelerātus, 449.
- magis, comparison, 355, 554.
- magis, use in comparison of adjectives, 332, *a*.
- maximē, use in comparison of adjectives, 332, *a*.
- magnus, comparison, 348, 552.
- male, formation and comparison, 355, 554.
- mālō, 382, conjugation, 569.
- malus, comparison, 348, 552.
- Manner denoted by the ablative, 312.
- Mārcus Rēgulus Redit Carthāginem, 517.
- mare, declension, 144, 545.
- Means and instrument denoted by the ablative, 21.
- Metrical reading, 534.
- mīles, declension, 95, 545.
- mīle, 213, *a*.
- mīlia, declension, 213, 556; use, 213, *a*.
- miser, comparison, 342, 552; declension, 53, 549.
- miserē, formation and comparison, 355, 554.
- mittō, conjugation, 563–565.
- Mood, distinction between the indicative and the subjunctive, 396.
- Movet Horātium Complōrātiō Sorōris, 324.
- Mulierēs inter Tēla Veniunt, 210.
- multī, comparison, 348, 552.
- multum, formation and comparison, 355, 554.
- multus, comparison, 348, 552.
- Mūrēs, 421.
- nāvis, declension, 144, 545.
- nē, in final clauses, 406; in negative commands, 443; with verbs of fearing, 512.
- ne, in questions, 326, *a*, (3).
- negative commands, 383.
- nōle and uōlite in negative commands, 383.
- nōlō, 382, conjugation, 569.
- Nominative case, predicate noun



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- denote completed action, 228, *a*; 391, (2).
- Perfect infinitive, active, 246, 249; passive, 362; time denoted, 251.
- Perfect passive participle, 288–296; stem, 293, *d*; time denoted, 294; translation, 294, *a*.
- Perfect stem, 224.
- Perfect subjunctive, 418, 424; use, 426.
- Periphrastic conjugations, definition, 467; active, 472; passive, 473; dative of agent, 467, 474.
- Personal endings, active, 66; passive, 82; perfect tense, 217.
- Personal pronouns, 261–271; declension, 264, 557; *is* as substitute for pronoun of third person, 265, *b*; nominative omitted, 66; use, 265.
- Place in which, 97; from which, 98; to which, 96.
- polliceor*, deponent verb, 570.
- portus*, declension, 301, 546.
- Possession denoted by the dative, 230; by the genitive, 19, *a*.
- Possessive pronouns, declension, 264, *b*; use, 267.
- possum*, 180; conjugation, present, past, and future, 185; entire conjugation, 568.
- Potential subjunctive, 445.
- potior*, deponent verb, 570; ablative with, 377.
- Predicate noun or adjective, 31.
- Prefixes, 511.
- Present indicative, active, 72–81; passive, 82–89; use, 80; historical present, 391, *a*.
- Present participle, declension, 200; time denoted, 203, *a*.
- Present stem, 78.
- Present subjunctive, 398; conditional sentences, 453; dependent clauses, 407; optative, 444, sequence, 427.
- Price denoted by the ablative, 492.
- Primary tenses, 391, (3).
- Principal parts of verbs, 225, 292; typical verbs, 293.
- Principal tenses, 391, (3).
- princeps*, declension, 95, 545.
- prior*, comparison, 348, 552.
- Pronouns, personal reflexive, and possessive, 261–271, 557; demonstrative, 272–279, 280–287, 477, 558; indefinite, 477–484, 561; interrogative, 321–327, 560; relative, 280–287, 559.
- Pronunciation, 1–7, 536–542.
- Prōsum*, 568, *a*.
- puer*, declension, 41, 544.
- pulcher*, declension, 54, 549; comparison, 342, 552.
- Purpose, expressed by accusative of the supine, 369, (1); by the dative, 302; by the future active participle, 367, *a*; by the gerundive with *ad*, 464, *a*; by the gerund with *ad*, 465 *a*; by a final clause with the subjunctive, 406.
- Quality denoted by the ablative, 492; by the genitive, 138.
- quam* with comparatives, 334, *a*.
- Quantity of syllables and vowels, 5, 541.
- que*, enclitic, 171, *b*.
- Questions, answers to, 326, *b*; indirect, 419, 425; in indirect discourse, 491; interrogative

- pronouns, 321; interrogative words, 326.
- quī**, indefinite, 477; after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**.
- quī**, interrogative, 321; declension, 325, *a*; 560, *a*; use, 326.
- quī**, relative, 280–287; declension, 284, 559; agreement, 286; with subjunctive denoting purpose, 406.
- quidam**, 477; declension, 561.
- quin**, with subjunctive after expressions of doubt, 416, *b*; with verbs of hindering, 416, *c*.
- quis**, indefinite, 477; after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, 482, *a*.
- quis**, interrogative, 321; declension, 325, 560; use, 326.
- quisquam**, 477, declension, 561; use, 482, *b*.
- quisque**, 477; declension, 561.
- quō**, with subjunctive in clauses of purpose, 406.
- quot**, 326, *a*, (2).
- Reflexive pronoun, declension, 264, 557; use, 266.
- Rēge Expulsō Cōsulēs Sunt Creātī**, 480.
- Rēgulus**, 518.
- Relative clauses of characteristic, 416, *a*; of purpose, 406.
- Relative pronoun, 280–287, 559.
- Remus ā Praedātōribus Est Captus**, 103.
- rēs**, declension, 318, 547.
- Result expressed by the subjunctive, 409–417.
- Reviews, first and second declensions, 58–65; the third declension, 146–153; nouns of the first, second, and third declensions, 253–260; verbs in the indicative, 385–390; nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, 495–504; verbs, 505–515; indirect discourse, 516–520; participles, 521–525; general review of forms and syntax, 526–533.
- rēx**, declension, 95, 545.
- rimus**, ending of the superlative, 338, 342.
- Rōma Crēscit Albae Ruīnīs**, 341.
- Roman numerals, 555.
- Rōmānī Horātium Victōrem Accipiunt**, 317.
- Rōmulus et Remus in Tiberim Mittuntur**, 86.
- Rōmulus Societātem Populō Novō Petit**, 143.
- Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam Vocat**, 128.
- Rōmānī Virginēs Sabinōrum Rapiunt**, 162.
- Roots of verbs, 389, (1).
- Sabinī Tarpāiam Scūtīs Obruunt**, 168.
- saepe**, comparison, 355, 554.
- Scipiō Africānus Hannibal Vincit**, 522.
- Second conjugation, characteristic of, 72. See also the names of the tenses.
- Second declension, 34–48, 544; case-endings, 41, 47; ending of stem, 41, *a*; gender, 40, 46; genitive and vocative of **fīlius** and nouns in **-ius**, 34; 41, *b*; genitive of nouns in **-ium**, 47, *b*; masculine nouns, 34–42; neuter nouns, 43–48; adjectives of the

- first and second declensions, 49–57.
- secondary tenses, 391, (4).
- senex, declension, 548.
- Senex et Mors, 497.
- Semi-deponent verbs, 570, c.
- Separation denoted by the ablative, 336; dative with verbs of separation, 205.
- Sequence of tenses, 427.
- sequor, deponent verb, 570.
- Servius Tullius Rēgnat, 451.
- similis, comparison, 342, 552.
- sōl, genitive plural wanting, 104, b.
- soleō, semi-deponent verb, 375, b.
- sōlus, declension, 214, b.
- Specification denoted by the ablative, 319.
- stella, declension, 30, 543.
- Stem and base, 30, a.
- Stems of nouns, first declension, 30, a; second declension, 41, a; third declension, consonant stems, 95, b; i-stems, 140–145; fourth declension, 301, a; fifth declension, 318, c.
- Stems of verbs, present, 78, 293, b; perfect, 224; 293, c; supine, 358; 293, d.
- Subject of finite verb, 12; of infinitive, 190; when omitted, 66, 265.
- Subjective genitive, 475.
- Subjunctive mood, conjugation of sum, 562; four conjugations, 564, 565; irregular verbs, 569; general meaning, 396; general uses, dependent clauses, 397; independent clauses, 439; present and past, 398, 407; perfect and past perfect, 418, 424, 426; sequence of tenses, 427; translation, 399; uses: attraction, 514; conditional sentences, second class, 453; third class, 454; consecutive clauses, 409, 416; dependent clauses of indirect discourse, 490; final clauses, 397, 406; optative, 444; potential, 445; questions in indirect discourse, 491; volitive, 443.
- Subordinate conjunctions, 172.
- Substantive clauses, 428.
- suī, declension, 264, 557; use, 266.
- sum, conjugation, 562; present indicative, 69; past, 118; future, 156; perfect, 220.
- Superlative degree, declension, 333, a; ending in -limus and -rimus, 338, 552; meaning *very*, 343. See also Comparison.
- superus, comparison, 348, 552.
- Supine, definition, 358; form, 365; use, purpose, 369, (1); specification, 369, (2); supine stem, 358.
- Syllables, 4, 540; quantity of, 541.
- Syntax, 11; references to rules, 571.
- Tables of declension, conjugation, etc., 543–570.
- Tarquinius Novāculā Cōtem Secat, 423.
- Tarquinius Rēgnum Petit, 415.
- Tarquinius Rōmam Commigrat, 404.
- Tarquinius Superbus Rēgnum Occupat, 470.
- Tempestās ab Terris Rōmulum Aufert, 242.
- Temporal clauses with cum, indicative, 435; subjunctive, 436.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- 505–515. See also infinitive, names of the tenses, participle, subjunctive.
- vēscor**, ablative with, 377.
- vestrī** as objective genitive, 265, *a*.
- vetus**, declension, 198, *b*.
- Vicus Scelerātus**, 461.
- videō**, conjugation, 563–565.
- vir**, declension, 41, 544.
- vīs**, declension, 548.
- Vocabularies, English-Latin, 575; Latin-English, 574; Latin words with English derivatives, 572; words for memory drill, 573.
- Vocative case, 8; person addressed, 14.
- Voice, 130.
- Volitive subjunctive, 443.
- volō**, 382; conjugation, 569.
- Vowels, sounds of, 537; quantity, 541, 5.
- Vulpēs et Leō**, 411.
- Whole, genitive of, 270.
- Words, arrangement, 28.
- Word-building and derivation, 509, 510.